Compleat Botanica - Getting started

Index to getting started with The Compleat Botanica

➕ **Introductory tutorial**	Begin here to get a good overview of the software.
➕ **Essential features of The Compleat Botanica**	Using this summary of essential features, you'll find tools to help you organize your plant collection, you'll see a different way to conduct research, you'll discover a new educational resource, and you'll learn how to publish and share your new found discoveries.
➕ **How do I . . .**	Index of "how to" articles describing step-by-step procedures for common tasks.
➕ **The not so obvious . . .**	Even the simplest things in life have hidden charms. Here's a list of things that may not be obvious at first glance.

Compleat Botanica - Introductory tutorial

Index to introductory tutorial

ℹ **Tutorial Page 1: Software to Organize your Plant Data**	This tutorial will introduce you to what can be done with The Compleat Botanica.
ℹ **Tutorial Page 2: What can I do with the software?**	The Compleat Botanica can be used to organize, educate, research, and publish plant related data.
ℹ **Tutorial Page 3: Who uses the software?**	Here are some ideas for professional and amateur use of the software.
ℹ **Tutorial Page 4: How is the software organized?**	The software is composed of three tightly linked lists: the specimen list, the vernacular name list, and the taxonomic checklist.
ℹ **Tutorial Page 5: Major components of the software**	Here's a quick introduction to the major components of the software.
ℹ **Tutorial Page 6: Some ideas for getting started**	There are several ways to get started with The Compleat Botanica.

Welcome to The Compleat Botanica.

You've come to the right place for getting started with the software.

This tutorial will introduce you to what can be done with *The Compleat Botanica*. Along the way you'll see how the software can be used to effectively manage your collection of plants, how it can help you to conduct research in your field of interest, and how you can share what you've learned with others.

There are many professionals and amateurs just like you who are benefiting from the organizational tools packaged with the software. In this tutorial you'll see what these other plant-related professionals are doing with botanical data.

The software is full-featured, with everything you'd expect from a great botanical database. This tutorial will introduce you to some of the key features of *The Compleat Botanica* so that you'll be sure of using the fastest and easiest method of getting things done.

After following this brief tutorial, you'll know how best to begin your exploration of the software. Since each of us has a different way of learning, we'll show you several possible ways to get started with the software. You'll also learn how to use the Pathfinder to look for answers to specific questions.

This tutorial will take about 5 to 10 minutes to complete.	Begin the tutorial, go to [What can I do with the software?](#)

Compleat Botanica - Tutorial Page 2: What can I do with the software?

The Compleat Botanica can be used to organize your collection of plant related data, educate you about your favorite plants, research the world's vast collection of plant information, and publish or share what you've learned along the way, thus completing the full cycle of knowledge acquisition.

🍃 Organize

As you collect interesting information you need a good way to organize it in order to find it again easily at a later time. Classifying the information through well-defined categories is a good way to see both the similarities and the differences among the members of a collection. Categorization is one of the great strengths of the software. When information is stored using categories you can use a single word or a short phrase to distinguish one member from another; for example plants may be listed as sensitive, rare, threatened, endangered, or extinct to indicate their endangered status. If you're preparing information about fruit bearing plants you might categorize members as dioecious, parthenocarpic, or self-fertile to indicate the method of pollination. And if you're studying the traditional medicinal qualities of plants, you would classify members by choosing from a list of 160 different medicinal uses such as aperient, bronchiolytic, carminative, demulcent, expectorant, etc.

🍃 Educate

You can educate yourself about the plant kingdom through direct observation, with anecdotal conversations, through books, via the web, and so forth. Learning about plants, their uses, their names, and the history of our study of them can be a life-long pursuit. The Compleat Botanica can be a useful tool to help in this education. Every plant has a botanical name. Where did it come from? When was it first named? What other plants have similar names -- does that give us clues to the plant's color, smell, form, uses, locality, and so forth? The software provides a complete hierarchical classification of plant names beginning with genus and species and continuing up through tribe, family, order, class, and division. This makes it easy to see how close or how far apart two plants are from each other.

The common names of plants can also be a fascinating field of study. Who can deny the beauty in such evocative names as *love-bind, love-in-a-mist, love-lies-bleeding,* or Shakespere's *love-in-idleness*? And how do you feel about *maiden fern, maiden grass, maiden pink, maidenberry, maidenbush, maidenhair, mistmaiden, dustymaiden, milkmaids* and *oldmaid*? Finding common names and their botanical name equivalents is fun and simple.

🍃 Research

The World Wide Web is a treasure chest of information. Accessing this information is easy with most sites providing search and lookup facilities by either botanical name or common name. The Compleat Botanica can make this research effort even easier through its *gateway* facility.

If you already have basic information about a species, you can use one of the gateway scripts to automatically search Web sites for more detailed information. You can even develop your own scripts to access new information sources for your area of interest. Results from these Web sites are displayed right inside the software providing a fully integrated approach to research.

🍃 Share

Sharing your personal collection of plant data can be done many ways. If you need to print paper-based reports, the full featured report generator is the best tool to use. If you want to move data to an electronic publishing tool such as PageMaker, the *export* facility can generate tab-delimited output files suitable for use by most applications. When you need to move data from another database into The Compleat Botanica, the *import* facility can accept most tab-delimited input files.

🍃 Publish

Overall, the *publish* facility gives you the most degrees of freedom when it comes to sharing data. By publishing your data you can create HTML pages that are ready for the Web or ready for the printer. This type of data sharing allows you full control over the layout, the styles and colors, and the content of each page. Templates for abstracts, labels, proof-sheets, indexes, table of contents, data sheets, nursery placards, and trailside markers make it easy to produce high-quality output. If you're an advanced user, you can create your own templates for even greater flexibility.

The plant kingdom provides the material source for our houses & furniture, our clothing & dyes, our nutrition & health, our sense of aesthetics & beauty, and some would say our spiritual well-being. No exaggeration is necessary to emphasize the importance of plants in our lives and our livelihoods.

Whether you're a professional or an amateur, you can use The Compleat Botanica to record, organize, and retrieve plant-related reference data about the part of the plant kingdom most interesting to you. Here are some ideas:

Professional groups

Arborist: Record tree forms, life spans, fertilizer requirements, and best practices.

Conservation: Develop lists of native, endemic, and rare plants in a conservation area for informed management decisions.

Plant society: Develop regional flora to record exactly what can be found in the natural landscape -- from natives to exotics, from endemics to invasives.

Restoration: Record lists of suitable species for hillside erosion control projects, wetland edge projects, highway beautification projects, and the like.

Silviculturist: Record species data for optimal spacing, life span, and yield.

Wetland management: Develop checklists using the wetland indicator and wetland classification fields.

Botanical sciences

Botanist: Record descriptive keys for underground parts, wood, bark, leaves, inflorescences, fruits and more.

Ecology: Record symbiotic relationships, key indicator species, and plant communities for an area of study.

Ethnobotany: Record historical plant uses and plant lore for indigenous people.

Herbarium: Record sheet number, collector's name, collection location, collection date, and collection number for herbarium specimen.

Horticulture: Record best conditions for optimal growth. Record propagation protocols, seed & pollen parents, and

derivation methodologies.

Taxonomist: Organize supra-generic names based on your own research criteria. Cross check data on publication and author citations. Record notes on original names and synonyms.

Home economics

Cooking: Record preparation methods and parts used for both common and unusual fruits and vegetables, herbs and spices, and non-traditional food stuffs.

Dietician: Record and organize nutritional data such as proteins & fatty acids, vitamins & minerals, and trace elements for fruits, vegetables, leafy greens, grains and nuts.

Florist: Develop lists of flowers available by season and by best uses such as dried arrangements, floral bouquets, and so forth.

Gardening

Arboretum & Botanical Gardens: Create lists of plants in bloom for easy reference by your docents and visitors.

Flower gardening: Investigate flowering times, colors, and forms. Develop plans using height and spread. Compare climate suitability with USDA zones, water & sunshine requirements, or soil pH & texture.

Garden club: Organize club sales, member lists and exchanges, capture anecdotal information, print tags and data sheets.

Landscape architecture: Record lists of decorative plants by stature, suitability to location, compatibility to climate, price, availability, etc.

Nursery: Create placards to prominently feature plants. Develop lists of plants in bloom on a season by season basis. Use price codes or special prices fields for each record.

Vegetable gardening: Record best practices for your neighborhood, keep track of seed collections, develop year-over-year harvest data.

Specialties

Herbalist: Record traditional medicinal remedies, parts used, therapeutic actions, precautions, and poisonous indications.

Dye maker: Record the dyeing properties of plants including possible colors achieved and plant parts used.

Perfumer: Record fragrance descriptions, fragrance intensity, fragrance category, and plant parts used.

Photographer: Capture plant pictures and organize your photo album with proof sheets, zoom and pan, annotated picture printouts, and all of the sorting and categorizing tools of the software.

Agriculture

Agricultural Extensions: Record common pests and diseases, best cultivation practices, and probable yields.

Pomology: Record cultivation, pollination and propagation details and relate these details to yields, flavor & texture, or fruit & nut quality.

Data that you collect is recorded in specimen records where each record captures the details of a single species. (The sample database provides a ready-made collection of many of the most important and useful plants grown for food, medicine and beauty.)

Each record in the specimen list is identified by the all important *botanical name.* This internationally recognized key to a species is supplemented by the *vernacular names* that we frequently like to use. Vernacular names are internally kept separate from specimen records. This separation allows the list of vernacular names to be easily searched for corresponding botanical names. It also handles two commonly occurring problems: botanical names which are referred to by more than one vernacular name, and similar sounding vernacular names which are applied to different species.

The history of every botanical name can be tracked through a third list, the taxonomic checklist, which records the name of the person who first identified the species and the publication in which its description was made. This taxonomic checklist is organized hierarchically by family, genus, species, and so forth using twenty-three ranks spanning from kingdom down to subspecies and including the horticultural rank of variety at the bottom.

These three lists, the specimen list, the vernacular name list, and the taxonomic checklist, are tightly linked within The Compleat Botanica's forms so that it's easy to find and access related information throughout. Of the three, the specimen list is by far the most important to you the user. This list is where all of the details of your area of interest will be recorded.

The Taxonomic Checklist
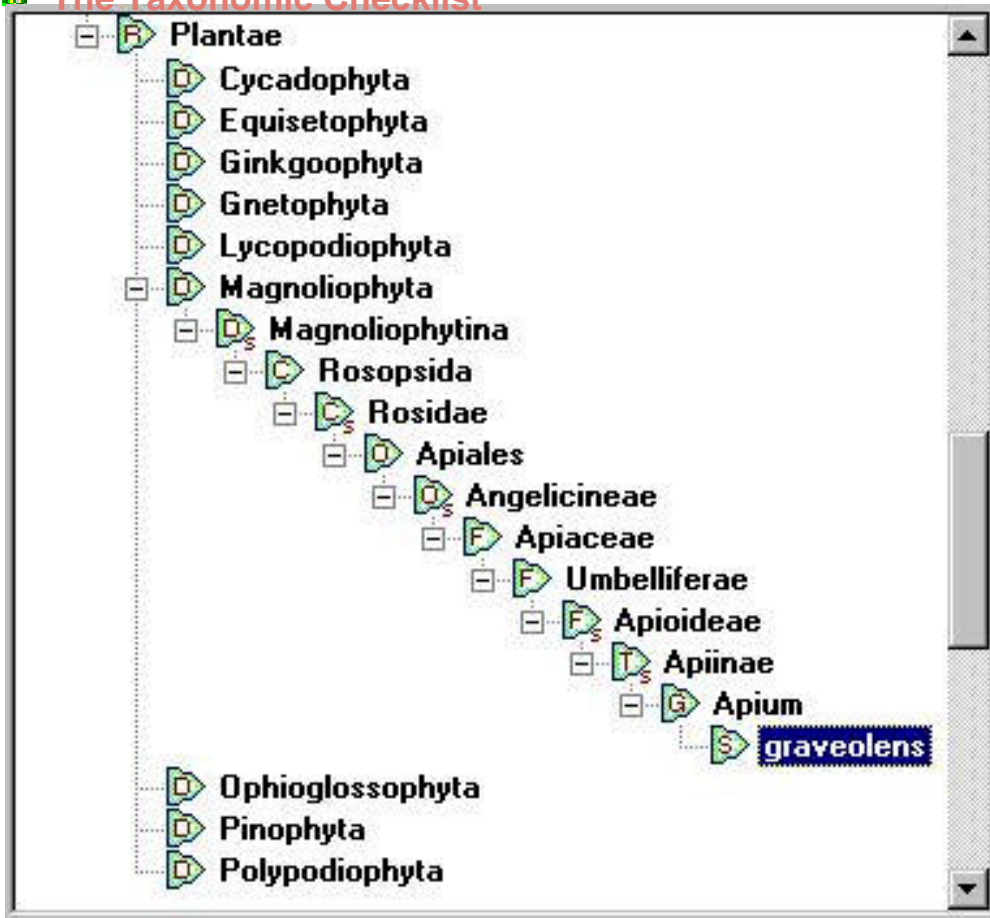
The taxonomic checklist shows the hierarchical placement within the plant kingdom of each species proceeding downward from division, to class, order, family, tribe, genus, and finally species.

This snapshot shows the placement of *Apium graveolens* under the family Umbelliferae, the order of Apiales, the class of Rosopsida, and the division of Magnoliophyta.

The Taxonomic Checklist

leads to the Specimen List

The Specimen List

The specimen list is where you record details for individual plants in your collection.

Here the specimen record for *Apium graveolens*, commonly known as celery or smallage, is shown using the

Vegetables, herbs & spices ▾		
114... ⊕	First 26 specimen (1 selected)	
△	Common names	Edible parts
▶ **_Apium graveolens_**	celery,smallage	
Apium graveolens var. _rapaceum_	knob celery,celery root,celeriac	◩ Root crowns
Armoracia rusticana	horseradish,red cole	◩ Roots
Atriplex hortensis	mountain spinach,butter leaves,salt ...	◩ Leaves
Barbarea praecox	early winter cress,Belle Isle cress,s...	◩ Leaves
Barbarea verna	early yellowrocket,upland cress,earl...	◩ Leaves
Barbarea vulgaris	winter cress	◩ Leaves

The Vernacular Name List
leads to the Specimen List

The Vernacular Name List

The list of vernacular names shows other plants commonly called celery.

Here the selected entry refers directly to the specimen shown above.

Return to [Who uses the software?](#)	Continue with tutorial, go to [Major components of the software](#)

Compleat Botanica - Tutorial Page 5: Major components of the software

The Compleat Botanica is composed of lists, views, filters, categories, templates, style sheets, and report layouts. Here's a quick introduction to the major components of the software.

Lists

There are five lists used in the software (six if you count the list of Pathfinder documents). The first three were just introduced: the list of vernacular names, the taxonomic checklist, and the list of specimen in your collection. The other two lists are the set of *filters* that you define, and the list of custom *categories* supplied with the software. Both are described in more detail below.

Views

There are 17 data entry views, one abstract view, and one gateway view. A *view*, as used in this documentation, is simply a partial picture of a larger entity. In this case the 19 views are partial pictures of the specimen list. Each data entry view presents part of one specimen's data so that it can be modified. All together, the data entry views allow you to examine and manipulate any data value associated with a specimen.

The abstract view is an HTML page that displays part or all of a specimen's data values. The abstract view is based on a template (see below) that can be chosen and customized by you. This gives you a birds-eye view of your data.

The gateway view is a collection of HTML templates that help you to conduct additional research on the World Wide Web. This view is only available when your computer is connected to the Internet. With the gateway view you can easily search for additional information available from highly respected sources. Each template is programmed to search one Web site for a single species using either its botanical name or one of its common names. Some templates also allow you to search for additional information on genus and family names.

Filters

Filters are the multi-purpose definitions of what to include and what to exclude. With filters you define which set of records are to be displayed in the specimen list. You also specify which columns of data to display with each record. Both simple and sophisticated filters can be defined with ease. For example, all plants that exhibit some medicinal quality can be chosen by simply adding the `medicinal properties` item to the filter and choosing "all possible values". Refining the filter to show only plants with medicinal roots can be done by adding the `medicinal parts` item to the filter and selecting "bulbs", "corm", "rhizome", "root", "root bark", "rootstock", "shoots", "sprouts", and "tubers" (all found adjacent to each other in the list of possibilities.) To include columns in the specimen list without restricting which data to include, simply add the item to the filter and select the "Include all . . ." button. For example,

the `professional advice`, `pregnancy alert`, and `legally restricted` items might be added to round out our sample filter for medicinal roots.

Filters also retain the sorting order, the column layout, and the column widths of the resulting specimen list. Sorting order is defined by simply clicking on a column header: click once for an alphabetical sort, click again for the reverse order, and click a third time to remove the sort criteria. Columns can be rearranged by clicking and dragging a column header to the left or to the right. Column widths can be adjusted by simply clicking the right-hand edge of a column header and dragging it to the desired width.

Categories

Categories define the set of standard possibilities for each item in the specimen list. The list of categories is fully customizable so that you can supplement each set of possibilities to include your own definitions and organizational rules. The software when it's first installed comes with a good set of categorical entries for each of the 90 possible items. As you first begin collecting and recording your plant-related data you'll want to use the standard categories that are supplied. As you encounter exceptions to the rule, non-conforming specimen, and other hard to classify plants, you can enter free-form descriptions in the applicable data area. Free-form data entry makes it easy to describe things when you don't yet know exactly how to classify what you have. At a later time you can develop categorical entries to match the free-form entries that you've created.

Templates

HTML templates are used in the publication process, in the abstract view and in the gateway view. In each case, a *template* is a standard HTML document with special embedded replacement tags. These replacement tags are used by the software to merge your specimen data with the template to produce a new browser-compatible document.

Two types of templates are provided: detailed pages and summary tables. Detailed page templates are used for the data of just a single specimen record. Their counterpart, summary table templates, are used for the data of a set of specimen records -- usually this set of records is the collection defined by the currently selected filter.

Advanced users who understand HTML can produce their own templates using any standard web page editor.

Style sheets

Each HTML document created by the software references one or more style sheets. A style sheet describes how the document is to be displayed in the Web browser, for instance which font face and font size should be used, which colors should be used, or what type of borders should be applied. Eight different types of style sheets are used by the software to produce every type of document from formal to garish, from plain to fancy, from simple to pizzazz.

The types of style sheets available include: color schemes, font styles, point sizes, logos, banner backgrounds, banner borders, table backgrounds, and table borders.

Advanced users can create their own customized style sheets for use by the software.

🍃 Report layouts

A report layout defines how a specimen report is to be formatted. Specimen reports are high-resolution printer reports with precise control over margins, colors and fonts, frames and alignments. Specimen reports give you more accurate control than HTML documents over such items as page breaks, headers, footers, and side-bars. Report layouts work in conjunction with the current filter to fit your data onto printouts using any paper size and paper orientation.

Creating your own report layout is simple even for first timers.

Compleat Botanica - Tutorial Page 6: Some ideas for getting started

There are several ways to get started with The Compleat Botanica. If you haven't yet seen the full list of features available, you may want to take the Tour of Essential Features. These short pages will introduce you to many of the key features of the software and provide links to pages describing in detail how to use each feature.

If you like poking around and exploring, you'll want to get started right away -- use the sample database to see what's possible. This eclectic collection of wild and cultivated plants has approximately 5000 entries for plants that are edible, useful, medicinal, or beautiful, and quite a few species that are toxic, stinky, and otherwise of disagreeable temperament.

When you're ready, create your own database and begin by adding specimen records one-by-one or by using the import facility. Create your own categories and filters to see just the data you need.

If you want a more structured approach to getting started, you may want to continue by reading the "how to" articles. These short articles describe how to use some of the most important features of the software. The Index of "how to" articles will give you access to these documents.

After you've used the software for a while and feel comfortable with its basic operation you'll want to check out the List of not so obvious things you should know. This is a list of simple operations that can help you get around and do what you want to do with even greater ease.

That's it for the tutorial. Enjoy.	Return to Major components of the software

Compleat Botanica - Essential features of The Compleat Botanica

Features

So you're interested in what this software can do for you. You've come to the right place to find out.

Take a few minutes to look over the essential features of *The Compleat Botanica* by browsing these pages. You'll find tools to help you organize your plant collection, you'll see a different way to conduct research, you'll discover a new educational resource, and you'll learn how to publish and share your new found discoveries.

Coreopsis lanceolata 'Tequila Sunrise'

Take a tour of the essential features

7 key features of The Compleat Botanica	The Compleat Botanica provides all the essential tools needed to organize any collection of plants, whether it's a botanical garden, an herbarium, a personal garden, a field guide of native plants, a nursery's stock, a landscape designer's favorite selections, a horticulturist's research collection, and more.	1
16 more essential features of great botanical software	Great botanical software has features for botanical names, pictures, dimensions, colors, and more. Here's an overview of some features you'll appreciate.	2

Custom categories	We all look at the world from our own perspective. Making sense out of what we see and organizing what we've learned requires us to divide our new-found knowledge into groupings that match our world view.	
Botanical spell-checker	Properly spelled botanical names are the key to unlocking the vast collection of data available about the Plant Kingdom.	
Flexible specimen lists	Looking at long lists of data using traditional list boxes and spreadsheets quickly leads to eye fatigue. Trying to find the similarities and differences in text-only listings is a chore.	
Data sharing	One of the great features of today's personal computers is the ability to share data between different software applications.	
Pictures	With the affordability and convenience of digital cameras, it's become popular to capture snapshots of our gardens in bloom, our horticultural specimen, or even the bounty of our fruit and vegetable crops.	
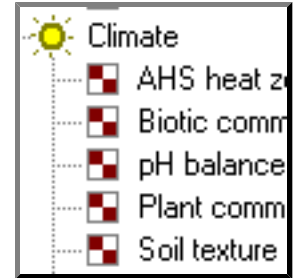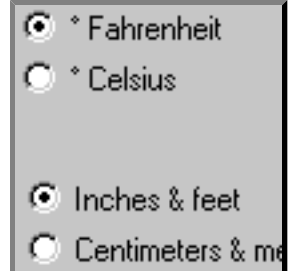
ℹ	Local customizations	The days of measuring with cubits are long gone, but that doesn't mean we've completely eliminated the Babel surrounding measurement units.	
ℹ	Professional report styling	Preparing an organized and readable listing from your database is a common expectation of high quality software.	
ℹ	Family names	We're all curious about plants and how they're named. One of the delightful things about visiting a botanical garden is that everything is labeled with the botanical name and the family it belongs to.	
ℹ	Filters	When your collection of data reaches a certain size, it's essential to have a way to see just part of it. Zooming in on just those items of interest, gives you a focused view-port of your collection.	
ℹ	Botanical name display	The Compleat Botanica adheres to the official standard for botanical names throughout the software.	
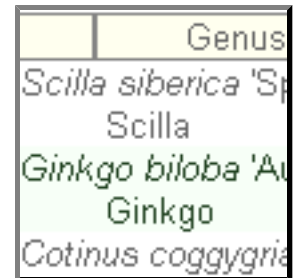
ⓘ **Multiple views**	The Compleat Botanica uses the popular side-by-side views first made popular with Microsoft's Windows Explorer.	
ⓘ **Plant tags / plant labels / plant markers**	The Compleat Botanica can print labels in a variety of font styles, sizes and colors on plain paper stock or on you favorite printer sheet-feed sticky label stock.	
ⓘ **Rich-text notes**	It seems like there's never enough fields in a database to capture all of the diversity and special exceptions that we run into on real projects.	
ⓘ **Multiple databases**	The Compleat Botanica's database organization tools provide simple access to creating, deleting, backing up, and restoring databases.	
ⓘ **WYSIWYG previews**	Previewing your reports on screen before printing them saves time and prevents surprises. The Compleat Botanica's report preview feature allows you to see every aspect of your report before sending it to the printer.	
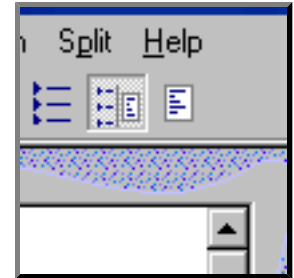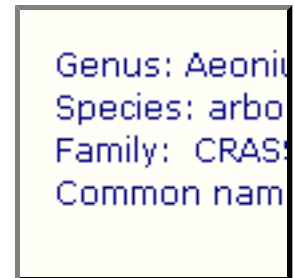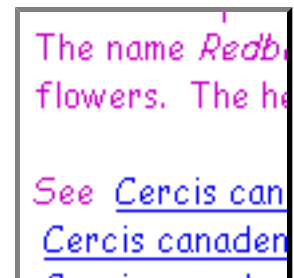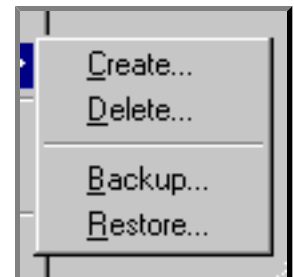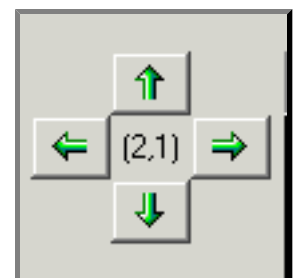
ℹ Checklist of botanical names	The Compleat Botanica uses a checklist of botanical names which span twenty-three taxonomic ranks from *regnum* to *varietas*.	
ℹ Precise colors	The Compleat Botanica uses common color names as well as the 884 colors of the Royal Horticultural Society's Colour Chart to record principal and accent colors.	
ℹ Seasonal interest calendar	Assembling enough data to prepare a good calendar of seasonal interest presents a problem: do you describe a season using using words like early-spring, or do you attempt to force-fit a season onto a calendar.	
ℹ Measurements	Keeping plants well spaced is one of the most important rules for achieving optimal health and beauty. But remembering the mature height and spread of so many different species is impossible.	
ℹ Finding data within your collection	Even with good filtering and sorting capabilities, it's hard to find something when you can only remember a name, a phrase, or part of a word.	
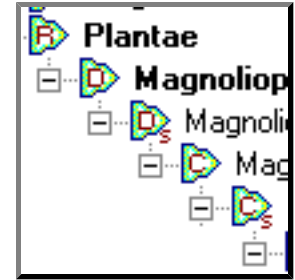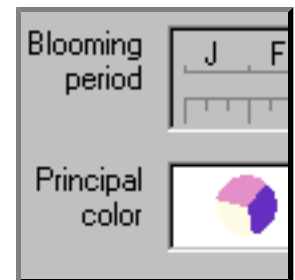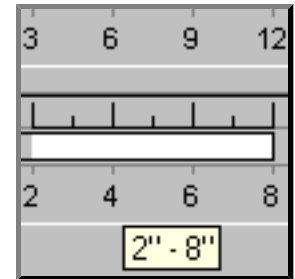
Iconic data	Well written commentary is the cornerstone of every good documentary effort. But so much of what we record in our diaries, journals, notebooks, and databases is subject to repetitive entries describing what we've learned.	Grass Groundcov Herb Shrub Tree
Customized look and feel	We all have different preferences and needs when it comes to readability.	Picture optior Picture direc Specimen list Specimen lis Specimen lis Initial record
Pathfinder	Today's software is so approachable and intuitive to use that we can learn to use a new application just by poking around and looking at a few samples.	Pathfinder Getting the r Tour of Pathfind Filters Categori
Publishing	Publishing your collection of plant data for the Internet is easy. Publishing to paper pre-press is a powerful alternative to the report generator.	Identificatio Life cycle v Climate vie Garden vie Special qu
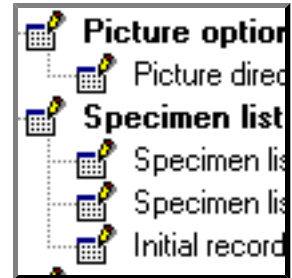
Compleat Botanica - 7 key features of The Compleat Botanica

| 1 | Custom Categories |

The Compleat Botanica uses custom categories to organize your botanical specimen into groups that make sense to you. Each category, whether it's life cycle, stature, best uses, desirable qualities, or adverse qualities can be defined to accept your set of predefined groupings.

And each of these categories allow for free-form entry and one-time exceptions when data just don't fit into the normal groupings.

More about this . . .
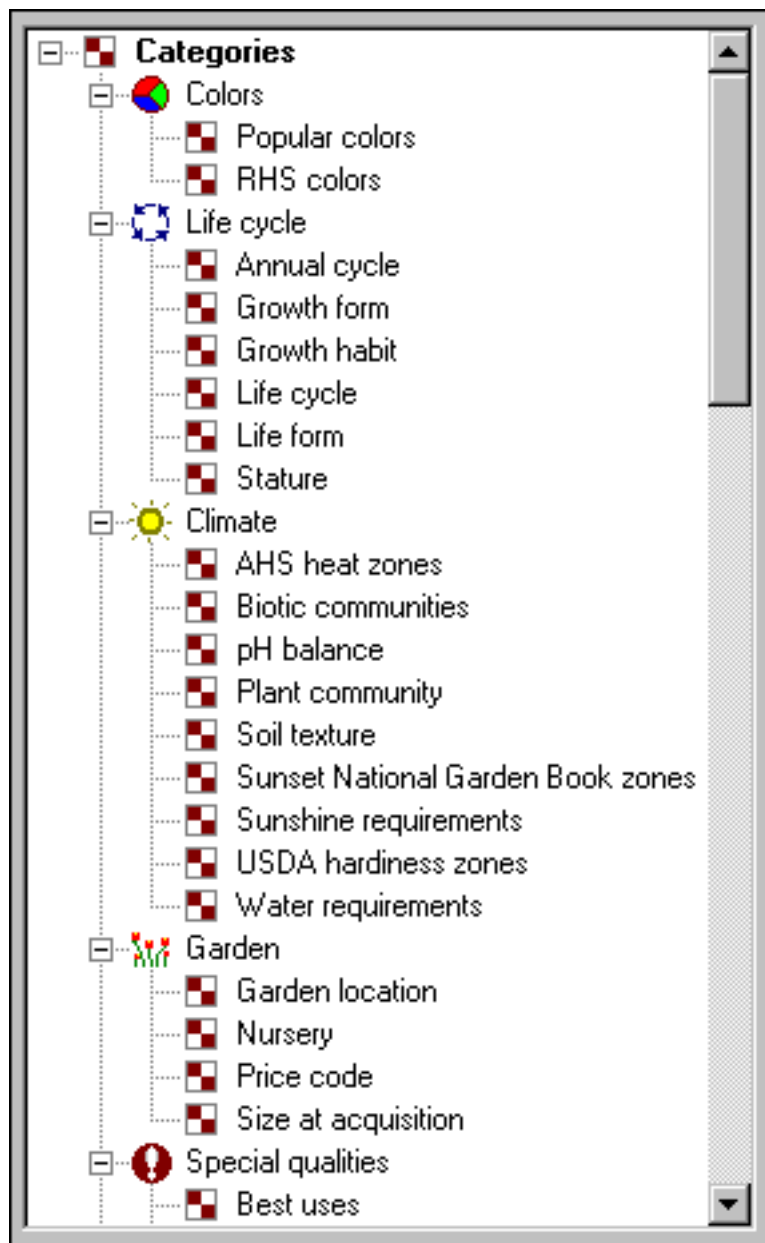
| 2 | Botanical spell-checker |

The botanical name spell-checker works just the way you expect. Misspellings are highlighted with a red-wavy proofreader's mark just like your favorite word processor. Valid names are suggested in the accompanying drop-down combo-box.

The spell-checker uses a checklist of 26,334 genus names, 54,662 species epithets, and 23,227 sub-species and varieties.

More about this . . .
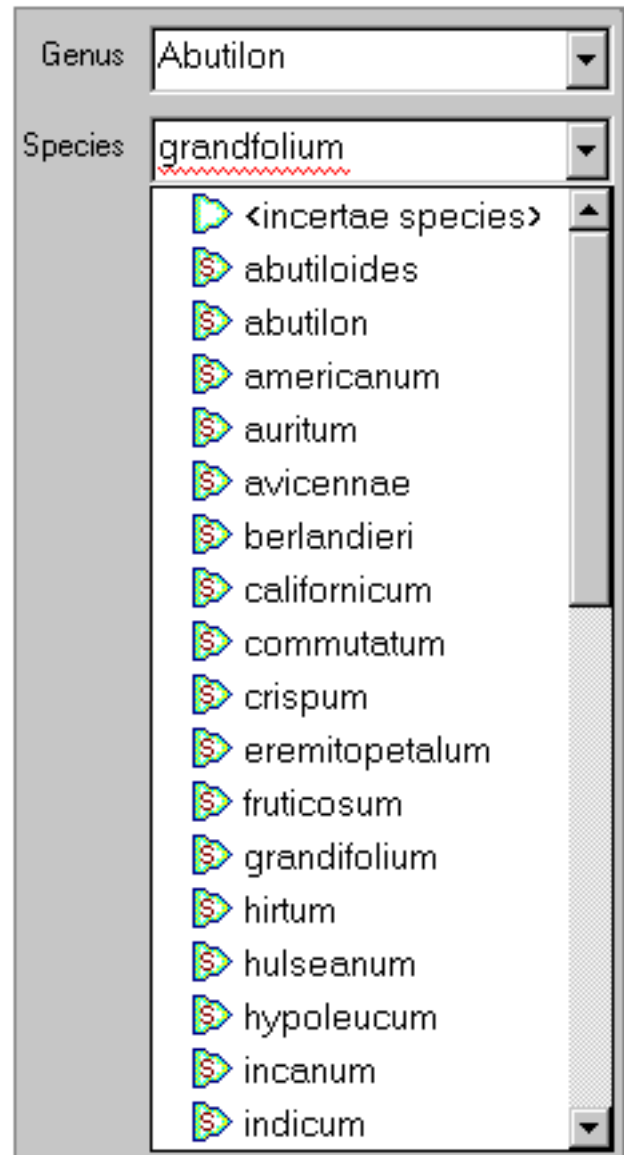
3   Flexible specimen lists

The centerpiece of The Compleat Botanica is the very sophisticated **Specimen List** -- easily customize which columns to include; see your data with embedded graphics, sort with a click of the column header, change ordering and widths with ease.

More about this . . .

Sunshine	Water
Hedera 'Needlepoint'	
☀ Full sun	◊ Drought tolerant
Codiaeum 'Flamingo'	
☀ Shade	▲▲ Regular watering
Cineraria 'Stellata Mix'	
☀☀ Partial sun or shade	▲▲ Regular watering
Zantedeschia aethiopica	
☀☀ Partial sun or shade	▲▲ Regular watering
Caladium	
☀☀ Partial sun or shade	▲▲ Regular watering
Narcissus 'Fortune'	
☀ Full sun	▲▲ Regular watering

4

Data sharing

```
Exporting Thalictrum aquilegifolium
Exporting Thymus lanuginosus
Exporting Thymus serpyllum 'Pink Chintz'
Exporting Thymus vulgaris 'Argenteus'
Exporting Tulbaghia violacea
Exporting Tulbaghia violaceae 'Silver Lace'
Exporting Verbena bonariensis
Exporting Verbena canadensis
Exporting Veronica peduncularis 'Georgia Blue'
Exporting Viburnum opulus 'Sterile'
Exporting Viburnum plicatum var. tomentosum 'Shasta'
Exporting Vitex agnus-castus
Exporting Westringia fruticosa 'Morning Light'
Exporting Wisteria floribunda var. rosea 'Honbeni'
Exporting Wisteria sinensis 'Caroline'
Exporting x Chitalpa tashkentensis 'Pink Dawn'
Exporting Zantedeschia 'Aztec Gold'
Exporting Zantedeschia rehmannii 'Dusty Pink'
Exporting Zanthoxylum piperitium

Writing C:\ImportExport\Specimen.xml
```

Easily share data with your favorite applications. Use the export feature to copy large quantities of data to other databases, spreadsheets, word processors, browsers, and Web servers.

Use the import feature to quickly add specimen from other databases, spreadsheets, and applications that create tab-delimited or comma-separated text files.

[More about this . . .](#)

5   Pictures
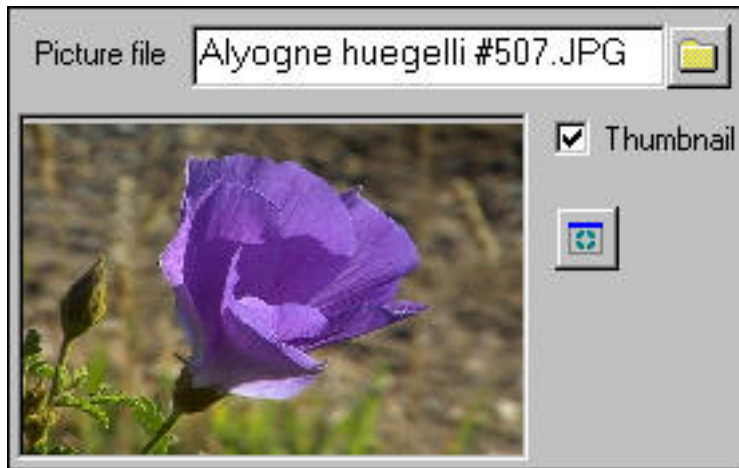
Display thumbnail pictures of your specimen in the Sketch View. Organize your pictures by using The Compleat Botanica as a plant database with pointers to your entire photographic collection.

More about this . . .

6   Global customizations

Local custom dictates formats and units. The Compleat Botanica lets you choose how dates are displayed. Temperatures can be either Celsius or Fahrenheit. Measurements can be either U.S. Customary units or metric.

More about this . . .
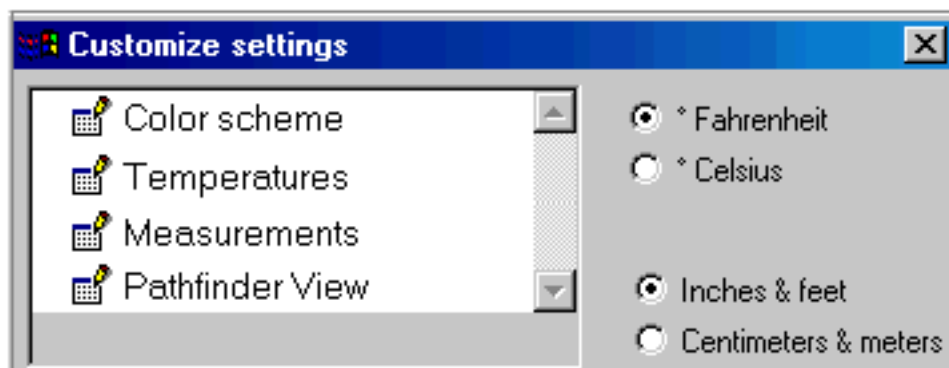
7   Professional reports

Produce great looking reports with simple point and click report styles. No complicated report generators.
Everything you need to make your data readable.

The Compleat Botanica

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar
Scilla siberica 'Spring Beauty'				
	Scilla	siberica		Spring Beauty
Ginkgo biloba 'Autumn Gold'				
	Ginkgo	biloba		Autumn Gold
Cotinus coggygria var. *purpureus*				
	Cotinus	coggygria	purpureus	
Anemone coronaria 'The Governor'				
	Anemone	coronaria		The Governor

***Compleat Botanica* - 16 more essential features of great botanical software**

8	Family names

Automatic family name lookup makes it easy for you to learn more about your specimen. With 26,334 genus names assigned to 1652 families, the comprehensiveness of the botanical name checklist is impressive.

More about this . . .

9	Filters

Filtering your database to zoom in on just your
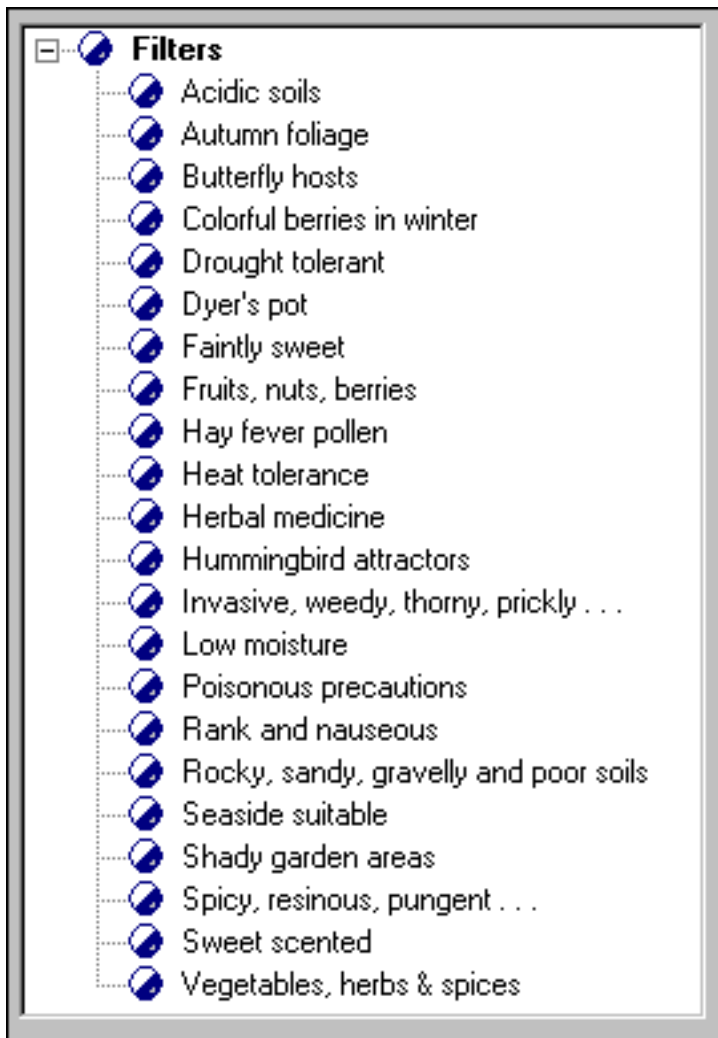
specimen of interest is a one-step process. You define custom filters to include or exclude records based on a powerful point-and-click selection process. You choose which columns to display by simply highlighting them from a list. Defining filters requires no special languages or confusing Boolean logic -- everything is in one intuitive window.

[More about this . . .](#)

10 Botanical name display

Botanical names are always displayed in a format compliant with the official IAPT rules: capitalization, italicization, and variety quoting are automatically applied so you can never go wrong. And the botanical name formatting applies throughout The Compleat Botanica -- entry forms, lists, reports, and labels.

[More about this . . .](#)

Cercis canadensis var. *texensis* 'Oklahoma'

11 Multiple views
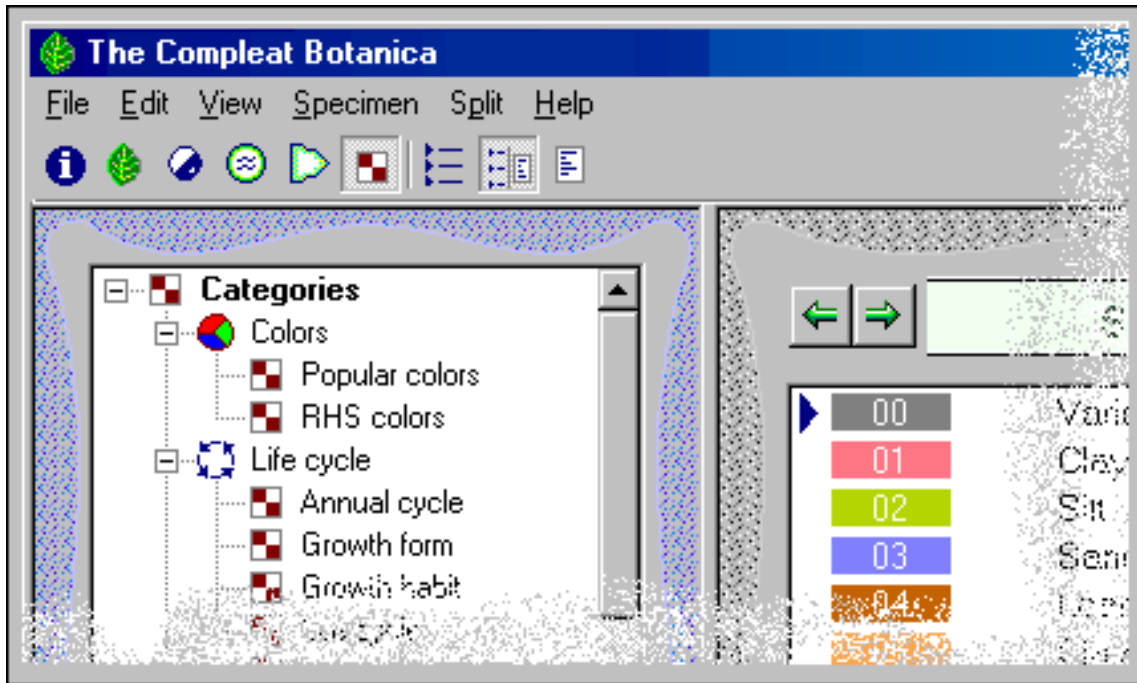
Access to the six major sections of the software is convenient

Navigate through your plant collection with side-by-side views for listings and details. Easily switch between full screen views for listings or details -- then switch back to split view for convenient data entry. Twenty-four different full screen detail views and six separate listing views provides maximum visibility for you to work with your specimen. And every window grows and shrinks to automatically fit the display resolution of your monitor without annoying scrollbars or clipped sides.

More about this . . .

Specimen views

12   Specimen labels

Preparing specimen labels is an integral part of the software. New specimen are automatically added to the list of labels needing to be printed. The sophisticated label generator gives you complete control over the layout and formatting of your labels.

More about this . . .

Specimen Number: S11923

Genus: Aeonium
Species: arboreum
Family: CRASSULACEÆ
Common name: aeonium

Life cycle: Perennial   Typical Height: 11" - 2' 11"
Typical Spread: Sunshine: Full sun   Water: Well
drained   USDA hardiness zones: USDA 09a-11

13   Rich-text notes

Enter descriptive text into three separate areas and record your special notes using fonts, colors, and point sizes using the built in rich-text editors. Notes can contain hyperlinks to other specimen in your database.

More about this . . .

Nature notes

Cercis occidentalis

This genus is made up of small deciduous trees or shrubs. Their profuse clusters of pea-like flowers line the bare branches in spring.
The name *Redbud* comes from the neat pointed buds deeper in color than the flowers. The heart-shaped leaves are distinctive and delightful.

See *Cercis canadensis*
Cercis canadensis 'Forest Pansy'
Cercis canadensis var. texensis 'Oklahoma'

B *I* U   Comic Sans M ▼   •●● 9 points ▼
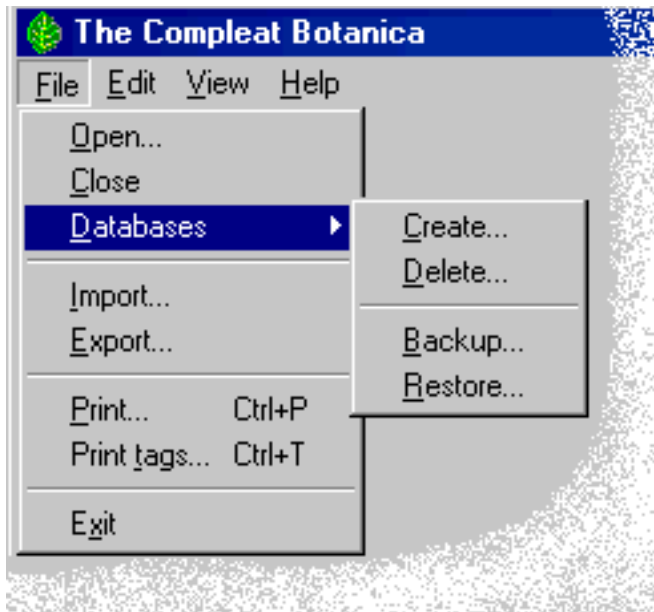
Work with multiple databases to keep special collections separate. All the expected safety features are here -- backup & restore, create & delete, import & export, copy & paste. No limits and no skimpy features.

More about this . . .

"What you see is what you get"

See your reports on screen and make adjustments before wasting printer ink and paper. Try out one of the standard report styles or modify one to create your own

| Sample | Fonts | Borders | Options | Margins |

Scale:

⬆

⬅ (2,1) ➡

⬇

100% ▼

Whole page
Page width
Page height
200%
175%
150%
125%
▶ 100%
90%
80%
70%
60%
50%
40%
30%
20%
10%
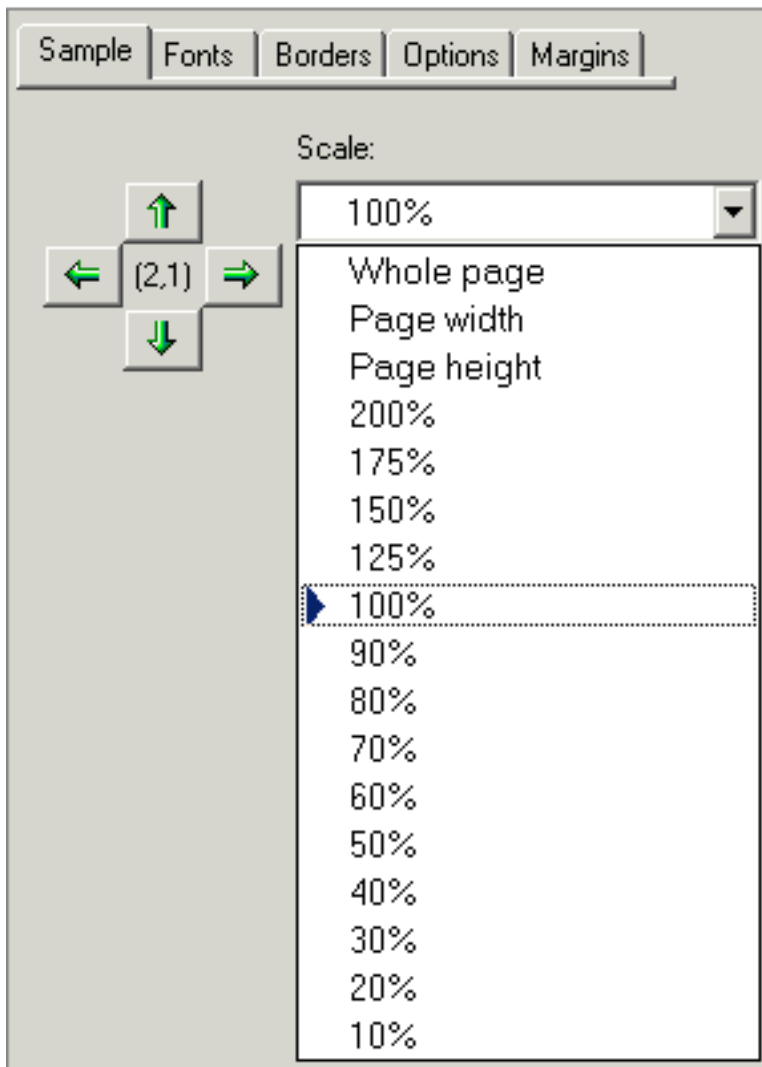
unique image.

Scale the print preview to see more or less of your report at one time.

Scroll around the print preview to see how the entire report will look.

[More about this . . .](#)

16

Checklist

The Checklist of botanical names is a comprehensive hierarchy of the *Plantae* kingdom. Twenty-three taxonomic ranks are present including the most used ones: *regnum, divisio, classis, ordo, familia, tribus, genus, species, varietas*, and cultivar. The author

Regnum
- Animalia
- Fungi
- Plantae
  - Magnoliophyta
    - Magnoliophytina
      - Magnoliopsida
        - Magnoliidae
          - Magnolianae
            - Magnoliales
              - Magnoliineae
                - Magnoliaceae
                  - Magnolioideae
                    - Magnolieae
                      - Magnolia
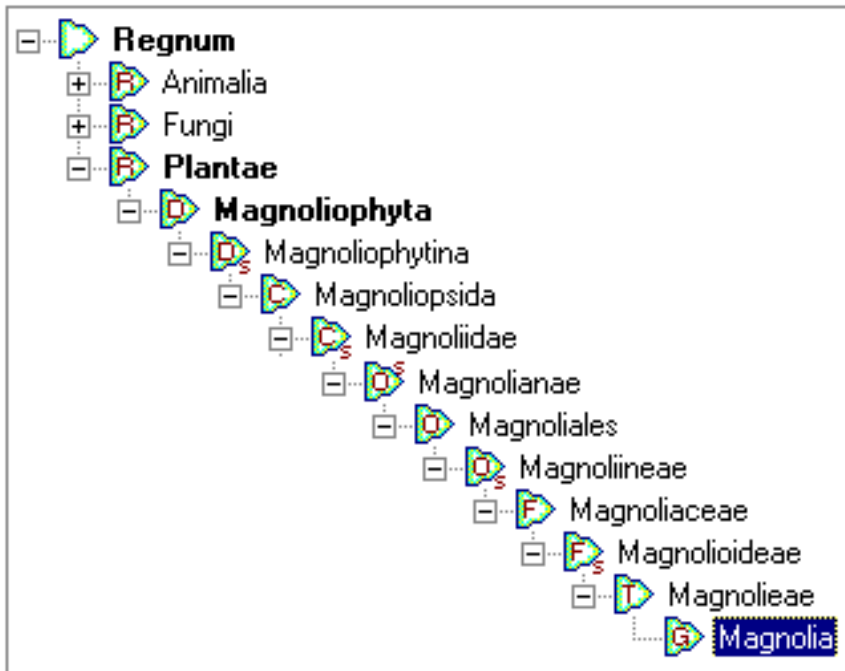
and publication of each valid name is included as required by IAPT rules. Common names are given when known, and the data source cites the origin of the data so that you can check the validity against your own sources.

More about this . . .

Precise Colors

Choose colors with precision using the 884 standard colors of the Royal Horticultural Society's Colour Chart. Recognized the world over as the standard for herbaria the RHS Colour Chart has remained consistent since 1966.

As an alternative, use common color names like almond, blue, cinnamon, daffodil, emerald, and so forth.

More about this . . .

59A	indigo
59B	lavender
59C	heliotrope
59D	crocus
60A	lilac
60B	purple
60C	cherry
60D	violet
61A	fuchsia
61B	aubergine
61C	raspberry
61D	grape
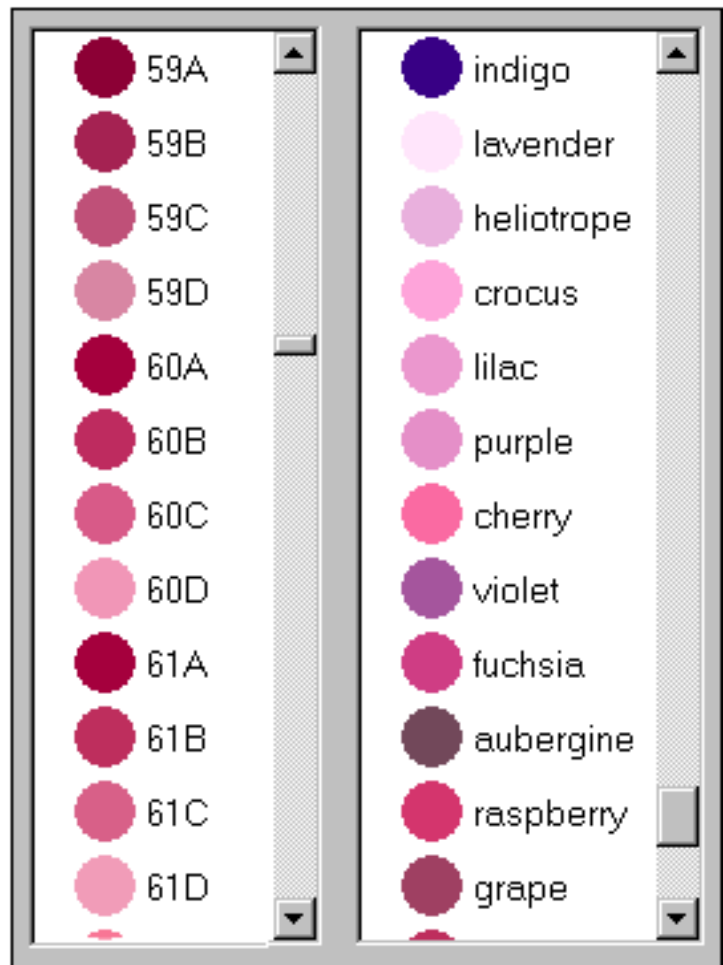
18   Seasonal interest calendar

Build a calendar of seasonal interest when you capture date ranges for planting, harvesting, blooming and other interest.

Bring your calendar alive by recording the colors of leaves, blossoms, accents, bark, dyes, and other interests.

More about this . . .

19   Dimensions

Record the height and spread of each specimen using the multi-purpose dimension tool. Capture precise dimensions or record approximate ranges using the same window. Data display and data entry are intuitive and easy. And you decide whether to use metric or U.S. units.

More about this . . .

20   Finding data within your collection

Looking for something, but can't find it because your collection is too big? Search your collection with ease.

How about showing all the botanical names in the checklist that begin with the letters "Acer". No problem.

More about this . . .

Find

Find what: palmatum

☐ Exact full word match

☐ Case sensitive

Find next

Find prev

Close

Item 62 column 2 (Species): palmatum
Item 93 column 2 (Species): palmatum
Item 225 column 2 (Species): palmatum
Item 293 column 2 (Species): palmatum
No more matches
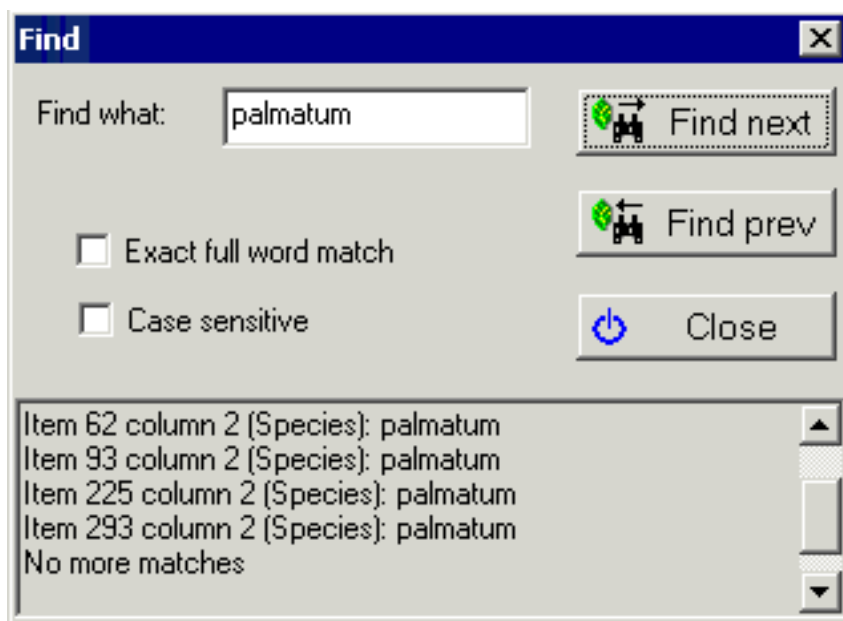
21   Iconic data

Categories use icons and colors to enhance the data. Icons are used consistently on all views, listings, filters, and printed reports making the differences and similarities in each specimen readily apparent. Customize your data groups to have the icons and colors that make sense to you.

More about this . . .

- Fern
- Flower
- Grass
- Groundcover
- Herb
- Shrub
- Tree
- Various
- Vine
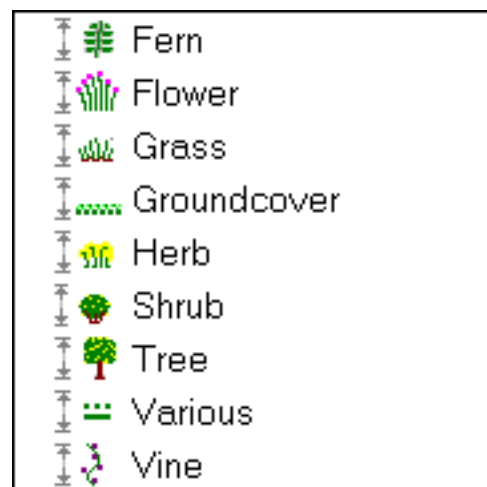
22   Customized look and feel

Two dozen different customized settings, makes this software look and feel just right for the way you work.

Tired of looking at the same display season after season? Change the entire color scheme of the software.

Need a little relief from viewing tiny fonts? Set the specimen list font size to anything between 8 points and 24 points.

More about this . . .

Cultural preferences
- Date display
- Temperatures
- Measurements
- Color values
- Distribution range

Picture options
- Picture directory

Specimen list
- Specimen list color scheme
- Specimen list font size
- Initial record limit

Herbarium options
- Next specimen number
- Specimen number format

Identification options
- Family name endings

Abstract options
- Single template
- Multiple template
- Color scheme
- Font face
- Font size
- Table background
- Table border
- Banner background
- Banner border
- Logo
- Maximum number of abstracts

Display
- Gradient fill

Pathfinder

Use the Pathfinder as an integrated Web browser and on-line help facility. Tips for getting more out of the software, working with your data, and World Wide Web resources, make the Pathfinder a road map for your research and investigations.

More about this . . .

Publishing

Categories:	Choose an HTML template from the list
📁 Abstracts	▶ 🖼 Identification view
📁 Labels and Tags	🖼 Life cycle view
📁 Photo Gallery	🖼 Climate view
▶ 📁 Section Summary	🖼 Garden view
📁 Table of Contents	🖼 Special qualities view
📁 Two Columns	🖼 Adverse factors view
📁 Web Site Indexes	🖼 Herbal medicine view
📁 Wide Rows	🖼 Traditional uses view
	🖼 Cultivation view
	🖼 Nutrition view
	🖼 Biodiversity view
	🖼 Leaf view
	🖼 Flower view
	🖼 Features view

Publish your entire data collection to the Web or to paper pre-press. Use the standard HTML templates and style sheets for fast and easy publishing.

Advanced users can customize their own templates and style sheets for the ultimate in flexibility.

Create hyperlinked table of contents and indexes, labels, tags, placards, reports, and much more.

[More about this . . .](#)

Compleat Botanica - Custom categories

Tour of essential features # 1 [<u>Next</u>]

We all look at the world from our own perspective. Making sense out of what we see and organizing what we've learned requires us to divide our new-found knowledge into groupings that match our world view.

The Compleat Botanica makes it easy for us establish our own classification systems through the use of custom categories. A custom category is a database item that can store our own set of descriptions and classification codes. With this established, we can sort, search, display and print our plant collection to easily highlight the differences and similarities hidden in the data.

There are 80 separate items per specimen that can be categorized this way. In addition, there are approximately 100 other items per specimen that use traditional check boxes and text areas for data entry, as well as special items for word processing-like documents, seasonal calendar ranges, measurement dimensions, and picture viewers.

```
Categories
├── Colors
│   ├── Popular colors
│   └── RHS colors
├── Life cycle
│   ├── Annual cycle
│   ├── Growth form
│   ├── Growth habit
│   ├── Life cycle
│   ├── Life form
│   └── Stature
├── Climate
│   ├── AHS heat zones
│   ├── Biotic communities
│   ├── pH balance
│   ├── Plant community
│   ├── Soil texture
│   ├── Sunset National Garden Book zones
│   ├── Sunshine requirements
│   ├── USDA hardiness zones
│   └── Water requirements
├── Garden
│   ├── Garden location
│   ├── Nursery
│   ├── Price code
│   └── Size at acquisition
└── Special qualities
    └── Best uses
```
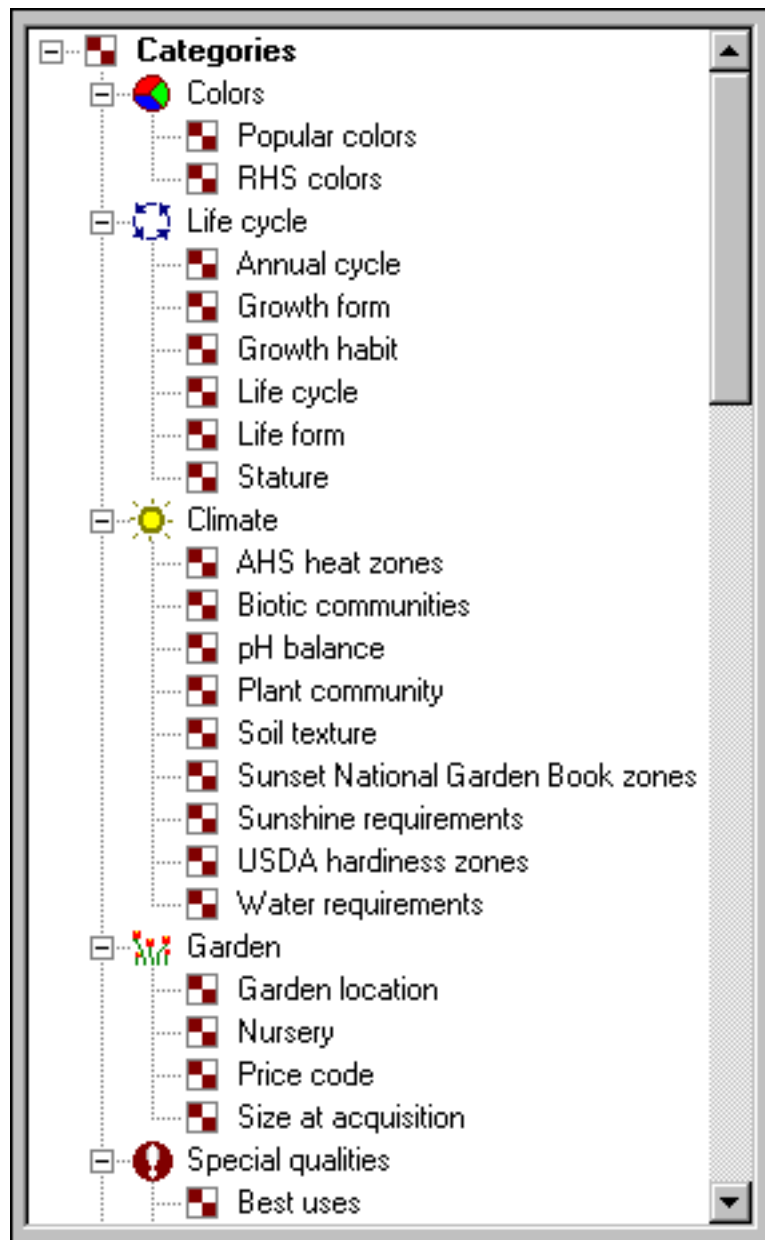
See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

🛈 **Customizing your categories**

🛈 **Filtering by custom category**

🛈 **Why do some categories allow free-form data?**

🛈 **Using codes as short-cuts in the category fields**

🛈 **Setting default values for new specimen records**

Compleat Botanica - Botanical spell-checker

Tour of essential features # 2 [Back] [Next]

Properly spelled botanical names are the key to unlocking the vast collection of data available about the Plant Kingdom.

The Compleat Botanica's spell-checker ensures that names are properly spelled at the time of entry. It works automatically, highlighting misspellings with a red wavy proofreader's mark. The botanical checklist contains a comprehensive collection of family names, genus names, species epithets, subspecies names, and varieties. The botanical checklist contains entries for temperate, tropical, arctic and marine plants.
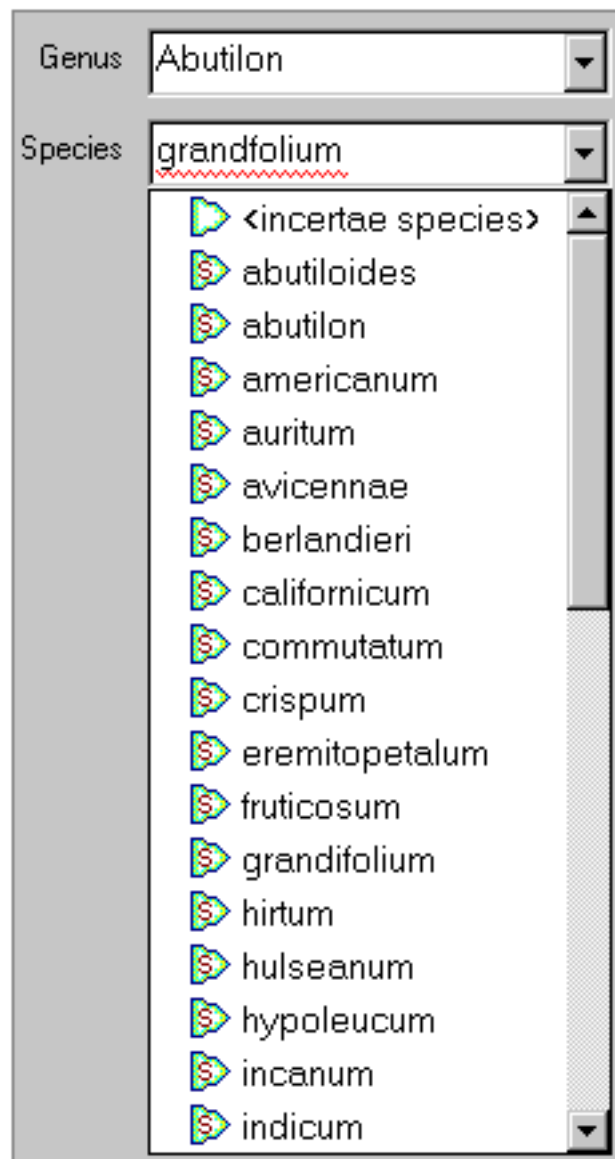
| Genus | Abutilon | ▼ |
| Species | grandfolium | ▼ |

- ▷ <incertae species>
- ⑤ abutiloides
- ⑤ abutilon
- ⑤ americanum
- ⑤ auritum
- ⑤ avicennae
- ⑤ berlandieri
- ⑤ californicum
- ⑤ commutatum
- ⑤ crispum
- ⑤ eremitopetalum
- ⑤ fruticosum
- ⑤ grandifolium
- ⑤ hirtum
- ⑤ hulseanum
- ⑤ hypoleucum
- ⑤ incanum
- ⑤ indicum

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

🛈 [Understanding how the botanical name spell-checker works](#)

Compleat Botanica - Flexible specimen lists

Looking at long lists of data using traditional list boxes and spreadsheets quickly leads to eye fatigue. Trying to find the similarities and differences in text-only listings is a chore.

The success of graphical user interfaces like the Windows operating systems, is based largely on their ability to move beyond Gutenberg's invention of the printing press. But few software applications today take advantage of the platform's capabilities to present data in a truly graphical form.

The Compleat Botanica makes no mistake here. It applies icons and graphical elements consistently throughout its user interface making it easy to know where you are and what you're looking at. The Specimen List is the centerpiece of this approach. Proper formatting of botanical names is where it begins. Embedded graphical elements, like icons, color wheels, checkboxes, measurement indicators, thumbnail pictures, and seasonal calendar tools, breaks free from the centuries old text-only world. Adjustable column widths and placement lets you put related data items adjacent to each other. Alternating bands of subtle background colors lets your eye track the data across the screen. Custom font sizes lets you adjust everything to your comfort level.

▽ Sunshine	⚠ Water
Hedera 'Needlepoint'	
☀ Full sun	Drought tolerant
Codiaeum 'Flamingo'	
☀ Shade	Regular watering
Cineraria 'Stellata Mix'	
☀☀ Partial sun or shade	Regular watering
Zantedeschia aethiopica	
☀☀ Partial sun or shade	Regular watering
Caladium	
☀☀ Partial sun or shade	Regular watering
Narcissus 'Fortune'	
☀ Full sun	Regular watering

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

ℹ [Graphics in printed reports](#)

ℹ [Adjusting the specimen list column width](#)

ℹ [Changing the order of columns in the specimen list](#)

ℹ [Sorting the list of specimen](#)

ℹ [Changing the specimen list font size](#)

Compleat Botanica - Data sharing

One of the great features of today's personal computers is the ability to share data between different software applications. A good set of import/export commands as well as copy and paste can make this happen with ease.

The Compleat Botanica can import data from spreadsheets and databases that use the ubiquitous comma delimited format or the very similar tab delimited format. Data can be exported from The Compleat Botanica for use by word processors, browsers, Web servers, and other applications through the use of text files, HTML files, XML files, and delimited files. All copy and paste commands use the XML (Extensible Markup Language) standard.

```
Exporting Thalictrum aquilegifolium
Exporting Thymus lanuginosus
Exporting Thymus serpyllum 'Pink Chintz'
Exporting Thymus vulgaris 'Argenteus'
Exporting Tulbaghia violacea
Exporting Tulbaghia violaceae 'Silver Lace'
Exporting Verbena bonariensis
Exporting Verbena canadensis
Exporting Veronica peduncularis 'Georgia Blue'
Exporting Viburnum opulus 'Sterile'
Exporting Viburnum plicatum var. tomentosum 'Shasta'
Exporting Vitex agnus-castus
Exporting Westringia fruticosa 'Morning Light'
Exporting Wisteria floribunda var. rosea 'Honbeni'
Exporting Wisteria sinensis 'Caroline'
Exporting x Chitalpa tashkentensis 'Pink Dawn'
Exporting Zantedeschia 'Aztec Gold'
Exporting Zantedeschia rehmannii 'Dusty Pink'
Exporting Zanthoxylum piperitium

Writing C:\ImportExport\Specimen.xml
```

See these Pathfinder documents for more about importing:

ⓘ **Copying large quantities of data into your database: the Import command**

ⓘ **Overview of how to import specimen**

ⓘ **Steps for importing specimen from delimited files**

See these Pathfinder documents for more about exporting:

ⓘ **Getting data out of your database: the Export command**

ⓘ **Exporting Specimen records**

See these Pathfinder documents for more about XML:

ⓘ **XML viewers**

ⓘ **Steps for importing specimen from XML files**

Compleat Botanica - Pictures

With the affordability and convenience of digital cameras, it's become popular to capture snapshots of our gardens in bloom, our horticultural specimen, or even the bounty of our fruit and vegetable crops.

Organizing your photographs is a common theme with today's software. Each Compleat Botanica specimen record can point to a digital photograph of the plant. The thumbnail image display makes it easy to peruse your collection.
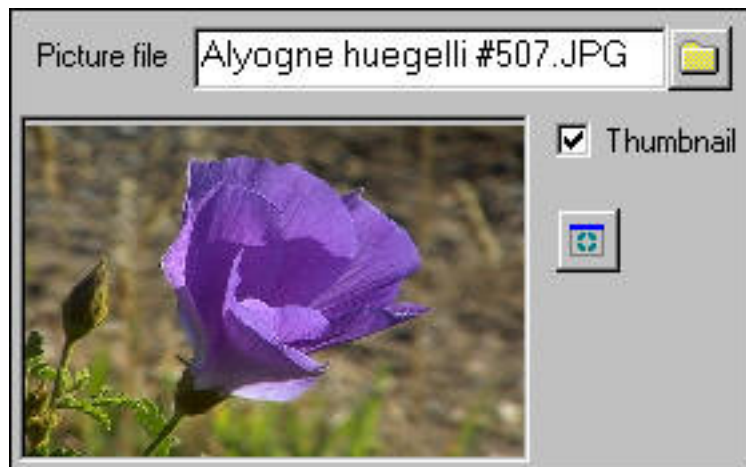
See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

Overview of picture files

Using the picture previewer

Recommendations for your picture files

Compleat Botanica - Local customizations

The days of measuring with cubits are long gone, but that doesn't mean we've completely eliminated the Babel surrounding measurement units.

The Compleat Botanica allows data to be recorded, displayed, filtered, and sorted using both the metric system and the U.S. Customary system. This applies to linear dimensions (metre/centimetre or feet/inch), units of volume (litre or gallon), and temperature scales (Celsius or Fahrenheit). Date formatting options allow for all common variants of month, day and year.

The botanical checklist contains entries for plants from around the world.
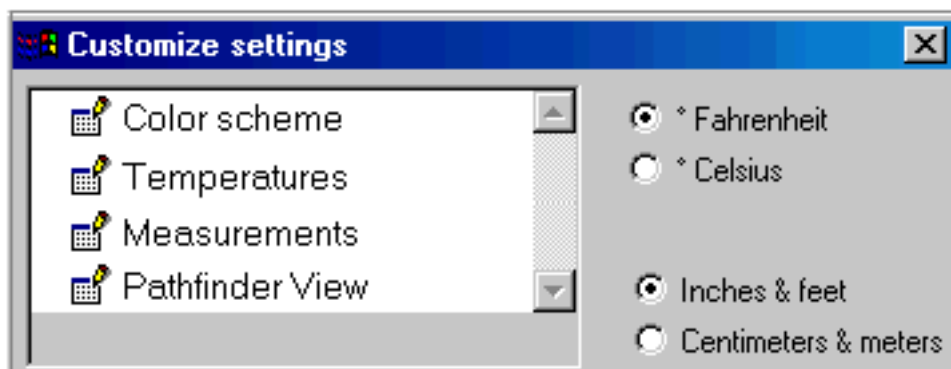
See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

   Switching between Fahrenheit and Celsius scales

   Switching between U.S. and metric units

   Changing the display format for dates

Compleat Botanica - Professional report styling

Preparing an organized and readable listing from your database is a common expectation of high quality software.

The Compleat Botanica's reporting features enable you to produce printed listings that make your collection shine. Complete control of every aspect of the report building process means that you can create a uniquely crafted look from fancy to plain, from stylish to conservative. Font faces, sizes, colors, and orientation can be different for title, headers, footer, margins, and data areas. Border sizes, styles, and colors can be applied to every section of the report. Background colors can be subtle to bold. And alternating bands of data can enhance the overall readability of every page.

The Compleat Botanica

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar
Scilla siberica 'Spring Beauty'				
	Scilla	siberica		Spring Beauty
Ginkgo biloba 'Autumn Gold'				
	Ginkgo	biloba		Autumn Gold
Cotinus coggygria var. *purpureus*				
	Cotinus	coggygria	purpureus	
Anemone coronaria 'The Governor'				
	Anemone	coronaria		The Governor

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:
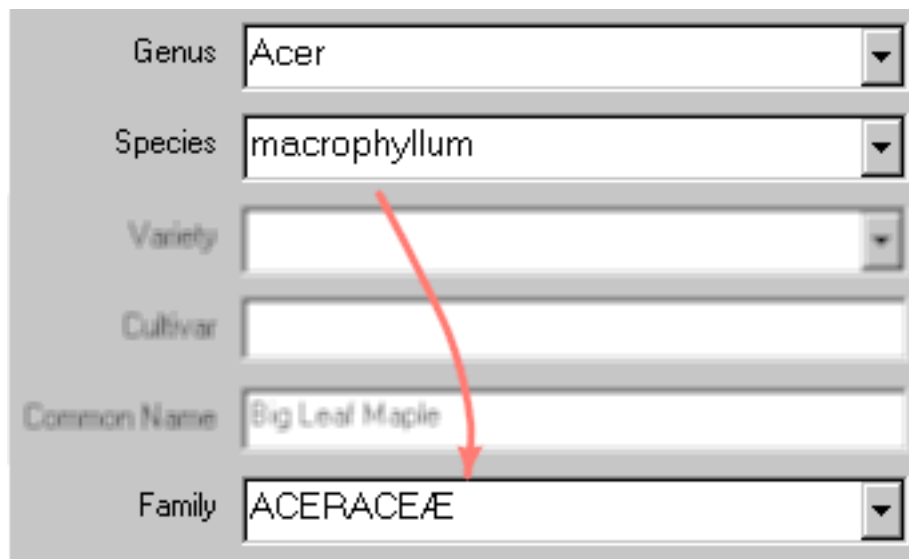
Graphics in printed reports

Compleat Botanica - Family names

Tour of essential features # 8 [Back] [Next]

We're all curious about plants and how they're named. One of the delightful things about visiting a botanical garden is that everything is labeled with the botanical name and the family it belongs to. Wouldn't it be great to have family names at our fingertips?

The Compleat Botanica puts family names within our grasp. Every entry in the botanical checklist is annotated with its family name. As new entries are added to the personal collection of data, family names are automatically looked up and inserted into the record. And plant labels include the family name, turning everyone's plant collection into a botanical demonstration garden.

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

All about family names

Compleat Botanica **- Filters**

Tour of essential features # 9 [Back] [Next]

When your collection of data reaches a certain size, it's essential to have a way to see just part of it. Zooming in on just those items of interest, gives you a focused view-port of your collection.

The Compleat Botanica's filtering capability is intuitive to use. By choosing which columns to include, you build a specialized view of your data. By choosing which rows to include or exclude you narrow your view to a subset of that data. Put together, you've got a sorted table of just the information you want. All of this is accomplished with a point-and-click approach that eliminates any complicated Boolean logic. Multiple filters give you the ability to switch your view-port with ease.
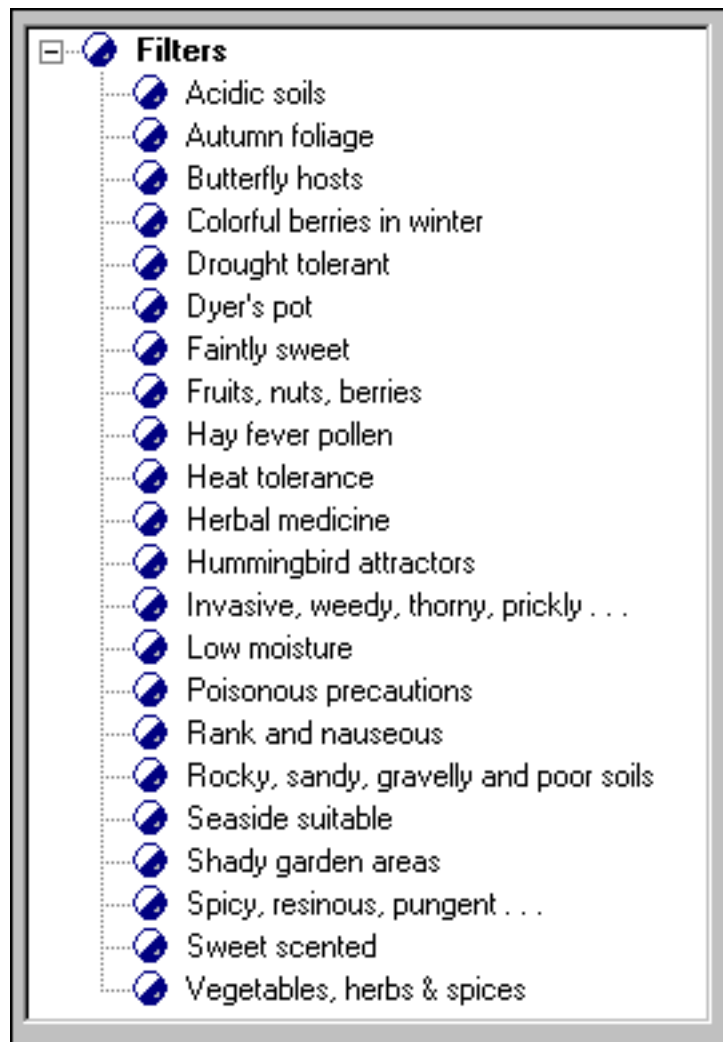
Filters

- Acidic soils
- Autumn foliage
- Butterfly hosts
- Colorful berries in winter
- Drought tolerant
- Dyer's pot
- Faintly sweet
- Fruits, nuts, berries
- Hay fever pollen
- Heat tolerance
- Herbal medicine
- Hummingbird attractors
- Invasive, weedy, thorny, prickly . . .
- Low moisture
- Poisonous precautions
- Rank and nauseous
- Rocky, sandy, gravelly and poor soils
- Seaside suitable
- Shady garden areas
- Spicy, resinous, pungent . . .
- Sweet scented
- Vegetables, herbs & spices

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

All about filters

Specifying what data to include and exclude

Choosing which columns to show

Compleat Botanica - Botanical name display

The rules for formatting botanical names have been agreed upon by the International Association for Plant Taxonomy (IAPT).

The Compleat Botanica adheres to the official standard for botanical names throughout the software. Proper capitalization rules, font styling rules, quotation of cultivars, and abbreviations for "variety" and "subspecies" are consistently applied on all displays and all printed reports and labels.

Cercis canadensis var. texensis 'Oklahoma'

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

What are the rules for proper formatting of botanical names?

Inter-generic hybrids

Checklist of botanical names used in The Compleat Botanica

# *Compleat Botanica* - Multiple views

Tour of essential features # 11 [Back] [Next]

Large software applications need to present so much data to their users that it's just impossible to see everything at-a-glance. Unfortunately, presenting the data in separate windows can often leave the user confused. This common problem has several good solutions.

The Compleat Botanica uses the popular side-by-side views first used widely with Microsoft's Windows Explorer. The software's main window is split into two panes: the left-hand pane shows a listing of all filtered records, while the right hand pane shows the details of a single record. By using the selected record in the left-hand pane as an anchor point, multiple detailed views in the right hand pane are easily shown without disorientation. Moving around the software and getting to your data is never confusing.
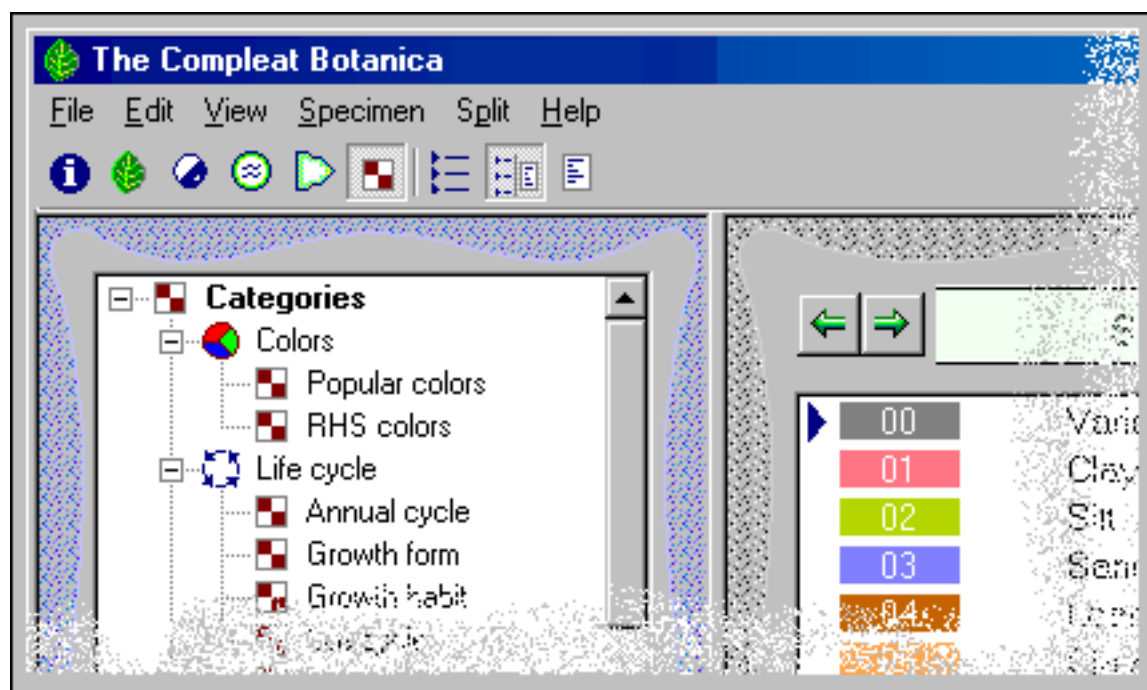
See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

Compleat Botanica - Plant tags / plant labels / plant markers

Every good botanical software provides a way to label your plants.

The Compleat Botanica can print labels in a variety of font styles, sizes and colors on plain paper stock or on you favorite printer sheet-feed sticky label stock. The sophisticated label generator allows you to include any of your specimen data on any size label.
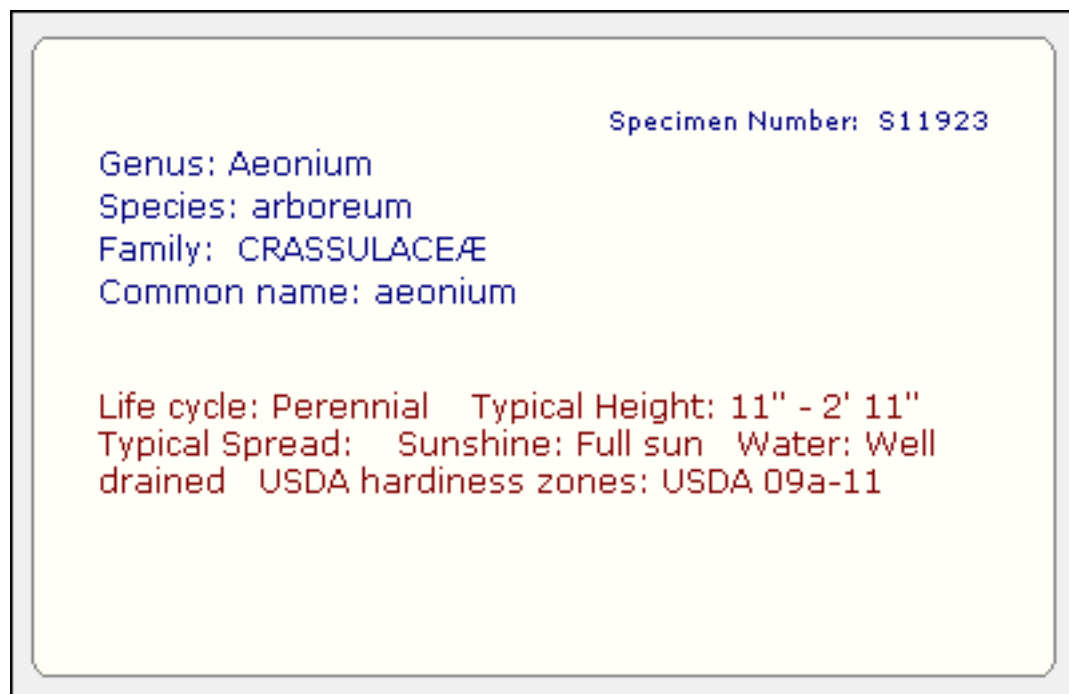
Specimen Number: S11923

Genus: Aeonium
Species: arboreum
Family: CRASSULACEÆ
Common name: aeonium

Life cycle: Perennial   Typical Height: 11" - 2' 11"
Typical Spread: Sunshine: Full sun   Water: Well
drained   USDA hardiness zones: USDA 09a-11

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

Choosing a label format

Compleat Botanica - Rich-text notes

It seems like there are never enough fields in a database to capture all of the diversity and special exceptions that we run into on real projects.

The Compleat Botanica has five areas that allow for a more complete description of your data. Each of these document areas feature popular word processing-like features such as font faces, font sizes, font colors, etc. In addition, hypertext linking allows you to easily make connections from one specimen to another -- very useful for propagation studies.

Nature notes

Cercis occidentalis

This genus is made up of small deciduous trees or shrubs. Their profuse clusters of pea-like flowers line the bare branches in spring.
The name *Redbud* comes from the neat pointed buds deeper in color than the flowers. The heart-shaped leaves are distinctive and delightful.

See Cercis canadensis
Cercis canadensis 'Forest Pansy'
Cercis canadensis var. texensis 'Oklahoma'

B *I* U   Comic Sans M   9 points

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

What's possible with the notes area

Adding cross references to specimen in the notes area

Compleat Botanica **- Multiple databases**

Sometimes you may need to segregate your data into more than one database.

The Compleat Botanica's database organization tools provide simple access to creating, deleting, backing up, and restoring databases. Switching from one database to another is as simple as open and close. For easy transferal of records between two databases on the same computer, simply open two copies of The Compleat Botanica and use copy and paste.
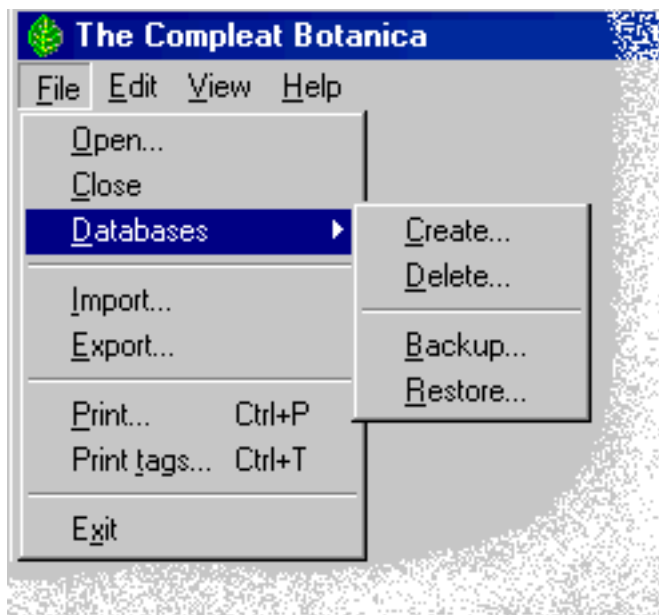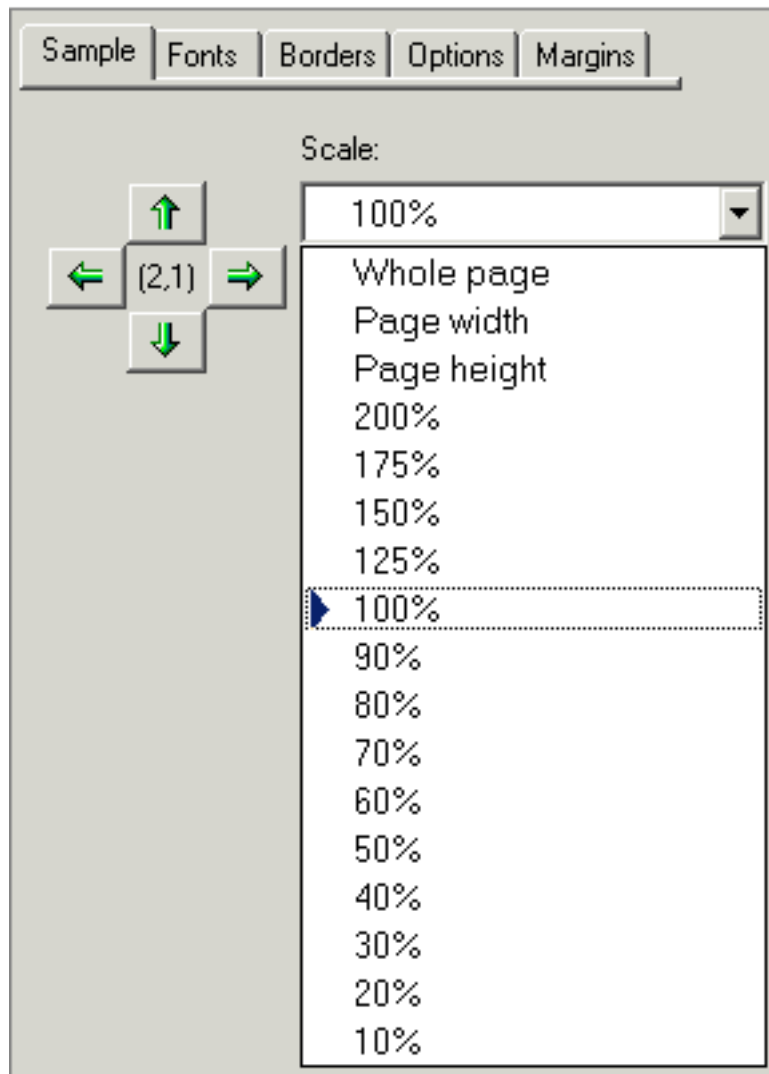
See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

Creating a new database

Compleat Botanica - WYSIWYG previews

Tour of essential features # 15 [Back] [Next]

Previewing your reports on screen before printing them saves time and prevents surprises.

The Compleat Botanica's report preview feature allows you to see every aspect of your report before sending it to the printer. The "what you see is what you get" preview means that you can confidently know how many columns of data will fit on each page. It means you can make a better choice about landscape and portrait page orientations. It means you can make adjustments to column widths, font sizes, and margins to make everything fit perfectly.   And it means you can confidently reprint portions of a lengthy report without starting all over.

Sample | Fonts | Borders | Options | Margins

Scale:

100%

(2,1)

Whole page
Page width
Page height
200%
175%
150%
125%
▶ 100%
90%
80%
70%
60%
50%
40%
30%
20%
10%

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

WYSIWYG print preview

Compleat Botanica - Checklist of botanical names

One measure of botanical software's comprehensiveness is the size of its name list.

The Compleat Botanica uses a checklist of botanical names which span twenty-three taxonomic ranks from *regnum* to *varietas* (kingdom to variety) containing approximately 105,000 entries. This checklist is used by the botanical name spell-checker and the automatic family name lookup feature. Each name is properly ranked (family, genus, species, variety, etc.) and ordered within the taxonomic tree. Common names, author names, publication, and source of reference are provided for most entries.
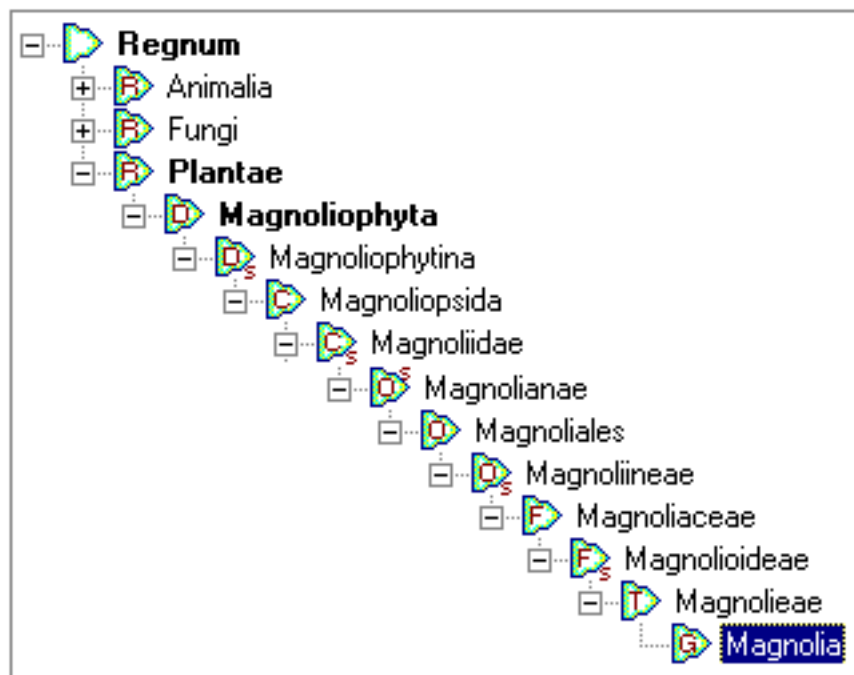
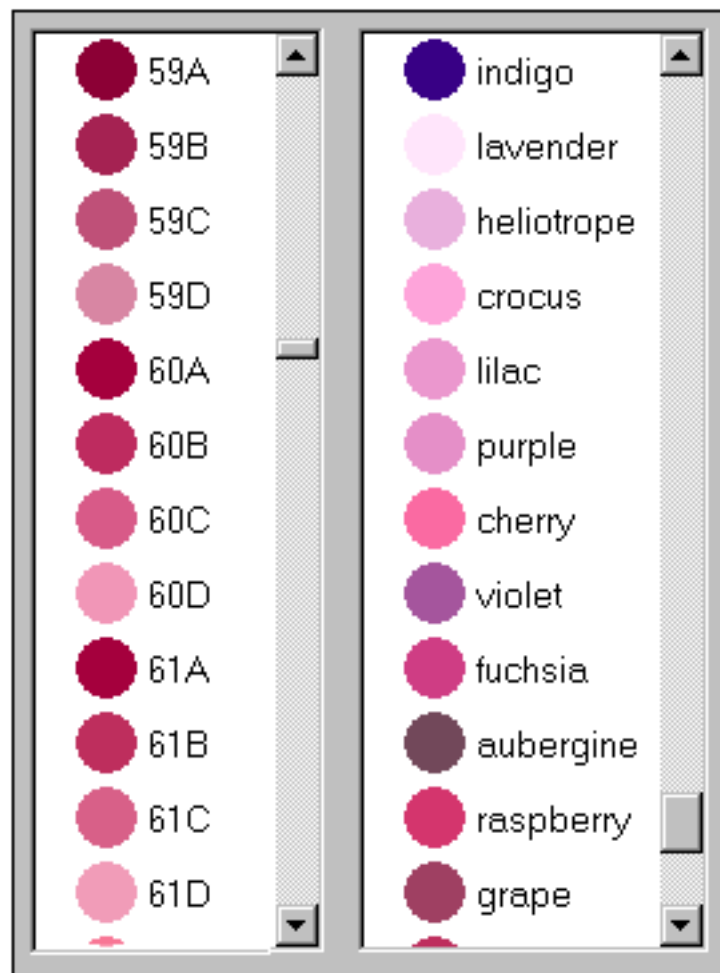See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

Compleat Botanica - Precise colors

There are several different methods to objectively assign colors to plant parts. The one system that has endured for botanists and horticulturists is the RHS Colour Chart.

The Compleat Botanica uses the 884 colors of the Royal Horticultural Society's Colour Chart to record the colors of plant parts. Even if you're not familiar with the system, its logical layout of hues and saturations can quickly be learned -- the drop-down lists display the colors on-screen for easy point-and-click assignment.

When filtering your records, the 884 colors are grouped into 29 related colors, (such as yellow, yellow-orange, orange, orange-red, red, red-purple, etc.) that make it easy to find and group specimen records by color.

As an alternative to using this formal system, you can also use popular color names. Switching from RHS colors to popular color names is accomplished using the **Customize settings . . .** area.

59A	indigo	
59B	lavender	
59C	heliotrope	
59D	crocus	
60A	lilac	
60B	purple	
60C	cherry	
60D	violet	
61A	fuchsia	
61B	aubergine	
61C	raspberry	
61D	grape	

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

The RHS colour chart numbering system
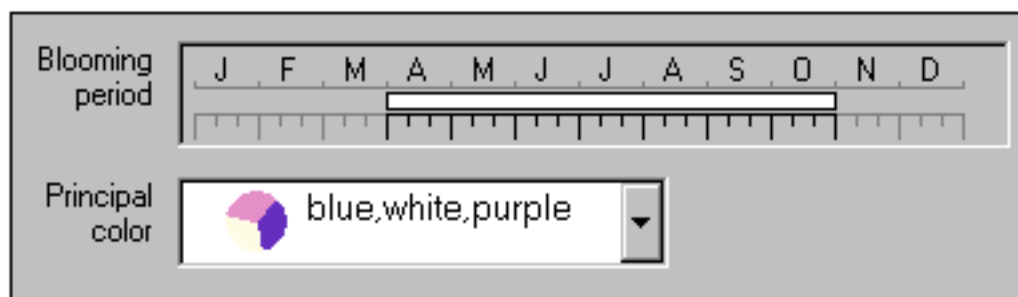
Filtering color columns

Colors used in The Compleat Botanica

Compleat Botanica - Seasonal interest calendar

Assembling enough data to prepare a good calendar of seasonal interest presents a problem: do you describe a season using using words like "early-spring", or do you attempt to force-fit a season onto a calendar.

The Compleat Botanica uses a special date-range tool which gives you an at-a-glance look at each specimen's blooming season, planting and harvesting season, hay-fever season, and season of special interest. This date-range tool uses a simple click-and-drag operation for specifying starting and ending dates for the season. The same tool is used when you want to filter your collection to only include records for a particular date range. Preparing lists of "What's in bloom" or "Early October autumn-color" or "Berries in December" are simple examples of what's possible.

Blooming period   J   F   M   A   M   J   J   A   S   O   N   D

Principal color   blue,white,purple

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

Entering date ranges for bloom, harvest, hay fever and other interest

Filtering by date range

Compleat Botanica - Measurements

Keeping plants well spaced is one of the most important rules for achieving optimal health and beauty. But remembering the mature height and spread of so many different species is impossible -- keeping track of this essential information is one thing every good botanical software does.

The Compleat Botanica displays height and spread using a special tool that visually shows the data on a horizontal bar graph. Using a simple click and drag operation, you can specify a range of mature heights and widths. This same tool is used when filtering your collection to show only plants whose dimensions meet your criteria. Dimensions can be specified in either U.S. Customary units or metric units.
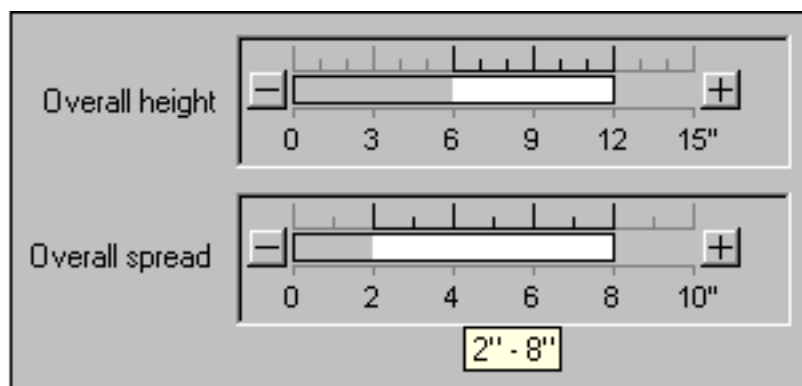
See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

🛈 Using the height and spread manipulator

🛈 Filtering by height and spread

🛈 Switching between U.S. and metric units

Compleat Botanica - Finding data within your collection

Even with good filtering and sorting capabilities, it's hard to find something when you can only remember a name, a phrase, or part of a word.

The Compleat Botanica has a **Find** command which allows you to scan your specimen records for a word or a part of a word. This find command looks at each column of data in your database and locates the next record matching your keyword. Using the Find command on the sample database with the word "California" for example, finds the common names "California allspice", California poppy", and the nursery "California Flora Nursery".

A similar Find command allows you to scan the botanical name checklist for entries starting with an alphabetic string. For example, the search for "californica" will consecutively return species, subspecies, and varieties of that name.

Compleat Botanica - Iconic data
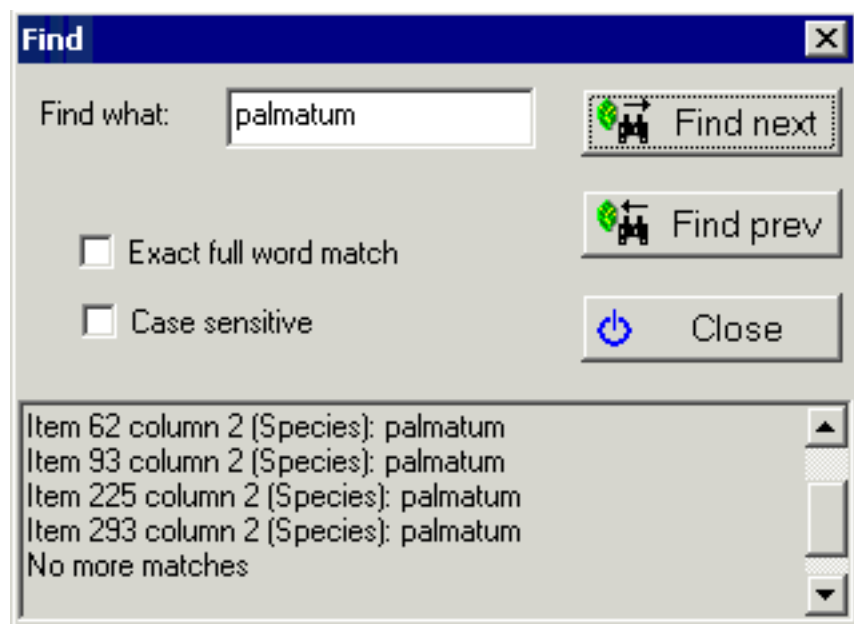
Tour of essential features # 21 [Back] [Next]

Well written commentary is the cornerstone of every good documentary effort. But so much of what we record in our diaries, journals, notebooks, and databases is subject to repetitive entries describing what we've learned. In our paper-based efforts, this gives rise to common abbreviations: shortened words for locations, botanical terms, growing conditions, and other technical jargon. In today's graphic-rich computer centric world, abbreviations become icons.

The Compleat Botanica exploits the graphical power of today's computers and the high-resolution output of color printers, to eliminate abbreviations, and at the same time to make our collection of data more readable. Because graphics and icons are consistently shown throughout the software, a new lexicon can arise which replaces codes and abbreviations with iconic symbols.
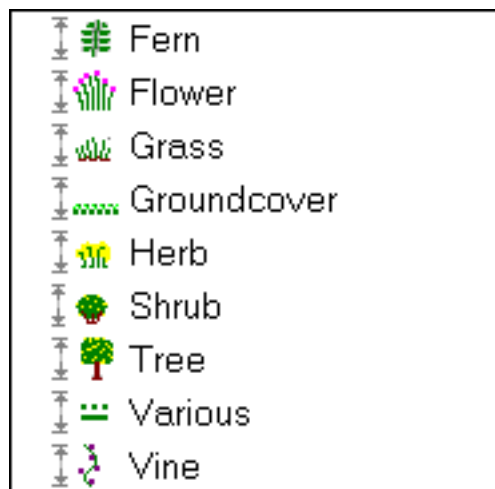
See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

Getting the most out of the Specimen List

Tour of essential features # 22 [<u>Back</u>] [<u>Next</u>]

We all have different preferences and needs when it comes to readability.

The Compleat Botanica accommodates users preferences by allowing the specimen list font to be adjusted from 8 to 24 points. Different color schemes provide customized settings for background and font colors.

The Abstract View, which provides a convenient place for the consolidation of everything recorded about a plant, can be customized in layout, fonts, colors, backgrounds, borders, and even company logos.
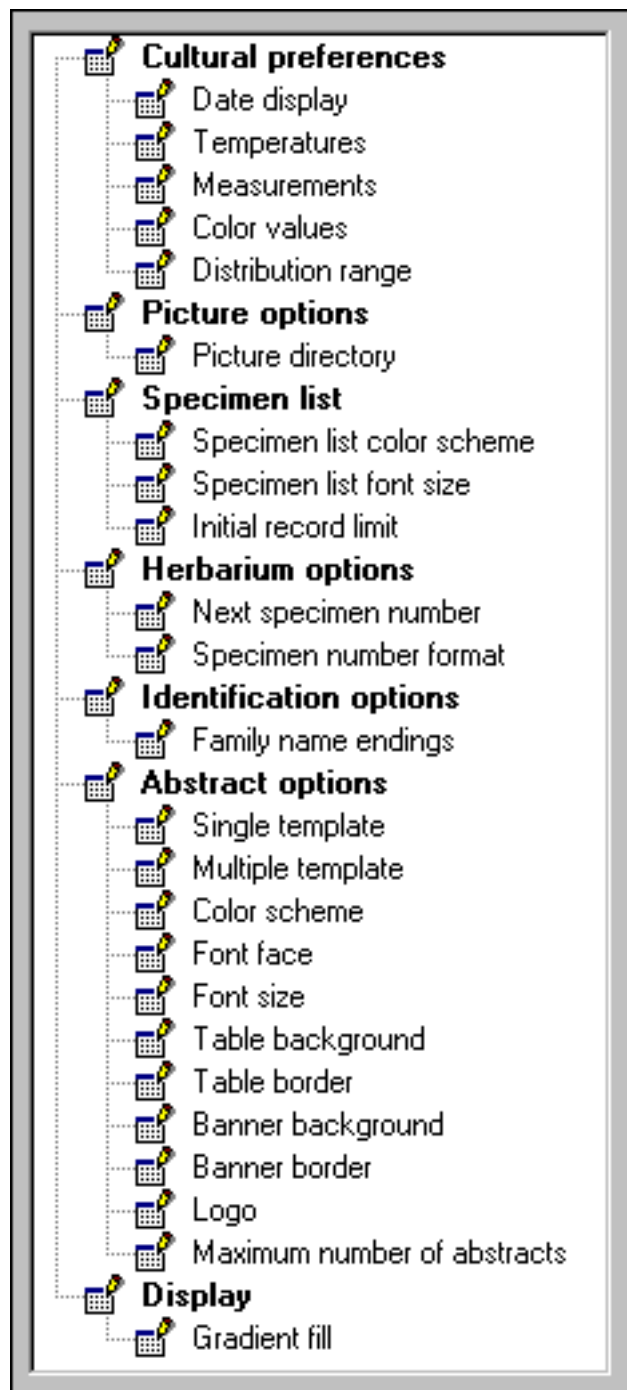
- **Cultural preferences**
  - Date display
  - Temperatures
  - Measurements
  - Color values
  - Distribution range
- **Picture options**
  - Picture directory
- **Specimen list**
  - Specimen list color scheme
  - Specimen list font size
  - Initial record limit
- **Herbarium options**
  - Next specimen number
  - Specimen number format
- **Identification options**
  - Family name endings
- **Abstract options**
  - Single template
  - Multiple template
  - Color scheme
  - Font face
  - Font size
  - Table background
  - Table border
  - Banner background
  - Banner border
  - Logo
  - Maximum number of abstracts
- **Display**
  - Gradient fill

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

🛈 [Customizing the appearance of the software](#)

🛈 [Changing the window color scheme](#)

🛈 [Changing the specimen list font size](#)

Compleat Botanica - Pathfinder

Tour of essential features # 23 [Back] [Next]

Today's software is so approachable and intuitive to use that we can learn to use a new application just by poking around and looking at a few samples. But a good set of documents can help both the novice and the expert user to learn more about the advanced features of a software product.

The Compleat Botanica uses a miniature integrated Web browser to let you navigate through the online help system. This Pathfinder tool features all the rich presentation features we've come to expect with HTML documents. But perhaps the best part of this is that hyperlinks can access documents located on the Internet just as easily as documents on your local computer. In addition to the software-specific documents, the Pathfinder has links to hundreds of useful World Wide Web sites.
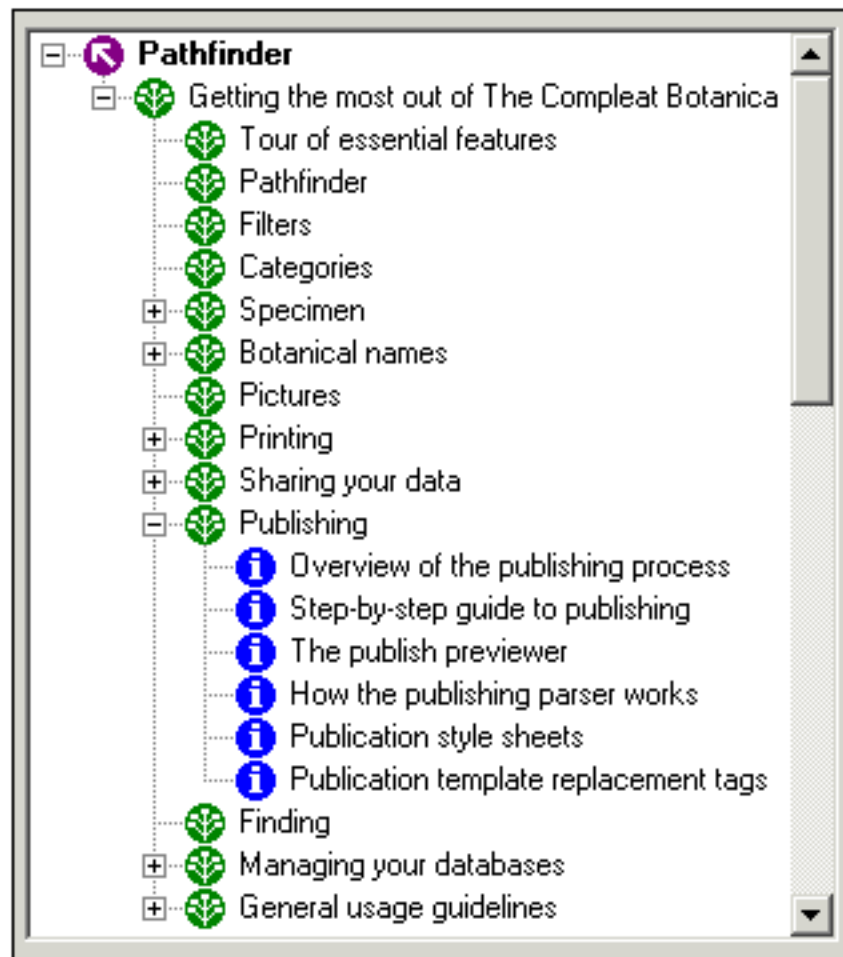
Here are the top-level indexes for the Pathfinder:

Using the software

World Wide Web resources

Troubleshooting problems

Citations and references

Compleat Botanica - Publishing

Tour of essential features # 24 [Back]

Publishing your data allows you to share your collection with a wider audience.

The Compleat Botanica's publishing feature makes your data accessible to your club membership, your customers or your readers. With standard HTML templates and style sheets you can have a readable and approachable set of Web-ready pages without fuss. For the advanced users, customized templates and style sheets are limited only by your imagination.

Publishing is great for creating tags and labels, placards highlighting specimen, hyper-linked indexes and table of contents, detailed reports with or without graphics, and more.
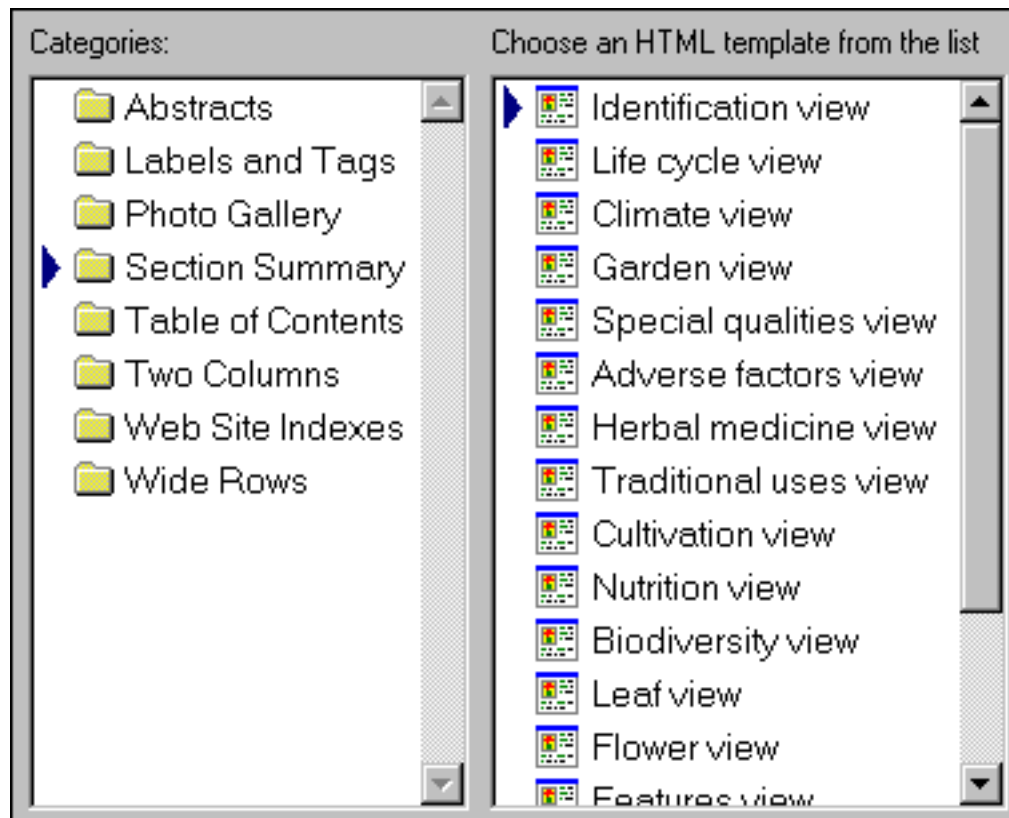
Categories:	Choose an HTML template from the list
📁 Abstracts	▶ Identification view
📁 Labels and Tags	Life cycle view
📁 Photo Gallery	Climate view
▶ 📁 Section Summary	Garden view
📁 Table of Contents	Special qualities view
📁 Two Columns	Adverse factors view
📁 Web Site Indexes	Herbal medicine view
📁 Wide Rows	Traditional uses view
	Cultivation view
	Nutrition view
	Biodiversity view
	Leaf view
	Flower view
	Features view

See these Pathfinder documents for more about this:

🛈 [Overview of the publishing process](#)

🛈 [Step-by-step guide to publishing](#)

🛈 [The publish previewer](#)

Compleat Botanica - How do I . . .

Index of "how to" articles

ℹ **How to find answers using Pathfinder**	You can use the Pathfinder facility to find answers to questions about the software.	
ℹ **How to create new specimen records**	There are three ways to add new specimen records to your collection.	
ℹ **How to add a new category**	Here's a step-by-step guide to adding a new category.	
ℹ **How to create a filter**	Here's a step-by-step procedure for creating a new filter.	
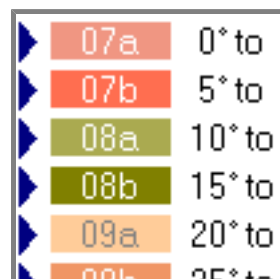
ℹ️ **How to find plant names**	The software provides several ways to search for names, each useful for different searching problems.	
ℹ️ **How do I import data from other applications?**	If you have a large number of specimen records that you want to add to your database, you can use the Import command.	
ℹ️ **How do I export data from the software?**	Sometimes you'll want to share the specimen data that you've collected with others in your professional circle.	
ℹ️ **How do I create a report layout?**	Report layouts define how a specimen listing will look when printed. A report layout specifies font faces, point sizes, and colors to be used with your printout.	
ℹ️ **How do I publish to the Web?**	The publish tool combines the best parts of the report generator, the export facility, and the print tags feature into one powerful tool which allows you to create HTML documents.	
ℹ️ **How do I create, delete, backup, and restore databases?**	Managing your databases can be done from within The Compleat Botanica or using the Data Manager utility.	
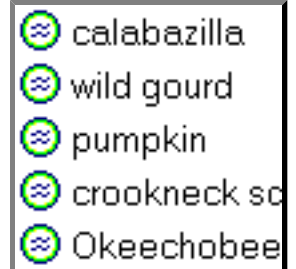
How do I customize the Abstract View?

You can change the way the abstract is formatted by using the Customize settings . . . area.

Abstract options

- Single template
- Multiple template
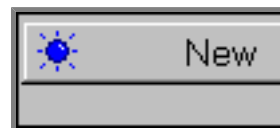- Color scheme
- Font face
- Font size

***Compleat Botanica* - How to find answers using Pathfinder**

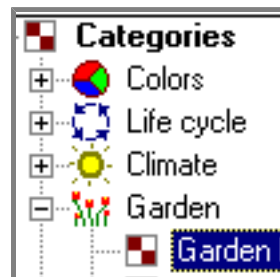You can use the Pathfinder facility to find answers to questions about the software. There are two basic approaches to using Pathfinder. If you simply want to browse through the available topics, use the tree-like table of contents in the left-hand window pane. Double-clicking any item with the special index symbol ⊕ will display a list of related informational documents -- these are the items prefaced with the blue info symbol ⓘ.

If you prefer to search for answers using the familiar search engine approach, you can type short phrases, questions, or keywords into the search box. Documents containing one or more of your keywords are listed in the results page inside the Pathfinder window.
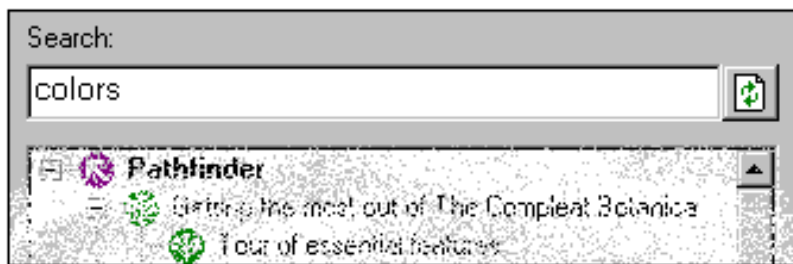
When perusing the search results page remember that documents whose title or description closely match your question will be listed towards the top of the result list. Documents which contain one or more of your keywords anywhere else on the page will round out the remaining portion of the result list.

Search results for
colors.

Found 42 matches.

🚫 See also: [colorscheme](#) [color](#) [colorado](#) [colornat](#)

1 - 20 [21 - 40](#)

Ranking	Document description
1 coverage 100% emphasis 6 content 9	ℹ️ **Precise colors** The Compleat Botanica uses the 884 colors of the Royal Horticultural Society's Colour Chart to record principal and accent colors of blossoms and specimen colors. *keywords:* software precise RHS colour Chart Royal Horticultural Society hues saturation botanists horticulturists blossoms leaf colors specimen record Colour
2 coverage 100% emphasis 1 content 5	ℹ️ **Colors used in The Compleat Botanica** The beauty in plants is often brought to its peak by color. *keywords:* citations color Maerz and Paul Royal Horticultural Society RHS US National Bureau of Standards NBS

To learn more about the Pathfinder facility, see the [How to use the Pathfinder facility](#).

Compleat Botanica - How to create new specimen records

There are three ways to add new specimen records to your collection.

▷	The first way is to find the appropriate botanical name in the taxonomic checklist and press the create new specimen button located in the bottom right-hand corner of the view. This works best if you know the true botanical name.	
◉	The second way is to search the vernacular list for the common name of the plant, then press the create new specimen button. This works well if you're unsure of the proper spelling of the botanical name or if you only know the common name.	
🍃	The third way is to press the new specimen button at the bottom of the specimen list. This works best when you know the full botanical name of the specimen to be added.	New Propagate ✕ New specimen

All three methods will switch to the Identification View where you can complete the proper identification of the

plant.

For plants with common names, one or more common names will automatically appear in the common name list.

For well-defined botanical names, the family is automatically looked up and filled in.

Once the specimen is properly identified, you can proceed to any of the other data entry views to add supportive data about the new specimen. Which data you collect is of course dependant upon your interests and goals.

Compleat Botanica - How to add a new category

Adding a new category to the list of pre-installed categories is simple. You'll most likely want to do this with some of the more flexible items such as Garden location and Nursery. These are typically the types of items that tend to be the most user-specific. By contrast, items such as USDA Zones, soil pH, and Sunset climate zones tend to be rarely, if ever, supplemented.

1　Begin by switching to the Category View.
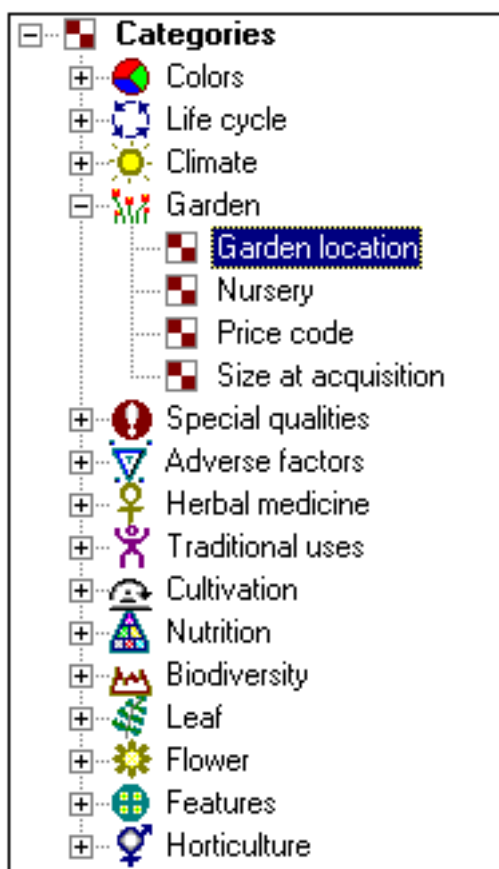
2

Next use the left-hand portion of the category view to select the type of category to be added.

The snapshot shows the `Garden location` selected.
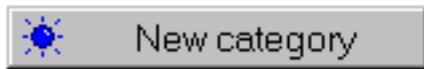
New category

Then press the New category button.

Change the `Full text` to your own description, choose a suitable icon (or color), and supply a `Code` to be used as a shortcut during data entry.

TBD   <Enter your garden locations here>
▶ [   ] ?   New Garden

| New category | Delete category |

Color/Icon

▶ [   ]

More ...

Code |?

Full text |New Garden

☐ Default category for new specimen

Group

Translation

Definition

Compleat Botanica - How to create a filter

Filters allow you to see a partial listing of the specimen in your collection. This is useful when you have a large collection; but even if you have a small collection filters are still useful for choosing which columns to show in the list.

Here's a step-by-step procedure for creating a new filter. In this example we'll create a filter to show all evergreen shrubs and trees suitable for planting in climates with annual average winter lows of -10 degrees Fahrenheit.

1 Begin by switching to the Filter View.

2 Then press the **New** button located in the lower left-hand corner of the view to create an empty filter definition.

3 Now type a suitable name for the filter.
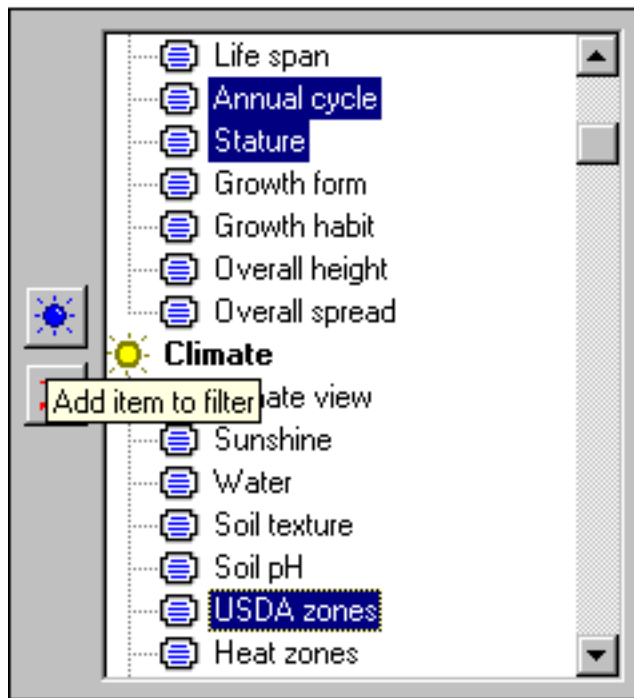
4

Using the right-hand portion of the Filter View select the three columns **Annual cycle**, **Stature**, and **USDA zones**.

Then press the blue `Add item to filter` button.
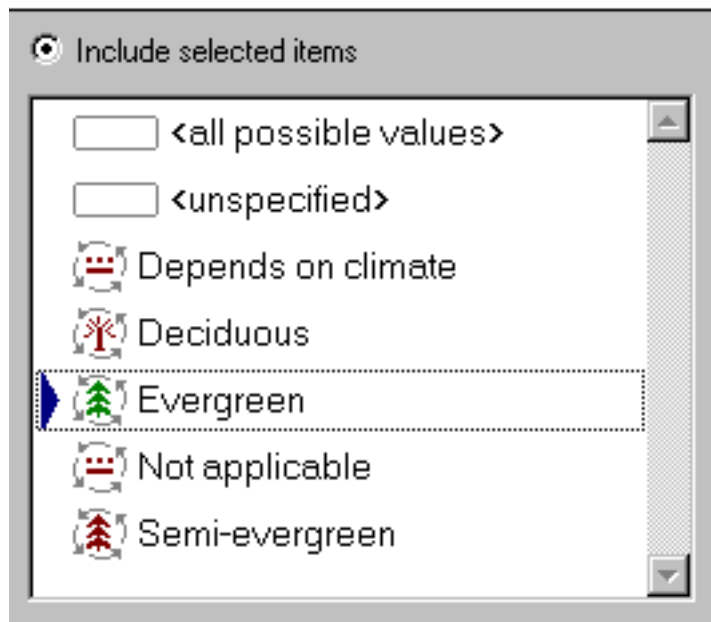
5

In the lower portion of the view, choose an **Annual cycle** of "Evergreen" . . .

Include selected items

☐ <all possible values>
☐ <unspecified>
▯ ⠿ Various
▯ Grass
▯ Groundcover
▯ Fern
▯ Flower
▯ Herb
▶ Shrub
▶ Tree
▯ Vine
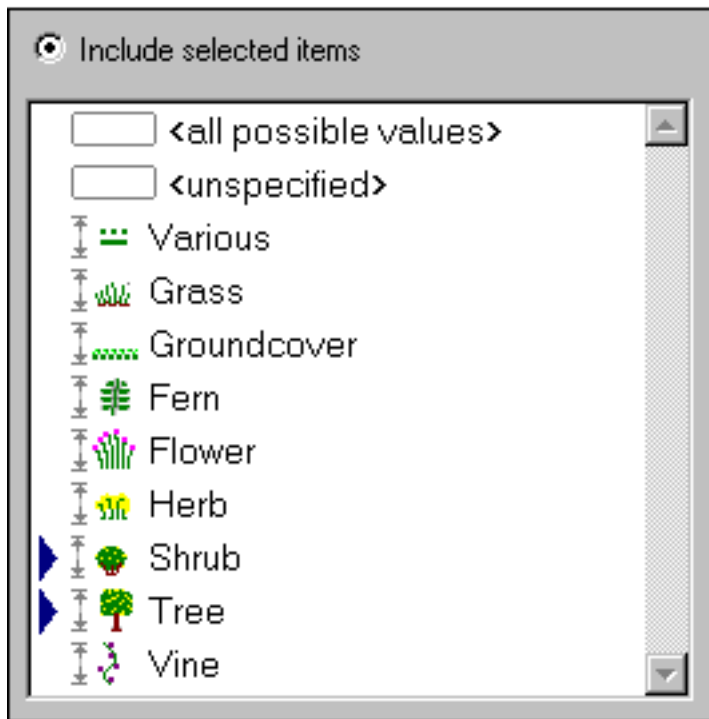
6 . . . and choose a **Stature** of "Shrub" and "Tree" . . .

Include selected items

05b -15° to -10° F
▶ 06a -10° to -5° F
▶ 06b   -5° to   0° F
▶ 07a   0° to   5° F
▶ 07b   5° to 10° F
▶ 08a   10° to 15° F
▶ 08b   15° to 20° F
▶ 09a   20° to 25° F
▶ 09b   25° to 30° F
▶ 10a   30° to 35° F
▶ 10b   35° to 40° F
▶ 11   Above 40° F
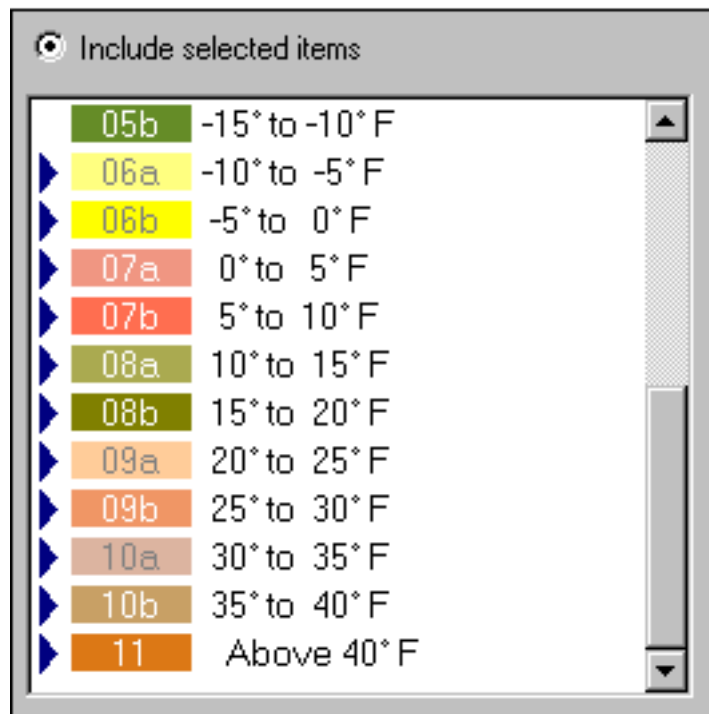
7 . . . and choose USDA zones 6 through 11.

Item	Filter
Botanical name	
Annual cycle	Evergreen
Stature	{Shrub, Tree}
USDA zones	{06a, 06b, 07a, 07b, ...}

8 The filter is finished and should look like this.
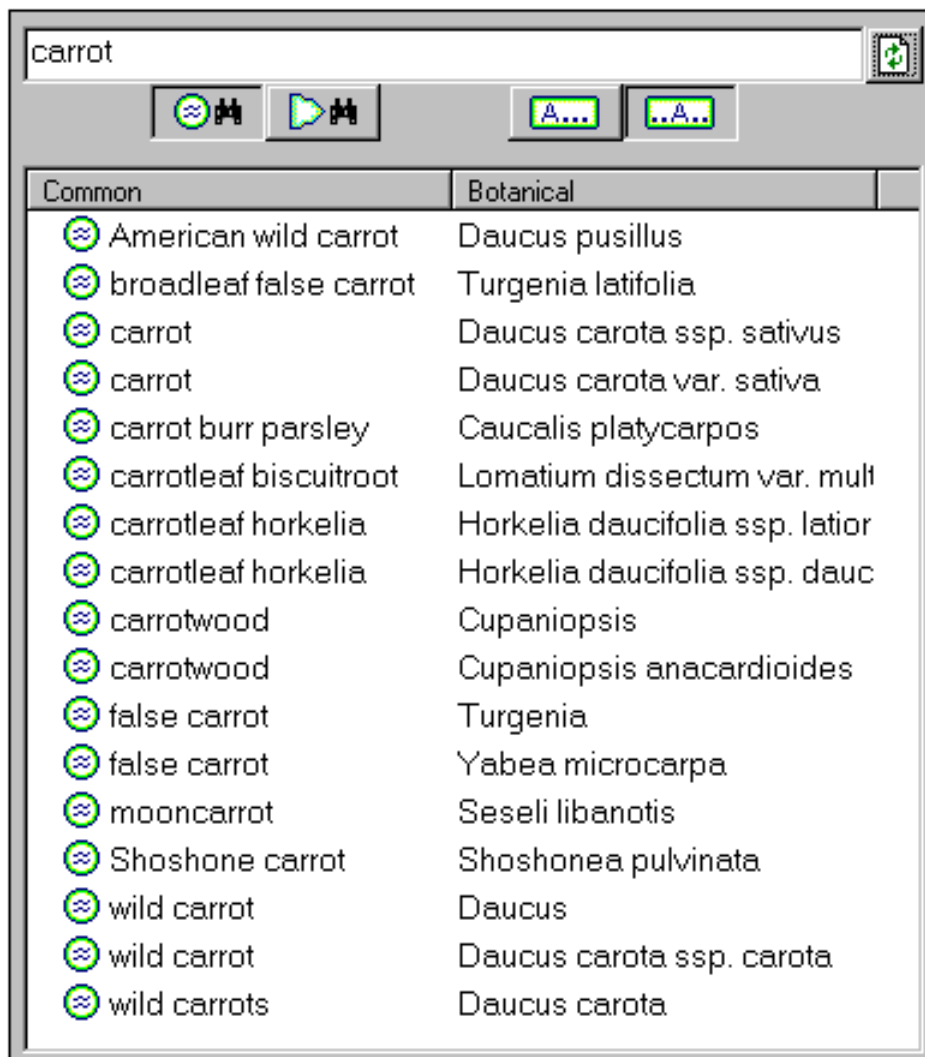
	Zone 6 evergreen shrubs and trees ▾

| OK ⊕ | 85 specimen (nothing selected) |

	Annual cycle	Stature	USDA zones	

Olea europaea
🌲 Evergreen | I 🌳 Tree | `09a` `10b` USDA 09

Juniperus virginiana
🌲 Evergreen | I 🌳 Tree | `03a` `09b` USDA 03

Tsuga canadensis
🌲 Evergreen | I 🌳 Tree | `03a` `08b` USDA 03

Juniperus scopulorum
🌲 Evergreen | I 🌳 Tree | `04a` `09b` USDA 04

Myrica pensylvanica
🌲 Evergreen | I 🌳 Shrub | `02a` `10b` USDA 02

Juniperus communis
🌲 Evergreen | I 🌳 Shrub | `02a` `10b` USDA 02

Compleat Botanica - How to find plant names

"How to" articles # 5 [Back] [Next]

Looking for a hard to remember name can be frustrating, especially when you're not an expert in botanical names. The software provides several ways to search for names, each useful for different searching problems. The first two methods return lists of matching items. The last two methods return a single matching item at a time.

If you know a plant by its common name, use the list of vernacular names. Type the common name in the search field and press the search button.

This is especially useful when there are many similar common names -- the results list will show them all.
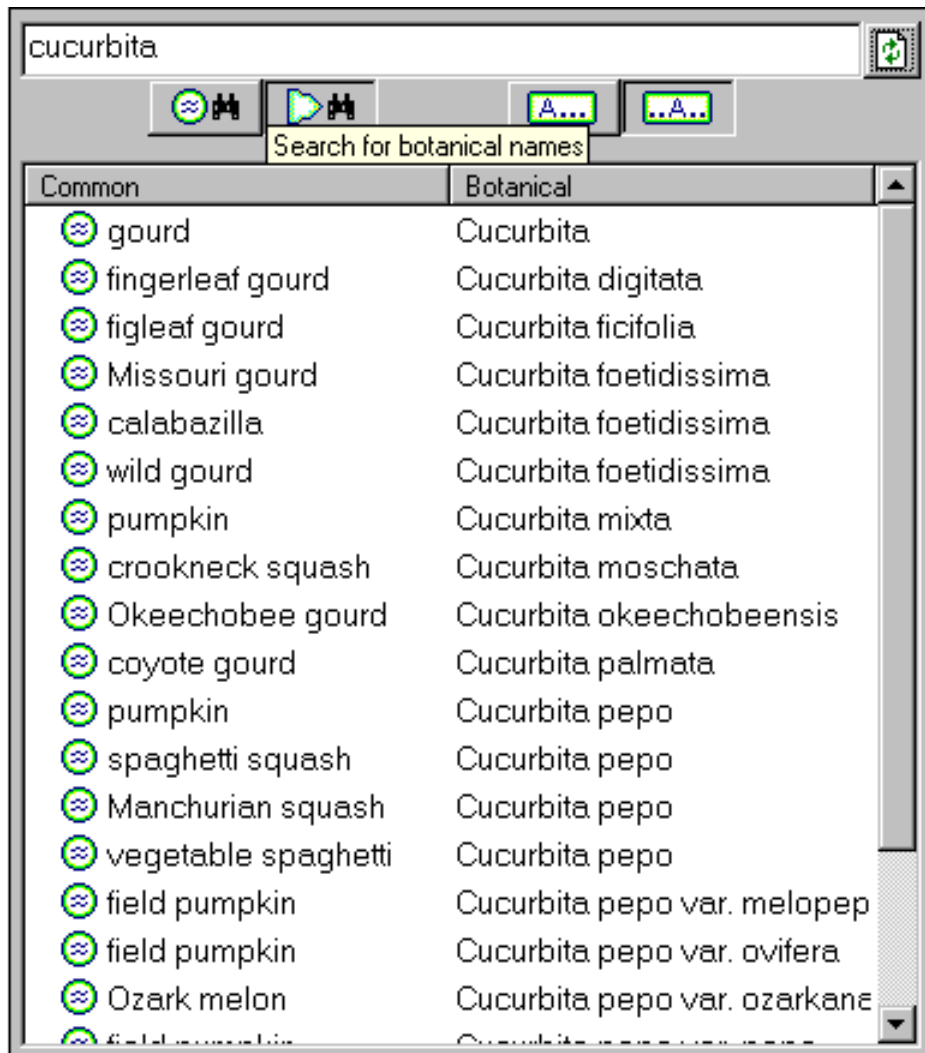
You can also use the list of vernacular names if you know part or all of the botanical name. Just toggle the search button to **Search for botanical names**.

This is useful for many botanical names but not all -- only those plants with common names will be found. If this search produces no results, be sure to also try the next method.
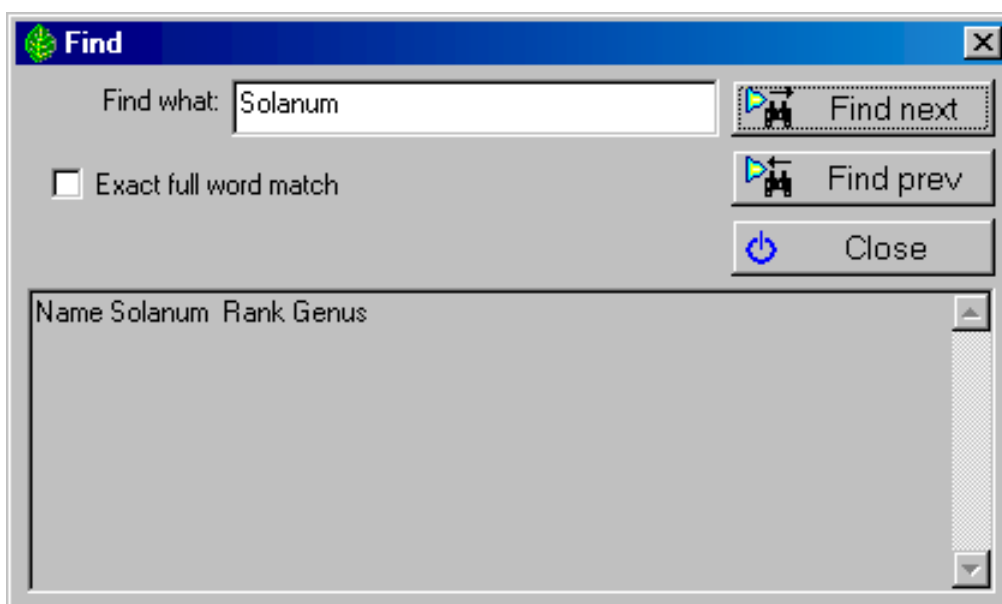
If you know part or all of the botanical name, you can use the **Find** facility of the taxonomic checklist.

This is the only way to find family names and other higher order names -- the other methods only work for the ranks of genus and species.
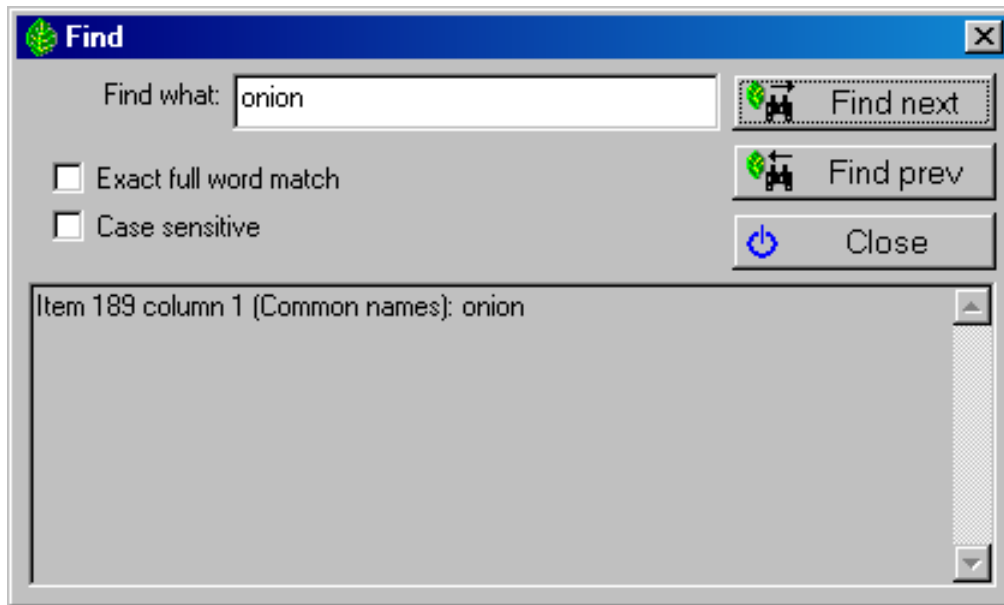
If you're certain that you have a specimen record for a particular name, you can use the **Find** facility of the specimen view.

Note that the specimen Find facility is also used for finding text values that are not plant names so searching for a name may find other types of values.

Once you've found the name you're looking for, it's easy to navigate to the corresponding entry in the related lists.

Press this button to go to the corresponding vernacular name entry.

Press this button to go to the corresponding taxonomic checklist entry.

Press this button to go to the corresponding specimen list entry.

Compleat Botanica - How do I import data from other applications?

If you have a large number of specimen records that you want to add to your database, you can use the Import command. The Import command reads XML files which have tagged values that follow a rigorous yet flexible and easily understood format. In a sense, XML files are "self-descriptive", but formally they follow a standard adopted by the World Wide Web Consortium. The data type definition used by The Compleat Botanica is specified in the file CompleatBotanicaSchema.xml. Creating an XML file can be as simple as opening Notepad and typing in the tags and values. More commonly though, you'll use a special XML viewer like "Microsoft XML Notepad". Most newer applications use XML as a *lingua franca* so you'll find this a very convenient way to move data between The Compleat Botanica and other applications. For a simple example of what a Compleat Botanica XML file might look like see the file Specimen.xml.

In addition to XML files, The Compleat Botanica can read delimited files such as comma separated values (CSV) and tab-delimited values (TXT). Delimited files are exported from most common spreadsheet and database applications. See the files Specimen.csv and Specimen.txt for valid delimited file samples. Note that delimited files are available for importing and exporting specimen data; they are not used for filters, categories, or taxonomic records.

The Compleat Botanica stores data in four tables: one table contains your specimen records, another contains your customized categories, a third contains the taxonomic checklist and botanical spell-checker., and another one contains the vernacular list of common names. The Import command, which is available from the File menu, is coordinated with the current view. So to import new specimen records your current window must be one of the Specimen Views. Similarly, to import custom categories, your current view should be the Categories View; to import taxonomic records your current view should be the Checklist; and to import common names your current view should be the Vernacular Names View.

In addition to these four database record types, you can also import filters from another computer when your current view is the Filter View.

For step-by-step instructions see the document Index to importing data.

Compleat Botanica - How do I export data from the software?

"How to" articles # 7 [Back] [Next]

Sometimes you'll want to share the specimen data that you've collected with others in your professional circle. Other times you may want to use your data in other applications such as charting, word processing, page layout, or statistical modeling tools. The export command is how you'll do that. When paired with the import process the export process is a great way to transfer records between databases or between computers.

The Export command writes files in XML format. XML is an acronym for eXtensible Markup Language. It is a standard adopted by the World Wide Web Consortium for writing files that are "self descriptive". The formal definition of an XML file is contained in a data type definition (DTD) file. The DTD used by The Compleat Botanica is specified in the file CompleatBotanicaSchema.xml.

The Compleat Botanica can write five types of XML files: specimen, filters, categories, vernacular names, and taxonomic records. The Export command for each of these five types is available from the File menu and is synchronized with the current view. So to export specimen records your current window should be one of the Specimen Views; to export filters your current view should be the Filter view; to export custom categories your current view should be the Categories View; to export common names your current view should be the Vernacular Names View; and finally, to export taxonomic records your current view should be the Checklist.

Each of the five Export operations is similar; see the details of each by following the the instructions in the Index to exporting data.

Compleat Botanica - **How do I create a report layout?**

Report layouts define how a specimen listing will look when printed. A report layout specifies font faces, point sizes, and colors to be used with your printout. The report layout does not specify what data to print, what columns to include, or what sorting to apply to the printed records -- these are all specified through the current filter. A single report layout can be applied to any filter; thus when you've created a layout with your own personal look-and-feel, you can use it repeatedly to produce a variety of different printouts.

To create a report layout, you can begin by pressing the **New** button or the **Duplicate** button from within the Print dialog box. Use the **Print report . . .** menu item of the **File** menu to get there.

Print Complete Checklist   ☒

Select which report style to use

- 📝 August with stripes
- 📝 December
- 📝 February
- 📝 January
- 📝 January alternating
- 📝 January side banner
- 📝 January with lines
- 📝 January with stripes
- 📝 July
- 📝 June
- 📝 March
- 📝 May
- ▶ 📝 New report style

☀ New   📝 Modify   📇 Duplicate   ✕ Delete
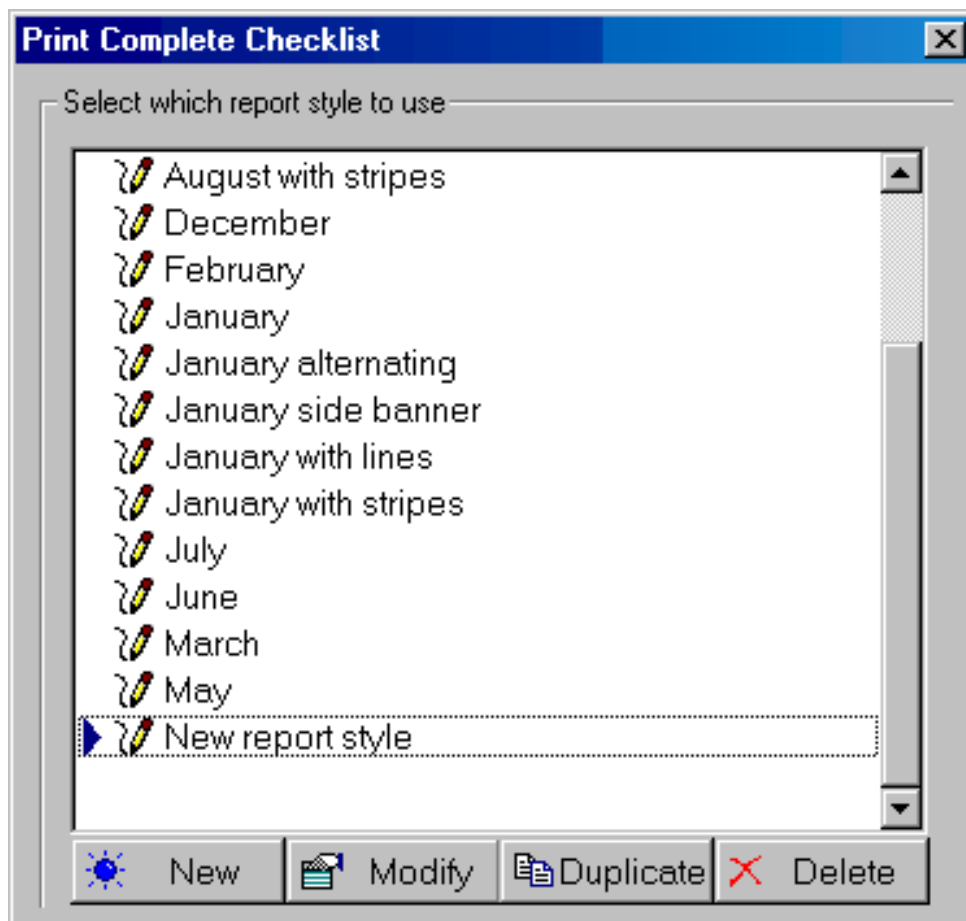
A new report layout contains everything needed for printing a reasonably good report. Use the five tabs along the top of the Report Style Definition window to see all of the formatting options available. Changes that you make can immediately be seen in the "sample" area.

Report style definition

Description: New report style   Close

Sample | Fonts | Borders | Options | Margins

↑
← (1,1) ⇒
↓

Scale: 100%   **Paper size:** Letter   **Orientation:** Portrait   Print

Width: 8.50 "   **Height:** 11.00 "
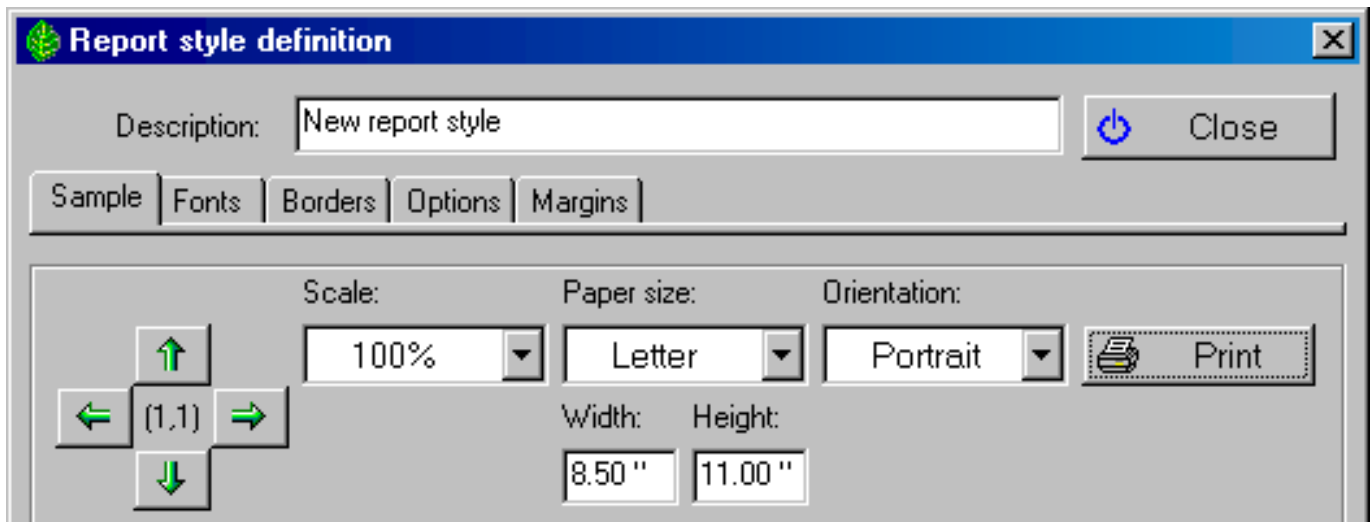
Modify the new report layout by making one change at a time to see how it affects the sample. When you're satisfied simply close the window and your new layout will be ready for printing.

When you're ready to learn more specific details of the printing process go to the **Index to printing reports**.

Compleat Botanica - How do I publish to the Web?

The publish tool combines the best parts of the report generator, the export facility, and the print tags feature into one powerful tool which allows you to create HTML documents. If you're interested in placing your specimen data on a Web site, whether for personal, professional, or commercial purposes, you'll find the publish tool is a fast and efficient way to do it. If you're preparing a printed manual or a book of your plant data, the publish tool is a great way to produce a printed version of your collection. If you're looking for alternative ways to print specimen tags, the publish tool has pre-defined templates for plant stakes, arboretum tags, and nursery placards.

The publishing tool uses a multi-step wizard to guide you through the process of creating Web pages, indexes, table of contents, labels, and much more. To learn the basic procedures for publishing see the notes beginning with the Step by step guide to publishing.

If you or a colleague knows how to use an HTML editor, you'll be able to customize the style sheets and the template files used by the publish tool. Sophisticated users can create their own HTML files to be used as templates. For an introduction to how the publish tool combines data from your collection with style sheets and templates see the document An overview of how the publishing parser works.

When you've finished creating the HTML pages, you can copy them to your Web server (or your Internet Service Provider) to make them available on the Internet. There are no hidden files or special rules to worry about. You can copy the entire "Publish" directory or just those files that you've modified. Note that if you've used any of the templates that contain navigational buttons (next, previous, detail, or summary), you'll want to be sure to copy the hyperlinked documents too so that there are no broken links.

Compleat Botanica - How do I create, delete, backup, and restore databases?

After you've explored the sample database, you'll want to create your own database for recording and storing data about your plant collection. Managing your databases can be done from within The Compleat Botanica or by using the Data Manager utility. Both methods work identically for the four basic operations: creating, deleting, backing up, and restoring. The Data Manager utility has several advanced operations that may be useful for moving data between computers, fixing ODBC problems, and restoring databases damaged by a power failure.

To see details for all of these operations, see the Index to database topics.

Compleat Botanica - How do I customize the Abstract View?

"How to" articles # 11 [Back]

The Abstract View provides a single point of reference for the currently selected specimen record. When you're actively making changes to your data you'll need to use one or more of the specimen data entry views, but when you want to see it all together, you can use the Abstract View.

You can change the way the abstract is formatted by using the **Customize settings . . .** area. This is where you can choose which template to use as a basis for your abstract. There are two types of templates -- detail pages and summary tables. The detail page template that you choose will be used whenever a single specimen is selected. By contrast, the summary table template that you choose will be used whenever multiple specimen are selected.

An artificial limit to the number of records that are shown in the multiple selection templates is employed. This artificial limit is enforced as a way to prevent extremely large and time consuming abstracts from being generated accidentally. You can change this limit if you want to increase or decrease the number of records that can be included in a summary table abstract.

In addition to these customizations, you can also choose how each abstract is formatted -- which font face, point size, and colors are used.
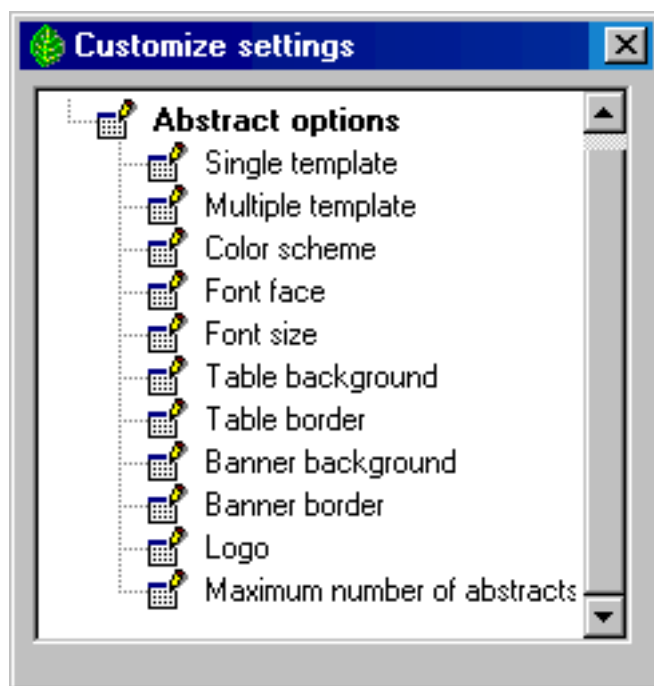
Index to some not so obvious features of the software

Data source field	What is the data source field used for?	1
Sorting your collection	I want to sort my collection. Is there an easy way to do that?	2
Column ordering	Is there a way to change the column order after I've created my filter?	3
Multiple selection	What can I do with the multiple selection feature?	4
Different looking first column	Does the botanical name have to be in every specimen list?	5
The autosave feature	Do I have to press the save button every time I change something?	6
Printing tags	How do I add items to the list of tags to print?	7
Hyperlinks in the Notes area	How do the specimen links inside the Notes area work?	8

The "specimen available" checkbox	What does the "specimen available" checkbox mean?	9
Printer fonts	Why does a different set of fonts show in the report layout?	10
Report layout column widths	How do I change the width of columns when I use the report layout tool?	11
Using color groups	How do I see all plants with flowers of a particular color?	12
Expanding the taxonomic checklist	Is there an easy way to expand the taxonomic checklist?	13
Suggested picture file location	Where are my pictures stored?	14
Picture previewer in front	How can I conveniently see my pictures full-sized?	15
Initial record limit	Why doesn't the entire list of specimen show up when I change filters?	16
Collection dependent customizations	I've noticed that some customizations apply to databases and others to the software in general.	17
Color spell-checker	How does the color spell-checker work?	18

Compleat Botanica - Data source field

1

Not so obvious # 1 [Next]

What is the data source field used for?	Use the "data source" field to acknowledge the source of your information about a particular specimen. When conflicting information is obtained at a later time, you can double-check the accuracy of both sources.

Sir Isaac Newton in a letter to Robert Hooke (February 5, 1675) wrote,
"If I have seen further it is by standing on the shoulders of Giants".

Quercus rubra

Data source   Encylopedia of Trees

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

Index of "not so obvious" things you should know

Compleat Botanica - Sorting your collection

2

I want to sort my collection. Is there an easy way to do that?

Yes, sorting is part of the filtering process. After you've created the filter in the Filter View, switch to the Specimen View to see the records that match your criteria. To sort, simply click on a column header. Sorting by two columns is possible by simply clicking on another column.

To sort by botanical name, click on the far left-hand portion of the header area just to the left of the first named column.

Example of sorting by a single column.

Here the list is ordered by **edible parts**.

Edible parts	Harvest season
Actinidia kolomikta ☒ Fruit	J F M A M J J A S O N D
Actinidia arguta ☒ Fruit	J F M A M J J A S O N D
Actinidia deliciosa ☒ Fruit	J F M A M J J A S O N D
Amelanchier canadensis ☒ Berries	J F M A M J J A S O N D
Amelanchier asiatica ☒ Berries	J F M A M J J A S O N D
Amelanchier arborea ☒ Berries	J F M A M J J A S O N D

Example of sorting by two columns.

Here the principal sort is **harvest season**. The secondary sort is **edible parts**.

Edible parts	Harvest season
Actinidia arguta ☒ Fruit	J F M A M J J A S O N D
Actinidia chinensis ☒ Fruit	
Actinidia coriacea ☒ Fruit	
Actinidia deliciosa ☒ Fruit	J F M A M J J A S O N D
Actinidia kolomikta ☒ Fruit	J F M A M J J A S O N D
Actinidia purpurea ☒ Fruit	

Example of sorting by **botanical name**.

Note the sorting symbol is shown in the far left-hand part of the header.

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

Index of "not so obvious" things you should know

Compleat Botanica - Column ordering

3

Is there a way to change the column order after I've created my filter?

Yes. When a filter is first created, the column order of the specimen list is dependant upon the order in which the items were added to the filter. To change this order later on, you can simply click and drag the column header of the specimen list. The ordering of columns will be retained and restored the next time you use the filter.

Use a "mouse-drag" operation to reorder columns. Position the mouse over the center of the column to be repositioned, press down on the mouse, move the entire column left or right, and release the mouse.

Here's what it looks like after the mouse-drag is completed.

Compleat Botanica - Multiple selection

4

What can I do with the multiple selection feature?

If you select more than one item in the specimen list, many things are disabled -- all of the data entry views are disabled, the gateway view is disabled, and the propagate button is disabled.

Nevertheless, several very important features are enabled which can help you to accomplish your work faster.

Delete	Pressing the Delete button during a multiple selection will delete all of the selected items.
Copy	Using the clipboard Copy command when you have multiple items selected will copy all of the selected items to the clipboard. You can then use the Paste command to copy them to another database.
Abstracts	The abstract view show the selected items. By changing the multiple selection template (in the customization settings area), you can see the selected items in a miniature report-like format. This is a quick way to produce simple report printouts.
Exporting	When exporting data you can choose to **export only the selected items**.

Compleat Botanica - Different looking first column

Does the botanical name have to be in every specimen list?

No. As a reasonable first guess, new filters start out with the botanical name as the first column of every filter. This is entirely optional.

If you choose a different item to replace it, you will have a surprisingly different looking specimen list. This is because the first item in the filter is always displayed in the prominent top-half of each specimen row. This position does not scroll left and right with the rest of the list, but stays fixed to the left-hand side of the list.

An example with **common names** shown first.

Common names	Botanical name	Hay fever pollen	Stature
spring birch			
	Betula fontinalis	02 Light	I 🌳 Tree
western balsam,black cottonwood			
	Populus trichocarpa	02 Light	I ≕ Various
castor bean,castor-oil plant			
	Ricinus communis	04 Strong	I ≕ Various
sweet pea			
	Lathyrus odoratus	02 Light	I ⚑ Vine

The same list, but with **hay fever pollen** shown in the prominent top-half.

Hay fever pollen	Botanical name	Stature	Common names
02 **Light**			
	Betula fontinalis	I 🌳 Tree	spring birch
02 **Light**			
	Populus trichocarpa	I ≕ Various	western balsam,black ...
04 **Strong**			
	Ricinus communis	I ≕ Various	castor bean,castor-oil ...
02 **Light**			
	Lathyrus odoratus	I ⚑ Vine	sweet pea

The same list a third time, with **stature** in the fixed position.

Stature	Common names	Hay fever pollen	Botanical name
I 🌳 **Tree**			
	spring birch	02 Light	*Betula fontinalis*
I ≕ **Various**			
	western balsam,black ...	02 Light	*Populus trichocarpa*
I ≕ **Various**			
	castor bean,castor-oil ...	04 Strong	*Ricinus communis*
I ⚑ **Vine**			
	sweet pea	02 Light	*Lathyrus odoratus*

Compleat Botanica - The autosave feature

6

Not so obvious # 6 [Previous] [Next]

Do I have to press the save button every time I change something?

No. Changes to your collection are made automatically whenever you change to a new view and whenever you select a different item in the list. If you've inadvertently made a change, you can revert back to the original value by pressing the **Undo** button.
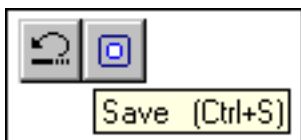
The save button
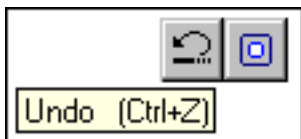
The undo button

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

Index of "not so obvious" things you should know

Compleat Botanica - Printing tags

7

Not so obvious # 7 [Previous] [Next]

How do I add items to the list of tags to print?

Whenever you add a new specimen to your collection, the **Tag needs printing** box is checked. Later when you use the **Print labels . . .** command, those items that are checked will be included in the list of labels to print. When the labels have been printed, the **Tag needs printing** box has its check removed.

You re-include an item in the list by simply checking the box again.

Herbarium
☑ Tag needs printing

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

Index of "not so obvious" things you should know

8

Not so obvious # 8 [Previous] [Next]

How do the specimen links inside the Notes area work?

You can create hyperlinks from one specimen to another when you use the notes area. This is the area provided at the bottom of several of the specimen data entry views for typing word processing-like notes.

When a hyperlink has been created, you can double-click the item to jump to the referenced specimen.

Press the **Insert specimen link** button to create a hyperlink.
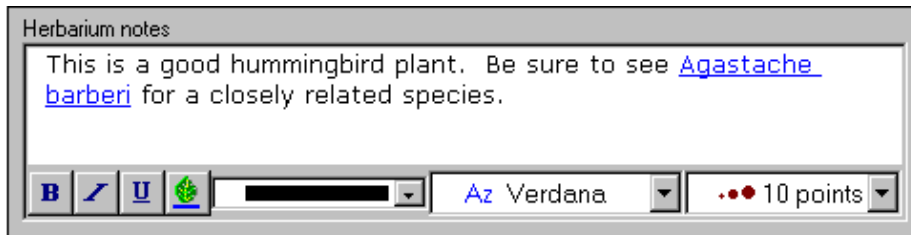
This snapshot shows an embedded hyperlink to another specimen record.

Double-clicking it will jump to the *Agastache barberi* record.
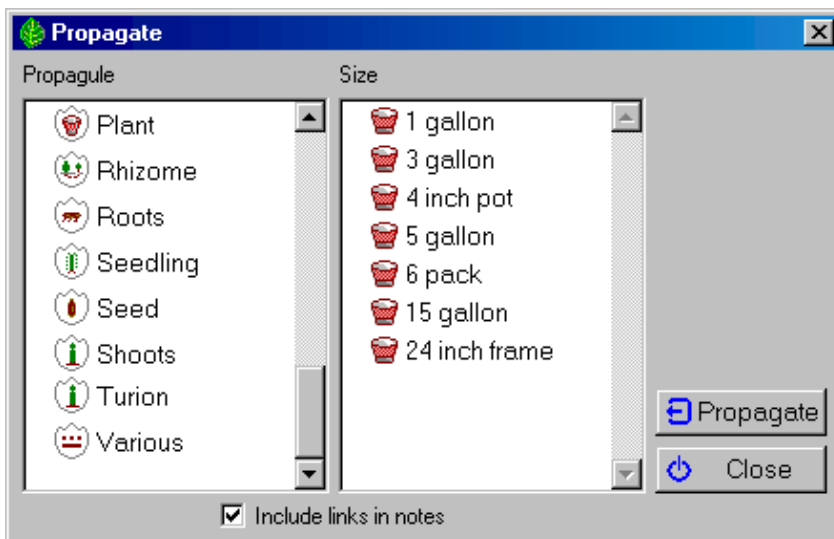
When making a duplicate specimen record using the propagate button, you can add hyperlinks between the old and new records by checking the **Include links in notes** box.

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

Compleat Botanica - The "specimen available" checkbox

9

What does the "specimen available" checkbox mean?

The taxonomic checklist has a checkbox which indicates whether a specimen of the given type exists in your collection. When a taxonomic name is checked, all higher ranking names are also checked. Checked items are also highlighted using a bold face font in the taxonomic hierarchy. This feature allows you to easily see the distribution and concentration of your specimen in relation to the whole plant kingdom.

This checkbox is automatically updated as you add new specimen to your collection.

Checklist

☑ Specimen available

The **Specimen available** checkbox

Here we can easily see that our collection contains three species under the class *Cistopsida* order

```
Cistopsida
  Cistales
    Cistineae
      Cistaceae
        Atlanthemum
        Cistoideae
          Cisteae
            Cistus
              creticus
              incanus
              ladaniferus
              monspeliensis
              salviifolius
              villosus
          Crocanthemum
          Halimiocistus
          Halimium
          Hudsonia
          Therocistus
          Tuberaria
        Fumaneae
      Helianthemaceae
        Helianthemum
          aldersonii
          arenicola
          bicknellii
          canadense
```
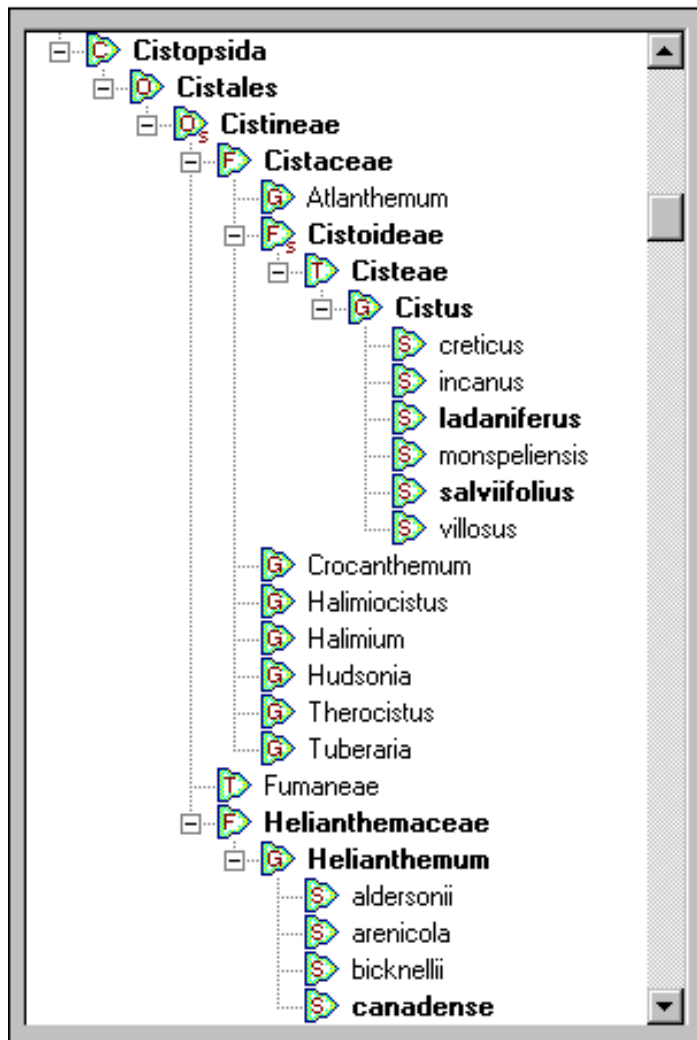
Cistales. They are split between two families: *Cistaceae* and *Helianthemaceae.*

The three specimen are:

Cistus ladaniferus (crimson spot rockrose)

Cistis salviifolius (sageleaf rockrose)

Helianthemum canadense (American sunrose)

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

Index of "not so obvious" things you should know

Compleat Botanica **- Printer fonts**

10

Not so obvious # 10 [Previous] [Next]

Why does a different set of fonts show in the report layout?

The list of fonts that are available for use when printing reports is dependant upon the currently selected printer. If the list of fonts appears too short, be sure that you've selected a printer other than "generic / text only".
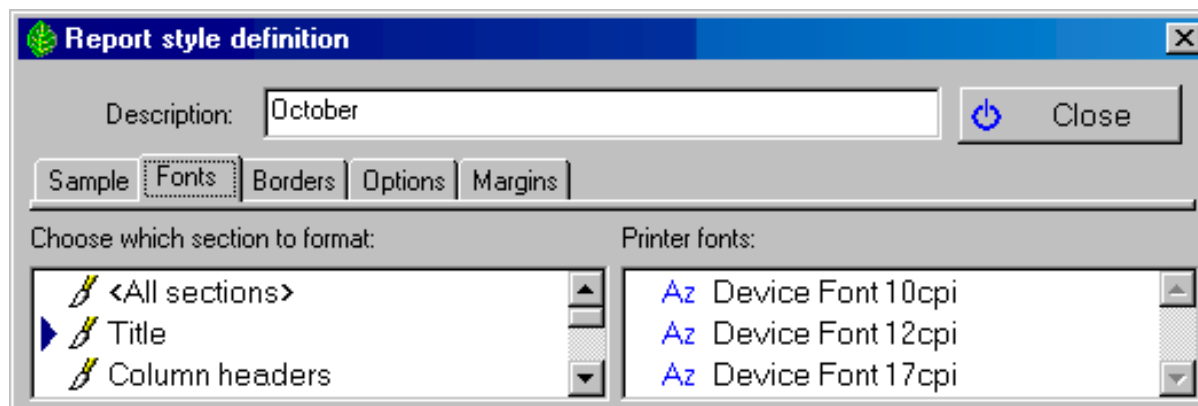
Your report style definition will look something like this if your selected printer is "generic / text only"

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

Index of "not so obvious" things you should know

Compleat Botanica - Report layout column widths

11

How do I change the width of columns when I use the report layout tool?

The width of columns in a report layout is automatically calculated based on their widths in the specimen list. To change report layout widths, return to the specimen list and adjust the column width using the column header.

Remember that a report layout specifies font faces, point sizes, colors, and header & footer text. A printed report is dependant upon both the report layout and the current filter. The current filter specifies which items to print, which columns to print, their sort order, and the *relative widths of the columns.*

Here's a sample filter showing three columns.

Here's the same filtered data as seen in the report layout.

Note the relationship to the column widths above.

Hay fever pollen

	Stature	Common names	Hay fever pollen
Abies concolor			
	🌳 Tree	white fir,Colorado fir	02 Light
Abies nobilis			
	🌳 Tree	noble fir	02 Light
Acacia baileyana			
	🌳 Tree	cootamundra wattle,Bailey's acacia	02 Light
Acacia decurrens			
	🌳 Tree	acacia	02 Light

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

11

12

Not so obvious # 12 [Previous] [Next]

How do I see all plants with flowers of a particular color?

Selecting plants by color is possible in two different ways. You can chose specific colors or you can choose color groups.

Color groups allow you to easily choose a range of colors. Each color is defined as belonging to a particular group. When you choose to include plants belonging to that color group, your resulting filter will include all plants whose color matches any of the members of that group.

Choosing specific colors is also possible. Just select which colors to include one by one.

All plants belonging to the blue group or the blue-green group will be included.

All plants whose principal color is sapphire, blue, woad, teal, or royal-blue will be included.

Note: You can use the "<all possible values>" item located in either the left-hand color group list or the right-hand color list -- they both return identical results (that is, they both return all records in the collection with any color specified).

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

[Index of "not so obvious" things you should know](#)

12

Compleat Botanica - **Expanding the taxonomic checklist**

13

Is there an easy way to expand the taxonomic checklist?

Yes. By double-clicking an item in the hierarchical checklist you can see all plant names one rank lower in the list.

If you double-click while holding down the <Ctrl> key, you can see all plant names two full ranks lower in the list. When sub-ranks are available (such as sub-class or sub-order or sub-family), the sub-ranks down two full ranks are also included. See the example below.
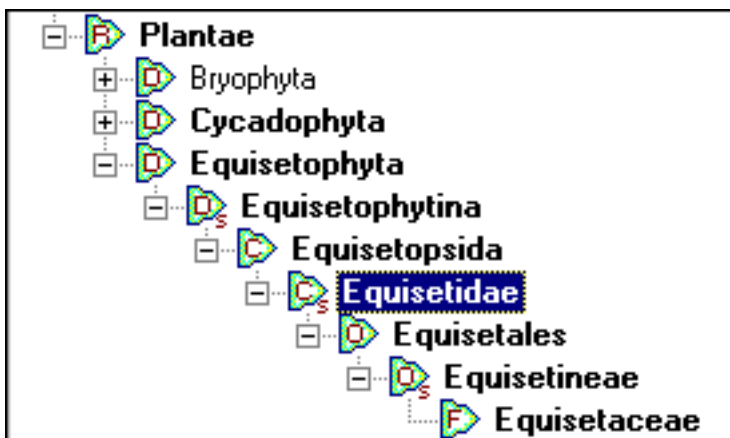
By double-clicking the sub-class *Equisetidae* while holding down the <Ctrl> key, all intermediate ranks down to family (*Equisetaceae*) are expanded.

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

✚ Index of "not so obvious" things you should know

Compleat Botanica - Suggested picture file location

14

Where are my pictures stored?

Pictures that you associate with your specimen are not stored in the database in the same way as all of your other data. Instead your pictures are kept in their original format (JPEG, GIF, and so forth), on your hard disk in their original location.

The suggested location for pictures is the folder "C:\Program Files\Compleat Botanica\Data\CBPhotos". If you place your pictures in this folder, the **Picture file** item will store the name of the photo file without the folder name (see the example for *Coreopsis* below). If you place your pictures in a different folder, the Picture file item will store the fully qualified photo name including the folder name (see the example for *Achillea* below).

You can change the suggested location for pictures using the **Customize setting . . .** area.

Use the Picture options of the Customize settings area to change the suggested location for pictures.

This example shows a picture file that has been place in the suggested location.

Coreopsis lanceolata 'Tequila Sunrise'

Picture file Coreopsis #707.JPG

☑ Thumbnail
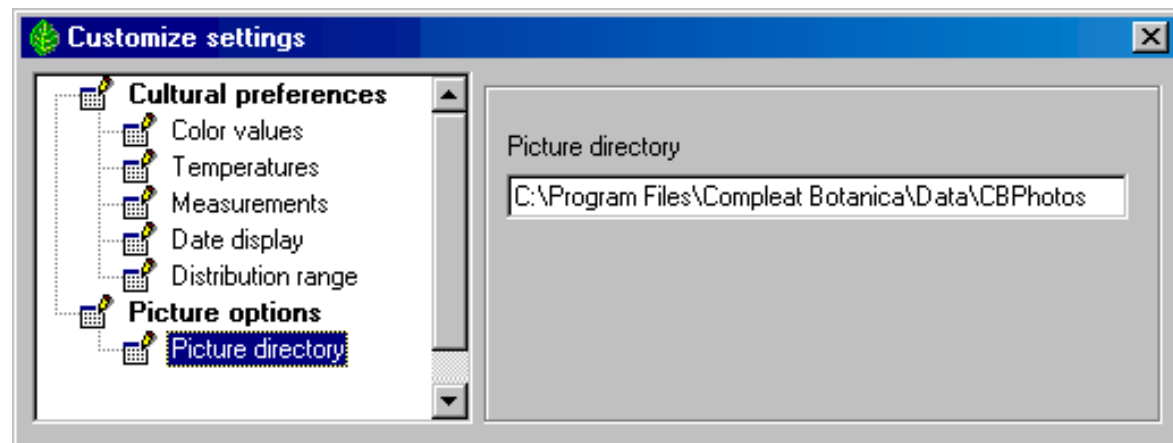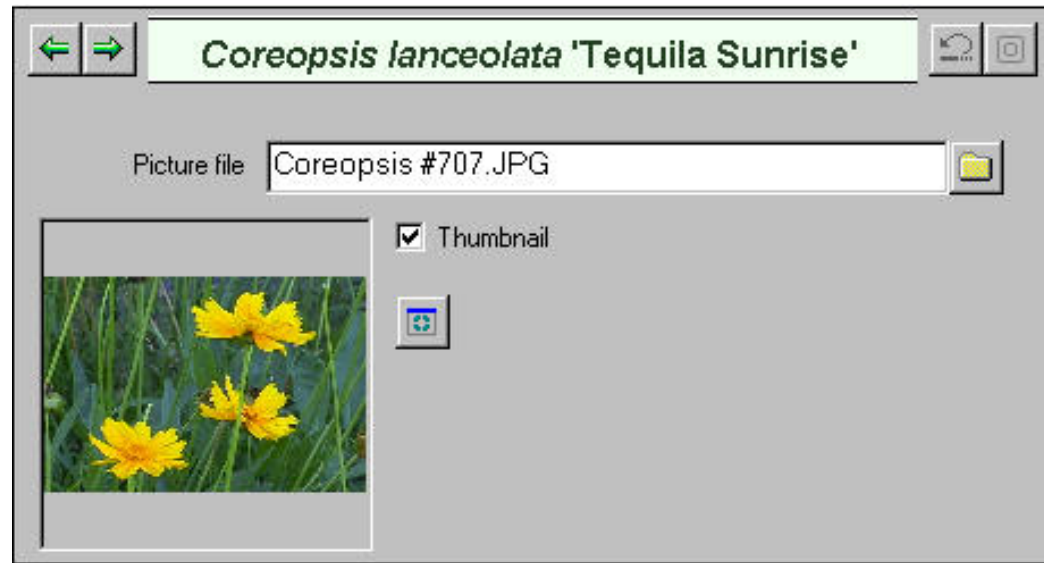
This example shows a picture file that has been placed in an alternate location.

Achillea lachsschönheit 'Salmon Beauty'

Picture file E:\Multimedia Files\Graphics\Achillea.JPG

☑ Thumbnail

Remember that your pictures are not backed up when you make a backup of your database. To make a safe copy of your pictures you should use the Windows Explorer to copy them to a CD or a removable disk.

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

Compleat Botanica - Picture previewer in front

Using the software   Getting started   Not so obvious

15

Not so obvious # 15 [Previous] [Next]

How can I conveniently see my pictures full-sized?

The picture previewer has a button labeled "**Front**" that lets you keep the picture window on top of all other windows. Instead of closing and re-opening the previewer for each picture in your collection, you can keep this window open while changing the selected item in the specimen list. In this way you can poke through your picture collection seeing them full-sized.

Press the **picture previewer** button to open a separate window with full-sized photos.
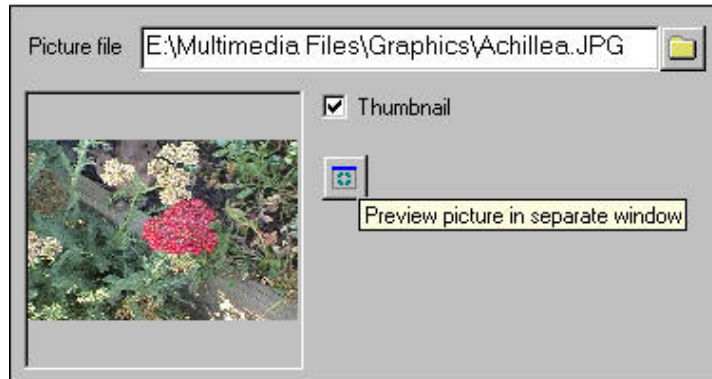
Toggle the Front / Back buttons to keep this picture previewer on top of all other windows.
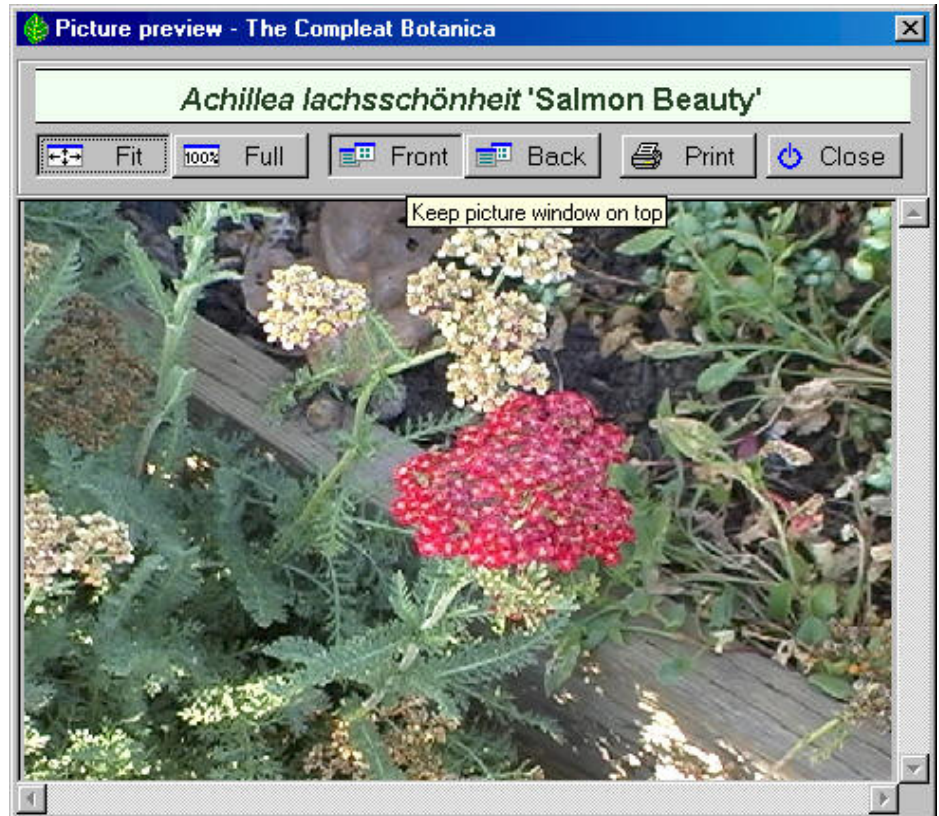
By changing the selected item in the specimen list, the already opened picture previewer will automatically stay synchronized with your current selection.

Most of today's high-resolution monitors are suited for this type of operation; however older monitors that only operate at 800 x 600 resolution will probably not find this operation very satisfying.

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

 Index of "not so obvious" things you should know

15

Compleat Botanica - Initial record limit

16

Why doesn't the entire list of specimen show up when I change filters?

The number of records that appear in the specimen list can be quite large. In order to reduce the time it takes to build and display the list, its size is artificially limited when you first display a new filter.

This artificial limit can be increased or removed all together by using the **Customize settings . . .** area.
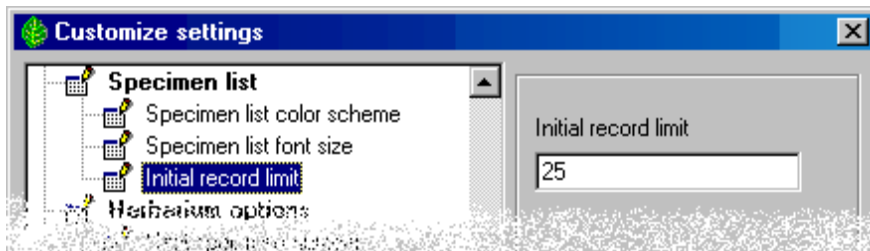
You can set the **initial record limit** to any value above 25.

To remove the limit entirely, use the special "unlimited" keyword.
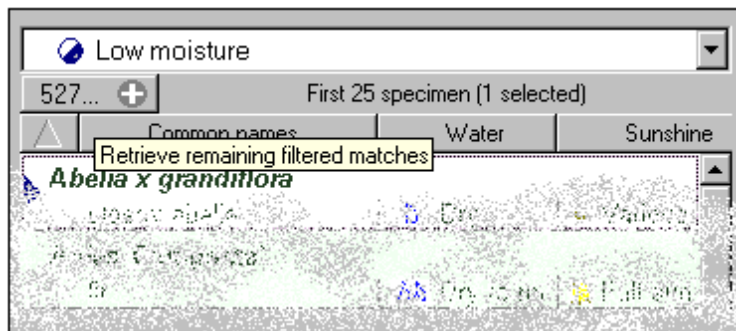
You can always get the full list of matching records by pressing the **Retrieve remaining filtered matches** button.

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

Index of "not so obvious" things you should know

Compleat Botanica - Collection dependent customizations

17

I've noticed that some customizations apply to databases and others to the software in general.

Most of the customizations apply to the software in general. Such things as picture options, abstract options, and specimen list options are set once for the entire software.

There are a few exceptions to this rule. For the most part these are cultural preferences. They apply to the currently open database only.

The customizations that are database dependent are:

- Temperature scale: Fahrenheit or Celsius
- Measurement system: U.S. Customary units or metric units
- Color values: RHS Colour Chart numbers or popular color names
- Distribution range: Country codes, provinces, territories, states or counties
- Next specimen number: the next number to assign to a new specimen entry

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

Index of "not so obvious" things you should know

Compleat Botanica - Color spell-checker

18

How does the color spell-checker work?

There are several places where you can define colors for plants in your collection: flowers, leaves, bark, dyes and the all-purpose "other interest" item.

When specifying color values, you can choose a single color from the drop-down list or you can type in a list of possible colors. When you type a list of possible colors, the spell-checker is invoked to ensure that you haven't entered an invalid color name. This is important in order to allow you to search for items in your collection by color values.

Principal color	viole
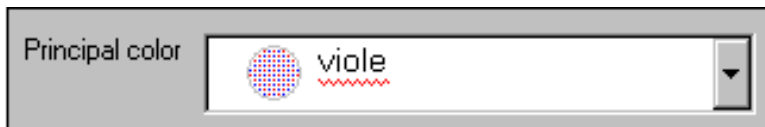
As you type the red wavy line alerts you that the name is still incomplete.

Principal color	violet
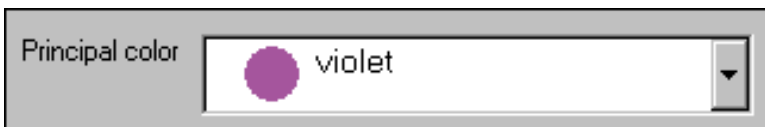
When a color name has been correctly typed, it's corresponding color value is displayed in the adjacent color patch.

Principal color	violet,yellow,blue
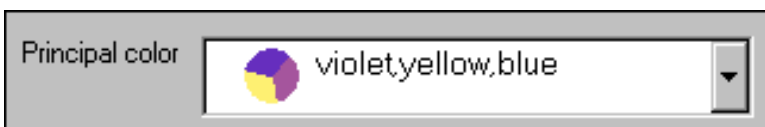
Multiple colors can be entered and the adjacent color patch will display the color values in pie shaped wedges.

Principal color	bright orange
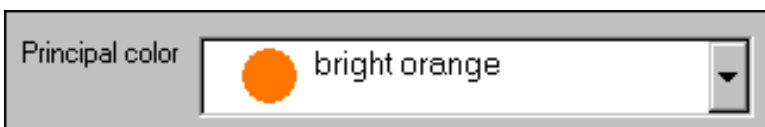
Adjectives like bright, brilliant, dark, very, and so forth can be applied arbitrarily. The adjacent color patch will show the approximate color.

Principal color [⬤ bright orange-red] ▾
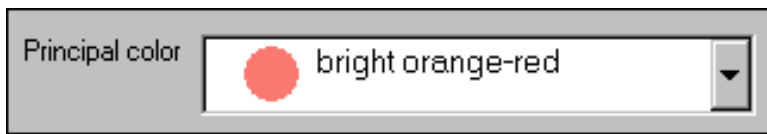
Compound-words composed of more than one valid color name will use the last half of the compound name as the color patch value.

For more articles in the "The not so obvious . . ." series see

✚ [Index of "not so obvious" things you should know](#)

18

Compleat Botanica - Pathfinder

How to use the Pathfinder facility

Using the Pathfinder table of contents	The Pathfinder table of contents is an easy way to find documents by topic. Each topic in the table of contents contains documents related to an area of general interest.
Using the Pathfinder View	The Pathfinder View is a specialized Web browser for displaying documentation about The Compleat Botanica. In addition, the Pathfinder View can be used as a general purpose Web browser when your computer is connected to the Internet.
Pathfinder in a separate window	Pathfinder documentation can be displayed in three different ways: 1) through the integrated Pathfinder View, 2) through the Pathfinder on Top menu item, and 3) through the separate Pathfinder program from the Start menu.
Symbols used in these Pathfinder documents	Hypertext links within Pathfinder are accompanied by small icons to indicate the type of document to be displayed. This visual cue will give you some idea about the relevancy and location of the document.
Pathfinder behind firewalls	You'll need to dicide whether to allow Pathfinder to have direct access to the Internet.

Compleat Botanica - Using the Pathfinder table of contents

The Pathfinder table of contents is an easy way to find documents by topic. Each topic in the table of contents contains documents related to an area of general interest.

Clicking a topic in the table of contents shows an index of related documents in the Pathfinder View. Double-clicking a topic in the table of contents expands that portion of the hierarchy to display the related document titles.
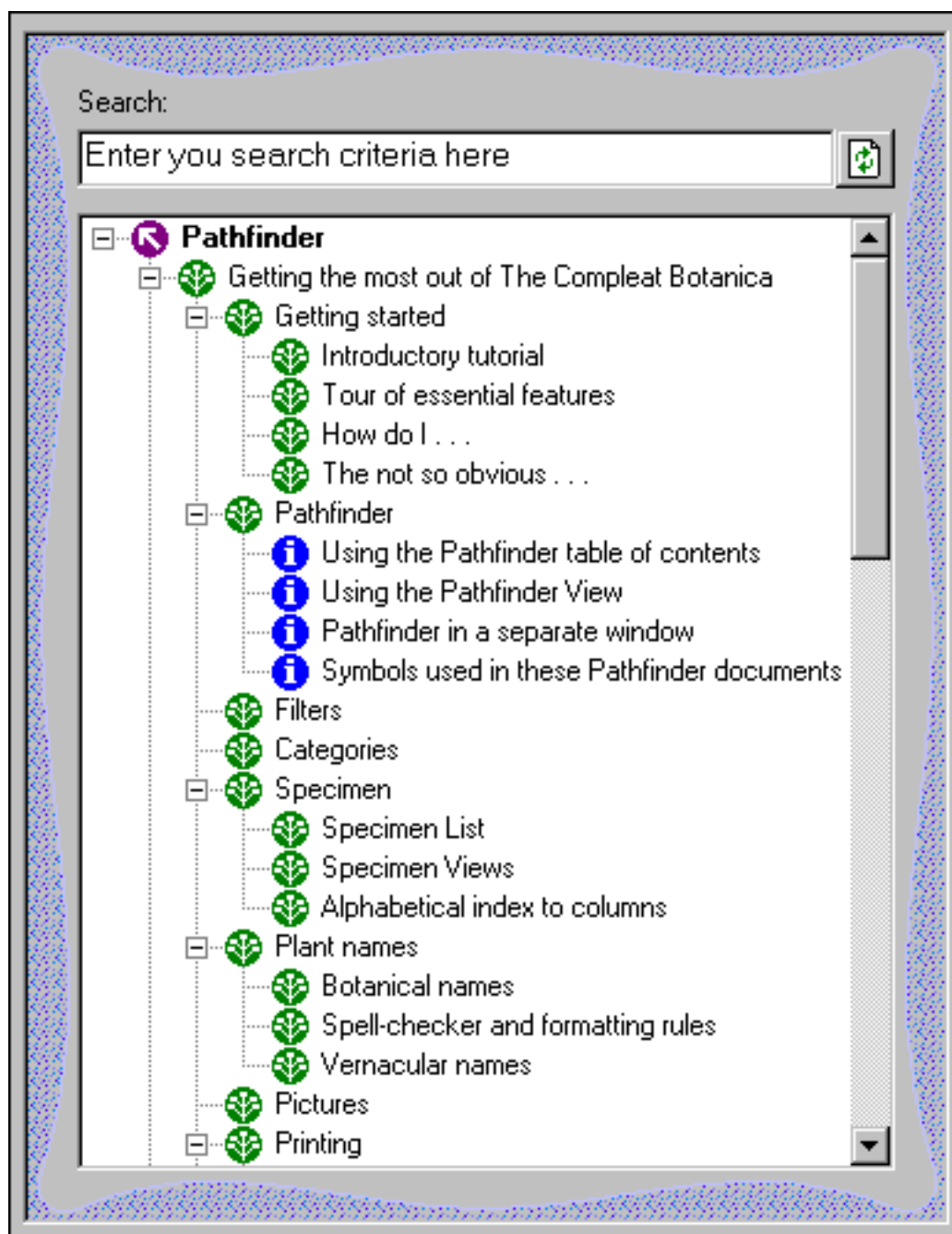
Compleat Botanica - Using the Pathfinder View

The **Pathfinder view** is a specialized Web browser for displaying documentation about The Compleat Botanica. In addition, the Pathfinder View can be used as a general purpose Web browser when your computer is connected to the Internet. This integrated approach to documentation and browsing allows you to reduce the window clutter that usually accompanies on-line help systems.

Pathfinder

Inter-generic hybrids

Inter-generic hybrids are formally identified with a cross symbol prefixing their name. This symbol looks like a small letter "x". Before the advent of UNICODE, this symbol was not present in most computer fonts, thus the common practice was to substitute the cross symbol for with the lower case letter "x". This convention allows for easy entry of these names and has been adopted by The Compleat Botanica.

Genus   x Chitalpa

Species   tashkentensis

Note that the first letter of a species names is always capitalized (this is automatically done for you by the software). In the case of inter-generic hybrids the "x" is not considered to be the first letter.

See also

letter.

See also

ℹ   Understanding how the botanical name spell-checker works

ℹ   All about family names

⬅   ➡   ℹ   C:\Program Files\CompleatBotanica\Prograr ▼   ⬜
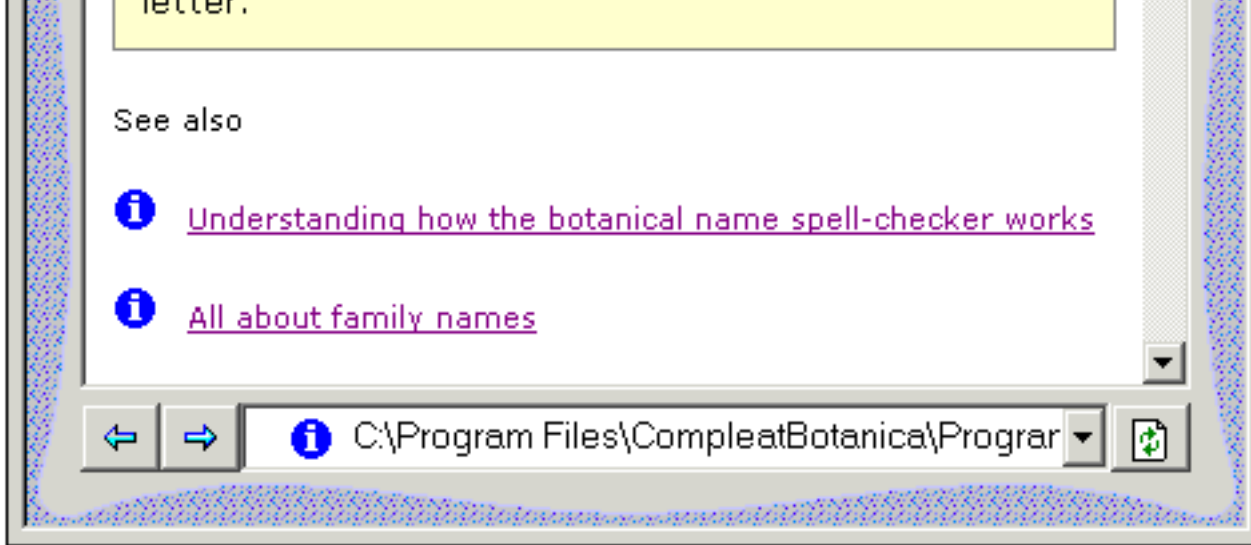
At the bottom portion of the Pathfinder View is a navigation toolbar. Use the blue arrows to return to previously shown documents. Use the address box and the green button on the right to go directly to a particular document or Web site.

Pathfinder documentation can be displayed in three different ways: 1) through the integrated Pathfinder View, 2) through the Pathfinder on Top menu item, and 3) through the separate Pathfinder program from the Start menu.

Integrated Pathfinder View

Accessing documents through the integrated Pathfinder View reduces window clutter by using the same space used for all of the Specimen Views, the Filter View, the Checklist View, and the Category View. Simply click on the toolbar icon at the top of the main window
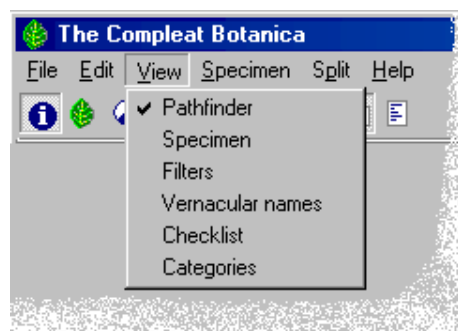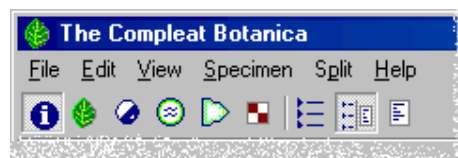
You can also use the View menu to access the integrated Pathfinder View.

Pathfinder on Top

Sometimes it's helpful to be able to read documentation side-by-side with the area of the software that you're trying to learn about.

The Pathfinder on Top feature displays documents in a separate window that floats on top of The Compleat Botanica program. To access it, use the Help menu item.
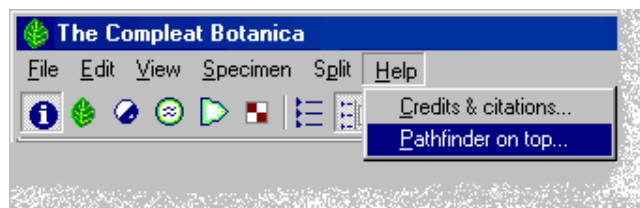
Separate Pathfinder

To access the Pathfinder documents without using The Compleat Botanica, use the Windows Start menu.

The separate window can be sized and positioned to best suit your display monitor.
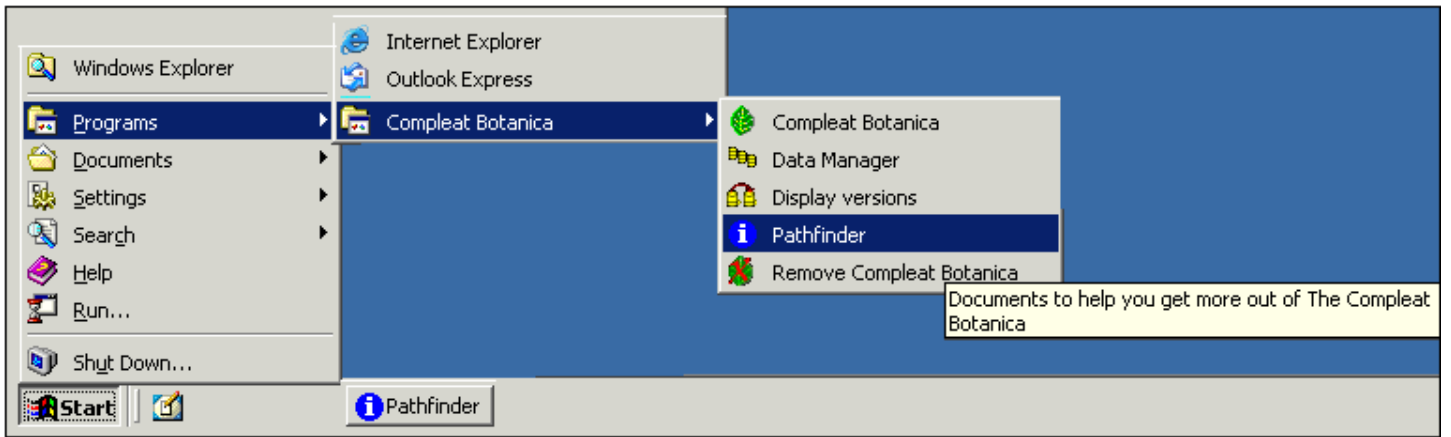
Compleat Botanica - Symbols used in these Pathfinder documents

Hypertext links within Pathfinder are accompanied by small icons to indicate the type of document to be displayed. This visual clue will give you some idea about the relevancy and location of the document.

Symbol	Description
	This indicates a link to a table of contents document.
	This indicates a link to a summary page with links to related topics.
	This indicates a link to an introductory page for a group of related topics.
	This indicates a link to a document with specific information.
	This indicates a link to a World Wide Web site. This link will only work if you are connected to the Internet.

Compleat Botanica - Pathfinder behind firewalls

If you have firewall software on your computer which restricts access to the Internet, you'll need to decide whether grant or deny this access to Pathfinder. Pathfinder uses an embedded copy of Microsoft Internet Explorer to display these documents. If you allow Internet Explorer to access the Internet, you'll also want to allow Pathfinder to have this access. On the other hand, if you're running a tightly secured computer, you'll want to deny access.

Here's what one software firewall product looks like the first time Pathfinder tries to use the Internet.
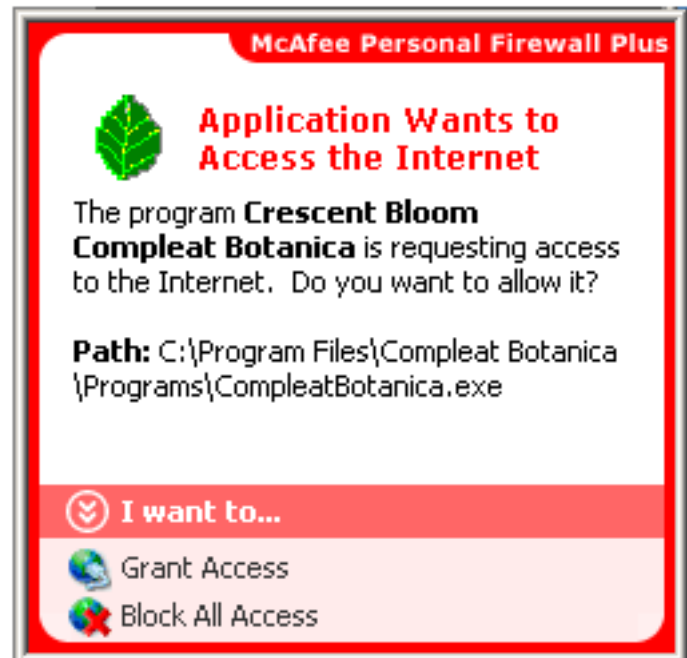
Each firewall product uses its own methods for granting and denying Internet acsess. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for granting or denying access to the Compleat Botanica and Pathfinder. The executable file for the software is typically located at `C:\Program Files\Compleat Botanica\Programs\CompleatBotanica.exe`.

Compleat Botanica - Filtering your data

Index to filtering topics

ℹ	**The Filter View**	The Filter View is where you specify which columns and rows to include or exclude from the Specimen List.
ℹ	**All about filters**	Filters allow you to see only the data you're interested in. You can use filters to include or exclude records based on many different criteria.
ℹ	**Specifying what data to include and exclude**	Each column uses a different method for specifying what to include and what to exclude. Here are some examples.
ℹ	**Choosing which columns to show**	The list of specimen can display any combination of columns. Choose which columns to include using the Filter View.

Compleat Botanica - The Filter View

The **Filter view** is where you specify which columns and rows to include or exclude from the Specimen List.

Here's a table describing some of the general features of this view:

Item	Description
Filter description	**Type any name here that describes the purpose of the filter.**
Item	**This is the list of column names to show in the Specimen List.**
Filter (Adjacent to "Item")	**This is an abbreviation of the type of records to include or exclude.**
Icons (to the left of "Item")	**Blue icons are unfiltered columns. Red icons are filtered columns.**

| Add column | | Add columns to the filter by selecting the column name in the right-hand list. |
| Remove column | | Remove columns from the filter by selecting the column name in the left-hand list. |

All columns in the database:
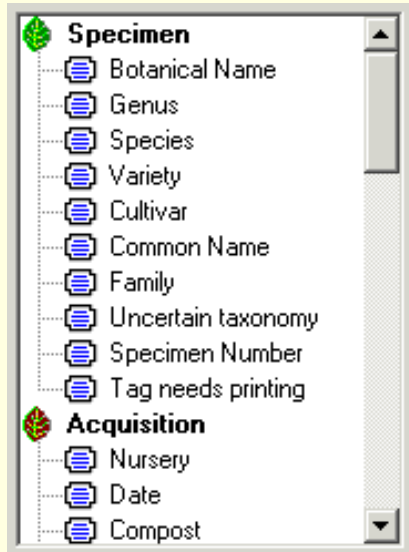
Select columns here and press the "Add column" button to add it to the filter.

Double-click an item to add it quickly.
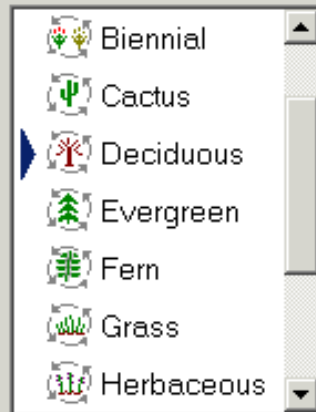
Specify what data to include or exclude in the lower portion of the view.

Each column displays a different set of possible filtering criteria here.

Compleat Botanica - All about filters

Filters allow you to see only the data you're interested in. You can use filters to include or exclude records based on many different criteria. Each column type uses it's own simple and intuitive method for including/excluding records. See the Specifying what data to include and exclude topic.

Filters are also the way to choose which columns to view in the Specimen List. See the Choosing which columns to show topic.

You can have as many customized filters as you want:
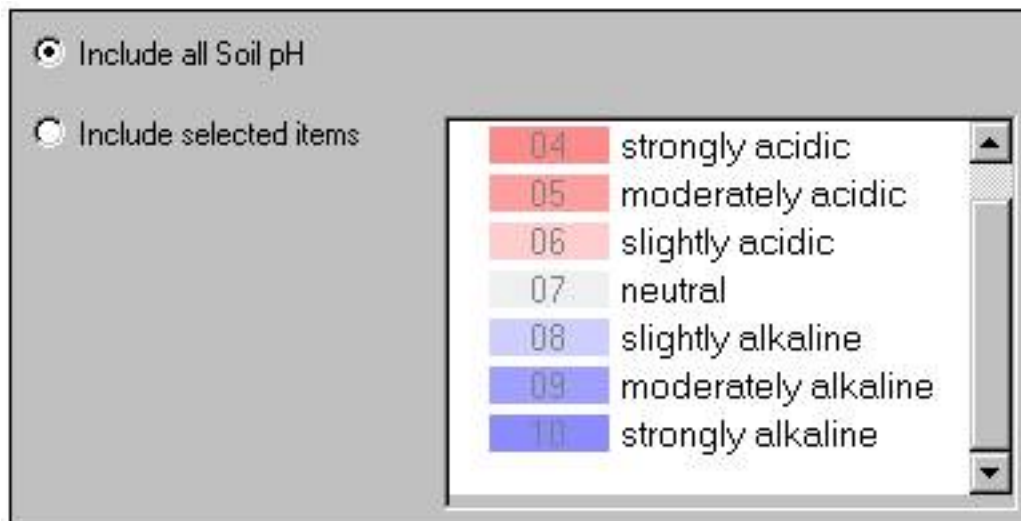
The "current filter" is defined as the filter selected in the Specimen List. In addition to determining which records are shown in the Specimen List, the current filter determines which records and which columns are included when you print reports, when you export data, and when you publish.

	Life cycle	Height	
Cotinus coggygria var. *purpure...*			
	Deciduous	15'	
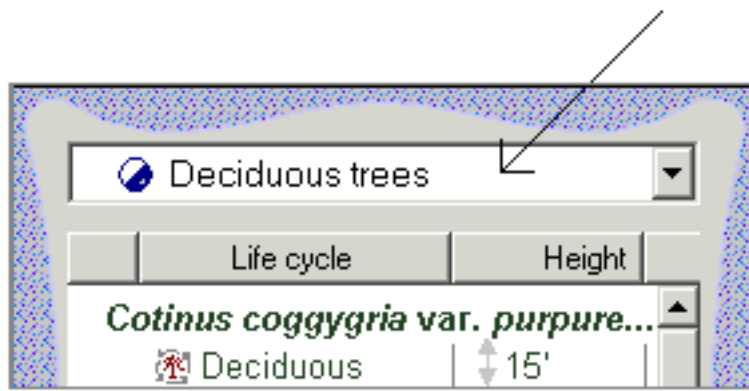
Compleat Botanica - Specifying what data to include and exclude

Each column uses a different method for specifying what to include and what to exclude. Here are some examples.
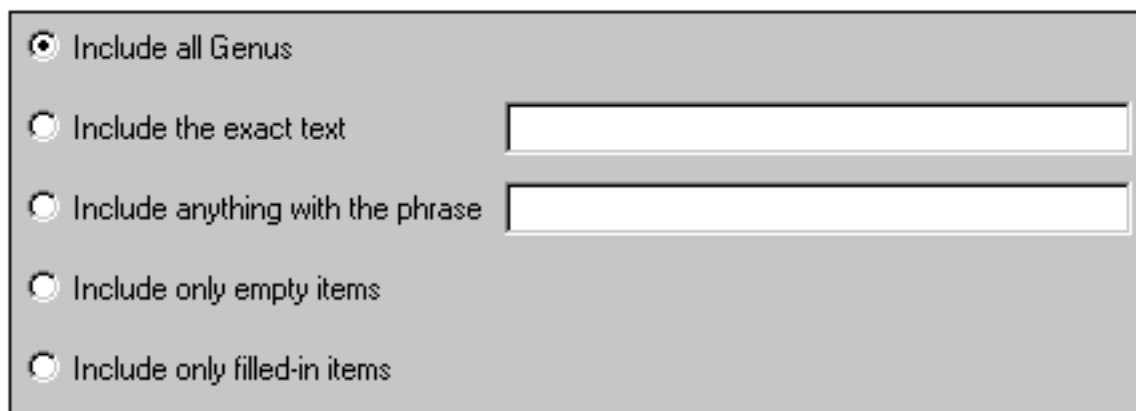
Categories allow you to pick from a customized list:
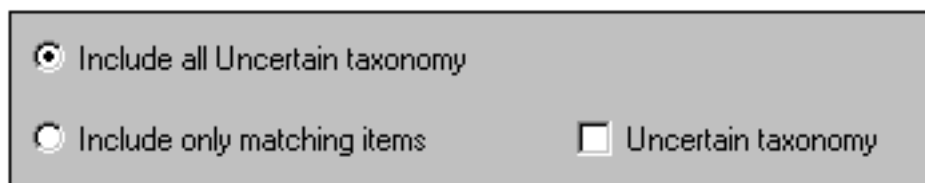
> ⦿ Include all Soil pH
>
> ○ Include selected items
>
> | 04 | strongly acidic |
> | 05 | moderately acidic |
> | 06 | slightly acidic |
> | 07 | neutral |
> | 08 | slightly alkaline |
> | 09 | moderately alkaline |
> | 10 | strongly alkaline |

Text columns are filtered with either exact or inexact matches:

> ⦿ Include all Genus
>
> ○ Include the exact text
>
> ○ Include anything with the phrase
>
> ○ Include only empty items
>
> ○ Include only filled-in items

Checkbox columns are either checked or not-checked:

> ⦿ Include all Uncertain taxonomy
>
> ○ Include only matching items   ☐ Uncertain taxonomy

Numeric columns are filtered using typical arithmetic comparison operators:

```
○ Include all Height

○ Range from  [                ]    To  [                ]

○ Expression    <
                <=
                <>
                =
                >
                >=
```

Date columns use special relational operators:

```
○ Include all Date

○ Range from  [                ]    To  [                ]

○ Expression    Before
                After
                On
                Not on
```

Date-range columns can be specified using the special date-range control:

```
○ Include all Harvest season

○ Any dates including        J  F  M  A  M  J  J  A  S  O  N  D
```

Color columns are specified by color ranges:

Height and spread are specified with the special dimension control:

All columns without filtering criteria are shown in the list with a blue symbol. Any columns used for filtering are shown with a red symbol. In this example, the "Water" column is set to include only specimen with watering needs equal to *Dry, Moist, Wet, or Well drained.*

Item	Filter	
Botanical name		
Overall spread		
Uncertain taxonomy		
Harvest season		
Leaf color		
Water	{Dry, Moist, Wet, Well drained}	

Compleat Botanica - Choosing which columns to show

The list of specimen can display any combination of columns. Choose which columns to include using the Filter View.
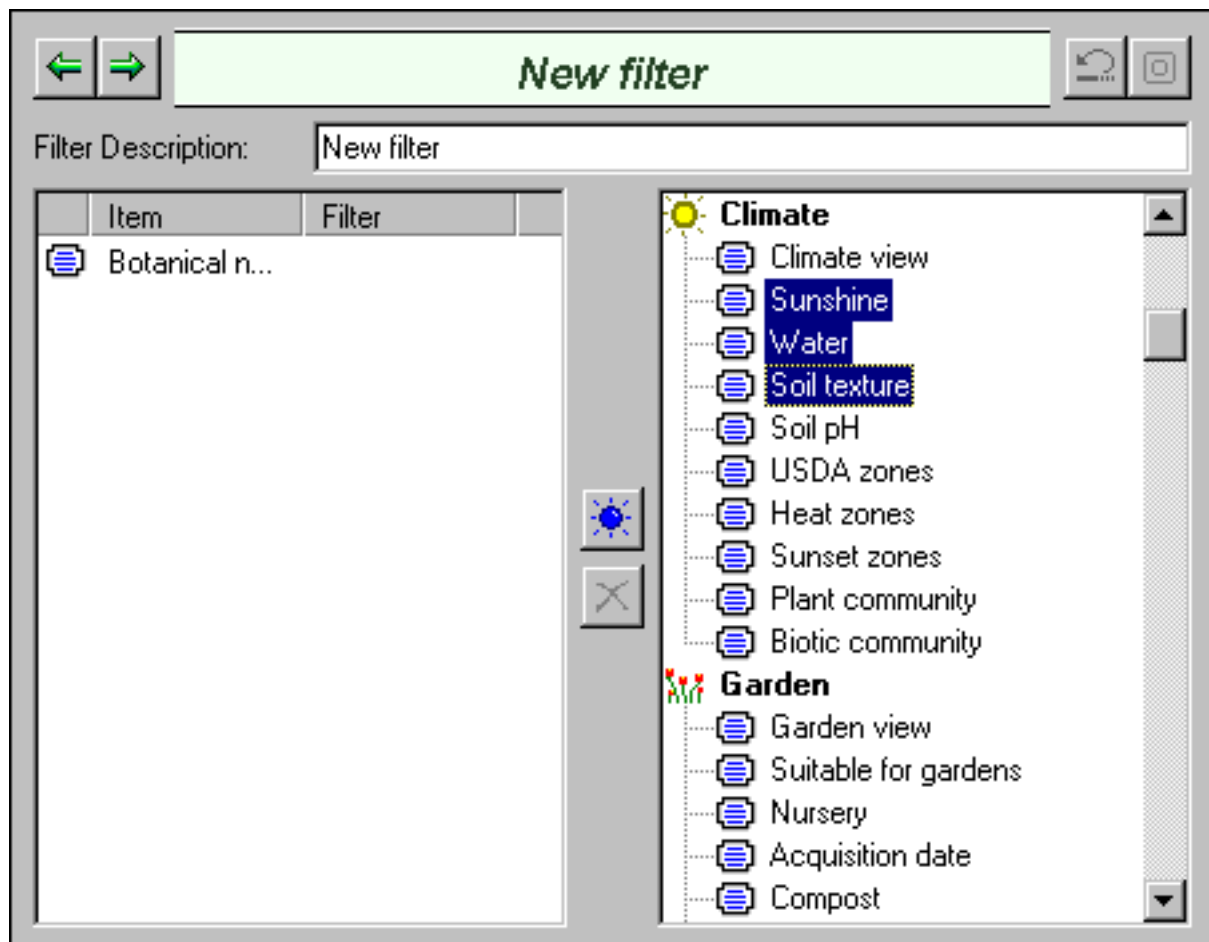
Use the right-hand side to choose which columns to include, then press the "Add" button to add those columns to the filter.

Compleat Botanica - Custom categories

Index to custom category topics

ℹ **The Category View**	The Category View is where you'll add and remove lookup values for each of the custom categories. The entries in these lists will be available in the combo-boxes of the five Specimen Views.
ℹ **Customizing your categories**	As you organize your specimen, you'll want to create special categories for the things most important to you. All of the drop-down combo-boxes can be customized to show exactly the list of categories you want.
ℹ **Setting default values for new specimen records**	If you'll be creating several new specimen records and each of them have some common characteristics, it's convenient to have the common values automatically filled in for you.
ℹ **Using codes as shortcuts in the category fields**	As you're filling in the fields for a new specimen, you can type less and save time by using category codes as shortcuts.
ℹ **Categories that allow free-form data entry**	All of the drop-down combo-boxes have their editing areas enabled to allow for free-form data entry when the standard list of categories just doesn't fit.
ℹ **How do I specify more than one best use, desirable quality or adverse quality for a specimen?**	Sometimes a single category doesn't fully describe the attributes of a specimen.

Specifying climate zone ranges

Plant hardiness and heat tolerance span a range of zones and are thus specified with a description like "Zones 06a-09b" or "AHS 06-09". The drop-down combo-boxes used to specify and display climate zones allow you to enter descriptions just like this.

Compleat Botanica - The Category View

The **Category view** is where you add and remove special values for each of the custom categories.

Item	Description
	"The selected item" Choose an existing entry from this list to modify its name, description, code, and icon/color.
	Add a new category to the list.
	Remove an existing category from the list.
Full text | Depends on climate	Type the full name of the item here.
Code | C	Enter a unique code here (from 1 to 6 characters) that will be used for fast data-entry.
☐ Default category for new specimen	Check this box and new specimen will automatically be assigned this value.
Group |	A group of items with similar concepts can be sorted in the category listings by assigning the same group name here. See for example the pre-installed items under plant parts, plant uses, and medicinal properties.
Translation |	The Latin name for this English word, or the English name for this Latin word. This field is used mostly for leaves and flower categories.

Definition

The definition of the item. Obscure botanical Latin terms are explained here.

Color/Icon

Select the icon to be associated with this item.

For color-coded categories, select a color here.

More ...

Use this button to see a full list of possible icons to assign to this category.

Compleat Botanica - Customizing your categories

The nurseries you buy from and the layout of your gardens is unique to you. As you organize your specimen, you'll want to create special categories for the things most important to you. All of the drop-down combo-boxes can be customized to show exactly the list of categories you want. Here's how.

From the Category View, select the type of category you want to customize:
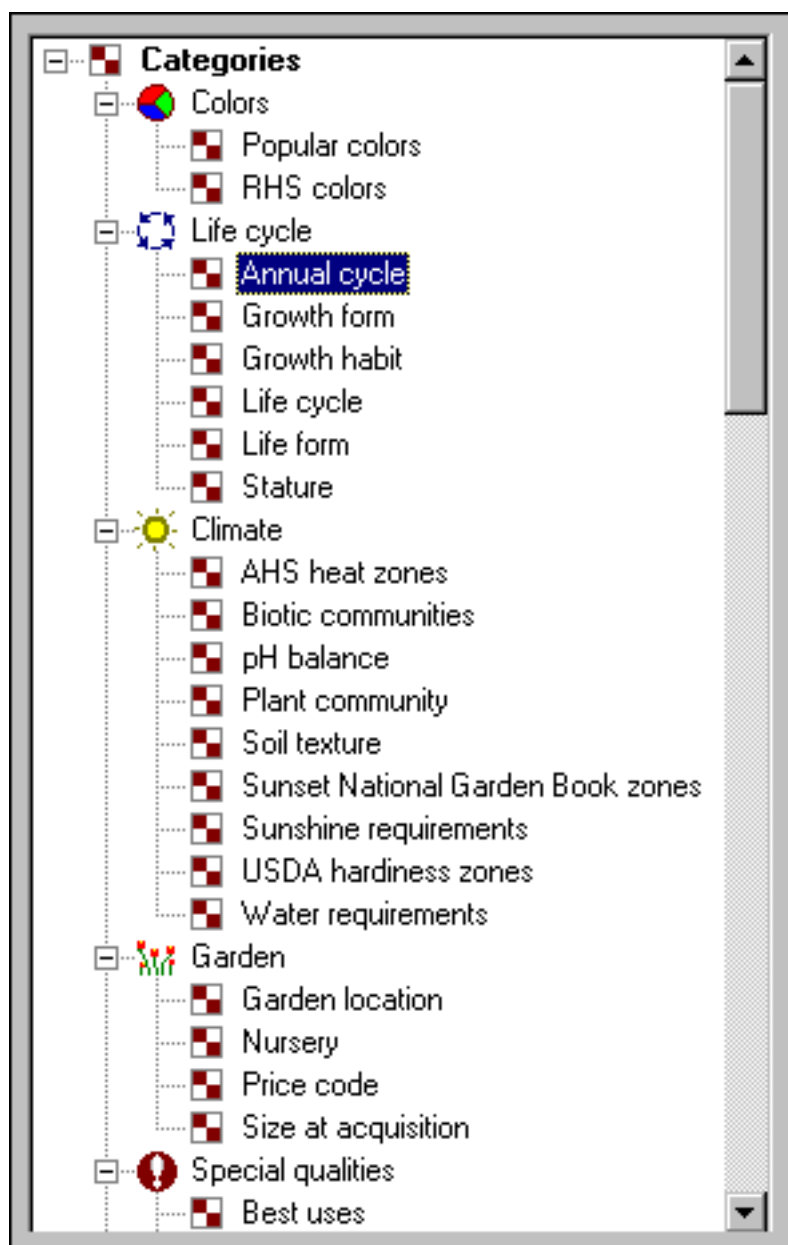
Use the **New category** and **Remove category** buttons to get just the right combination that's important to you.

The "Full text" field is what you'll see in the combo-box. The "Code" is a shortcut that can be used to quickly select the category without typing the full text. The "Color/Icon" is the picture you'll see whenever the category is selected.

Compleat Botanica - Setting default values for new specimen records

If you'll be creating several new specimen records and each of them have some common characteristics, it's convenient to have the common values automatically filled in for you. This can be done by checking the box labeled "Default category for new specimen".
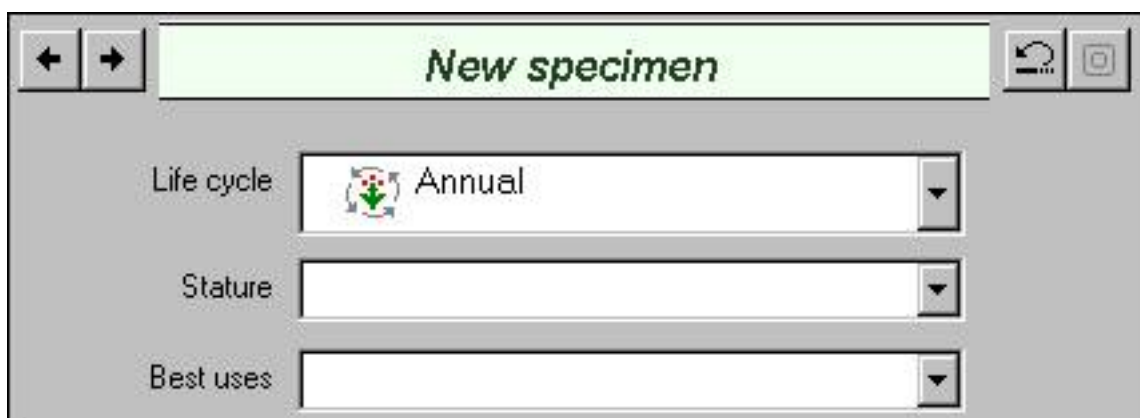
As shown in this example, all new specimen will automatically have their Life cycle set to "Annual".

Compleat Botanica - Using codes as shortcuts in the category fields

As you're filling in the fields for a new specimen, you can type less and save time by using category codes as shortcuts. Most codes are a single letter or number, although some codes can be up to 6 characters in length.

To use a code instead of typing the full text, simply type the code followed by the <Tab> key to advance to the next field. Leaving the field causes the spell-checker to be triggered which looks for the code in the list of possible categories. If found, the full text is placed in the field. If not found, the text is considered to be "free-form" text rather than a code and is left alone. The spell-checker places a red line under the free-form text to alert you -- this can be ignored if your intention was to use the free-form feature.

Life cycle	P|		Life cycle	Biennial	
Life cycle	🌿 Perennial		Life cycle	Biennial	
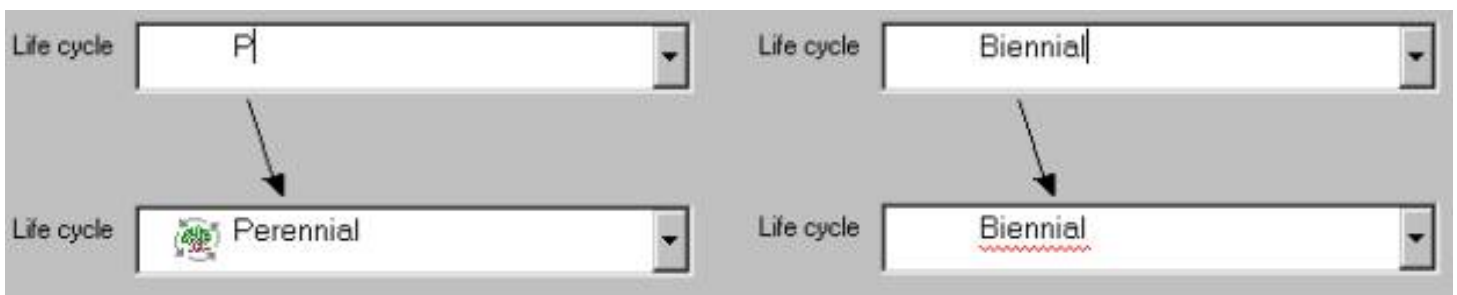
Compleat Botanica - Categories that allow free-form data entry

All of the drop-down combo-boxes have their editing areas enabled to allow for free-form data entry when the standard list of categories just doesn't fit. This flexibility allows you to use the category to store any text description, and at the same time allows you to quickly choose from a standard list when appropriate.

Here is what the **adverse qualities** category looks like when the free-form feature has been used to store a description which is not in the standard list.
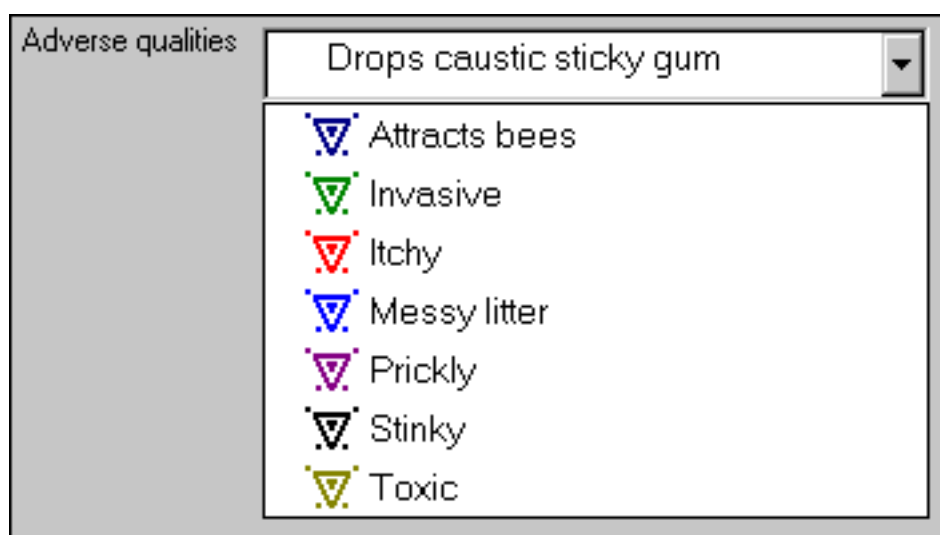
Compleat Botanica - How do I specify more than one best use, desirable quality or adverse quality for a specimen?

Sometimes a single category doesn't fully describe the attributes of a specimen. For example a plant may be good as *cut flowers* and as *dried arrangements*.

Best uses

- Between pavers
- Borders and beds
- Cut flowers
- Dried arrangements
- Fences and trellises
- Hanging baskets
- Hedges and screens
- Poolside
- Rock gardens
- Wall cover

To categorize this, use the free-form feature and type in both attributes, ignoring the spell-checker redline (it will go away the next time you view this record.)

Best uses

Cut flowers,Dried arrangements ▼

🌱 Between pavers
🌱 Borders and beds
🌱 Cut flowers
🌱 Dried arrangements
🌱 Fences and trellises
🌱 Hanging baskets
🌱 Hedges and screens
🌱 Poolside
🌱 Rock gardens
🌱 Wall cover

Compleat Botanica - Specifying climate zone ranges
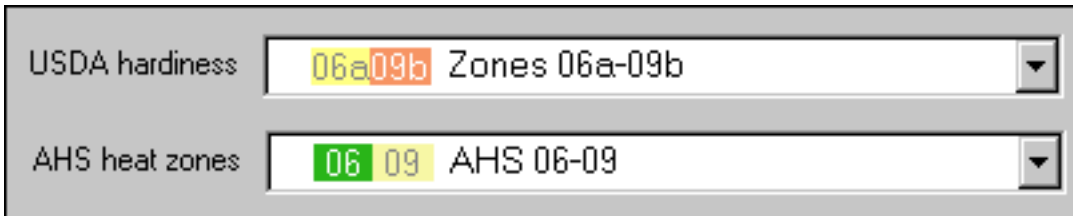
Plant hardiness and heat tolerance span a range of zones and are thus specified with a description like "Zones 06a-09b" or "AHS 06-09". The drop-down combo-boxes used to specify and display climate zones allow you to enter descriptions just like this.
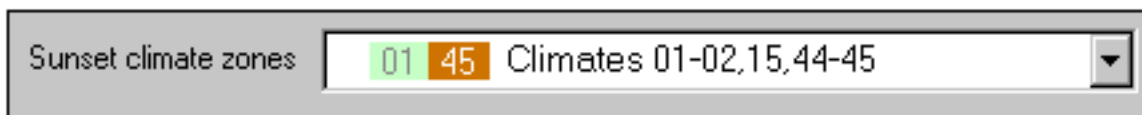
Because the drop-down list only shows the individual zones, you'll have to specify zonal ranges by typing the codes in the text-entry portion of the combo-box. The color-patches are automatically assigned when you press the <TAB> key and go to the next field.

Here's what the results will look like:

The Sunset climate zones that an individual species is adapted to are frequently discontinuous ranges. For example, the coldest climate zones would include zones 01-02, zone 15, and zones 44-45. Here's how multiple zonal ranges will look:

There are six climate fields that allow multiple codes:

Climate field

1	Plant community
2	USDA Hardiness
3	Sunset climate zones
4	AHS heat zones
5	Acceptable soil pH
6	Optimal soil texture

Compleat Botanica - Specimen

Index to specimen topics

➕ Specimen List	Index to topics about the Specimen List.
➕ Specimen Views	Index to the Specimen Views.
➕ Alphabetical index to column specifications	Alphabetical index to column specifications.

Compleat Botanica - Specimen List

Index to Specimen List topics

ℹ️	**Getting the most out of the Specimen List**	The list of specimen has many features. Here's a good document describing how to get the most out of the Specimen List.
ℹ️	**Sorting the list of specimen**	Sorting the list of specimen is easy, simply click on the column heading of the field to be sorted.
ℹ️	**Adjusting the specimen list column width**	If the width of a column is not quite right you can adjust it with a "mouse-drag" operation.
ℹ️	**Changing the order of columns in the specimen list**	If you want to reorder the columns use a "mouse-drag" operation.
ℹ️	**What can I do with the multiple-selection feature?**	The Specimen List allows you to select more than one record at a time.

Compleat Botanica **- Getting the most out of the Specimen List**

Columns are displayed in a rich and intuitive manner.

The list of specimen has these features:

- Customized filters allow you to include only specimen matching your criteria
- Any number of columns can be included
- Sorting is accomplished by clicking a column heading
- Column widths are adjusted with a mouse-drag operation
- Columns can be rearranged with a simple drag-and-drop mouse action
- Font size can be set from small to large
- Colors schemes can be changed for easier viewing
- Categories are shown with their iconic pictures
- Checkboxes, date ranges, and height & spread are shown using intuitive pictures

- **Multiple selection** allows you to choose what data to work with

The current filter specifies which records to include and which columns to show.

Compleat Botanica - Sorting the list of specimen

Sorting the list of specimen is easy, simply click on the column heading of the field to be sorted. Click a second time to sort in the reverse direction. To remove sorting, click a third time.

Nursery	Date	Size	One of many	△ Garden	Compost
Campanula					
🏠🌲 Van Winden's (N	25-Apr-2000	🏺 6 pack	1		☐
Pinus radiata					
	15-Jul-1998	🏺 16 years	30	🌿 back fence	☐
Prunus yedoensis 'Akebono'					
🏠🌲 Home Depot	25-Mar-2000	🏺 15 gallon	1	🌿 back yard	☐
Magnolia ashei 'Betty'					
🏠🌲 Sumigawa Nurse	25-Mar-2000	🏺 5 gallon	1	🌿 back yard	☐
Acer palmatum 'Butterfly'					
🏠🌲 Empire Nursery	25-Mar-2000	🏺 5 gallon	1	🌿 back yard	☐
Cercis canadensis 'Forest Pansy'					
🏠🌲 Harmony Farm S	27-Mar-2000	🏺 bare root	1	🌿 back yard	☐
Cercis canadensis var. texensis 'Oklahoma'					
🏠🌲 Harmony Farm S	27-Mar-2000	🏺 bare root	1	🌿 back yard	☐
Cosmos astrosanguineus 'Chocolate'					
	15-Aug-1999	🏺 4 inch	2	🌿 Barn entrance	☐
Alstroemeria					
🏠🌲 Jack Frazer	1-Sep-1999	🏺 1 gallon	3	🌿 Barn entrance	☐

To sort by more than one column simply follow the same three-click cycle: 1) first click sorts the column ascending, 2) second click sorts the column descending, 3) third click removes the sorting.

	⚠ Desirable qualities		⚠ Nature Notes

Note that the sorting sequence is case-insensitive, so "B" and "b" are intermingled. Empty fields are always grouped together at the top (when sorting down) or the bottom (when sorting up).

Compleat Botanica - Adjusting the specimen list column width

If the width of a column is not quite right you can adjust it with a "mouse-drag" operation. Just position the mouse over the right-hand edge of a column heading, press down on the mouse, drag left or right, and release the mouse.

Compleat Botanica - Changing the order of columns in the specimen list

If you want to reorder the columns use a "mouse-drag" operation. Position the mouse over the center of the column to be repositioned, press down on the mouse, move the entire column left or right, and release the mouse.

△ Garden	Compost	Compost	Notes
Acer palmatum var. atropurpureum			
Herbaceous garden	☐		
Leucanthemum x superbum 'Alaska'			
Herbaceous garden	☐		
Buddleja davidii 'Harlequin'			
Herbaceous garden	☐		

Compost	△ Garden	Notes
Acer palmatum var. atropurpureum		
☐	Herbaceous garden	
Leucanthemum x superbum 'Alaska'		
☐	Herbaceous garden	
Buddleja davidii 'Harlequin'		
☐	Herbaceous garden	

Compleat Botanica - What can I do with the multiple-selection feature?

The Specimen List allows you to select more than one record at a time. The selected records become the target of the next Cut, Copy, Delete, Print, Publish or Export operation.

Selecting multiple items in the list is simple -- just select the first item of interest with the mouse, then press the <SHIFT> key on the keyboard, and finally select the last item of interest with the mouse. This method allows you to select adjacent items in the list. To select non-adjacent items, hold down the <CTRL> key on the keyboard and individually select each item of interest.
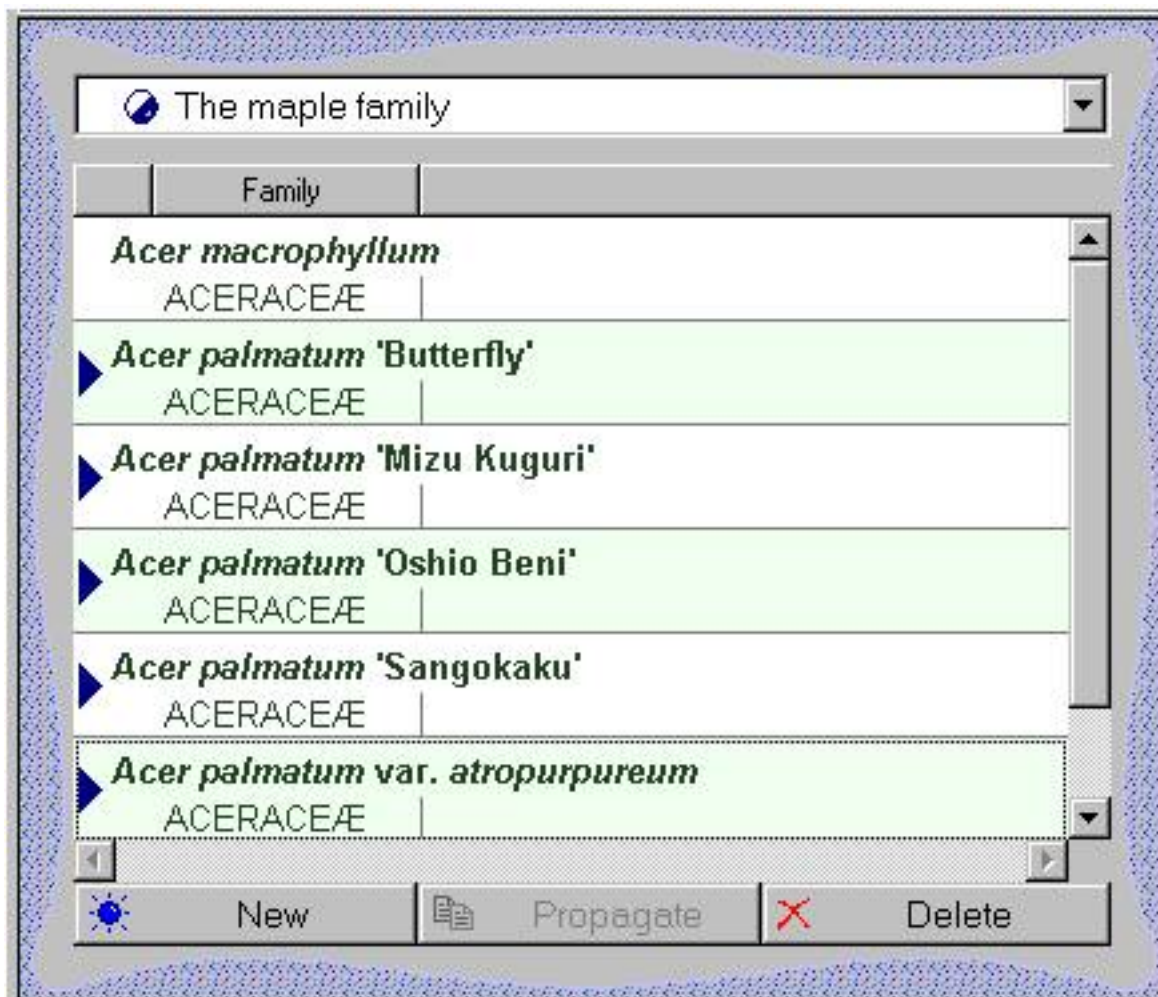
Compleat Botanica - Specimen Views

The **Specimen views** include 17 data entry views for manipulating an individual specimen's properties, as well as two special views for showing **Abstracts** and for acting as an Internet **Gateway**.

Index to the Specimen Views

Abstract view	The Abstract View is the place where all of your data for a single plant is brought together.	
Identification view	The Identification View is used for all entries to identify the botanical, common and family names of the plant.	
Life cycle view	The Life cycle view is used to describe the general stature, growth habit, and life cycle of the specimen.	
Climate view	The Climate View is used by nurseries, gardeners, farmers, and horticulturists to identify the optimal growing conditions for a plant.	
Garden view	The Garden View is used by botanical gardens and arboretum as well as by home gardeners, nurseries with stock plants and horticulturists with experimental beds to record the location and acquisition-related information for a plant.	

ℹ️ **Special qualities view**	The Special qualities view is used by nurseries and gardeners to classify the ornamental properties, best uses and desirable qualities of a species.	
ℹ️ **Adverse factors view**	The Adverse factors view is used by field guides, agricultural extensions and medicinal herbalists to record the dangerous properties of this plant.	
ℹ️ **Herbal medicine view**	The Herbal medicine view is used to record the traditional and folkloric medicinal properties of this species.	
ℹ️ **Traditional uses view**	The Traditional uses view provides special items for recording traditional and contemporary uses of this plant.	
ℹ️ **Cultivation view**	The Cultivation View is used by crop growers to record best practices for good yields.	
ℹ️ **Nutrition view**	The Nutrition View is used to record the fruit/nut/vegetable/flavoring characteristics of edible plants.	
ℹ️ **Biodiversity view**	The Biodiversity View is used to record the historical and present geographical distribution of this species and its classification in native plant listings.	
ℹ️ **Leaf view**	The Leaf View is used by botanists, registration authorities, and compilers of regional flora to precisely identify the leaves, leaflets, and their arrangement.	

ℹ	Flower view	The Flower View is used by botanists, registration authorities, and compilers of regional floras to precisely identify the flowers and inflorescences.	✿ ✓
ℹ	Features view	The Features View is used by botanists to describe the key characteristics of this plant other than leaves and flowers.	⊞ ✓
ℹ	Horticulture view	The Horticulture View is used by registration authorities and horticulturists to record the genesis of a new botanical variety.	⚥ ✓
ℹ	Herbarium view	The Herbarium View is used by herbaria to organize their collections of dried plant material.	Ω ✓
ℹ	Sketch view	The Sketch View shows a picture or drawing of the specimen (or herbaria sheet) if it exists.	▦ ✓
ℹ	Gateway view	The Gateway View provides an easy view port to World Wide Web pages of plant-related information.	🌍 ✓

Compleat Botanica - **Abstract view**

Specimen Views # 1 [Next]

The **Abstract View** is the place where all of your data for a single plant is brought together. With this view you can choose what data you want to see and how it should be formatted.

Heat tolerance

Identification

Genus Silybum Species marianum Variety Cultivar Common names blessed milk thistle holy thistle Family Specimen number S11415 Uncertain taxonomy ☐ no Data source BtrflyCa p55;BtrflyCa p71;BtrflyCa p75;HtZn p169;Xeri p278

Life cycle

Life form Terrestrial Life cycle Annual Life span 1 year Annual cycle Not applicable Stature Various Growth form Not applicable Growth habit Various Overall height 3' 11" Overall spread

Climate

Sunshine Various Water Moist Optimal soil texture 00 Various Acceptable soil pH 07 Neutral USDA hardiness 07a 09b USDA zones 07a-09b AHS heat zones 05 01 Heat zones 05-01 Sunset climate zones 00 Not classified Plant community 00 Not classified Biotic community

This snapshot was taken with the following customizations:

- Single template: "All columns by section -- text, graphics labels"
- Color scheme: "Salmon & dill (bold)"
- Font face: "Web classic"
- Font size: 10
- Logo: "none"

For more customizations see the note <u>How do I customize the Abstract View?</u>
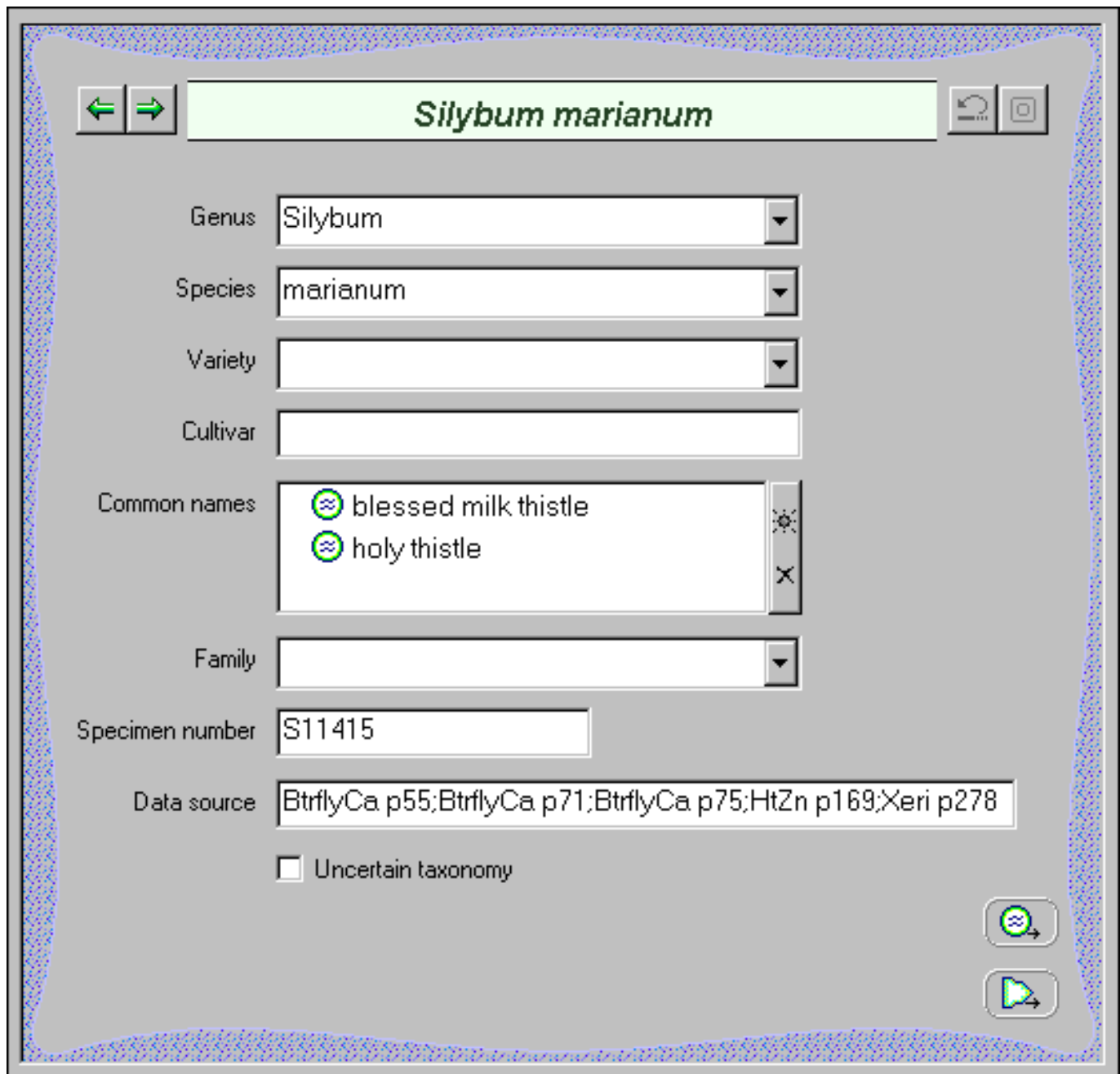
Compleat Botanica - Identification view

Specimen Views # 2 [<u>Back</u>] [<u>Next</u>]

The **Identification View** is used for all entries to identify the botanical, common and family names of the plant.

	Item	Notes
1	Genus	The first letter must be capitalized.
2	Species	All lower case letters. This may also be the keyword "ssp." to indicate that this record refers to all species of this genus.
3	Variety	The horticultural variety -or- the subspecies if prefixed by the keyword "spp."
4	Cultivar	The cultivar name will automatically appear in single quotes and in a non-italicized font. Do not add the single quotes yourself.
5	Common names	These names are automatically supplied when you type in the genus, species and variety.
6	Family	This name is automatically supplied when you type in the genus.
7	Specimen number	A consecutive number to help herbariums to track individual specimen.
8	Data source	A reference to where the data for this plant was originally obtained.
9	Uncertain taxonomy	Automatically checked if the genus and species cannot be found in the taxonomic checklist. If you are sure this is a valid name, you can override this checkmark.
10		Go to the vernacular name details.
11		Go to the taxonomic details.

Compleat Botanica - Life cycle view

Specimen Views # 3 [Back] [Next]

The **Life cycle view** is used to describe the general stature, growth habit, and life cycle of the specimen.
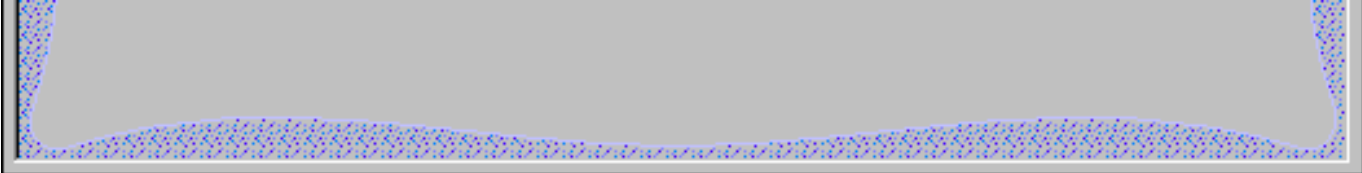
	Item	Notes
1	Life form	This is usually "terrestrial" for most angiosperms and gymnosperms. Use this item to classify plants as bryophyte (mosses, liverworts, hornworts), epiphyte (air plants), or aquatic (plants living in water).
2	Life cycle	Describes in layman's terms how a plant progresses from germination to death, something like: annual, biennial or perennial.
3	Life span	The typical longevity of the plant. This should be one year for annuals, two years for biennials, and a range of years (two or more) for perennials.
4	Annual cycle	Defines whether this is a deciduous or evergreen species. This is only applicable to perennials.
5	Stature	In gardener's terms, what type of plant is this: tree, shrub, vine, groundcover, flower, etc.
6	Growth form	If this is a tree or shrub how does its visual form appear from a distance: dense, compact, pyramidal, and so forth.
7	Growth habit	If this is a groundcover, vine or flower does it grow upright without support or does it tend to stay close to the ground: ascending, climbing, mound forming, spreading, and the like.
8	Overall height	How tall is a typical specimen at maturity.
9	Overall spread	How wide is a typical specimen at maturity. This is often referred to by nursery labels as "planting distance" or "spacing".

Compleat Botanica - Climate view

The **Climate View** is used by nurseries, gardeners, farmers, and horticulturists to identify the optimal growing conditions for a plant.

	Item	Notes
1	Sunshine	Optimal lighting requirements to prevent scorching and to promote healthy growth.
2	Water	Best moisture conditions for terrestrial plants. A good indicator of a plant's tolerance to the extremes of drought and over saturation.
3	Optimal soil texture	The best type of soil for providing a support base and for retaining/ releasing available water.
4	Acceptable soil pH	An indicator of a plant's suitability to acidic conditions.
5	USDA hardiness	The United States Department of Agriculture's hardiness zones in which this plant is known to thrive. This range of zones indicates both the lowest temperature acceptable for survival as well as the plant's requirement for a cold dormant period.
6	AHS heat zones	The American Horticultural Society's heat zones in which this plant is known to survive. The lower value indicates a plant's minimum requirement for summer heat. The upper value indicates a plant's maximum tolerance for summer heat.
7	Sunset climate zones	The Sunset Books' climate zones in which this plant does best. This set of zones may be a discontinuous range, for example: "Zones 4-9, 14-24".
8	Plant community	One or more of the 29 plant communities defined by Munz, which indicates the native environment in which the species is naturally found growing.
9	Biotic community	One or more of the plant communities defined by Brown, Reichenbacher, and Franson which indicates the species' range of natural occurrence in the environment.

Compleat Botanica - Garden view

Specimen Views # 5 [Back] [Next]

The **Garden View** is used by botanical gardens and arboretum as well as by home gardeners, nurseries with stock plants and horticulturists with experimental beds to record the location and acquisition-related information for a plant.

Narcissus 'King Alfred'

☑ Suitable for gardens

Nursery 🏠🌲 Harmony Farm Supply ▼

Date Sep 17, 2001   ☐ Compost

Size at acquisition 🪣 Bulb ▼

Quantity 15

Garden location 🌱 Summerfield ▼

Price Code ▼   Price .00

Garden notes

Full sun is best for growing *Narcissus* 'King Alfred'. It likes moist, well drained soils.

Largest of bulbs ideal for planting with younger children. Not eaten by gophers.

B *I* U 🍃   ▼   Az Verdana ▼   •• 10 points ▼

B *I* <u>U</u> 🌿 | 🟥 ▼ | Az Verdana ▼ | •●10 points ▼

	Item	Notes
1	Suitable for gardens	This should be checked to indicate that the species has some ornamental garden value -- color, fragrance, flowers, form, etc.
2	Nursery	From which nursery (or friend/neighbor/relative) was this plant obtained.
3	Date	The original date of acquisition.
4	Compost	Checked to indicate that the plant has died.
5	Size at acquisition	The original size of the plant when it was added to this collection.
6	Quantity	Use this item to indicate how many plants of this species are in this collection.
7	Garden location	Where is this specimen planted -- the name of the garden or the approximate location where it can be found.
8	Price code	For commercial tradesmen, an indicator of this plant's sales price.
9	Price	The buying/selling price for this plant.
10	Garden notes	A word processing-like note for highlighting the ornamental value of this plant, its climatic suitability, and some of its traditional uses.

Compleat Botanica - Special qualities view

The **Special qualities view** is used by nurseries and gardeners to classify the ornamental properties, best uses and desirable qualities of a species.
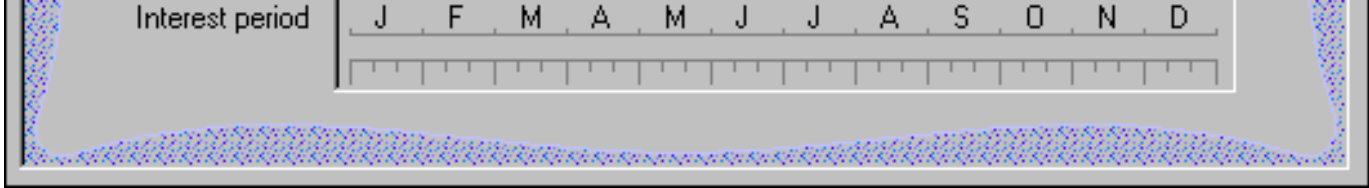
	Item	Notes
1	Tolerates drought	Checked when the plant can survive dry spells without damage.
2	Tolerates high humidity	Checked when the plant can survive prolonged summer periods of very high humidity.
3	Tolerates seaside conditions	Checked when the plant can live in the windy, salty, foggy conditions found along the coastal belts.
4	Insect resistant	Checked if this variety is more notably insect resistant than its common form.
5	Disease resistant	Checked if this variety is typically free of the diseases that trouble similar members of the genus.
6	Deer resistant	Checked if this plant is not normally eaten by foraging deer.
7	Best uses	A classification of where this plant is often used in the landscape trade.
8	Symbiosis	Other life forms (plants, insects, and more) that live in a symbiotic relationship with this species.
9	Attracts butterflies	Checked if this plant is often visited by butterflies for its nectar or as a host plant.
10	Attracts hummingbirds	Checked if this plant has a rich supply of nectar available in red-colored, funnel-shaped flowers that are accessible by hummingbirds.

11	Autumn foliage	Checked if this is a deciduous tree or shrub with notably colorful leaves in the fall.
12	Colorful berries	Checked if this plant has ornamental berries in the autumn and winter.
13	Desirable qualities	A classifier to identify the plant's most desirable quality. The custom categories that you create for this item should reflect your personal/professional interest.
14	Other interest	An all-purpose classifier. Create your own categories to organize plants according to their special interest to you.
15	Other interest color	An all purpose classifier for colors. The semantics of this item are entirely up to you.
16	Other interest period	An all purpose seasonal item (or date range item). Use this item either independent of or in conjunction with the "Other interest" item.

Compleat Botanica - Adverse factors view

The **Adverse factors view** is used by field guides, agricultural extensions and medicinal herbalists to record the dangerous properties of this plant.

Cytisus scoparius

Common pests [   ]

Poisonous parts
☒ Whole plant

Poisonous indications
It contains a cytisine alkaloid which causes abdominal pain and diarrhea and a sparteine alkaloid which causes

☐ Internal poison   ☑ Livestock poison

☐ Dermatologic poison   ☐ Mechanical injury

Hay fever pollen   [02] Light ▾

Hay fever season   J F M A M J J A S O N D

Adverse qualities [▾]

	Item	Notes
1	Common pests	This is a list of fungi, insects and larger animals that commonly attack this plant.
2	Poisonous parts	The parts of the plant that contain poisonous constituents.
3	Poisonous indications	A description of the toxic elements found in the plant.
4	Internal poison	Checked if this plant can cause illness or death when ingested.
5	Dermatologic poison	Checked if this plant can cause skin rashes or if it can trigger phototoxic hyperactivity.
6	Livestock poison	Checked if this plant should be kept out of pastures used by grazing farm animals.
7	Mechanical injury	Checked if this plant contains sharp points that easily puncture the skin.
8	Hay fever pollen	A indicator of the relative quantity of pollen produced and carried on the wind.
9	Hay fever season	The typical time of year when this plant bears wind-borne pollen.
10	Adverse qualities	An all purpose classifier to identify the undesirable qualities of this plant.

Compleat Botanica - Herbal medicine view

The **Herbal medicine view** is used to record the traditional and folkloric medicinal properties of this species.

Salvia sclarea

Medicinal properties

- ♀ antispasmodic
- ♀ carminative
- ♀ estrogenic

☑ Has medicinal uses

☐ Do not self-administer

☑ Do not use if pregnant

☐ Legally restricted

Toxicity precautions

Do not take essential oil internally.

Medicinal parts

- ☒ Aerial parts
- ☒ Seeds
- ☒ Essential oil

Medicinal notes

Salvia sclarea is used as a traditional herbal remedy. It's used as an antispasmodic, a carminative and an estrogenic. Europe sage (sometimes called clary sage and clear-eye sage) should not be used by anyone who is pregnant. The aerial parts together with the seeds and the essential oil are considered to

Salvia sclarea is used as a traditional herbal remedy. It's used as an antispasmodic, a carminative and an estrogenic. Europe sage (sometimes called clary sage and clear-eye sage) should not be used by anyone who is pregnant. The aerial parts together with the seeds and the essential oil are considered to be the valuable parts by the herbalist. Do not take essential oil internally.

B *I* <u>U</u> 🍃 | [green bar ▼] | Az Verdana ▼ | •• 10 point ▼

	Item	Notes
1	Medicinal properties	This is a list of the ways in which this plant has been used to treat illness and to promote health.
2	Medicinal parts	The parts of the plant that are used when preparing infusions, tinctures, creams, herbal teas, and so forth.
3	Has medicinal uses	An all purpose item used to indicate that this plant has some traditional healing properties.
4	Do not self administer	Checked when this plant is considered dangerous enough that only qualified herbalists should consider using it.
5	Do not use if pregnant	Checked when this plant has abortifacient properties or is otherwise potentially harmful to the developing fetus.
6	Legally restricted	Checked when the use or possession of this plant is subject to legal restrictions in one or more countries.
7	Toxicity precautions	A description of the possible toxic effect of the use of this plant.
8	Medicinal notes	A word processing-like note used to describe the beneficial uses of this plant.

Compleat Botanica - Traditional uses view

The **Traditional uses view** provides special items for recording traditional and contemporary uses of this plant.

	Item	Notes
1	Parts used	The parts of the plant which have been used in historical times or are still used in the present time.
2	Traditional uses	A list of how this plant has been used by indigenous people. Uses such as food, medicine and fabric dyes are not included here.
3	Contemporary uses	A list of how this plant is presently used in commercial enterprises. (Food, medicine and landscaping are not included in this list.)
4	Fragrance	A general description of the odors produced by the plant's flowers, leaves, roots and bark.
5	Fragrance parts	A list of which plant parts are fragrant.
6	Fragrance intensity	The relative strength of this plant's smell.
7	Fragrance category	A classification scheme for placing similar smelling plants into easily recognizable groups.
8	Dye parts	The parts of the plant traditionally used for fabric dyes.
9	Dye color	The colors produced in the dyer's vat. When multiple colors are listed, they are made possible through the use of different plant parts or different mordants.

Compleat Botanica - Cultivation view

The **Cultivation View** is used by crop growers to record best practices for good yields.

Physalis pruinosa

Propagule

- Seed

Pollination method

- Self fertile

Planting style

- Sprawling

Crop spacing
0 1 2 3 4 5'

Row spacing
0 1 2 3 4 5'

Cold frame

Planting period
J F M A M J J A S O N D

Harvesting period
J F M A M J J A S O N D

Frost tolerance — 02 Tender

Heat requirement — 02 Warm

Fertilizer — K+ Potassium

Time to harvest 75 to 90 days

	Item	Notes
1	Propagule	A list of the methods typically used to propagate this plant.
2	Pollination method	For fruits and nuts, an indicator of whether or not cross-pollination is required to set fruit.
3	Planting style	The usual way of arranging crops for easy planting, tending, and harvesting.
4	Crop spacing	The typical distance between adjacent plants for optimal use of space without sacrificing sunshine and water needs.
5	Row spacing	For orchards and crops arranged in rows, the distance between adjacent rows for optimal yields.
6	Cold frame	The period of time that young seedlings should be kept in a cold frame before setting out in the spring.
7	Planting period	The best period of time for planting taking into consideration a plant's tenderness to frost and its need for sunlight.
8	Harvesting period	The usual time frame for expecting the harvest to be ready when the guidelines for "planting period" are followed.
9	Frost tolerance	The relative tenderness or hardiness of a plant and its susceptibility to succumbing to frost.
10	Heat requirement	The relative need for hot summer days in order to produce good-sized and flavorful produce.
11	Fertilizer	The best type of fertilizer to apply for higher yields.

| 12 | Time to harvest | The number of days between planting and the first available harvest. |

Compleat Botanica - Nutrition view

The **Nutrition View** is used to record the fruit/nut/vegetable/flavoring characteristics of edible plants.

Actinidia kolomikta

☑ Is Edible

Culinary uses
- ☒ Fresh
- ☒ Canned
- ☒ Alcohol

Nutritional value
- C   Vitamin C

Edible parts
- ☒ Fruit

Description of edible parts

yellow

Flavor / Texture

has the classic kiwifruit interior but is sweeter and has smooth edible skins (smaller than A. arguta)

	Item	Notes
1	Is edible	Checked if this plant contains some edible parts.
2	Culinary uses	A list of the usual ways in which this plant's foodstuff is prepared and stored.
3	Nutritional value	A list of the notable vitamins, minerals, trace elements and proteins found in this plant.
4	Edible parts	A list of the parts of the plant used for food.
5	Description of edible parts	The size, color and shape of the fruit or other edible portion of the plant.
6	Flavor / texture	The taste and feel of the fruit or other edible part.

Compleat Botanica - Biodiversity view

The **Biodiversity View** is used to record the historical and present geographical distribution of this species and its classification in native plant listings.

Betula papyrifera

FESA listing

IUCN red list

Native status

Exotic status

Noxious weed

☑ Naturalscape

☐ Wildflower

☐ Tentative listing

Wetland indicator

Wetland classification

Geographic origin

the Canadian prairies

Distribution range

Northern US

CA
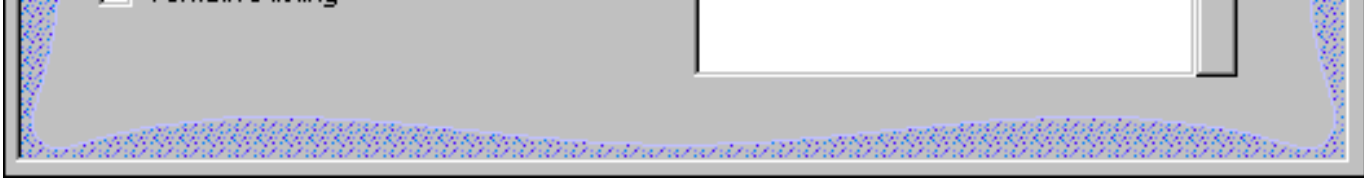
	Item	Notes
1	FESA listing	Used for species that are included on the current listing based on the United States Federal Endangered Species Act of 1973.
2	IUCN red list	Used for species that are included on the 1994 IUCN red list published by the UNEP World Conservation Monitoring Centre.
3	Native status	An indicator used with regional flora to classify a plant as native, indigenous or endemic.
4	Exotic status	An indicator used with regional flora to classify a plant as alien, exotic or invasive.
5	Noxious weed	An indicator used by state agricultural agencies to identify the potential threat a non-native species poses to the local economy.
6	Naturalscape	Checked if this plant is found along roadsides, open fields and other non-cultivated areas and is not normally considered a "wildflower". This is a non-pejorative word for "a common weed".
7	Wildflower	Checked if this plant is found along roadsides, open fields and other non-cultivated areas but has enough inherent beauty to be considered ornamental.
8	Tentative listing	Checked if the "FESA listing", "IUCN red list", or "Noxious weed" classification is tentative awaiting further documentary evidence.
9	Wetland indicator	The wetland indicator represents the estimated probability of a species occurring in wetlands versus non-wetlands in a region of study.
10	Wetland classification	A list of estuarine, lacustrine, marine, palustrine and riverine communities where this species is natively found.

11	Geographic origin	The places where this plant is thought to have originated from. Through several millennia of mankind's efforts this record is fairly obscure.
12	Distribution range	The places where this plant is commonly found in the wild today.

Compleat Botanica - Leaf view

The **Leaf View** is used by botanists, registration authorities, and compilers of regional flora to precisely identify the leaves, leaflets, and their arrangement.

Begonia x semperflorens-coltorum

Overall leaf length

0   1   2   3   4   1/32"

Overall leaf width

0   1   2   3   4   1/32"

Compound

Number of leaflets   **Arrangement**

Leaflet length

0   1   2   3   4   1/32"

Leaflet width

0   1   2   3   4   1/32"

Color   bronze,green

Incision

Vernation

Venation

Shape

Hair

Apex

Polish

Base

Texture

Margin

Variegation   Variegated

	Item	Notes
1	Overall leaf length	For simple leaves, this is the typical length from base to tip. For compound leaves, this is the typical length of the full compound leaf.
2	Overall leaf width	For simple leaves, this is the typical width across the widest portion of the leaf. For compound leaves, this is the typical width of the full compound leaf.
3	Compound	This is the keyword *simple* for simple leaves. For compound leaves this is variously one of the *compound* or *pinnate* choices.
4	Number of leaflets	For compound leaves only. This is the number of leaflets per leaf. This value may be a simple number, like "5", or a range of values like "11-15".
5	Arrangement	A description of how the leaflets are arranged in relationship to each other -- something like *alternate, opposite, whorled*, etc.
6	Leaflet length	For compound leaves only. This is the typical length of a single leaflet from base to tip.
7	Leaflet width	For compound leaves only. This is the typical width of a single leaflet across its widest part.
8	Color	The color(s) of the leaves.
9	Vernation	A description of how the young leaves are arranged before the bud opens. Many possibilities such as *convolute, contorted, rovolute, wrinkled*, and more.
10	Shape	The overall appearance of a leaf's shape -- possible values include: *crescent-shaped, fiddle-shaped, halbert-shaped, heart-shaped, kidney-shaped, needle-shaped, sword-shaped*, and many more.
11	Apex	The appearance of the leaf tip. Examples include: *blunt, hooked, mucronate, or retuse.*

12	Base	The appearance of the leaf base where it attaches to the petiole. Possibilities might be *attenuate, cordate, hastate, truncate*, and more.
13	Margin	A description of the type of serration along the outer edges of the leaf. Might be something like: *curled, gnawed, crenated, sawed, toothed,* etc.
14	Incision	For deeply cut leaves, this is a description of how the divisions appear -- something like *lobed, palmate, split,* and so forth.
15	Venation	A description of the pattern of veins within the leaf. Examples include: *divided, reticulated, pedate, peltate, ribbed,* and more.
16	Hair	A description of the *downy, hairy, silky, spiny, velvety, or woolly* covering on the leaves.
17	Polish	A description of the particulate covering on the leaves -- possibilities include: *dewy, dusty, greasy, powdery, slimy,* etc.
18	Texture	A description of the leaf's surface texture -- *leathery, papery, spongy, waxy,* etc.
19	Variegation	The location and appearance of discolorations and other markings on the leaves: *marbled, painted, spotted, striped, variegated,* and so forth.

Compleat Botanica - Flower view

The **Flower View** is used by botanists, registration authorities, and compilers of regional floras to precisely identify the flowers and inflorescences.

	Item	Notes
1	Blooming period	The normal season for flowers to be in bloom.
2	Principal color	The most prominent colors typically seen in flowers of this species.
3	Accent color	The notable secondary colors of the flowers.
4	Form	The form of the inflorescence: *capitate, cymose, spicate, or umbellate* to name a few.
5	Type	The inflorescence type: *catkin, head, raceme, thyrse, or umbel* for example.
6	Arrangement	The arrangement of the individual flowers within the inflorescence. Examples include: *clustered, loose, radiant, rosaceous, spiral*, and others.
7	Stamens	A free form description of the flower's stamens.
8	Aestivation	The arrangement of the emerging flower parts within the unopened flower bud.
9	Insertion	A description of how the flower is attached to the peduncle: *adnate, embracing, sheathing, sessile*, and others.
10	Sexuality	A description of the flower's perfection: *dioecious, monoecious, polygamous, pistillate, staminate*, etc.
11	Habit	The way in which a flower holds itself up against gravity: *erect, horizontal, nodding, or pendant.*
12	Corolla	The form of the flower's corolla. Examples include: *coroniform, cruciform, funnelform, papilionaceous, spurred, tubular,* and others.

13	Pistil	A free form description of the flower's pistil.
14	Inflorescence size	The width of an inflorescence when it is symmetrical, or the length of an inflorescence when it is elongated.
15	Flower size	The length of an individual flower, not the inflorescence as a whole, across it's widest dimension.

Compleat Botanica - Features view

Specimen Views # 15 [Back] [Next]

The **Features View** is used by botanists to describe the key characteristics of this plant other than leaves and flowers.

Amelanchier alnifolia

Underground type

Underground description

Bark color
⬤ gray

Bark description
attractive gray winter bark

Wood description

Fruit type

Fruit description

Leaf description
leaves that change color to deep green in summer and yellow to red in autumn

Flower description
clustered flowers

	Item	Notes
1	Underground type	The type of underground feeding and storage system for the plant. Typical examples include: *bulb, corm, rhizome, taproot and tuber.*
2	Underground description	A free form description of the root structure and underground storage parts.
3	Bark color	For woody perennials, the colors of the bark.
4	Bark description	A free form description of the outer bark on this plant's woody structures.
5	Wood description	A free form description of the plant's woody cellular portions including color, texture and relative strength.
6	Fruit type	The type of seed bearing organism, for example: *acorn, berry, drupe, nut, pome,* and more.
7	Fruit description	A free form description of the plant's fruit bearing organism. (For edible fruits and nuts, see the Nutrition View item "Edible Parts Description".)
8	Leaf description	A free form description of the plant's leaves. This description is used to supplement the leaf details provided with the Leaf View.
9	Flower description	A free form description of the plant's flowers. This description is used to supplement the flower and inflorescence details provided with the Flower View.

Compleat Botanica **- Horticulture view**

Specimen Views # 16 [<u>Back</u>] [<u>Next</u>]

The **Horticulture View** is used by registration authorities and horticulturists to record the genesis of a new botanical variety.
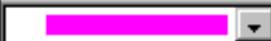
	Item	Notes
1	Derivation	An indicator of how this new variety was created: *chance seedling, sport, species selection, or hybrid.*
2	Seed parent	If this new variety is a hybrid, this identifies the female plant that supplied the seed.
3	Pollen plant	If this new variety is a hybrid, this identifies the male plant that supplied the pollen.
4	Protocol	A free form description of how the species selection was carried out, or how the hybridization was accomplished.
5	Horticulture notes	A word processing-like note that documents horticulture related information such as fertilization, propagation and origin.

Compleat Botanica - **Herbarium view**

The **Herbarium View** is used by herbaria to organize their collections of dried plant material.

Carthamus tinctorius

Sheet number

Collector name

Collection number

Collection location

Collection date

☐ Tag needs printing

Herbarium notes

Carthamus tinctorius has an annual life cycle.

Leaves: Safflower (locally known in some parts as dyer's saffron, false saffron, bastard saffron, American saffron, dyer's thistle and saffron thistle) has spiny leaves.

Flowers: This plant has thistle-like flowers. The blossoms are usually a yellow color, with an accent in gold.

B *I* U 🌿   Az Verdana   •• 10 points

	Item	Notes
1	Sheet number	The unique identifier employed by an herbarium to reference this collection of dried and mounted plant material.
2	Collector name	The name of the person who obtained the material in the field.
3	Collection number	The serialized number for the named collector attached to this herbarium sheet.
4	Collection location	A description of where the plant material was collected and enough information for others to reestablish the location at a later time.
5	Collection date	The date the plant material was obtained from the field.
6	Tag needs printing	Checked when this specimen record is first created and unchecked after a specimen tag has been printed.
7	Herbarium notes	A word processing-like note to document additional herbarium related information. Also used to document general free form descriptive botanical information.

Compleat Botanica - Sketch view
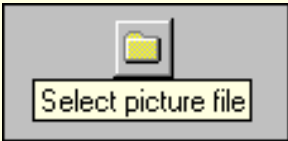
Specimen Views # 18 [Back] [Next]

The **Sketch View** shows a picture or drawing of the specimen (or herbaria sheet) if it exists.
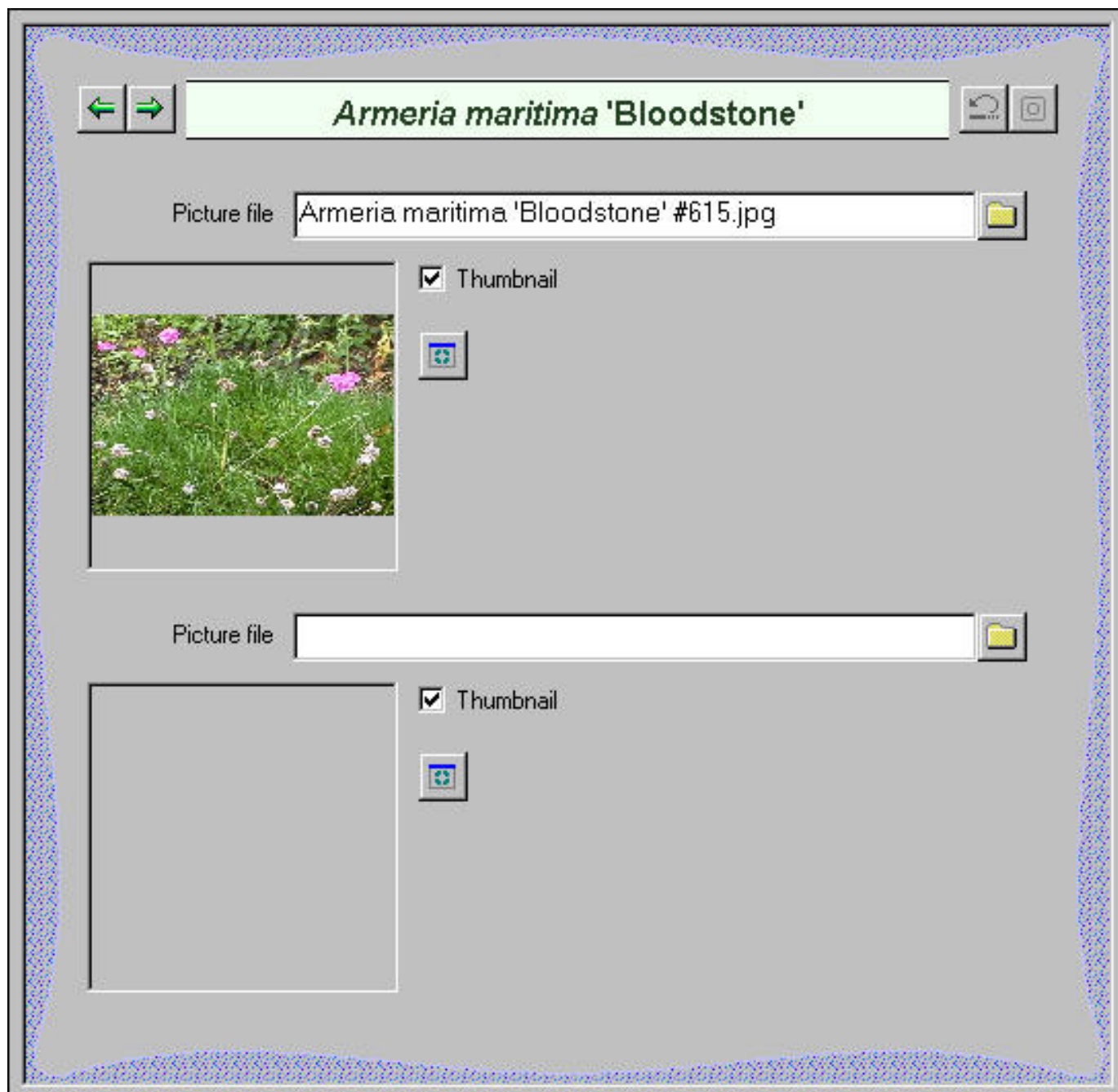
	Item	Notes
1	Picture file	The filename of the JPEG or GIF file containing a picture or sketch of the plant.
2	Select picture file	Press this button to pick the name of the picture file.
3	Thumbnail	Checked to show the entire picture shrunk to fit the thumbnail area. When unchecked, the picture is shown full sized, but is truncated to fit the thumbnail area.
4	Preview picture in separate window	Press this preview button to show the picture in a separate full-sized window.

Compleat Botanica - Gateway view

Specimen Views # 19 [Back]

The Gateway View provides an easy view port to World Wide Web pages of plant-related information. These pages are supplied by respected providers such as governmental agencies, educational institutions and research facilities.

Customized HTML scripts are preprogrammed to retrieve and display this data using the botanical name or one of the common names supplied by The Compleat Botanica. This feature is available only when your computer is connected to the Internet.

This view works by merging the name of the currently selected specimen with one of the special templates that you select. Each template is programmed to provide an interface to the search facility of one Web site. What you see is a list of hyperlinks that connect your selected specimen to the data available at the destination site. Simply click the hyperlink to retrieve the document supplied by that Web site provider.

1 Select a specimen from the current list.
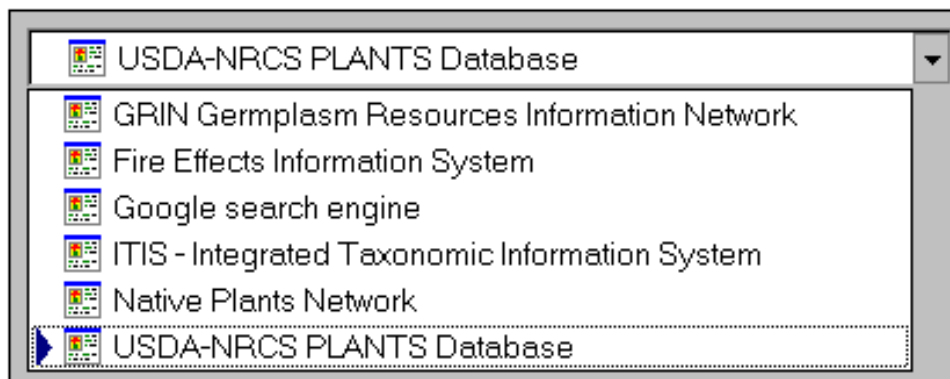
2 Choose a gateway portal template from the droplist.

Botanical name	🌐 Symphytum officinale
Genus	🌐 Symphytum
Common name	🌐 knitbone 🌐 comfrey

3 The selected specimen's name is merged with the selected gateway portal's template to produce easy-to-use hyperlinks. Simply click on a link to retrieve the provider's document for that data.

Symphytum officinale (USDA-NRCS)

USDA-NRCS PLANTS Database

USDA-NRCS PLANTS Database

Botanical name	🌐 Symphytum officinale
Genus	🌐 Symphytum
Common name	🌐 knitbone 🌐 comfrey

United States Department of Agriculture
NRCS Natural Resources Conservation Service
PLANTS Database

The United States Department of Agriculture – Natural Resources Conservation Service maintains a repository of data on plants of the United States. This geographic region includes the continental US, Alaska, Hawaii, Virgin Islands, and Puerto Rico.

The database contains entries for approximately 80,000 native and naturalized vascular plants.

ℹ Symphytum officinale (USDA-NRCS)

Compleat Botanica - Alphabetical index to column specifications

The *Compleat Botanica* has 186 columns per specimen to hold the data that you're collecting.

These pages describe the basic usage guidelines for each column. Storage details, import/export notes, and a description of how to use each column in the publication templates are also given.

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Acquisition date	The original date of acquisition.	1
Adverse factors view	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Adverse factors view item.	2
Adverse qualities	An all purpose classifier to identify the undesirable qualities of this plant.	3
Annual cycle	Defines whether this is a deciduous or evergreen species. This is only applicable to perennials.	4
Attracts butterflies	Checked if this plant is often visited by butterflies for its nectar or as a host plant.	5
Attracts hummingbirds	Checked if this plant has a rich supply of nectar available in red-colored, funnel-shaped flowers that are accessible by hummingbirds.	6

ℹ **Autumn foliage**	Checked if this is a deciduous tree or shrub with notably colorful leaves in the fall.	7
ℹ **Bark color**	For woody perennials, the colors of the bark.	8
ℹ **Bark description**	A free form description of the outer bark on this plant's woody structures.	9
ℹ **Best uses**	A classification of where this plant is often used in the landscape trade.	10
ℹ **Biodiversity view**	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Biodiversity view item.	11
ℹ **Biotic community**	One or more of the plant communities defined by Brown, Reichenbacher, and Franson which indicates the species' range of natural occurrence in the environment.	12
ℹ **Blooming period**	The normal season for flowers to be in bloom.	13
ℹ **Botanical name**	This contains the full botanical name. It is automatically generated from the genus, species, variety and cultivar items.	14
ℹ **Climate view**	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Climate View item.	15

ℹ	Cold frame	The period of time that young seedlings should be kept in a cold frame before setting out in the spring.	16
ℹ	Collection date	The date the plant material was obtained from the field.	17
ℹ	Collection location	A description of where the plant material was collected and enough information for others to reestablish the location at a later time.	18
ℹ	Collection number	The serialized number for the named collector attached to this herbarium sheet.	19
ℹ	Collector name	The name of the person who obtained the material in the field.	20
ℹ	Colorful berries	Checked if this plant has ornamental berries in the autumn and winter.	21
ℹ	Common names	The common names of a species are stored in the table of vernacular names.	22
ℹ	Common pests	This is a list of fungi, insects and larger animals that commonly attack this plant.	23
ℹ	Compost	Checked to indicate that the plant has died.	24

(i) **Contemporary uses**	A list of how this plant is presently used in commercial enterprises. (Food, medicine and landscaping are not included in this list.)	25
(i) **Corolla form**	The form of the flower's corolla. Examples include: *coroniform, cruciform, funnelform, papilionaceous, spurred, tubular,* and others.	26
(i) **Crop spacing**	The typical distance between adjacent plants for optimal use of space without sacrificing sunshine and water needs.	27
(i) **Culinary uses**	A list of the usual ways in which this plant's foodstuff is prepared and stored.	28
(i) **Cultivar**	The cultivar is a horticultural name that is appended to the botanical name and is used to identify a named hybrid.	29
(i) **Cultivation view**	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Cultivation view item.	30
(i) **Data source**	The data source item is a reference to where the data for this plant was originally obtained. When more than one source is referenced, the individual sources are separated by semicolons.	31
(i) **Deer resistant**	Checked if this plant is not normally eaten by foraging deer.	32

ℹ️ **Derivation**	An indicator of how this new variety was created: *chance seedling, sport, species selection, or hybrid.*	**34**
ℹ️ **Dermatologic poison**	Checked if this plant can cause skin rashes or if it can trigger phototoxic hyperactivity.	**35**
ℹ️ **Desirable qualities**	A classifier to identify the plant's most desirable quality. The custom categories that you create for this item should reflect your personal/professional interest.	**36**
ℹ️ **Disease resistant**	Checked if this variety is typically free of the diseases that trouble similar members of the genus.	**37**
ℹ️ **Distribution range**	The places where this plant is commonly found in the wild today.	**38**
ℹ️ **Dye color**	The colors produced in the dyer's vat. When multiple colors are listed, they are made possible through the use of different plant parts or different mordants.	**39**
ℹ️ **Dye parts**	The parts of the plant traditionally used for fabric dyes.	**40**
ℹ️ **Edible**	Checked if this plant contains some edible parts.	**41**
ℹ️ **Edible parts**	A list of the parts of the plant used for food.	**42**

ℹ️	Edible parts description	The size, color and shape of the fruit or other edible portion of the plant.	43
ℹ️	Exotic status	An indicator used with regional flora to classify a plant as alien, exotic or invasive.	44
ℹ️	Family	The family name is the artificial grouping used by botanists to group plants with similar characteristics together.	45
ℹ️	Features view	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Features view item.	46
ℹ️	Fertilizer	The best type of fertilizer to apply for higher yields.	47
ℹ️	FESA listing	Used for species that are included on the current listing based on the United States Federal Endangered Species Act of 1973.	48
ℹ️	Flavor / texture	The taste and feel of the fruit or other edible part.	49
ℹ️	Accent color	The notable secondary colors of the flowers.	50
ℹ️	Flower aestivation	The arrangement of the emerging flower parts within the unopened flower bud.	51

ℹ️ Flower description	A free form description of the plant's flowers. This description is used to supplement the flower and inflorescence details provided with the Flower View.	52
ℹ️ Flower habit	The way in which a flower holds itself up against gravity: *erect, horizontal, nodding, or pendant.*	53
ℹ️ Flower insertion	A description of how the flower is attached to the peduncle: *adnate, embracing, sheathing, sessile,* and others.	54
ℹ️ Principal color	The most prominent colors typically seen in flowers of this species.	55
ℹ️ Flower sexuality	A description of the flower's perfection: *dioecious, monoecious, polygamous, pistillate, staminate,* etc.	56
ℹ️ Flower size	The length of an individual flower, not the inflorescence as a whole, across it's widest dimension.	57
ℹ️ Flower view	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Flower view item.	58
ℹ️ Fragrance	A general description of the odors produced by the plant's flowers, leaves, roots and bark.	59
ℹ️ Fragrance category	A classification scheme for placing similar smelling plants into easily recognizable groups.	60

ℹ️ Fragrance intensity	The relative strength of this plant's smell.	61
ℹ️ Fragrance parts	A list of which plant parts are fragrant.	62
ℹ️ Frost tolerance	The relative tenderness or hardiness of a plant and its susceptibility to succumbing to frost.	63
ℹ️ Fruit description	A free form description of the plant's fruit bearing organism. (For edible fruits and nuts, see the Nutrition View item "Edible Parts Description".)	64
ℹ️ Fruit type	The type of seed bearing organism, for example: *acorn, berry, drupe, nut, pome,* and more.	65
ℹ️ Garden location	Where is this specimen planted -- the name of the garden or the approximate location where it can be found.	66
ℹ️ Garden notes	A word processing-like note for highlighting the ornamental value of this plant, its climatic suitability, and some of its traditional uses.	67
ℹ️ Garden view	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Garden View item.	68
ℹ️ Genus	The word genus is from the Greek meaning *race* or *kind*. It forms the root of the English word *generic*, thus it is the portion of the botanical name that is non-specific.	69

ℹ Geographic origin	The places where this plant is thought to have originated from. Through several millennia of mankind's efforts this record is fairly obscure.	70
ℹ Growth form	If this is a tree or shrub how does its visual form appear from a distance: dense, compact, pyramidal, and so forth.	71
ℹ Growth habit	If this is a groundcover, vine or flower does it grow upright without support or does it tend to stay close to the ground: ascending, climbing, mound forming, spreading, and the like.	72
ℹ Harvest season	The usual time frame for expecting the harvest to be ready when the guidelines for "planting period" are followed.	73
ℹ Has medicinal uses	An all purpose item used to indicate that this plant has some traditional healing properties.	74
ℹ Hay fever pollen	A indicator of the relative quantity of pollen produced and carried on the wind.	75
ℹ Hay fever season	The typical time of year when this plant bears wind-borne pollen.	76
ℹ Heat requirement	The relative need for hot summer days in order to produce good-sized and flavorful produce.	77
ℹ Heat zones	The American Horticultural Society's heat zones in which this plant is known to survive.	78

ℹ **Herbal medicine view**	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Herbal medicine view item.	79
ℹ **Herbarium notes**	A word processing-like note to document additional herbarium related information. Also used to document general free form descriptive botanical information.	80
ℹ **Herbarium view**	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Herbarium view item.	81
ℹ **Horticulture notes**	A word processing-like note that documents horticulture related information such as fertilization, propagation and origin.	82
ℹ **Horticulture view**	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Horticulture view item.	83
ℹ **Identification view**	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Identification View item.	84
ℹ **Inflorescence arrangement**	The arrangement of the individual flowers within the inflorescence. Examples include: *clustered, loose, radiant, rosaceous, spiral*, and others.	85
ℹ **Inflorescence form**	The form of the inflorescence: *capitate, cymose, spicate, or umbellate* to name a few.	86

	Inflorescence size	The width of an inflorescence when it is symmetrical, or the length of an inflorescence when it is elongated.	87
	Inflorescence type	The inflorescence type: *catkin, head, raceme, thyrse, or umbel* for example.	88
	Insect resistant	Checked if this variety is more notably insect resistant than its common form.	89
	Internal poison	Checked if this plant can cause illness or death when ingested.	90
	IUCN red list	Used for species that are included on the 1994 IUCN red list published by the UNEP World Conservation Monitoring Centre.	91
	Leaf apex	The appearance of the leaf tip. Examples include: *blunt, hooked, mucronate, or retuse.*	92
	Leaf arrangement	A description of how the leaflets are arranged in relationship to each other -- something like *alternate, opposite, whorled,* etc.	93
	Leaf base	The appearance of the leaf base where it attaches to the petiole. Possibilities might be *attenuate, cordate, hastate, truncate*, and more.	94
	Leaf color	The color(s) of the leaves.	95

ℹ️ Leaf compound	This is the keyword *simple* for simple leaves. For compound leaves this is variously one of the *compound* or *pinnate* choices.	96
ℹ️ Leaf description	A free form description of the plant's leaves. This description is used to supplement the leaf details provided with the Leaf View.	97
ℹ️ Leaf hair	A description of the *downy, hairy, silky, spiny, velvety, or woolly* covering on the leaves.	98
ℹ️ Leaf incision	For deeply cut leaves, this is a description of how the divisions appear -- something like *lobed, palmate, split*, and so forth.	99
ℹ️ Leaf length	For simple leaves, this is the typical length from base to tip. For compound leaves, this is the typical length of the full compound leaf.	100
ℹ️ Leaflet length	For compound leaves only. This is the typical length of a single leaflet from base to tip.	101
ℹ️ Leaflet width	For compound leaves only. This is the typical width of a single leaflet across its widest part.	102
ℹ️ Leaf margin	A description of the type of serration along the outer edges of the leaf. Might be something like: *curled, gnawed, crenated, sawed, toothed*, etc.	103
ℹ️ Leaf polish	A description of the particulate covering on the leaves -- possibilities include: *dewy, dusty, greasy, powdery, slimy,* etc.	104

Leaf shape	The overall appearance of a leaf's shape -- possible values include: *crescent-shaped, fiddle-shaped, halbert-shaped, heart-shaped, kidney-shaped, needle-shaped, sword-shaped*, and many more.	**105**
Leaf texture	A description of the leaf's surface texture -- *leathery, papery, spongy, waxy*, etc.	**106**
Leaf variegation	The location and appearance of discolorations and other markings on the leaves: *marbled, painted, spotted, striped, variegated*, and so forth.	**107**
Leaf venation	A description of the pattern of veins within the leaf. Examples include: *divided, reticulated, pedate, peltate, ribbed*, and more.	**108**
Leaf vernation	A description of how the young leaves are arranged before the bud opens. Many possibilities such as *convolute, contorted, rovolute, wrinkled*, and more.	**109**
Leaf view	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Leaf view item.	**110**
Leaf width	For simple leaves, this is the typical width across the widest portion of the leaf. For compound leaves, this is the typical width of the full compound leaf.	**111**
Legally restricted	Checked when the use or possession of this plant is subject to legal restrictions in one or more countries.	**112**

ℹ Life cycle	Describes in layman's terms how a plant progresses from germination to death, something like: annual, biennial or perennial.	113
ℹ Life cycle view	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered on any item in the Life cycle View.	114
ℹ Life form	This is usually "terrestrial" for most angiosperms and gymnosperms. Use this item to classify plants as bryophyte (mosses, liverworts, hornworts), epiphyte (air plants), or aquatic (plants living in water).	115
ℹ Life span	The typical longevity of the plant.	116
ℹ Livestock poison	Checked if this plant should be kept out of pastures used by grazing farm animals.	117
ℹ Mechanical injury	Checked if this plant contains sharp points that easily puncture the skin.	118
ℹ Medicinal notes	A word processing-like note used to describe the beneficial uses of this plant.	119
ℹ Medicinal parts	The parts of the plant that are used when preparing infusions, tinctures, creams, herbal teas, and so forth.	120
ℹ Medicinal properties	This is a list of the ways in which this plant has been used to treat illness and to promote health.	121

Native status	An indicator used with regional flora to classify a plant as native, indigenous or endemic.	122
Naturalscape	Checked if this plant is found along roadsides, open fields and other non-cultivated areas and is not normally considered a "wildflower". This is a non-pejorative word for "a common weed".	123
Noxious weed	An indicator used by state agricultural agencies to identify the potential threat a non-native species poses to the local economy.	124
Number of leaflets	For compound leaves only. This is the number of leaflets per leaf. This value may be a simple number, like "5", or a range of values like "11-15".	125
Nursery	From which nursery (or friend/neighbor/relative) was this plant obtained.	126
Nutritional value	A list of the notable vitamins, minerals, trace elements and proteins found in this plant.	127
Nutrition view	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Nutrition view item.	128
Other interest	An all-purpose classifier. Create your own categories to organize plants according to their special interest to you.	129
Other interest color	An all purpose classifier for colors. The semantics of this item are entirely up to you.	130

ℹ️	Other interest period	An all purpose seasonal item (or date range item). Use this item either independent of or in conjunction with the "Other interest" item.	**131**
ℹ️	Overall height	How tall is a typical specimen at maturity.	**132**
ℹ️	Overall spread	How wide is a typical specimen at maturity. This is often referred to by nursery labels as "planting distance" or "spacing".	**133**
ℹ️	pH	An indicator of a plant's suitability to acidic conditions.	**134**
ℹ️	Picture 1	The filename of the JPEG or GIF file containing a picture or sketch of the plant.	**135**
ℹ️	Picture 2	The filename of a secondary JPEG or GIF file containing an alternate picture or sketch of the plant.	**136**
ℹ️	Pistil	A free form description of the flower's pistil.	**137**
ℹ️	Plant community	One or more of the 29 plant communities defined by Munz, which indicates the native environment in which the species is naturally found growing.	**138**
ℹ️	Planting season	The best period of time for planting taking into consideration a plant's tenderness to frost and its need for sunlight.	**139**

ℹ Planting style	The usual way of arranging crops for easy planting, tending, and harvesting.	**140**
ℹ Poisonous indications	A description of the toxic elements found in the plant.	**141**
ℹ Poisonous parts	The parts of the plant that contain poisonous constituents.	**142**
ℹ Pollen parent	If this new variety is a hybrid, this identifies the male plant that supplied the pollen.	**143**
ℹ Pollination method	For fruits and nuts, an indicator of whether or not cross-pollination is required to set fruit.	**144**
ℹ Pregnancy alert	Checked when this plant has abortifacient properties or is otherwise potentially harmful to the developing fetus.	**145**
ℹ Price	The buying/selling price for this plant.	**146**
ℹ Price code	For commercial tradesmen, an indicator of this plant's sales price.	**147**
ℹ Professional advice only	Checked when this plant is considered dangerous enough that only qualified herbalists should consider using it.	**148**
ℹ Propagule	A list of the methods typically used to propagate this plant.	**149**

ⓘ	Protocol	A free form description of how the species selection was carried out, or how the hybridization was accomplished.	150
ⓘ	Quantity	Use this item to indicate how many plants of this species are in this collection.	151
ⓘ	Row spacing	For orchards and crops arranged in rows, the distance between adjacent rows for optimal yields.	152
ⓘ	Seed parent	If this new variety is a hybrid, this identifies the female plant that supplied the seed.	153
ⓘ	Sheet number	The unique identifier employed by an herbarium to reference this collection of dried and mounted plant material.	154
ⓘ	Size at acquisition	The original size of the plant when it was added to this collection.	155
ⓘ	Sketch view	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Sketch view item.	156
ⓘ	Soil texture	The best type of soil for providing a support base and for retaining/releasing available water.	157
ⓘ	Special qualities view	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Special qualities view item.	158

ℹ️ Species	The species is the portion of the botanical name used as an adjective to more specifically describe the genus.	159
ℹ️ Specimen number	The specimen number is a pseudo-unique identifier for the specimen record.	160
ℹ️ Stamens	A free form description of the flower's stamens.	161
ℹ️ Stature	In gardener's terms, what type of plant is this: tree, shrub, vine, groundcover, flower, etc.	162
ℹ️ Suitable for gardens	This should be checked to indicate that the species has some ornamental garden value -- color, fragrance, flowers, form, etc.	163
ℹ️ Sunset zones	The Sunset Books' climate zones in which this plant does best.	164
ℹ️ Sunshine	Optimal lighting requirements to prevent scorching and to promote healthy growth.	165
ℹ️ Symbiosis	Other life forms (plants, insects, and more) that live in a symbiotic relationship with this species.	166
ℹ️ Tag needs printing	Checked when this specimen record is first created and unchecked after a specimen tag has been printed.	167

ℹ️ Tentative listing	Checked if the "FESA listing", "IUCN red list", or "Noxious weed" classification is tentative awaiting further documentary evidence.	168
ℹ️ Time to harvest	The number of days between planting and the first available harvest.	169
ℹ️ Tolerates drought	Checked when the plant can survive dry spells without damage.	170
ℹ️ Tolerates high humidity	Checked when the plant can survive prolonged summer periods of very high humidity.	171
ℹ️ Tolerates seaside conditions	Checked when the plant can live in the windy, salty, foggy conditions found along the coastal belts.	172
ℹ️ Toxicity precautions	A description of the possible toxic effect of the use of this plant.	173
ℹ️ Parts used	The parts of the plant which have been used in historical times or are still used in the present time.	174
ℹ️ Traditional uses	A list of how this plant has been used by indigenous people. Uses such as food, medicine and fabric dyes are not included here.	175
ℹ️ Traditional uses view	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Traditional uses view item.	176

ℹ️ Uncertain taxonomy	Automatically checked if the genus and species cannot be found in the taxonomic checklist.	**177**
ℹ️ Underground description	A free form description of the root structure and underground storage parts.	**178**
ℹ️ Underground type	The type of underground feeding and storage system for the plant. Typical examples include: *bulb, corm, rhizome, taproot and tuber.*	**179**
ℹ️ USDA zones	The United States Department of Agriculture's hardiness zones in which this plant is known to thrive.	**180**
ℹ️ Variety	The variety is the portion of the botanical name used to identify members of the same species that are distinct enough to warrant their own name.	**181**
ℹ️ Water	Best moisture conditions for terrestrial plants. A good indicator of a plant's tolerance to the extremes of drought and over saturation.	**182**
ℹ️ Wetland classification	A list of estuarine, lacustrine, marine, palustrine and riverine communities where this species is natively found.	**183**
ℹ️ Wetland indicator	The wetland indicator represents the estimated probability of a species occurring in wetlands versus non-wetlands in a region of study.	**184**

ⓘ Wildflower	Checked if this plant is found along roadsides, open fields and other non-cultivated areas but has enough inherent beauty to be considered ornamental.	**185**
ⓘ Wood description	A free form description of the plant's woody cellular portions including color, texture and relative strength.	**186**

Compleat Botanica - Acquisition date

Basic specification

Visible name	Acquisition date
Typical usage	The original date of acquisition.
Visible display type	The Acquisition date is displayed using a simple text box. The date is displayed using the format specified in the Customization settings area. New dates can be specified using any recognized formatting style.
Data entry view	Garden view

Storage details

SQL name	AcquisitionDate
Storage type	A database timestamp field.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `AcquisitionDate`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A date in any format which follows these examples: Dec 6, 03 Dec 6, 2003 12/06/03 12/06/2003 6-Dec-03 6-Dec-2003 12-06-03 12-06-2003 December 6, 03 December 6, 2003
	XML file	A date in the XML standard format that looks like: 2003-12-06T00:00:00Z
Export	Delimited file	Exported using the current date display format as specified in the Customization settings area.
	XML file	A date in the XML standard format that looks like: 2003-12-06T00:00:00Z

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:AcquisitionDate>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this date using the current date display format.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Compleat Botanica - Adverse factors view

Basic specification

Visible name	Adverse factors view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Adverse factors view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	AdverseFactorsView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `AdverseFactorsView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:AdverseFactorsView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Adverse qualities

Basic specification

Visible name	Adverse qualities
Typical usage	An all purpose classifier to identify the undesirable qualities of this plant.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons. Separate more than one Adverse quality with semicolons.
Data entry view	Adverse factors view

Storage details

SQL name	AdverseQualities
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `AdverseQualities`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item. Use semicolons to separate more than one value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:AdverseQualities>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Annual cycle

Basic specification

Visible name	Annual cycle
Typical usage	Defines whether this is a deciduous or evergreen species. This is only applicable to perennials.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Life cycle view

Storage details

SQL name	LifeCycle
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LifeCycle`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LifeCycle>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Attracts butterflies

Basic specification

Visible name	Attracts butterflies
Typical usage	Checked if this plant is often visited by butterflies for its nectar or as a host plant.
Visible display type	Attracts butterflies is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	AttractsButterflies
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `AttractsButterflies`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:AttractsButterflies>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Attracts hummingbirds

Basic specification

Visible name	Attracts hummingbirds
Typical usage	Checked if this plant has a rich supply of nectar available in red-colored, funnel-shaped flowers that are accessible by hummingbirds.
Visible display type	Attracts hummingbirds is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	AttractsHummingbirds
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `AttractsHummingbirds`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:AttractsHummingbirds>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Autumn foliage

Basic specification

Visible name	Autumn foliage
Typical usage	Checked if this is a deciduous tree or shrub with notably colorful leaves in the fall.
Visible display type	Autumn foliage is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	AutumnFoliage
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `AutumnFoliage`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:AutumnFoliage>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Bark color

Basic specification

Visible name	Bark color
Typical usage	For woody perennials, the colors of the bark.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with an embedded color wheel. The built-in color name spell-checker is automatically invoked during typing.
Data entry view	Features view

Storage details

SQL name	BarkColor
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length. Multiple colors are separated by using commas.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `BarkColor`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:BarkColor>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	A color wheel representing the interpreted colors of this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	The color wheel is not shown.
text	on *	The comma-separated list of colors is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Bark description

Basic specification

Visible name	Bark description
Typical usage	A free form description of the outer bark on this plant's woody structures.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Features view

Storage details

SQL name	BarkDescription
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `BarkDescription`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:BarkDescription>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

✚ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Best uses

Basic specification

Visible name	Best uses
Typical usage	A classification of where this plant is often used in the landscape trade.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons. Separate more than one best use with semicolons.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	BestUses
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `BestUses`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item. Use semicolons to separate more than one value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:BestUses>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Biodiversity view

Basic specification

Visible name	Biodiversity view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Biodiversity view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	BiodiversityView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `BiodiversityView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:BiodiversityView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Biotic community

Basic specification

Visible name	Biotic community
Typical usage	One or more of the plant communities defined by Brown, Reichenbacher, and Franson which indicates the species' range of natural occurrence in the environment.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible communities.
Data entry view	Climate view

Storage details

SQL name	BioticCommunity
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.
Internal representation	Internally the codes are stored rather than the description of the item. Non-standard values are not supported.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `BioticCommunity`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of Biotic community codes.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of Biotic community codes.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:BioticCommunity>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each community is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of communities separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The color code is shown.
	off	The color code is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color.
	off	Do not show the code with the color.
text	on *	The text value is shown. Because the biotic community database field stores codes, the text value is in fact the same as the code.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Compleat Botanica - Blooming period

Basic specification

Visible name	Blooming period (Blooming season)
Typical usage	The normal season for flowers to be in bloom.
Visible display type	Displayed using a calendar date-range manipulator. Seasons may be defined using an idealized Northern Hemisphere location where each season is divided into exactly three months.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	BloomingBegins BloomingEnds
Storage type	Two database timestamp fields representing the beginning and ending date of the seasonal period.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `BloomingBegins` and `BloomingEnds`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be set using a formatted date such as "Dec 01" or "Dec 31". Seasons may also be specified by using the following key words instead of dates: (see table below) An "unspecified" period may be represented by setting both the beginning and the ending times to "Jan 01".

Keyword	BloomingBegins	BloomingEnds
spring	Mar 01	May 31
early spring	Mar 01	Mar 31
mid spring	Apr 01	Apr 30
late spring	May 01	May 31
summer	Jun 01	Aug 31
early summer	Jun 01	Jun 30
mid summer	Jul 01	Jul 31
late summer	Aug 01	Aug 31
fall	Sep 01	Nov 30
early fall	Sep 01	Sep 30
mid fall	Oct 01	Oct 31
late fall	Nov 01	Nov 30
winter	Dec 01	Feb 28
early winter	Dec 01	Dec 31
mid winter	Jan 01	Jan 31
late winter	Feb 01	Feb 28

	XML file	Each field must be in the XML standard format that looks like: 2000-12-31T00:00:00Z. The year must be set to the arbitrary value of 2000. The time must be set to midnight. Only the month and day are meaningful. An "unspecified" period may be represented by setting both the beginning and the ending times to 2000-01-01T00:00:00Z.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a format like: "Dec 31".
	XML file	The same rules apply as for XML import.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:BloomingBegins>`. Note that the complimentary tag for BloomingEnds is not used; simply including the tag BloomingBegins will suffice to display both the beginning and ending dates for the season.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	A date range formatted something like: "Mar 01 - May 31"
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Botanical name

Basic specification

Visible name	Botanical name
Typical usage	This contains the full botanical name. It is automatically generated from the genus, species, variety and cultivar items. Changing any of its constituent parts triggers a corresponding change in this item.
Visible display type	The botanical name is displayed along the top of each of the specimen views using a banner-like header.
Data entry view	Identification view

Storage details

SQL name	BotanicalName
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `BotanicalName`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	This name is separated into its four constituent parts and each corresponding item is assigned its proper value. When this item is included in an import file, the other four items (genus, species, variety, and cultivar) are optional.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored without changes of any kind.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:BotanicalName>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name with proper application of italics and roman fonts.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.
urltext	on	Use proper URL encoding of this name so that hyperlinks with this name will work.
	off *	Do not use URL encoding.
plaintext	on	Show this name without formatting of any kind.
	off *	Apply the normal rules using the "text" attribute.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Climate view

Basic specification

Visible name	Climate view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Climate View item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	ClimateView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `ClimateView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:ClimateView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica **- Cold frame**

Basic specification

Visible name	Cold frame
Typical usage	The period of time that young seedlings should be kept in a cold frame before setting out in the spring.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	ColdFrame
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `ColdFrame`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely replaced by the new value.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:ColdFrame>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Collection date

Basic specification

Visible name	Collection date
Typical usage	The date the plant material was obtained from the field.
Visible display type	The Collection date is displayed using a simple text box. The date is displayed using the format specified in the Customization settings area. New dates can be specified using any recognized formatting style.
Data entry view	Herbarium view

Storage details

SQL name	CollectionDate
Storage type	A database timestamp field.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `CollectionDate`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A date in any format which follows these examples: Dec 6, 03 Dec 6, 2003 12/06/03 12/06/2003 6-Dec-03 6-Dec-2003 12-06-03 12-06-2003 December 6, 03 December 6, 2003
	XML file	A date in the XML standard format that looks like: 2003-12-06T00:00:00Z
Export	Delimited file	Exported using the current date display format as specified in the Customization settings area.
	XML file	A date in the XML standard format that looks like: 2003-12-06T00:00:00Z

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:CollectionDate>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this date using the current date display format.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Compleat Botanica - Collection location

Basic specification

Visible name	Collection location
Typical usage	A description of where the plant material was collected and enough information for others to reestablish the location at a later time.
Visible display type	The Collection location is displayed using an unformatted text box.
Data entry view	Herbarium view

Storage details

SQL name	CollectionLocation
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `CollectionLocation`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value will be completely replaced by the value in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored -- as a semicolon separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:CollectionLocation>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Collection number

Basic specification

Visible name	Collection number
Typical usage	The serialized number for the named collector attached to this herbarium sheet.
Visible display type	The Collection number is displayed using an unformatted text box.
Data entry view	Herbarium view

Storage details

SQL name	CollectionNumber
Storage type	A text value up to 10 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `CollectionNumber`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value will be completely replaced by the value in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored -- as a semicolon separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:CollectionNumber>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Collector name

Basic specification

Visible name	Collector name
Typical usage	The name of the person who obtained the material in the field.
Visible display type	The Collector name is displayed using an unformatted text box.
Data entry view	Herbarium view

Storage details

SQL name	CollectorName
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `CollectorName`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value will be completely replaced by the value in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored -- as a semicolon separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:CollectorName>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Colorful berries

Basic specification

Visible name	Colorful berries
Typical usage	Checked if this plant has ornamental berries in the autumn and winter.
Visible display type	Colorful berries is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	ColorfulBerries
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `ColorfulBerries`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:ColorfulBerries>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Common names

Basic specification

Visible name	Common names
Typical usage	The common names of a species are stored in the table of vernacular names. Common names are automatically shown for the named genus, species and variety. You may enter a new name if it doesn't already exist in the list.
Visible display type	The common names are displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for adding, removing, and changing entries.
Data entry view	Identification view

Storage details

SQL name	CommonName
Storage type	A text value up to 30 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `CommonNames`.
When importing the Merge option is always in effect.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	When importing common names you may specify more than one name by separating the names with commas and surrounding the entire list with double quotes.

To import common names that are from non-English speaking countries you can place the name of the country of origin within parentheses after the common name. In this case the `ForeignLanguage` item will be checked and the `Locality` item will contain the name of the country or language of origin.

When a new vernacular name entry is created, the `DataSource` is set to the value of the `DataSource` column as it appears in the import file.

If a common name already exists in the vernacular list for this botanical name a new item is not created, instead the `DataSource` of the existing vernacular name entry is appended with the value of the `DataSource` column as it appears in the import file. |
	XML file	Same as above, except double quotes are not needed when more than one name is supplied -- simply separate the names with commas.
Export	Delimited file	Exported as a comma separated list of names.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:CommonNames>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each name is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of names separated by spaces.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Compleat Botanica - Common pests

Basic specification

Visible name	Common pests
Typical usage	This is a list of fungi, insects and larger animals that commonly attack this plant.
Visible display type	Common pests is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Adverse factors view

Storage details

SQL name	Common pests
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `CommonPests`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:CommonPests>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Compost

Basic specification

Visible name	Compost
Typical usage	Checked to indicate that the plant has died.
Visible display type	Compost is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Garden view

Storage details

SQL name	Compost
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Compost`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Compost>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Contemporary uses

Basic specification

Visible name	Contemporary uses
Typical usage	A list of how this plant is presently used in commercial enterprises. (Food, medicine and landscaping are not included in this list.)
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of contemporary use possibilities.
Data entry view	Traditional uses view

Storage details

SQL name	ContemporaryUses
Storage type	A text value up to 100 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of plant uses.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `ContemporaryUses`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of contemporary plant uses.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of contemporary plant uses.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:ContemporaryUses>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each plant use is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of contemporary plant uses separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each use is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each use is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each use is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Corolla form

Basic specification

Visible name	Corolla form
Typical usage	The form of the flower's corolla. Examples include: *coroniform, cruciform, funnelform, papilionaceous, spurred, tubular,* and others.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	CorollaForm
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `CorollaForm`.
When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:CorollaForm>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Crop spacing

Basic specification

Visible name	Crop spacing
Typical usage	The typical distance between adjacent plants for optimal use of space without sacrificing sunshine and water needs.
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding measurement manipulator.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	CropSpacingMin CropSpacingMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range. If the current customization is set to "U.S. Customary" the units of these fields are inches. If the current customization is set to "Metric" the units of these fields are centimeters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `CropSpacingMin` and `CropSpacingMax`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be simple integers representing the number of units (inches or centimeters). Alternatively these fields may be formatted using the single quote symbol which represents feet and the double quote symbol which represents inches or may be followed by the abbreviation "cm" for centimeters or "m" for meters.
	XML file	Each field must be in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a notation something like: 9" 1' 6" 3' 25cm 2m
	XML file	Written out in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:CropSpacingMin>`. Note that the complimentary tag for CropSpacingMax is not used; simply including the tag CropSpacingMin will suffice to display both portions of the range. If the minimum and maximum are identical a single value is displayed rather than a range.

 The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	An iconic symbol for "spacing" is inserted into the HTML document.
	off	No symbol is inserted.
text	on *	A measurement range written something like this: 3" 6" - 1' 2' - 3' 10cm 20cm - 40cm 1m 1.5m - 3m

	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Culinary uses

Basic specification

Visible name	Culinary uses
Typical usage	A list of the usual ways in which this plant's foodstuff is prepared and stored.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible culinary uses.
Data entry view	Nutrition view

Storage details

SQL name	CulinaryUses
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of culinary uses.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `CulinaryUses`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of culinary uses.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of culinary uses.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:CulinaryUses>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each culinary use is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of culinary uses separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each use is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each use is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each use is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Cultivar

Basic specification

Visible name	Cultivar
Typical usage	The cultivar is a horticultural name that is appended to the botanical name and is used to identify a named hybrid. The usual rules for forming botanical names are not followed when a new cultivar is named. Thus new names may be in any language (although they are usually romanized), any case, and may include peoples names or other proper nouns. Some cultivars are even trademarked names -- this is especially true for plants that produce edible food crops. When the botanical name is assembled for plants with a named cultivar they are surrounded by single quotes and are set off from the name by using a non-italicized font. These single quotes are automatically supplied by the software, you should not enter them yourself.
Visible display type	The cultivar is displayed using an unformatted text box. The botanical name spell-checker is not used on cultivars.
Data entry view	Identification view

Storage details

SQL name	Cultivar
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Cultivar`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the

input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Because a cultivar's name can have any form, no special rules are followed when importing this item. If the `BotanicalName` is not imported at the same time, the `BotanicalName` is automatically reconstructed using this new cultivar together with the three other constituent parts.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored without changes of any kind.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Cultivar>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Cultivation view

Basic specification

Visible name	Cultivation view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Cultivation view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	CultivationView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `CultivationView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:CultivationView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Data source

Basic specification

Visible name	Data source
Typical usage	The data source item is a reference to where the data for this plant was originally obtained. When more than one source is referenced, the individual sources are separated by semicolons.
Visible display type	The data source is displayed using an unformatted text box.
Data entry view	Identification view

Storage details

SQL name	DataSource
Storage type	A text value up to 100 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `DataSource`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of footnote like source codes. The meaning of each abbreviated source code is up to you.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored -- as a semicolon separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:DataSource>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Deer resistant

Basic specification

Visible name	Deer resistant
Typical usage	Checked if this plant is not normally eaten by foraging deer.
Visible display type	Deer resistant is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	DeerResistant
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `DeerResistant`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	True or False
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	True or False
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:DeerResistant>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value yes or no is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Derivation

Basic specification

Visible name	Derivation
Typical usage	An indicator of how this new variety was created: *chance seedling, sport, species selection, or hybrid.*
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Horticulture view

Storage details

SQL name	Derivation
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Derivation`.
When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Derivation>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Dermatologic poison

Basic specification

Visible name	Dermatologic poison
Typical usage	Checked if this plant can cause skin rashes or if it can trigger phototoxic hyperactivity.
Visible display type	Dermatologic poison is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Adverse factors view

Storage details

SQL name	DermatologicPoison
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `DermatologicPoison`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:DermatologicPoison>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Desirable qualities

Basic specification

Visible name	Desirable qualities
Typical usage	A classifier to identify the plant's most desirable quality. The custom categories that you create for this item should reflect your personal/professional interest.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons. Separate more than one desirable quality with semicolons.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	DesirableQualities
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `DesirableQualities`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item. Use semicolons to separate more than one value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:DesirableQualities>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Disease resistant

Basic specification

Visible name	Disease resistant
Typical usage	Checked if this variety is typically free of the diseases that trouble similar members of the genus.
Visible display type	Disease resistant is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	DiseaseResistant
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `DiseaseResistant`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
Import	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
Export	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:DiseaseResistant>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
graphics	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
text	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Distribution range

Basic specification

Visible name	Distribution range
Typical usage	The places where this plant is commonly found in the wild today.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible codes. Using the customize settings area you can easily switch the list of localities shown here. You can also enter your own customized list.

Country	Localities
World	contemporary political countries
Australia	states and territories
Canada	provinces and territories
Great Britain	cities, towns, counties
New Zealand	provinces
United States of America	states
South Africa	provinces
(custom)	as defined by you

Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	DistributionRange
Storage type	A text value up to 300 characters in length.
Internal representation	Internally the codes are stored rather than the name of the locality. Non-standard localities are only supported through the import feature.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `DistributionRange`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of locality codes.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of locality codes.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:DistributionRange>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each locality is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of localities separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The color code is shown.
	off	The color code is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color.
	off	Do not show the code with the color.
text	on *	The text value is shown. Because the DistributionRange database field stores codes, the text value is in fact the same as the code.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Dye color

Basic specification

Visible name	Dye color
Typical usage	The colors produced in the dyer's vat. When multiple colors are listed, they are made possible through the use of different plant parts or different mordants.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with an embedded color wheel. The built-in color name spell-checker is automatically invoked during typing.
Data entry view	Traditional uses view

Storage details

SQL name	DyeColor
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length. Multiple colors are separated by using commas.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `DyeColor`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:DyeColor>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	A color wheel representing the interpreted colors of this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	The color wheel is not shown.
text	on *	The comma-separated list of colors is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Dye parts

Basic specification

Visible name	Dye parts
Typical usage	The parts of the plant traditionally used for fabric dyes.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible parts.
Data entry view	Traditional uses view

Storage details

SQL name	DyeParts
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `DyeParts`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:DyeParts>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each plant part is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of plant parts separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each part is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each part is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each part is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

✚ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Edible

Basic specification

Visible name	Edible
Typical usage	Checked if this plant contains some edible parts.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Nutrition view

Storage details

SQL name	IsEdible
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `IsEdible`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:IsEdible>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Edible parts

Basic specification

Visible name	Edible parts
Typical usage	A list of the parts of the plant used for food.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible parts.
Data entry view	Nutrition view

Storage details

SQL name	EdibleParts
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `EdibleParts`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:EdibleParts>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each plant part is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of plant parts separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each part is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each part is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each part is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Edible parts description

Basic specification

Visible name	Edible parts description (Description of edible parts)
Typical usage	The size, color and shape of the fruit or other edible portion of the plant.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Nutrition view

Storage details

SQL name	EdiblePartsDescription
Storage type	A text value up to 300 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `EdiblePartsDescription`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:EdiblePartsDescription>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Exotic status

Basic specification

Visible name	Exotic status
Typical usage	An indicator used with regional flora to classify a plant as alien, exotic or invasive.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	ExoticStatus
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `ExoticStatus`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:ExoticStatus>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Family

Basic specification

Visible name	Family
Typical usage	The family name is the artificial grouping used by botanists to group plants with similar characteristics together. Whereas species within a genus have the ability to cross pollinate, no such scientific certainty can be placed upon family names. Thus different botanists use similar but sometimes conflicting family assignments. When a new record is created the family name is automatically filled in by the software. Some plants are also placed in a tribe which hierarchically falls between the ranks of genus and family. Tribal assignments can be seen in the taxonomic checklist.
Visible display type	The family is displayed using a drop-down list. The botanical name spell-checker is invoked when typing within the text area of this item. A short list of similarly spelled names is available after you've typed at least one letter.
Data entry view	Identification view

Storage details

SQL name	Family
Storage type	A text value up to 30 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Family`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	This name is automatically formatted with the rules for family names, that is, everything is set to uppercase. The appearance of -ACEÆ and -ACEAE at the end of the name is ignored, as family names are always stored internally with the ending -ACEAE. If this column does not appear in an import file, the family name is automatically supplied by the software when a new record is created.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported with the ending -ACEÆ or -ACEAE depending on the current customization rules in effect.
	XML file	When Æ is the current customization rule the name is output with the XML value `Æ`

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Family>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored. The ending -ACEÆ is never used in HTML publications, only -ACEAE is used.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Features view

Basic specification

Visible name	Features view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Features view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	FeaturesView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FeaturesView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	True or False
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FeaturesView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value yes or no is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Fertilizer

Basic specification

Visible name	Fertilizer
Typical usage	The best type of fertilizer to apply for higher yields.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	Fertilizer
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Fertilizer`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Fertilizer>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - FESA listing

Basic specification

Visible name	FESA listing
Typical usage	Used for species that are included on the current listing based on the United States Federal Endangered Species Act of 1973.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	FESAListing
Storage type	A text value up to 30 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FESAListing`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FESAListing>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Flavor / texture

Basic specification

Visible name	Flavor / texture (Description of edible parts)
Typical usage	The taste and feel of the fruit or other edible part.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Nutrition view

Storage details

SQL name	FlavorTexture
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FlavorTexture`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FlavorTexture>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Accent color

Basic specification

Visible name	Accent color
Typical usage	The notable secondary colors of the flowers.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with an embedded color wheel. The built-in color name spell-checker is automatically invoked during typing.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	FlowerAccentColor
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length. Multiple colors are separated by using commas.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FlowerAccentColor`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FlowerAccentColor>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	A color wheel representing the interpreted colors of this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	The color wheel is not shown.
text	on *	The comma-separated list of colors is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Flower aestivation

Basic specification

Visible name	Flower aestivation
Typical usage	The arrangement of the emerging flower parts within the unopened flower bud.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	FlowerAestivation
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FlowerAestivation`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FlowerAestivation>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Flower description

Basic specification

Visible name	Flower description
Typical usage	A free form description of the plant's flowers. This description is used to supplement the flower and inflorescence details provided with the Flower View.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Features view

Storage details

SQL name	FlowerDescription
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FlowerDescription`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FlowerDescription>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Flower habit

Basic specification

Visible name	Flower habit
Typical usage	The way in which a flower holds itself up against gravity: *erect, horizontal, nodding, or pendant.*
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	FlowerHabit
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FlowerHabit`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FlowerHabit>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Flower insertion

Basic specification

Visible name	Flower insertion
Typical usage	A description of how the flower is attached to the peduncle: *adnate, embracing, sheathing, sessile,* and others.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	FlowerInsertion
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FlowerInsertion`.
When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FlowerInsertion>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Principal color

Basic specification

Visible name	Principal color
Typical usage	The most prominent colors typically seen in flowers of this species.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with an embedded color wheel. The built-in color name spell-checker is automatically invoked during typing.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	FlowerPrincipalColor
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length. Multiple colors are separated by using commas.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FlowerPrincipalColor`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FlowerPrincipalColor>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	A color wheel representing the interpreted colors of this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	The color wheel is not shown.
text	on *	The comma-separated list of colors is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

✚ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Flower sexuality

Basic specification

Visible name	Flower sexuality
Typical usage	A description of the flower's perfection: *dioecious, monoecious, polygamous, pistillate, staminate,* etc.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	FlowerSexuality
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FlowerSexuality`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FlowerSexuality>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - **Flower size**

Basic specification

Visible name	Flower size
Typical usage	The length of an individual flower, not the inflorescence as a whole, across it's widest dimension.
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding measurement manipulator.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	FlowerSizeMin FlowerSizeMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range. If the current customization is set to "U.S. Customary" each unit is 1/32". If the current customization is set to "Metric" the units of these fields are millimeters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `FlowerSizeMin` and `FlowerSizeMax`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be simple integers representing the number of units (1/32" or millimeters). Alternatively these fields may be formatted using the single quote symbol which represents feet and the double quote symbol which represents inches or any fraction written using the denominators 2, 4, 8, 16 or 32. Metric alternatives include any number followed by the abbreviation "mm" for millimeters, "cm" for centimeters or "m" for meters.
	XML file	Each field must be in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a notation something like: 1/4" 3/8" 9/16" 2 1/2" 2mm 2cm 20cm
	XML file	Written out in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FlowerSizeMin>`. Note that the complimentary tag for FlowerSizeMax is not used; simply including the tag FlowerSizeMin will suffice to display both portions of the range. If the minimum and maximum are identical a single value is displayed rather than a range.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	An iconic symbol for "size" is inserted into the HTML document.
	off	No symbol is inserted.
text	on *	A measurement range written something like this: 1/4" - 1/2" 3/4" - 1 1/4" 3" - 5" 2mm - 4mm 2cm - 4cm 20cm
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Flower view

Basic specification

Visible name	Flower view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Flower view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	FlowerView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FlowerView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FlowerView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

🞤 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Fragrance

Basic specification

Visible name	Fragrance
Typical usage	A general description of the odors produced by the plant's flowers, leaves, roots and bark.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Traditional uses view

Storage details

SQL name	Fragrance
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Fragrance`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended to it.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Fragrance>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Fragrance category

Basic specification

Visible name	Fragrance category
Typical usage	A classification scheme for placing similar smelling plants into easily recognizable groups.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Traditional uses view

Storage details

SQL name	FragranceCategory
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FragranceCategory`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FragranceCategory>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Fragrance intensity

Basic specification

Visible name	Fragrance intensity
Typical usage	The relative strength of this plant's smell.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Traditional uses view

Storage details

SQL name	FragranceIntensity
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is **FragranceIntensity**.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FragranceIntensity>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Fragrance parts

Basic specification

Visible name	Fragrance parts
Typical usage	A list of which plant parts are fragrant.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible parts.
Data entry view	Traditional uses view

Storage details

SQL name	FragranceParts
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FragranceParts`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FragranceParts>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each plant part is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of plant parts separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each part is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each part is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each part is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Frost tolerance

Basic specification

Visible name	Frost tolerance
Typical usage	The relative tenderness or hardiness of a plant and its susceptibility to succumbing to frost.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	FrostTolerance
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FrostTolerance`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FrostTolerance>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Fruit description

Basic specification

Visible name	Fruit description
Typical usage	A free form description of the plant's fruit bearing organism. (For edible fruits and nuts, see the Nutrition View item "Edible Parts Description".)
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Features view

Storage details

SQL name	FruitDescription
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FruitDescription`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FruitDescription>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Fruit type

Basic specification

Visible name	Fruit type
Typical usage	The type of seed bearing organism, for example: *acorn, berry, drupe, nut, pome,* and more.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Features view

Storage details

SQL name	FruitType
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `FruitType`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:FruitType>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Garden location

Basic specification

Visible name	Garden location
Typical usage	Where is this specimen planted -- the name of the garden or the approximate location where it can be found.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons. Separate more than one garden location with semicolons.
Data entry view	Garden view

Storage details

SQL name	GardenLocation
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `GardenLocation`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item. Use semicolons to separate more than one value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:GardenLocation>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Garden notes

Basic specification

Visible name	Garden notes
Typical usage	A word processing-like note for highlighting the ornamental value of this plant, its climatic suitability, and some of its traditional uses.
Visible display type	Garden notes are displayed using a word processing-like editor allowing for text to be formatted with different font faces, point sizes, and colors, as well as highlighting with bold, italics, and underline.
Data entry view	Garden view

Storage details

SQL name	GardenNotes
Storage type	A Rich Text Format (RTF) item of up to 8000 characters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `GardenNotes`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing text of this note will be kept, but its formatting will be lost; additional text will be added to the end of the current note.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any plain text. No formatting rules are allowed.
	XML file	A valid RTF document.
Export	Delimited file	Exported as plain text without any formatting.
	XML file	Exported as a valid RTF document

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:GardenNotes>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item using the "richtext" attribute value (see below).
	off	Replace this tag with nothing; ignore the "richtext" attribute.
richtext	on *	Convert the RTF document to HTML and display the formatted text using the fonts, sizes, and colors as defined in the word-processing editor.
	off	Convert the RTF document to unformatted plain text.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Garden view

Basic specification

Visible name	Garden view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Garden View item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	GardenView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `GardenView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:GardenView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Genus

Basic specification

Visible name	Genus
Typical usage	The word genus is from the Greek meaning *race* or *kind*. It forms the root of the English word *generic*, thus it is the portion of the botanical name that is non-specific.
Visible display type	The genus is displayed using a drop-down list. The botanical name spell-checker is invoked when typing within the text area of this item. Alternative genus names with similar spelling are displayed when the drop-down button is pressed; however, this feature is only invoked when at least the first letter of the name is entered.
Data entry view	Identification view

Storage details

SQL name	Genus
Storage type	A text value up to 30 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Genus`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	This name is automatically formatted with the rules for genus names: the first letter is capitalized and all subsequent letters are set to lowercase. If the `BotanicalName` is not imported at the same time, the `BotanicalName` is automatically reconstructed using this new genus value together with the three other constituent parts.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored without changes of any kind.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Genus>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Geographic origin

Basic specification

Visible name	Geographic origin
Typical usage	The places where this plant is thought to have originated from. Through several millennia of mankind's efforts this record is fairly obscure.
Visible display type	The Geographic origin is displayed using an unformatted text box. More than one locality may be listed by separating the individual localities using semicolons.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	GeographicOrigin
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `GeographicOrigin`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored -- as a semicolon separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:GeographicOrigin>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Growth form

Basic specification

Visible name	Growth form
Typical usage	If this is a tree or shrub how does its visual form appear from a distance: dense, compact, pyramidal, and so forth.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Life cycle view

Storage details

SQL name	Growth form
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `GrowthForm`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:GrowthForm>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Growth habit

Basic specification

Visible name	Growth habit
Typical usage	If this is a groundcover, vine or flower does it grow upright without support or does it tend to stay close to the ground: ascending, climbing, mound forming, spreading, and the like.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Life cycle view

Storage details

SQL name	Growth habit
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `GrowthHabit`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:GrowthHabit>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Harvest season

Basic specification

Visible name	Harvest season (Harvesting period)
Typical usage	The usual time frame for expecting the harvest to be ready when the guidelines for "planting period" are followed.
Visible display type	Displayed using a calendar date-range manipulator. Seasons may be defined using an idealized Northern Hemisphere location where each season is divided into exactly three months.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	HarvestBegins HarvestEnds
Storage type	Two database timestamp fields representing the beginning and ending date of the seasonal period.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `HarvestBegins` and `HarvestEnds`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be set using a formatted date such as "Dec 01" or "Dec 31".

Seasons may also be specified by using the following key words instead of dates:

Keyword	HarvestBegins	HarvestEnds
spring	Mar 01	May 31
early spring	Mar 01	Mar 31
mid spring	Apr 01	Apr 30
late spring	May 01	May 31
summer	Jun 01	Aug 31
early summer	Jun 01	Jun 30
mid summer	Jul 01	Jul 31
late summer	Aug 01	Aug 31
fall	Sep 01	Nov 30
early fall	Sep 01	Sep 30
mid fall	Oct 01	Oct 31
late fall	Nov 01	Nov 30
winter	Dec 01	Feb 28
early winter	Dec 01	Dec 31
mid winter	Jan 01	Jan 31
late winter	Feb 01	Feb 28

An "unspecified" period may be represented by setting both the beginning and the ending times to "Jan 01".

	XML file	Each field must be in the XML standard format that looks like: 2000-12-31T00:00:00Z. The year must be set to the arbitrary value of 2000. The time must be set to midnight. Only the month and day are meaningful. An "unspecified" period may be represented by setting both the beginning and the ending times to 2000-01-01T00:00:00Z.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a format like: "Dec 31".
	XML file	The same rules apply as for XML import.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:HarvestBegins>`. Note that the complimentary tag for HarvestEnds is not used; simply including the tag HarvestBegins will suffice to display both the beginning and ending dates for the season.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	A date range formatted something like: "Mar 01 - May 31"
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕   [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Has medicinal uses

Basic specification

Visible name	Has medicinal uses
Typical usage	An all purpose item used to indicate that this plant has some traditional healing properties.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Herbal medicine view

Storage details

SQL name	IsMedicinal
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `IsMedicinal`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:IsMedicinal>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Hay fever pollen

Basic specification

Visible name	Hay fever pollen
Typical usage	A indicator of the relative quantity of pollen produced and carried on the wind.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Adverse factors view

Storage details

SQL name	HayFeverPollen
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `HayFeverPollen`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:HayFeverPollen>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

✚ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Hay fever season

Basic specification

Visible name	Hay fever season
Typical usage	The typical time of year when this plant bears wind-borne pollen.
Visible display type	Displayed using a calendar date-range manipulator. Seasons may be defined using an idealized Northern Hemisphere location where each season is divided into exactly three months.
Data entry view	Adverse factors view

Storage details

SQL name	HayFeverBegins HayFeverEnds
Storage type	Two database timestamp fields representing the beginning and ending date of the seasonal period.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `HayFeverBegins` and `HayFeverEnds`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be set using a formatted date such as "Dec 01" or "Dec 31". Seasons may also be specified by using the following key words instead of dates: An "unspecified" period may be represented by setting both the beginning and the ending times to "Jan 01".

Keyword	HayFeverBegins	HayFeverEnds
spring	Mar 01	May 31
early spring	Mar 01	Mar 31
mid spring	Apr 01	Apr 30
late spring	May 01	May 31
summer	Jun 01	Aug 31
early summer	Jun 01	Jun 30
mid summer	Jul 01	Jul 31
late summer	Aug 01	Aug 31
fall	Sep 01	Nov 30
early fall	Sep 01	Sep 30
mid fall	Oct 01	Oct 31
late fall	Nov 01	Nov 30
winter	Dec 01	Feb 28
early winter	Dec 01	Dec 31
mid winter	Jan 01	Jan 31
late winter	Feb 01	Feb 28

	XML file	Each field must be in the XML standard format that looks like: 2000-12-31T00:00:00Z. The year must be set to the arbitrary value of 2000. The time must be set to midnight. Only the month and day are meaningful. An "unspecified" period may be represented by setting both the beginning and the ending times to 2000-01-01T00:00:00Z.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a format like: "Dec 31".
	XML file	The same rules apply as for XML import.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:HayFeverBegins>`. Note that the complimentary tag for HayFeverEnds is not used; simply including the tag HayFeverBegins will suffice to display both the beginning and ending dates for the season.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	A date range formatted something like: "Mar 01 - May 31"
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Heat requirement

Basic specification

Visible name	Heat requirement
Typical usage	The relative need for hot summer days in order to produce good-sized and flavorful produce.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	HeatRequirement
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `HeatRequirement`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:HeatRequirement>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Heat zones

Basic specification

Visible name	AHS heat hardiness
Typical usage	The American Horticultural Society's heat zones in which this plant is known to survive. The lower value indicates a plant's minimum requirement for summer heat. The upper value indicates a plant's maximum tolerance for summer heat.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with dual color codes.
Data entry view	Climate view

Storage details

SQL name	HeatZones
Storage type	A text value up to 35 characters in length.
Internal representation	Internally the codes are stored rather than the description of the item. If a non-standard value is supplied, it's stored as is.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `HeatZones`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	1) A comma-separated list of Heat zones, or 2) A range of Heat zones, something like "09-04", or 3) A free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of Heat zones or a free form description.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of Heat zones or a free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of Heat zones or a free form description.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:HeatZones>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	For single coded values the color code is displayed. For a range of coded values the first and last color codes are displayed.
	off	No color codes are shown.
code	on This is the default value when graphics is on.	Include the code with the color.
	off This is the default value when graphics is off.	Do not show the code with the color.

text	on This is the default value when graphics is off or for free form text.	The text description of the codes -- something like: 45 to 60 days above 86° F Heat 09-04
	off This is the default value when graphics is on.	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Herbal medicine view

Basic specification

Visible name	Herbal medicine view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Herbal medicine view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	Herbal medicineView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Herbal medicineView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Herbal medicineView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Herbarium notes

Basic specification

Visible name	Herbarium notes Collection notes
Typical usage	A word processing-like note to document additional herbarium related information. Also used to document general free form descriptive botanical information.
Visible display type	Herbarium notes are displayed using a word processing-like editor allowing for text to be formatted with different font faces, point sizes, and colors, as well as highlighting with bold, italics, and underline.
Data entry view	Herbarium view

Storage details

SQL name	HerbariumNotes
Storage type	A Rich Text Format (RTF) item of up to 8000 characters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `HerbariumNotes`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing text of this note will be kept, but its formatting will be lost; additional text will be added to the end of the current note.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any plain text. No formatting rules are allowed.
	XML file	A valid RTF document.
Export	Delimited file	Exported as plain text without any formatting.
	XML file	Exported as a valid RTF document

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:HerbariumNotes>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item using the "richtext" attribute value (see below).
	off	Replace this tag with nothing; ignore the "richtext" attribute.
richtext	on *	Convert the RTF document to HTML and display the formatted text using the fonts, sizes, and colors as defined in the word-processing editor.
	off	Convert the RTF document to unformatted plain text.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Herbarium view

Basic specification

Visible name	Herbarium view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Herbarium view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	HerbariumView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `HerbariumView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:HerbariumView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Horticulture notes

Basic specification

Visible name	Horticulture notes
Typical usage	A word processing-like note that documents horticulture related information such as fertilization, propagation and origin.
Visible display type	Horticulture notes are displayed using a word processing-like editor allowing for text to be formatted with different font faces, point sizes, and colors, as well as highlighting with bold, italics, and underline.
Data entry view	Horticulture view

Storage details

SQL name	HorticultureNotes
Storage type	A Rich Text Format (RTF) item of up to 8000 characters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `HorticultureNotes`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing text of this note will be kept, but its formatting will be lost; additional text will be added to the end of the current note.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any plain text. No formatting rules are allowed.
	XML file	A valid RTF document.
Export	Delimited file	Exported as plain text without any formatting.
	XML file	Exported as a valid RTF document

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:HorticultureNotes>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item using the "richtext" attribute value (see below).
	off	Replace this tag with nothing; ignore the "richtext" attribute.
richtext	on *	Convert the RTF document to HTML and display the formatted text using the fonts, sizes, and colors as defined in the word-processing editor.
	off	Convert the RTF document to unformatted plain text.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Horticulture view

Basic specification

Visible name	Horticulture view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Horticulture view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	HorticultureView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `HorticultureView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:HorticultureView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Identification view

Basic specification

Visible name	Identification view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Identification View item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	IdentificationView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `IdentificationView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:IdentificationView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Inflorescence arrangement

Basic specification

Visible name	Inflorescence arrangement
Typical usage	The arrangement of the individual flowers within the inflorescence. Examples include: *clustered, loose, radiant, rosaceous, spiral*, and others.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	InflorescenceArrangement
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `InflorescenceArrangement`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:InflorescenceArrangement>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Inflorescence form

Basic specification

Visible name	Inflorescence form
Typical usage	The form of the inflorescence: *capitate, cymose, spicate, or umbellate* to name a few.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	InflorescenceForm
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `InflorescenceForm`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:InflorescenceForm>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Inflorescence size

Basic specification

Visible name	Inflorescence size
Typical usage	The width of an inflorescence when it is symmetrical, or the length of an inflorescence when it is elongated.
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding measurement manipulator.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	InflorescenceSizeMin InflorescenceSizeMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range. If the current customization is set to "U.S. Customary" each unit is 1/32". If the current customization is set to "Metric" the units of these fields are millimeters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `InflorescenceSizeMin` and `InflorescenceSizeMax`. When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be simple integers representing the number of units (1/32" or millimeters). Alternatively these fields may be formatted using the single quote symbol which represents feet and the double quote symbol which represents inches or any fraction written using the denominators 2, 4, 8, 16 or 32. Metric alternatives include any number followed by the abbreviation "mm" for millimeters, "cm" for centimeters or "m" for meters.
	XML file	Each field must be in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a notation something like: 1/4" 3/8" 9/16" 2 1/2" 2mm 2cm 20cm
	XML file	Written out in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:InflorescenceSizeMin>`. Note that the complimentary tag for InflorescenceSizeMax is not used; simply including the tag InflorescenceSizeMin will suffice to display both portions of the range. If the minimum and maximum are identical a single value is displayed rather than a range.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	An iconic symbol for "size" is inserted into the HTML document.
	off	No symbol is inserted.
text	on *	A measurement range written something like this: 1/4" - 1/2" 3/4" - 1 1/4" 3" - 5" 2mm - 4mm 2cm - 4cm 20cm
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Inflorescence type

Basic specification

Visible name	Inflorescence type
Typical usage	The inflorescence type: *catkin, head, raceme, thyrse, or umbel* for example.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	InflorescenceType
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `InflorescenceType`.
When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:InflorescenceType>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Insect resistant

Basic specification

Visible name	Insect resistant
Typical usage	Checked if this variety is more notably insect resistant than its common form.
Visible display type	Insect resistant is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	InsectResistant
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `InsectResistant`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:InsectResistant>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Internal poison

Basic specification

Visible name	Internal poison
Typical usage	Checked if this plant can cause illness or death when ingested.
Visible display type	Internal poison is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Adverse factors view

Storage details

SQL name	InternalPoison
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `InternalPoison`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:InternalPoison>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - IUCN red list

Basic specification

Visible name	IUCN red list
Typical usage	Used for species that are included on the 1994 IUCN red list published by the UNEP World Conservation Monitoring Centre.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	IUCNRedList
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `IUCNRedList`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:IUCNRedList>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf apex

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf apex
Typical usage	The appearance of the leaf tip. Examples include: *blunt, hooked, mucronate, or retuse.*
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafApex
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafApex`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafApex>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf arrangement

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf arrangement
Typical usage	A description of how the leaflets are arranged in relationship to each other -- something like *alternate, opposite, whorled*, etc.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafArrangement
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafArrangement`.
When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafArrangement>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf base

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf base
Typical usage	The appearance of the leaf base where it attaches to the petiole. Possibilities might be *attenuate, cordate, hastate, truncate*, and more.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafBase
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafBase`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafBase>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf color

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf color
Typical usage	The color(s) of the leaves.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with an embedded color wheel. The built-in color name spell-checker is automatically invoked during typing.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafColor
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length. Multiple colors are separated by using commas.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafColor`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafColor>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	A color wheel representing the interpreted colors of this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	The color wheel is not shown.
text	on *	The comma-separated list of colors is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - **Leaf compound**

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf compound
Typical usage	This is the keyword *simple* for simple leaves. For compound leaves this is variously one of the *compound* or *pinnate* choices.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafCompound
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafCompound`.
When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafCompound>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf description

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf description
Typical usage	A free form description of the plant's leaves. This description is used to supplement the leaf details provided with the Leaf View.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Features view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafDescription
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafDescription`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafDescription>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf hair

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf hair
Typical usage	A description of the *downy, hairy, silky, spiny, velvety, or woolly* covering on the leaves.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafHair
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafHair`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafHair>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf incision

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf incision
Typical usage	For deeply cut leaves, this is a description of how the divisions appear -- something like *lobed, palmate, split*, and so forth.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafIncision
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafIncision`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafIncision>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf length

Basic specification

Visible name	Overall leaf length
Typical usage	For simple leaves, this is the typical length from base to tip. For compound leaves, this is the typical length of the full compound leaf.
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding measurement manipulator.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafLengthMin LeafLengthMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range. If the current customization is set to "U.S. Customary" each unit is 1/32". If the current customization is set to "Metric" the units of these fields are millimeters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `LeafLengthMin` and `LeafLengthMax`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be simple integers representing the number of units (1/32" or millimeters). Alternatively these fields may be formatted using the single quote symbol which represents feet and the double quote symbol which represents inches or any fraction written using the denominators 2, 4, 8, 16 or 32. Metric alternatives include any number followed by the abbreviation "mm" for millimeters, "cm" for centimeters or "m" for meters.
	XML file	Each field must be in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a notation something like: 1/4" 3/8" 9/16" 2 1/2" 2mm 2cm 20cm
	XML file	Written out in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafLengthMin>`. Note that the complimentary tag for LeafLengthMax is not used; simply including the tag LeafLengthMin will suffice to display both portions of the range. If the minimum and maximum are identical a single value is displayed rather than a range.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	An iconic symbol for "length" is inserted into the HTML document.
	off	No symbol is inserted.
text	on *	A measurement range written something like this: 1/4" - 1/2" 3/4" - 1 1/4" 3" - 5" 2mm - 4mm 2cm - 4cm 20cm
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Leaflet length

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaflet length
Typical usage	For compound leaves only. This is the typical length of a single leaflet from base to tip.
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding measurement manipulator.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafletLengthMin LeafletLengthMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range. If the current customization is set to "U.S. Customary" each unit is 1/32". If the current customization is set to "Metric" the units of these fields are millimeters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `LeafletLengthMin` and `LeafletLengthMax`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be simple integers representing the number of units (1/32" or millimeters). Alternatively these fields may be formatted using the single quote symbol which represents feet and the double quote symbol which represents inches or any fraction written using the denominators 2, 4, 8, 16 or 32. Metric alternatives include any number followed by the abbreviation "mm" for millimeters, "cm" for centimeters or "m" for meters.
	XML file	Each field must be in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a notation something like: 1/4" 3/8" 9/16" 2 1/2" 2mm 2cm 20cm
	XML file	Written out in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafletLengthMin>`. Note that the complimentary tag for LeafletLengthMax is not used; simply including the tag LeafletLengthMin will suffice to display both portions of the range. If the minimum and maximum are identical a single value is displayed rather than a range.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	An iconic symbol for "length" is inserted into the HTML document.
	off	No symbol is inserted.

text	on *	A measurement range written something like this:
		  1/4" - 1/2"
		  3/4" - 1 1/4"
		  3" - 5"
		  2mm - 4mm
		  2cm - 4cm
		  20cm

	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Leaflet width

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaflet width
Typical usage	For compound leaves only. This is the typical width of a single leaflet across its widest part.
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding measurement manipulator.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafletWidthMin LeafletWidthMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range. If the current customization is set to "U.S. Customary" each unit is 1/32". If the current customization is set to "Metric" the units of these fields are millimeters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `LeafletWidthMin` and `LeafletWidthMax`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be simple integers representing the number of units (1/32" or millimeters). Alternatively these fields may be formatted using the single quote symbol which represents feet and the double quote symbol which represents inches or any fraction written using the denominators 2, 4, 8, 16 or 32. Metric alternatives include any number followed by the abbreviation "mm" for millimeters, "cm" for centimeters or "m" for meters.
	XML file	Each field must be in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a notation something like: 1/4" 3/8" 9/16" 2 1/2" 2mm 2cm 20cm
	XML file	Written out in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafletWidthMin>`. Note that the complimentary tag for LeafletWidthMax is not used; simply including the tag LeafletWidthMin will suffice to display both portions of the range. If the minimum and maximum are identical a single value is displayed rather than a range.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	An iconic symbol for "width" is inserted into the HTML document.
	off	No symbol is inserted.
text	on *	A measurement range written something like this: 1/4" - 1/2" 3/4" - 1 1/4" 3" - 5" 2mm - 4mm 2cm - 4cm 20cm
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf margin

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf margin
Typical usage	A description of the type of serration along the outer edges of the leaf. Might be something like: *curled, gnawed, crenated, sawed, toothed,* etc.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafMargin
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafMargin`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafMargin>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf polish

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf polish
Typical usage	A description of the particulate covering on the leaves -- possibilities include: *dewy, dusty, greasy, powdery, slimy*, etc.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafPolish
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafPolish`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafPolish>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf shape

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf shape
Typical usage	The overall appearance of a leaf's shape -- possible values include: *crescent-shaped, fiddle-shaped, halbert-shaped, heart-shaped, kidney-shaped, needle-shaped, sword-shaped*, and many more.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafShape
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafShape`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafShape>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf texture

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf texture
Typical usage	A description of the leaf's surface texture -- *leathery, papery, spongy, waxy*, etc.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafTexture
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafTexture`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafTexture>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf variegation

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf variegation
Typical usage	The location and appearance of discolorations and other markings on the leaves: *marbled, painted, spotted, striped, variegated*, and so forth.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafVariegation
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafVariegation`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafVariegation>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf venation

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf venation
Typical usage	A description of the pattern of veins within the leaf. Examples include: *divided, reticulated, pedate, peltate, ribbed*, and more.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafVenation
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafVenation`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafVenation>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf vernation

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf vernation
Typical usage	A description of how the young leaves are arranged before the bud opens. Many possibilities such as *convolute, contorted, rovolute, wrinkled,* and more.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafVernation
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafVernation`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafVernation>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf view

Basic specification

Visible name	Leaf view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Leaf view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	LeafView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LeafView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Leaf width

Basic specification

Visible name	Overall leaf width
Typical usage	For simple leaves, this is the typical width across the widest portion of the leaf. For compound leaves, this is the typical width of the full compound leaf.
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding measurement manipulator.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	LeafWidthMin LeafWidthMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range. If the current customization is set to "U.S. Customary" each unit is 1/32". If the current customization is set to "Metric" the units of these fields are millimeters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `LeafWidthMin` and `LeafWidthMax`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be simple integers representing the number of units (1/32" or millimeters). Alternatively these fields may be formatted using the single quote symbol which represents feet and the double quote symbol which represents inches or any fraction written using the denominators 2, 4, 8, 16 or 32. Metric alternatives include any number followed by the abbreviation "mm" for millimeters, "cm" for centimeters or "m" for meters.
	XML file	Each field must be in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a notation something like: 1/4" 3/8" 9/16" 2 1/2" 2mm 2cm 20cm
	XML file	Written out in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LeafWidthMin>`. Note that the complimentary tag for LeafWidthMax is not used; simply including the tag LeafWidthMin will suffice to display both portions of the range. If the minimum and maximum are identical a single value is displayed rather than a range.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	An iconic symbol for "width" is inserted into the HTML document.
	off	No symbol is inserted.
text	on *	A measurement range written something like this: 1/4" - 1/2" 3/4" - 1 1/4" 3" - 5" 2mm - 4mm 2cm - 4cm 20cm
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Legally restricted

Basic specification

Visible name	Legally restricted
Typical usage	Checked when the use or possession of this plant is subject to legal restrictions in one or more countries.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Herbal medicine view

Storage details

SQL name	LegallyRestricted
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LegallyRestricted`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:LegallyRestricted>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Life cycle

Basic specification

Visible name	Life cycle
Typical usage	Describes in layman's terms how a plant progresses from germination to death, something like: annual, biennial or perennial.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Life cycle view

Storage details

SQL name	LifeCycle
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LifeCycle`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LifeCycle>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Life cycle view

Basic specification

Visible name	Life cycle view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered on any item in the Life cycle View.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	LifeCycleView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LifeCycleView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LifeCycleView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Life form

Basic specification

Visible name	Life form
Typical usage	This is usually "terrestrial" for most angiosperms and gymnosperms. Use this item to classify plants as bryophyte (mosses, liverworts, hornworts), epiphyte (air plants), or aquatic (plants living in water).
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Life cycle view

Storage details

SQL name	LifeForm
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LifeForm`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LifeForm>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Life span

Basic specification

Visible name	Life span
Typical usage	The typical longevity of the plant. This should be one year for annuals, two years for biennials, and a range of years (two or more) for perennials.
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding range manipulator.
Data entry view	Life cycle view

Storage details

SQL name	LifeSpanMin LifeSpanMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `LifeSpanMin` and `LifeSpanMax`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Two integer values representing the range of years.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Two integer values representing the range of years.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:LifeSpan>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	A date range written something like this: 1 year 2 years 3-10 years
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Livestock poison

Basic specification

Visible name	Livestock poison
Typical usage	Checked if this plant should be kept out of pastures used by grazing farm animals.
Visible display type	Livestock poison is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Adverse factors view

Storage details

SQL name	LivestockPoison
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `LivestockPoison`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:LivestockPoison>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Mechanical injury

Basic specification

Visible name	Mechanical injury
Typical usage	Checked if this plant contains sharp points that easily puncture the skin.
Visible display type	Mechanical injury is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Adverse factors view

Storage details

SQL name	MechanicalInjury
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `MechanicalInjury`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:MechanicalInjury>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Medicinal notes

Basic specification

Visible name	Medicinal notes
Typical usage	A word processing-like note used to describe the beneficial uses of this plant.
Visible display type	Medicinal notes are displayed using a word processing-like editor allowing for text to be formatted with different font faces, point sizes, and colors, as well as highlighting with bold, italics, and underline.
Data entry view	Herbal medicine view

Storage details

SQL name	MedicinalNotes
Storage type	A Rich Text Format (RTF) item of up to 8000 characters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `MedicinalNotes`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing text of this note will be kept, but its formatting will be lost; additional text will be added to the end of the current note.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any plain text. No formatting rules are allowed.
	XML file	A valid RTF document.
Export	Delimited file	Exported as plain text without any formatting.
	XML file	Exported as a valid RTF document

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:MedicinalNotes>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item using the "richtext" attribute value (see below).
	off	Replace this tag with nothing; ignore the "richtext" attribute.
richtext	on *	Convert the RTF document to HTML and display the formatted text using the fonts, sizes, and colors as defined in the word-processing editor.
	off	Convert the RTF document to unformatted plain text.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Medicinal parts

Basic specification

Visible name	Medicinal parts
Typical usage	The parts of the plant that are used when preparing infusions, tinctures, creams, herbal teas, and so forth.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible parts.
Data entry view	Herbal medicine view

Storage details

SQL name	MedicinalParts
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `MedicinalParts`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:MedicinalParts>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each plant part is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of plant parts separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each part is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each part is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each part is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Medicinal properties

Basic specification

Visible name	Medicinal properties
Typical usage	This is a list of the ways in which this plant has been used to treat illness and to promote health.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible medicinal properties. Properties in the full list are organized by code as follows:

Code	Grouping
100	circulatory system
200	digestive system
300	respiratory system
400	urinary system
500	reproductive system
530	female body
560	male body
600	systemic
700	nervous system
800	musculoskeletal system
900	external body

Data entry view	Herbal medicine view

Storage details

SQL name	MedicinalProperties
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of properties.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `MedicinalProperties`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of medicinal properties.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of medicinal properties.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:MedicinalProperties>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each property is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of properties separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each property is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each property is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each part is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Native status

Basic specification

Visible name	Native status
Typical usage	An indicator used with regional flora to classify a plant as native, indigenous or endemic.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	NativeStatus
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `NativeStatus`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:NativeStatus>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Naturalscape

Basic specification

Visible name	Naturalscape
Typical usage	Checked if this plant is found along roadsides, open fields and other non-cultivated areas and is not normally considered a "wildflower". This is a non-pejorative word for "a common weed".
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	IsNaturalscape
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `IsNaturalscape`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	True or False
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	True or False
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:IsNaturalscape>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value yes or no is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Noxious weed

Basic specification

Visible name	Noxious weed
Typical usage	An indicator used by state agricultural agencies to identify the potential threat a non-native species poses to the local economy.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	NoxiousWeed
Storage type	A text value up to 30 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `NoxiousWeed`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:NoxiousWeed>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Number of leaflets

Basic specification

Visible name	Number of leaflets
Typical usage	For compound leaves only. This is the number of leaflets per leaf. This value may be a simple number, like "5", or a range of values like "11-15".
Visible display type	The number of leaflets is displayed using an unformatted text box.
Data entry view	Leaf view

Storage details

SQL name	NumberOfLeaflets
Storage type	A text value up to 10 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `NumberOfLeaflets`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value will be completely replaced by the new value.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:NumberOfLeaflets>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Nursery

Basic specification

Visible name	Nursery
Typical usage	From which nursery (or friend/neighbor/relative) was this plant obtained.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Garden view

Storage details

SQL name	Nursery
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Nursery`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Nursery>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Nutritional value

Basic specification

Visible name	Nutritional value
Typical usage	A list of the notable vitamins, minerals, trace elements and proteins found in this plant.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible nutrition-related values. Grouped by codes using one of five possible characters prefixes:
Data entry view	Nutrition view

Code prefix	Nutritional group
codes beginning with a space	vitamins
codes beginning with the ^ character	minerals
codes beginning with the _ character	trace elements
codes beginning with the ~ character	proteins and essential fatty acids
LC	Low calorie

Storage details

SQL name	NutritionalValue
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `NutritionalValue`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of nutritional values.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of nutritional values.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:NutritionalValue>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each value is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of values separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The color code is shown.
	off	The color code is not shown.
	on *	Show the code with the color.

code	off	Do not show the code with the color.
text	on *	The text value is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Nutrition view

Basic specification

Visible name	Nutrition view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Nutrition view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	NutritionView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `NutritionView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	True or False
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:NutritionView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value yes or no is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Other interest

Basic specification

Visible name	Other interest
Typical usage	An all-purpose classifier. Create your own categories to organize plants according to their special interest to you.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons. Separate more than one other interest with semicolons.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	OtherInterest
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `OtherInterest`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item. Use semicolons to separate more than one value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:OtherInterest>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Other interest color

Basic specification

Visible name	Other interest color
Typical usage	An all purpose classifier for colors. The semantics of this item are entirely up to you.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with an embedded color wheel. The built-in color name spell-checker is automatically invoked during typing.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	OtherInterestColor
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length. Multiple colors are separated by using commas.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `OtherInterestColor`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of colors surrounded by double quotes.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of colors.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:OtherInterestColor>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	A color wheel representing the interpreted colors of this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	The color wheel is not shown.
text	on *	The comma-separated list of colors is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Other interest period

Basic specification

Visible name	Other interest period
Typical usage	An all purpose seasonal item (or date range item). Use this item either independent of or in conjunction with the "Other interest" item.
Visible display type	Displayed using a calendar date-range manipulator. Seasons may be defined using an idealized Northern Hemisphere location where each season is divided into exactly three months.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	OtherInterestBegins OtherInterestEnds
Storage type	Two database timestamp fields representing the beginning and ending date of the seasonal period.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `OtherInterestBegins` and `OtherInterestEnds`. When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be set using a formatted date such as "Dec 01" or "Dec 31". Seasons may also be specified by using the following key words instead of dates: <table><tr><th>Keyword</th><th>OtherInterestBegins</th><th>OtherInterestEnds</th></tr><tr><td>spring</td><td>Mar 01</td><td>May 31</td></tr><tr><td>early spring</td><td>Mar 01</td><td>Mar 31</td></tr><tr><td>mid spring</td><td>Apr 01</td><td>Apr 30</td></tr><tr><td>late spring</td><td>May 01</td><td>May 31</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>summer</td><td>Jun 01</td><td>Aug 31</td></tr><tr><td>early summer</td><td>Jun 01</td><td>Jun 30</td></tr><tr><td>mid summer</td><td>Jul 01</td><td>Jul 31</td></tr><tr><td>late summer</td><td>Aug 01</td><td>Aug 31</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>fall</td><td>Sep 01</td><td>Nov 30</td></tr><tr><td>early fall</td><td>Sep 01</td><td>Sep 30</td></tr><tr><td>mid fall</td><td>Oct 01</td><td>Oct 31</td></tr><tr><td>late fall</td><td>Nov 01</td><td>Nov 30</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>winter</td><td>Dec 01</td><td>Feb 28</td></tr><tr><td>early winter</td><td>Dec 01</td><td>Dec 31</td></tr><tr><td>mid winter</td><td>Jan 01</td><td>Jan 31</td></tr><tr><td>late winter</td><td>Feb 01</td><td>Feb 28</td></tr><tr><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table> An "unspecified" period may be represented by setting both the beginning and the ending times to "Jan 01".
Action	File type	

	XML file	Each field must be in the XML standard format that looks like: 2000-12-31T00:00:00Z. The year must be set to the arbitrary value of 2000. The time must be set to midnight. Only the month and day are meaningful. An "unspecified" period may be represented by setting both the beginning and the ending times to 2000-01-01T00:00:00Z.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a format like: "Dec 31".
	XML file	The same rules apply as for XML import.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:OtherInterestBegins>`. Note that the complimentary tag for OtherInterestEnds is not used; simply including the tag OtherInterestBegins will suffice to display both the beginning and ending dates for the season.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	A date range formatted something like: "Mar 01 - May 31"
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Overall height

Basic specification

Visible name	Overall height
Typical usage	How tall is a typical specimen at maturity.
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding measurement manipulator.
Data entry view	Life cycle view

Storage details

SQL name	OverallHeightMin OverallHeightMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range. If the current customization is set to "U.S. Customary" the units of these fields are inches. If the current customization is set to "Metric" the units of these fields are centimeters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `OverallHeightMin` and `OverallHeightMax`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be simple integers representing the number of units (inches or centimeters). Alternatively these fields may be formatted using the single quote symbol which represents feet and the double quote symbol which represents inches or may be followed by the abbreviation "cm" for centimeters or "m" for meters.
	XML file	Each field must be in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a notation something like: 9" 1' 6" 3' 25cm 2m
	XML file	Written out in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:OverallHeightMin>`. Note that the complimentary tag for OverallHeightMax is not used; simply including the tag OverallHeightMin will suffice to display both portions of the range. If the minimum and maximum are identical a single value is displayed rather than a range.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	An iconic symbol for "height" is inserted into the HTML document.
	off	No symbol is inserted.
text	on *	A measurement range written something like this: 3" 6" - 1' 2' - 3' 10cm 20cm - 40cm 1m 1.5m - 3m

	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Overall spread

Basic specification

Visible name	Overall spread
Typical usage	How wide is a typical specimen at maturity. This is often referred to by nursery labels as "planting distance" or "spacing".
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding measurement manipulator.
Data entry view	Life cycle view

Storage details

SQL name	OverallSpreadMin OverallSpreadMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range. If the current customization is set to "U.S. Customary" the units of these fields are inches. If the current customization is set to "Metric" the units of these fields are centimeters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `OverallSpreadMin` and `OverallSpreadMax`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be simple integers representing the number of units (inches or centimeters). Alternatively these fields may be formatted using the single quote symbol which represents feet and the double quote symbol which represents inches or may be followed by the abbreviation "cm" for centimeters or "m" for meters.
	XML file	Each field must be in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a notation something like: 9" 1' 6" 3' 25cm 2m
	XML file	Written out in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:OverallSpreadMin>`. Note that the complimentary tag for OverallSpreadMax is not used; simply including the tag OverallSpreadMin will suffice to display both portions of the range. If the minimum and maximum are identical a single value is displayed rather than a range.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	An iconic symbol for "spread" is inserted into the HTML document.
	off	No symbol is inserted.
text	on *	A measurement range written something like this: 3" 6" - 1' 2' - 3' 10cm 20cm - 40cm 1m 1.5m - 3m

	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - pH

Basic specification

Visible name	Acceptable soil pH
Typical usage	An indicator of a plant's suitability to acidic conditions.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with dual color codes.
Data entry view	Climate view

Storage details

SQL name	pH
Storage type	A text value up to 51 characters in length.
Internal representation	Internally the codes are stored rather than the description of the item. If a non-standard value is supplied, it's stored as is.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `pH`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	1) A comma-separated list of soil pH codes, or 2) A range of soil pH codes, something like "05-07", or 3) A free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of soil pH codes or a free form description.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of soil pH codes or a free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of soil pH codes or a free form description.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:pH>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	For single coded values the color code is displayed. For a range of coded values the first and last color codes are displayed.
	off	No color codes are shown.
code	on This is the default value when graphics is on.	Include the code with the color.
	off This is the default value when graphics is off.	Do not show the code with the color.

text	on	The text description of the codes -- something like:
	This is the default value when graphics is off or for free form text.	Slightly acidic
		Soil pH 05-07
	off	
	This is the default value when graphics is on.	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Picture 1

Basic specification

Visible name	Picture file (Picture 1)
Typical usage	The filename of the JPEG or GIF file containing a picture or sketch of the plant.
Visible display type	The picture filename is displayed using an unformatted text box. The file selection button adjacent to the text box helps you to choose the correct picture file.
Data entry view	Sketch view

Storage details

SQL name	PictureFile1
Storage type	A text value up to 128 characters in length.
Internal storage	If the picture file is in the suggested location for pictures, only the filename and extension are stored; otherwise the full drive, directory, and filename are stored.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `PictureFile1`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value will be completely replaced by the value in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	The filename of a GIF or JPEG picture.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag for the *picture filename* is `<cb:PictureFile1>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this filename as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

The replacement tag for the *picture itself* is `<cb:Picture1>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Insert the picture into the HTML document.
	off	Show the filename instead of the picture.
thumbnail	on *	Place the picture using the dimensions specified in the width and height attributes.
	off	Place the picture full size.

width	no default	If only the width is specified, compress or expand the picture to that width and set the height using the correct aspect ratio. If only the height is specified, compress or expand the picture to that height and set the width using the correct aspect ratio.
height	no default	If both the width and height are specified, stretch the picture to those dimensions. If neither are specified, set the height to 60, and compress the picture width using the correct aspect ratio.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Picture 2

Basic specification

Visible name	Picture file (Picture 2)
Typical usage	The filename of a secondary JPEG or GIF file containing an alternate picture or sketch of the plant.
Visible display type	The picture filename is displayed using an unformatted text box. The file selection button adjacent to the text box helps you to choose the correct picture file.
Data entry view	Sketch view

Storage details

SQL name	PictureFile2
Storage type	A text value up to 128 characters in length.
Internal storage	If the picture file is in the suggested location for pictures, only the filename and extension are stored; otherwise the full drive, directory, and filename are stored.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `PictureFile2`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value will be completely replaced by the value in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	The filename of a GIF or JPEG picture.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag for the *picture filename* is `<cb:PictureFile2>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this filename as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

The replacement tag for the *picture itself* is `<cb:Picture2>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Insert the picture into the HTML document.
	off	Show the filename instead of the picture.
thumbnail	on *	Place the picture using the dimensions specified in the width and height attributes.
	off	Place the picture full size.

width	no default	If only the width is specified, compress or expand the picture to that width and set the height using the correct aspect ratio. If only the height is specified, compress or expand the picture to that height and set the width using the correct aspect ratio.
height	no default	If both the width and height are specified, stretch the picture to those dimensions. If neither are specified, set the height to 60, and compress the picture width using the correct aspect ratio.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Pistil

Basic specification

Visible name	Pistil
Typical usage	A free form description of the flower's pistil.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	Pistil
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Pistil`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Pistil>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Plant community

Basic specification

Visible name	Plant community
Typical usage	One or more of the 29 plant communities defined by Munz, which indicates the native environment in which the species is naturally found growing.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with dual color codes.
Data entry view	Climate view

Storage details

SQL name	PlantCommunity
Storage type	A text value up to 86 characters in length.
Internal representation	Internally the codes are stored rather than the description of the item. If a non-standard value is supplied, it's stored as is.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `PlantCommunity`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	1) A comma-separated list of Plant community codes, or 2) A range of Plant community codes, something like "4-8", "4-8,23-25" or 3) A free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of Plant community codes or a free form description.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of Plant community codes or a free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of Plant community codes or a free form description.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:PlantCommunity>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	For single coded values the color code is displayed. For a range of coded values the first and last color codes are displayed.
	off	No color codes are shown.
code	on This is the default value when graphics is on.	Include the code with the color.
	off This is the default value when graphics is off.	Do not show the code with the color.

text	on This is the default value when graphics is off or for free form text.	The text description of the codes -- something like: Northern coastal scrub Community 04-08
	off This is the default value when graphics is on.	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Planting season

Basic specification

Visible name	Planting season (Planting period)
Typical usage	The best period of time for planting taking into consideration a plant's tenderness to frost and its need for sunlight.
Visible display type	Displayed using a calendar date-range manipulator. Seasons may be defined using an idealized Northern Hemisphere location where each season is divided into exactly three months.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	PlantingBegins PlantingEnds
Storage type	Two database timestamp fields representing the beginning and ending date of the seasonal period.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `PlantingBegins` and `PlantingEnds`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be set using a formatted date such as "Dec 01" or "Dec 31". Seasons may also be specified by using the following key words instead of dates: *(see table below)* An "unspecified" period may be represented by setting both the beginning and the ending times to "Jan 01".

Keyword	PlantingBegins	PlantingEnds
spring	Mar 01	May 31
early spring	Mar 01	Mar 31
mid spring	Apr 01	Apr 30
late spring	May 01	May 31
summer	Jun 01	Aug 31
early summer	Jun 01	Jun 30
mid summer	Jul 01	Jul 31
late summer	Aug 01	Aug 31
fall	Sep 01	Nov 30
early fall	Sep 01	Sep 30
mid fall	Oct 01	Oct 31
late fall	Nov 01	Nov 30
winter	Dec 01	Feb 28
early winter	Dec 01	Dec 31
mid winter	Jan 01	Jan 31
late winter	Feb 01	Feb 28

	XML file	Each field must be in the XML standard format that looks like: 2000-12-31T00:00:00Z. The year must be set to the arbitrary value of 2000. The time must be set to midnight. Only the month and day are meaningful. An "unspecified" period may be represented by setting both the beginning and the ending times to 2000-01-01T00:00:00Z.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a format like: "Dec 31".
	XML file	The same rules apply as for XML import.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:PlantingBegins>`. Note that the complimentary tag for PlantingEnds is not used; simply including the tag PlantingBegins will suffice to display both the beginning and ending dates for the season.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	A date range formatted something like: "Mar 01 - May 31"
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Planting style

Basic specification

Visible name	Planting style
Typical usage	The usual way of arranging crops for easy planting, tending, and harvesting.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	PlantingStyle
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `PlantingStyle`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:PlantingStyle>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

⊕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Poisonous indications

Basic specification

Visible name	Poisonous indications
Typical usage	A description of the toxic elements found in the plant.
Visible display type	The poisonous indications item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Adverse factors view

Storage details

SQL name	Poisonous indications
Storage type	A text value up to 300 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `PoisonousIndications`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended to it.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:PoisonousIndications>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Poisonous parts

Basic specification

Visible name	Poisonous parts
Typical usage	The parts of the plant that contain poisonous constituents.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible parts.
Data entry view	Adverse factors view

Storage details

SQL name	PoisonousParts
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `PoisonousParts`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:PoisonousParts>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each plant part is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of plant parts separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each part is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each part is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each part is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

✚ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Pollen parent

Basic specification

Visible name	Pollen parent
Typical usage	If this new variety is a hybrid, this identifies the male plant that supplied the pollen.
Visible display type	The Pollen parent is displayed using an unformatted text box.
Data entry view	Horticulture view

Storage details

SQL name	PollenParent
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `PollenParent`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value will be completely replaced by the value in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored -- as a semicolon separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:PollenParent>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Pollination method

Basic specification

Visible name	Pollination method
Typical usage	For fruits and nuts, an indicator of whether or not cross-pollination is required to set fruit.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	PollinationMethod
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `PollinationMethod`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:PollinationMethod>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Pregnancy alert

Basic specification

Visible name	Pregnancy alert (Do not use if pregnant)
Typical usage	Checked when this plant has abortifacient properties or is otherwise potentially harmful to the developing fetus.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Herbal medicine view

Storage details

SQL name	PregnancyAlert
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `PregnancyAlert`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:PregnancyAlert>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Price

Basic specification

Visible name	Price
Typical usage	The buying/selling price for this plant.
Visible display type	The Price is displayed using a simple text box. It may contain any decimal number with two digits to the right of the decimal point. No prejudice to any one country's currency is applied.
Data entry view	Garden view

Storage details

SQL name	Price
Storage type	A decimal number

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Price`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any decimal number.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Price>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item using two significant digits to the right of the decimal point. To show a currency symbol, edit the template and add the appropriate currency symbol before or after the replacement tag.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Price code

Basic specification

Visible name	Price code
Typical usage	For commercial tradesmen, an indicator of this plant's sales price.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Garden view

Storage details

SQL name	PriceCode
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `PriceCode`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:PriceCode>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Professional advice only

Basic specification

Visible name	Professional advice only (Do not self-administer)
Typical usage	Checked when this plant is considered dangerous enough that only qualified herbalists should consider using it.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Herbal medicine view

Storage details

SQL name	ProfessionalAdviceOnly
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `ProfessionalAdviceOnly`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:ProfessionalAdviceOnly>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Propagule

Basic specification

Visible name	Propagule
Typical usage	A list of the methods typically used to propagate this plant.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible propagation methods.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	Propagule
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Propagule`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of propagation methods.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of propagation methods.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Propagule>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each plant part is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of propagation methods separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each method is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each method is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each method is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Protocol

Basic specification

Visible name	Protocol
Typical usage	A free form description of how the species selection was carried out, or how the hybridization was accomplished.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Horticulture view

Storage details

SQL name	Protocol
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Protocol`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Protocol>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Quantity

Basic specification

Visible name	Quantity
Typical usage	Use this item to indicate how many plants of this species are in this collection.
Visible display type	The quantity is displayed using a simple text box. It may contain any whole number.
Data entry view	Garden view

Storage details

SQL name	Quantity
Storage type	A whole number

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Quantity`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any whole number.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Quantity>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Compleat Botanica - Row spacing

Basic specification

Visible name	Row spacing
Typical usage	For orchards and crops arranged in rows, the distance between adjacent rows for optimal yields.
Visible display type	Displayed using a special sliding measurement manipulator.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	RowSpacingMin RowSpacingMax
Storage type	Two integer fields representing the lowest and highest values of the range. If the current customization is set to "U.S. Customary" the units of these fields are inches. If the current customization is set to "Metric" the units of these fields are centimeters.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column names for this item are `RowSpacingMin` and `RowSpacingMax`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing values for this item will be completely overwritten by the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Each of the two fields may be simple integers representing the number of units (inches or centimeters). Alternatively these fields may be formatted using the single quote symbol which represents feet and the double quote symbol which represents inches or may be followed by the abbreviation "cm" for centimeters or "m" for meters.
	XML file	Each field must be in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations.
Export	Delimited file	Written out using a notation something like: 9" 1' 6" 3' 25cm 2m
	XML file	Written out in integer format without the use of symbols or abbreviations

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:RowSpacingMin>`. Note that the complimentary tag for RowSpacingMax is not used; simply including the tag RowSpacingMin will suffice to display both portions of the range. If the minimum and maximum are identical a single value is displayed rather than a range.

The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	An iconic symbol for "spacing" is inserted into the HTML document.
	off	No symbol is inserted.
text	on *	A measurement range written something like this: 3" 6" - 1' 2' - 3' 10cm 20cm - 40cm 1m 1.5m - 3m

	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Seed parent

Basic specification

Visible name	Seed parent
Typical usage	If this new variety is a hybrid, this identifies the female plant that supplied the seed.
Visible display type	The Seed parent is displayed using an unformatted text box.
Data entry view	Horticulture view

Storage details

SQL name	SeedParent
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `SeedParent`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value will be completely replaced by the value in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored -- as a semicolon separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:SeedParent>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Sheet number

Basic specification

Visible name	Sheet number
Typical usage	The unique identifier employed by an herbarium to reference this collection of dried and mounted plant material.
Visible display type	The Sheet number is displayed using an unformatted text box.
Data entry view	Herbarium view

Storage details

SQL name	SheetNumber
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `SheetNumber`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value will be completely replaced by the value in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored -- as a semicolon separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:SheetNumber>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Size at acquisition

Basic specification

Visible name	Size at acquisition
Typical usage	The original size of the plant when it was added to this collection.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Garden view

Storage details

SQL name	SizeAtAcquisition
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `SizeAtAcquisition`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:SizeAtAcquisition>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Sketch view

Basic specification

Visible name	Sketch view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Sketch view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	SketchView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `SketchView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:SketchView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Soil texture

Basic specification

Visible name	Optimal soil texture
Typical usage	The best type of soil for providing a support base and for retaining/releasing available water.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with dual color codes.
Data entry view	Climate view

Storage details

SQL name	SoilTexture
Storage type	A text value up to 35 characters in length.
Internal representation	Internally the codes are stored rather than the description of the item. If a non-standard value is supplied, it's stored as is.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `SoilTexture`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	1) A comma-separated list of soil codes, or 2) A range of soil codes, something like "01-04", or 3) A free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of soil codes or a free form description.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of soil codes or a free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of soil codes or a free form description.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:SoilTexture>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	For single coded values the color code is displayed. For a range of coded values the first and last color codes are displayed.
	off	No color codes are shown.
code	on This is the default value when graphics is on.	Include the code with the color.
	off This is the default value when graphics is off.	Do not show the code with the color.

text	on This is the default value when graphics is off or for free form text.	The text description of the codes -- something like: Sandy Soil texture 01-04
	off This is the default value when graphics is on.	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Special qualities view

Basic specification

Visible name	Special qualities view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Special qualities view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	SpecialQualitiesView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `SpecialQualitiesView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:SpecialQualitiesView>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Species

Basic specification

Visible name	Species
Typical usage	The species is the portion of the botanical name used as an adjective to more specifically describe the genus. The word species is from the Latin word *specere* meaning "to look at", or later on the Latin word itself *species*, meaning "appearance or kind". (This is remarkably similar to the Greek root *facere* or *fic* from which the English word specific is derived. Specific has the similar meaning of precise, exact, or definite.
Visible display type	The species is displayed using a drop-down list. The botanical name spell-checker is invoked when typing within the text area of this item. When a valid genus has been entered, pressing the drop-down button will list all possible species names for the genus. A shorter list of species names with similar spelling are displayed when the first few letters of the species are typed before the drop-down button is pressed.
Data entry view	Identification view

Storage details

SQL name	Species
Storage type	A text value up to 30 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Species`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	This name is automatically formatted with the rules for species names, that is, everything is set to lowercase. If the `BotanicalName` is not imported at the same time, the `BotanicalName` is automatically reconstructed using this new species value together with the three other constituent parts.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored without changes of any kind.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Species>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Specimen number

Basic specification

Visible name	Specimen number
Typical usage	The specimen number is a pseudo-unique identifier for the specimen record. It is automatically assigned using the customization rules in force at the time the record is created. It is intended to be unique, but it may not be if you explicitly override its default value.
Visible display type	The specimen number is displayed using a simple text box. Although it is referred to as a "number", in fact it may contain letters as well.
Data entry view	Identification view

Storage details

SQL name	SpecimenNumber
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `SpecimenNumber`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	If a column with the specimen number is found in the input file, it's value is imported. If no specimen number column exists in the input file, the normal rules for assigning specimen numbers to new records are invoked.
	XML file	Specimen numbers are only assigned if found in the input file.
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:SpecimenNumber>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Stamens

Basic specification

Visible name	Stamens
Typical usage	A free form description of the flower's stamens.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Flower view

Storage details

SQL name	Stamens
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Stamens`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Stamens>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Stature

Basic specification

Visible name	Stature
Typical usage	In gardener's terms, what type of plant is this: tree, shrub, vine, groundcover, flower, etc.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Life cycle view

Storage details

SQL name	Stature
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Stature`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Stature>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Suitable for gardens

Basic specification

Visible name	Suitable for gardens
Typical usage	This should be checked to indicate that the species has some ornamental garden value -- color, fragrance, flowers, form, etc.
Visible display type	Suitable for gardens is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Garden view

Storage details

SQL name	IsGardenSuitable
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `IsGardenSuitable`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:IsGardenSuitable>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Sunset zones

Basic specification

Visible name	Sunset climate zones
Typical usage	The Sunset Books' climate zones in which this plant does best. This set of zones may be a discontinuous range, for example: "Zones 4-9, 14-24".
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with dual color codes.
Data entry view	Climate view

Storage details

SQL name	SunsetZones
Storage type	A text value up to 134 characters in length.
Internal representation	Internally the codes are stored rather than the description of the item. If a non-standard value is supplied, it's stored as is.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `SunsetZones`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	1) A comma-separated list of Sunset zones, or 2) A range of Sunset zones, something like "4-9", "4-9,14-24" or 3) A free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of Sunset zones or a free form description.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of Sunset zones or a free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of Sunset zones or a free form description.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:SunsetZones>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	For single coded values the color code is displayed. For a range of coded values the first and last color codes are displayed.
	off	No color codes are shown.
code	on This is the default value when graphics is on.	Include the code with the color.
	off This is the default value when graphics is off.	Do not show the code with the color.

| text | on

This is the default value when graphics is off or for free form text. | The text description of the codes -- something like:
  Coldest winters in the West
  Sunset 04-09 |
| | off

This is the default value when graphics is on. | No text is written. |

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Sunshine

Basic specification

Visible name	Sunshine
Typical usage	Optimal lighting requirements to prevent scorching and to promote healthy growth.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Climate view

Storage details

SQL name	Sunshine
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Sunshine`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Sunshine>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Symbiosis

Basic specification

Visible name	Symbiosis
Typical usage	Other life forms (plants, insects, and more) that live in a symbiotic relationship with this species.
Visible display type	The Symbiosis is displayed using an unformatted text box. More than one symbiotic species may be listed by separating the individual species using semicolons.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	Symbiosis
Storage type	A text value up to 200 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Symbiosis`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored -- as a semicolon separated list of values.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Symbiosis>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Tag needs printing

Basic specification

Visible name	Tag needs printing
Typical usage	Checked when this specimen record is first created and unchecked after a specimen tag has been printed.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Herbarium view

Storage details

SQL name	TagNeedsPrinting needs printing
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `TagNeedsPrinting`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:TagNeedsPrinting>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Tentative listing

Basic specification

Visible name	Tentative listing
Typical usage	Checked if the "FESA listing", "IUCN red list", or "Noxious weed" classification is tentative awaiting further documentary evidence.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	IsTentativeListing
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `IsTentativeListing`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:IsTentativeListing>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Time to harvest

Basic specification

Visible name	Time to harvest
Typical usage	The number of days between planting and the first available harvest.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Cultivation view

Storage details

SQL name	TimeToHarvest
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `TimeToHarvest`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely replaced by the new value.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:TimeToHarvest>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Tolerates drought

Basic specification

Visible name	Tolerates drought
Typical usage	Checked when the plant can survive dry spells without damage.
Visible display type	Tolerates drought is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	ToleratesDrought
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `ToleratesDrought`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:ToleratesDrought>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Tolerates high humidity

Basic specification

Visible name	Tolerates high humidity
Typical usage	Checked when the plant can survive prolonged summer periods of very high humidity.
Visible display type	Tolerates high humidity is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	ToleratesHighHumidity
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `ToleratesHighHumidity`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:ToleratesHighHumidity>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Tolerates seaside conditions

Basic specification

Visible name	Tolerates seaside conditions
Typical usage	Checked when the plant can live in the windy, salty, foggy conditions found along the coastal belts.
Visible display type	Tolerates seaside conditions is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Special qualities view

Storage details

SQL name	ToleratesSeasideConditions
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `ToleratesSeasideConditions`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:ToleratesSeasideConditions>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Toxicity precautions

Basic specification

Visible name	Toxicity precautions
Typical usage	A description of the possible toxic effect of the use of this plant.
Visible display type	The Toxicity precautions item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Herbal medicine view

Storage details

SQL name	Toxicity precautions
Storage type	A text value up to 80 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `ToxicityPrecautions`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended to it.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:ToxicityPrecautions>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Parts used

Basic specification

Visible name	Parts used
Typical usage	The parts of the plant which have been used in historical times or are still used in the present time.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible parts.
Data entry view	Traditional uses view

Storage details

SQL name	TraditionalContemporaryParts
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `TraditionalContemporaryParts`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of plant parts.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:TraditionalContemporaryParts>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each plant part is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of plant parts separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each part is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each part is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each part is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Compleat Botanica - Traditional uses

Basic specification

Visible name	Traditional uses
Typical usage	A list of how this plant has been used by indigenous people. Uses such as food, medicine and fabric dyes are not included here.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of traditional use possibilities.
Data entry view	Traditional uses view

Storage details

SQL name	TraditionalUses
Storage type	A text value up to 100 characters in length.
Internal representation	A semicolon-separated list of plant uses.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `TraditionalUses`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of traditional plant uses.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of traditional plant uses.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:TraditionalUses>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each plant use is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of traditional plant uses separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The symbolic icon for each use is shown.
	off	The symbolic icon for each use is not shown.
text	on *	The text value of each use is shown.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

 [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Traditional uses view

Basic specification

Visible name	Traditional uses view
Typical usage	This check mark is an indicator of whether or not any data has been entered in any Traditional uses view item.
Visible display type	A red checkmark is shown when data is available on the form. A gray checkmark is shown when all data items on the form are empty.
Visible location	Specimen list toolbar

Storage details

SQL name	TraditionalUsesView
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `TraditionalUsesView`.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Not applicable. This checkmark is maintained by the software.
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:TraditionalUsesView>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Uncertain taxonomy

Basic specification

Visible name	Uncertain taxonomy
Typical usage	Automatically checked if the genus and species cannot be found in the taxonomic checklist. If you are sure this is a valid name, you can override this checkmark.
Visible display type	Uncertain taxonomy is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Identification view

Storage details

SQL name	UncertainTaxonomy
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `UncertainTaxonomy`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:UncertainTaxonomy>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Underground description

Basic specification

Visible name	Underground description
Typical usage	A free form description of the root structure and underground storage parts.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Features view

Storage details

SQL name	UndergroundDescription
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `UndergroundDescription`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:UndergroundDescription>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Underground type

Basic specification

Visible name	Underground type
Typical usage	The type of underground feeding and storage system for the plant. Typical examples include: *bulb, corm, rhizome, taproot and tuber.*
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Features view

Storage details

SQL name	UndergroundType
Storage type	A text value up to 20 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `UndergroundType`.

When importing with the Merge option the existing value will be completely replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:UndergroundType>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - USDA zones

Basic specification

Visible name	USDA hardiness
Typical usage	The United States Department of Agriculture's hardiness zones in which this plant is known to thrive. This range of zones indicates both the lowest temperature acceptable for survival as well as the plant's requirement for a cold dormant period.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with dual color codes.
Data entry view	Climate view

Storage details

SQL name	USDAZones
Storage type	A text value up to 77 characters in length.
Internal representation	Internally the codes are stored rather than the description of the item. If a non-standard value is supplied, it's stored as is.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `USDAZones`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing comma-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	1) A comma-separated list of USDA zones, or 2) A range of USDA zones, something like "05a-07b", or 3) A free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of USDA zones or a free form description.
Export	Delimited file	A comma-separated list of USDA zones or a free form description.
	XML file	A comma-separated list of USDA zones or a free form description.

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:USDAZones>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	For single coded values the color code is displayed. For a range of coded values the first and last color codes are displayed.
	off	No color codes are shown.
code	on This is the default value when graphics is on.	Include the code with the color.
	off This is the default value when graphics is off.	Do not show the code with the color.

text	on This is the default value when graphics is off or for free form text.	The text description of the codes -- something like: 5° to 10° F USDA 05a-07b
	off This is the default value when graphics is on.	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Variety

Basic specification

Visible name	Variety
Typical usage	The variety is the portion of the botanical name used to identify members of the same species that are distinct enough to warrant their own name. When the botanical name is assembled for plants of a named variety they are preceded by the abbreviation "var." This abbreviated is supplied automatically, you should not enter it yourself. This same text area is used for a named subspecies. To accomplish this, you must explicitly preface the subspecies name with the abbreviation "spp."
Visible display type	The variety is displayed using a drop-down list. The botanical name spell-checker is invoked when typing within the text area of this item. When both a valid genus and a valid species have been entered, pressing the drop-down button will list all varieties and subspecies for the pair. Because new varieties are frequently introduced, it is quite common to find plant names that are not in the database. You can simply ignore the red wavy proofreader's mark for this item if you're sure you've spelled the variety correctly -- it will disappear the next time this record is displayed.
Data entry view	Identification view

Storage details

SQL name	Variety
Storage type	A text value up to 30 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Variety`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	This name is automatically formatted with the rules for variety names, that is, everything is set to lowercase. If the `BotanicalName` is not imported at the same time, the `BotanicalName` is automatically reconstructed using this new variety (or subspecies) together with the three other constituent parts.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored without changes of any kind.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Variety>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this name as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Water

Basic specification

Visible name	Water
Typical usage	Best moisture conditions for terrestrial plants. A good indicator of a plant's tolerance to the extremes of drought and over saturation.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with customized icons.
Data entry view	Climate view

Standard values

⋯	00	Various
💧	01	No extra water
💧	02	Dry
💧	03	Dry, well drained
💧	04	Moist
💧	05	Moist, well drained
💧	06	Wet
💧	07	Well drained
💧💧	08	Dry to moist
💧💧	09	Moist to wet

Storage details

SQL name	Water
Storage type	A text value up to 40 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `Water`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:Water>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The graphical symbol associated with this item is placed on the HTML page.
	off	No graphical symbol is shown.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the document.
	off	No text is written.

Compleat Botanica - Wetland classification

Basic specification

Visible name	Wetland classification
Typical usage	A list of estuarine, lacustrine, marine, palustrine and riverine communities where this species is natively found.
Visible display type	Displayed in a short list with a special pop-up window for showing the full list of possible classifications.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	WetlandClassification
Storage type	A text value up to 50 characters in length.
Internal representation	Internally the codes are stored rather than the description of the item. Non-standard values are not supported.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `WetlandClassification`.
When importing with the Merge option, the existing semicolon-separated values of this item will be merged with the values specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of wetland classification codes.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	A semicolon-separated list of wetland classification codes.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:WetlandClassification>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
multilist	on *	Output the list of names using an HTML `<table></table>` tag pair. Each classification is placed in a separate row within the table.
	off	Output the list of classifications separated by spaces.
graphics	on *	The color code is shown.
	off	The color code is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color.
	off	Do not show the code with the color.
text	on *	The text value is shown. Because the wetland classification database field stores codes, the text value is in fact the same as the code.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Compleat Botanica - Wetland indicator

Basic specification

Visible name	Wetland indicator
Typical usage	The wetland indicator represents the estimated probability of a species occurring in wetlands versus non-wetlands in a region of study.
Visible display type	Displayed using a drop-down list with color codes.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	WetlandIndicator
Storage type	A text value up to 30 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `WetlandIndicator`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be completely overwritten by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any value is acceptable, even values that are not in the list of custom categories for this item.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it is stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:WetlandIndicator>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	The color patch is shown.
	off	The color patch is not shown.
code	on *	Show the code with the color patch.
	off	Do not show the code with the color patch.
text	on *	The text value of this item is written to the HTML document.
	off	No text is written.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

[Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Wildflower

Basic specification

Visible name	Wildflower
Typical usage	Checked if this plant is found along roadsides, open fields and other non-cultivated areas but has enough inherent beauty to be considered ornamental.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a check box.
Data entry view	Biodiversity view

Storage details

SQL name	IsWildflower
Storage type	1 if checked. 0 if unchecked.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `IsWildflower`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be replaced by the value specified in the input file.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0
Export	Delimited file	`True` or `False`
	XML file	1 or 0

Publication templates

The replacement tag is **`<cb:IsWildflower>`**. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
graphics	on *	Show a small box either checked or unchecked.
	off	Do not show a check box.
text	on *	The value `yes` or `no` is displayed.
	off	No text is shown.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

➕ [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#)

Compleat Botanica - Wood description

Basic specification

Visible name	Wood description
Typical usage	A free form description of the plant's woody cellular portions including color, texture and relative strength.
Visible display type	This item is displayed using a simple text box.
Data entry view	Features view

Storage details

SQL name	WoodDescription
Storage type	A text value up to 160 characters in length.

Import / export notes

When importing and exporting the column name for this item is `WoodDescription`.

When importing with the Merge option, the existing value of this item will be kept and the new value will be appended.

Action	File type	Notes
Import	Delimited file	Any text value.
	XML file	*ditto*
Export	Delimited file	Exported as it's stored in the database.
	XML file	*ditto*

Publication templates

The replacement tag is `<cb:WoodDescription>`. The possible attributes for this tag are shown below. Values marked with an asterisk are used by default.

Attribute	Possible values	Notes
text	on *	Show this item exactly as it's stored.
	off	Replace this tag with nothing.

For similar pages in the "Specifications" series see:

Alphabetical index to column specifications

Index to topics about plant names

✚ **Checklist of botanical names**	Index to topics about the Checklist Hierarchy and Checklist View.
✚ **Spell-checker and formatting rules**	Index to topics about the botanical spell-checker and botanical name formatting rules.
✚ **Vernacular names**	Index to vernacular name topics.

Compleat Botanica - Checklist of botanical names

Index to Checklist topics

|	
Nomenclature used in The Compleat Botanica	Notes on the methodology followed to assemble the Compleat Botanica's checklist of plant names.
Checklist hierarchy	The Checklist hierarchy is a listing of all taxonomic names available in The Compleat Botanica. The hierarchy allows you to expand or collapse portions of the tree to see taxonomic names subordinate to the selected name.
Reclassifying a plant taxon	Although the need to reclassify botanical names is uncommon for the layman, it is necessary for professional taxonomist.
Checklist View	The Checklist View displays the details of an individual botanical name entry.
Corrected family assignments	Genera that were assigned to incorrect Families in Build 85

Compleat Botanica - Nomenclature used in The Compleat Botanica

The Compleat Botanica follows the nomenclatural assignments of Reveal for the classification of families into the higher ranks of family, order, class and division. Some genera are also assigned to sub-families, tribes, and sub-tribes, however the full research into this will take many more years to complete and thus the current hierarchy is only partially representative of these ranks.

The assignment of genera to families has followed the publication of the Royal Botanical Garden at Kew except where Reveal has superceded this.

The assignment of species, sub-species, and varieties follows the publication by the USDA-NRCS.

Numerous corrections to the taxonomy have been made since the Build 85 release of the Compleat Botanica. You can obtain these corrections and apply them to existing databases by following the instructions in Technical Bulletin #10.

Please see the full list of citations at Checklist of botanical names used in The Compleat Botanica.

Compleat Botanica - Checklist hierarchy

The Checklist hierarchy is a listing of all taxonomic names available in The Compleat Botanica. The hierarchy allows you to expand or collapse portions of the tree to see taxonomic names subordinate to the selected name. Simply double click on any name to see all related entries one rank below. To expand the entire tree below the selected name hold down the <CTRL> key while double-clicking. Use caution when doing this from the higher ranks since the retrieval and display of many thousands of lower entries may take a very long time.

New | Reclassify | Delete
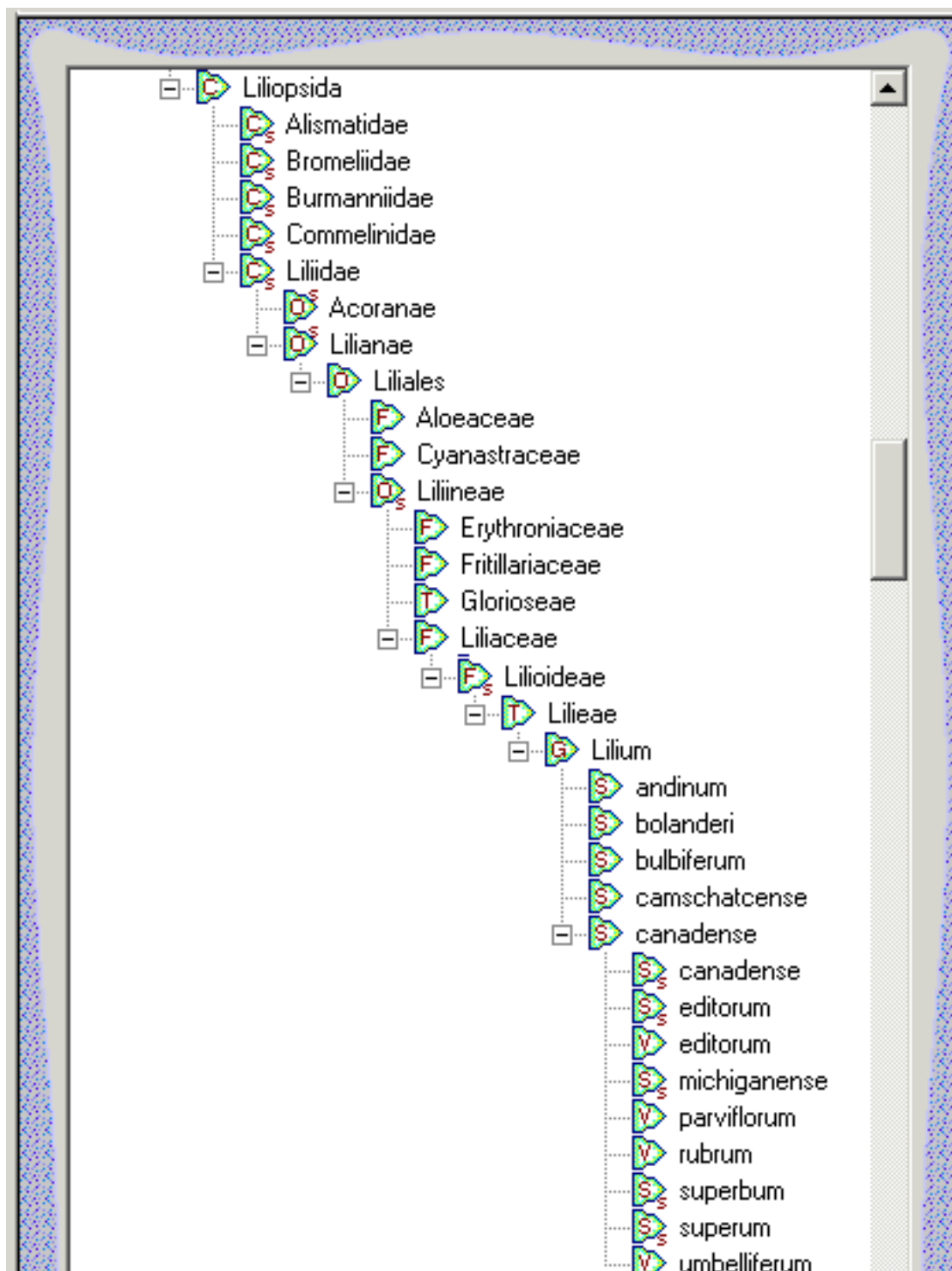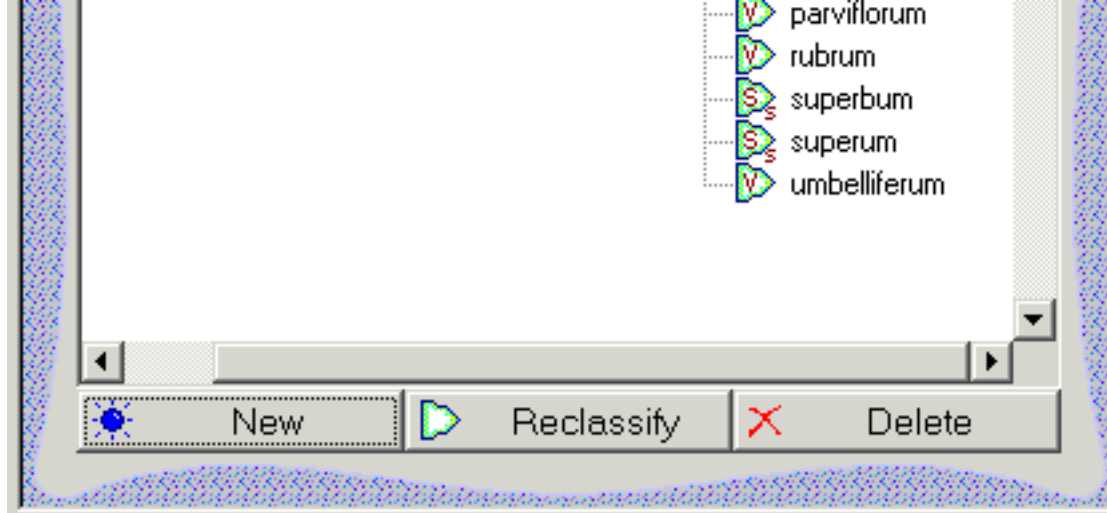
New names may be added and obsolete or incorrect names may be deleted using the buttons at the bottom of the hierarchy. This is an advanced option for people working in the field of nomenclature and taxonomy.

At the time of this writing some entries are of uncertain parentage and have been placed under a parent named "<incertae>". If you are an expert in a particular field of botany you can correctly assign these entries to their proper parentage using the Reclassify feature.

Note that the additions, deletions, and reclassifications performed on the checklist is done on a per-database case. To copy the modified checklist to another database, use the export and import features.

Table of botanical ranks

The rank of each entry is identified by the green icon to the left of the name. Here is a table of the codes used within the hierarchy:

Icon	Rank (English)	Rank (Latin)	Database value	Notes
R	kingdom	regnum	0	
R_s	sub-kingdom	subregnum	1	
D	division	divisio	2	also known as phylum in the plant kingdom
D_s	sub-division	subdivisio	3	also known as sub-phylum in the plant kingdom
C	class	classis	4	
C_s	sub-class	subclassis	5	

O_s	super-order	superordo	6	
O	order	ordo	7	
O_s	sub-order	subordo	8	
F	family	familia	9	
F_s	sub-family	subfamilia	10	
T	tribe	tribus	11	secondary rank
T_s	sub-tribe	subtribus	12	secondary rank
G	genus	genus	13	
G_s	sub-genus	subgenus	14	
Se	section	sectio	15	secondary rank
Se_s	sub-section	subsectio	16	secondary rank
Sr	series	series	17	secondary rank
Sr_s	sub-series	subseries	18	secondary rank
S	species	species	19	
S_s	sub-species	subspecies	20	
V	variety	varietas	21	secondary rank
V_s	sub-variety	subvarietas	22	secondary rank
F	form	forma	23	secondary rank
F_s	subform	subforma	24	secondary rank
C	cultivar		25	non-botanical name defined by the association for horticultural plant names.

Compleat Botanica - Reclassifying a plant taxon

Although the need to reclassify botanical names is uncommon for the layman, it is necessary for professional taxonomist. The actual process of reclassifying a botanical name within the software is simple enough: select the name to be reclassified and press the button at the bottom of the checklist hierarchy.
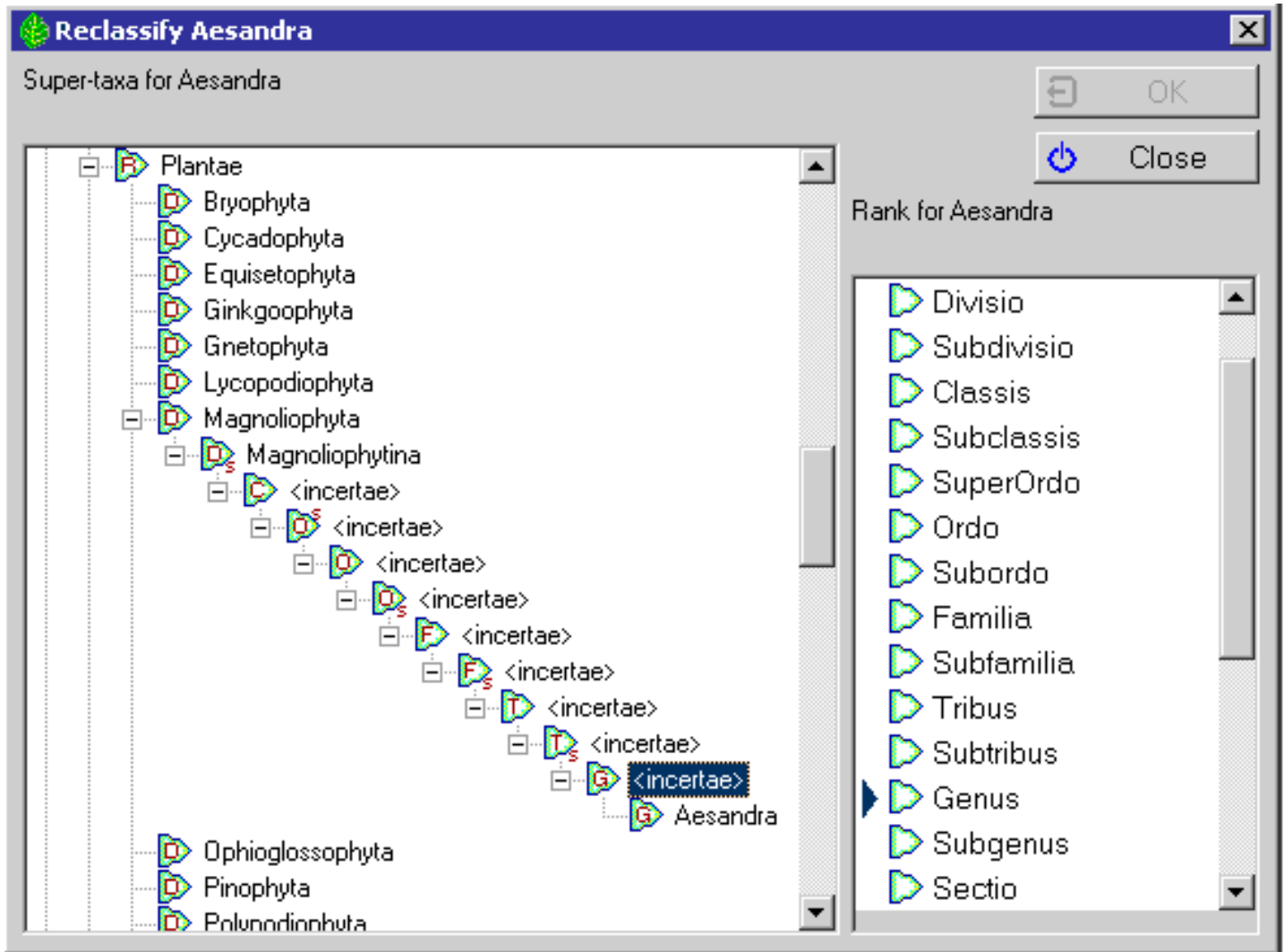
On the left-hand half of the reclassify window, select the new parent for the name to be reclassified. On the right-hand half of the window, select the rank for the name.

Compleat Botanica - Checklist View
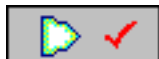
The **Checklist view** displays the details of an individual botanical name entry. Here is where you can find information about a plant name. These names may be at any level of the taxonomic hierarchy.

Checklist

Familia: Liliaceae

Familia	Liliaceae
Common Name	Lilies
Author	Juss.
Publication	Gen. Pl.: 48. 4 Aug 1789.
Source	Reveal, Ind. Nom. Supragenericorum: 29 Apr 1999
Original Name	Lilia
Synonym	

☐ Specimen available

B *I* U

Item	Description
Rank	The rank within the hierarchy, for example, ordo, familia, genus, species, and so forth. This level is shown just to the left of the taxon name.
Taxon name	The name of the entity. All names at the rank of genus and above are unique. Names names below genus are non-unique.
Common name	One or more common names for this taxon name. You may want to add your own common names to this field.
Author	An abbreviation of the last name of the author of this plant name. The author is the person who first validly published a description of this plant name. This attribution is a required part of the botanical name for botanists and other scientists. It is not commonly applied to plant names vernacularly.
Publication	A citation of the first publication of this name.
Source	The Compleat Botanica's source of the author and publication data.
Original name	The name originally used for this item. Validly published names are sometimes changed to conform with the standards of the International Association of Plant Taxonomists code. These rules require plants at certain levels of the hierarchy to have certain name endings. For example, family names must end in -aceae.
Synonym	Other validly published names which synonymously refer to this item.
Specimen available	You may check this box to indicate that you have a specimen of this type in your collection. All higher-level names in the hierarchy are automatically checked for you. In this way you can see the diversity of your plant collection.
Notes	You may freely add notes about the plant name here. See What's possible with the notes area, Adding cross references to specimen in the notes area, and Limitations on the note fields.

Compleat Botanica - Corrected family assignments

Build 85 of the *Compleat Botanica* contained 88 genera that were incorrectly assigned to families. This table lists the entries that have been corrected. See Technical Bulletin #10 for more about this.

Genus	Incorrect family	Correct family
Anacampseros	Crassulaceae	Portulacaceae
Aplectrum	Melastomataceae	Orchidaceae
Bellevalia	Euphorbiaceae	Hyacinthaceae
Benthamia	Cornaceae	Orchidaceae
Blumenbachia	Gramineae	Loasaceae
Bowringia	Blechnaceae	Leguminosae
Brachylepis	Asclepiadaceae	Chenopodiaceae
Brachynema	Escalloniaceae	Olacaceae
Bridgesia	Cactaceae	Sapindaceae
Brugmansia	Rafflesiaceae	Solanaceae
Bruguiera	Combretaceae	Rhizophoraceae
Brya	Chrysobalanaceae	Leguminosae
Centranthera	Orchidaceae	Scrophulariaceae
Chamaeanthus	Commelinaceae	Orchidaceae
Clintonia	Campanulaceae	Convallariaceae

Cristaria	Combretaceae	Malvaceae
Cuviera	Gramineae	Rubiaceae
Dielsia	Labiatae	Restionaceae
Dipogon	Gramineae	Leguminosae
Donax	Gramineae	Marantaceae
Dryandra	Euphorbiaceae	Proteaceae
Dunalia	Rubiaceae	Solanaceae
Edgeworthia	Sapotaceae	Thymelaeaceae
Gonocarpus	Combretaceae	Haloragaceae
Grafia	Orchidaceae	Umbelliferae
Griffonia	Chrysobalanaceae	Leguminosae
Gymnotheca	Marattiaceae	Saururaceae
Helicia	Loranthaceae	Proteaceae
Henlea	Malpighiaceae	Rubiaceae
Hoffmannia	Psilotaceae	Rubiaceae
Horsfieldia	Araliaceae	Myristicaceae
Huanaca	Solanaceae	Umbelliferae
Kleinia	Combretaceae	Compositae
Krascheninnikovia	Caryophyllaceae	Chenopodiaceae
Lagotis	Rubiaceae	Scrophulariaceae
Lepidostemon	Convolvulaceae	Cruciferae

Leptomeria	Euphorbiaceae	Santalaceae
Leptopyrum	Gramineae	Ranunculaceae
Lichtensteinia	Loranthaceae	Umbelliferae
Lophiocarpus	Alismataceae	Phytolaccaceae
Macrostylis	Orchidaceae	Rutaceae
Malacocarpus	Cactaceae	Zygophyllaceae
Meeboldia	Capparaceae	Umbelliferae
Micranthus	Acanthaceae	Iridaceae
Microphysa	Melastomataceae	Rubiaceae
Miquelia	Gesneriaceae	Icacinaceae
Molinaea	Palmae	Sapindaceae
Molineria	Gramineae	Hypoxidaceae
Mollia	Myrtaceae	Tiliaceae
Niemeyera	Orchidaceae	Sapotaceae
Nymania	Euphorbiaceae	Meliaceae
Oreocallis	Ericaceae	Proteaceae
Pachyloma	Hymenophyllaceae	Melastomataceae
Petagnia	Solanaceae	Umbelliferae
Phacellanthus	Cyperaceae	Scrophulariaceae
Phacellaria	Gramineae	Santalaceae
Pierreodendron	Sapotaceae	Simaroubaceae

Platonia	Gramineae	Guttiferae
Platylepis	Cyperaceae	Orchidaceae
Rafinesquia	Bignoniaceae	Compositae
Rhopalostylis	Euphorbiaceae	Palmae
Riedelia	Gramineae	Zingiberaceae
Roemeria	Gramineae	Papaveraceae
Rostellaria	Acanthaceae	Sapotaceae
Rothia	Gramineae	Leguminosae
Roylea	Gramineae	Labiatae
Schizocalyx	Myrtaceae	Rubiaceae
Schizostigma	Cucurbitaceae	Rubiaceae
Schlumbergera	Bromeliaceae	Cactaceae
Schradera	Euphorbiaceae	Rubiaceae
Schultesia	Campanulaceae	Gentianaceae
Shortia	Cruciferae	Diapensiaceae
Shuteria	Convolvulaceae	Leguminosae
Silvaea	Euphorbiaceae	Portulacaceae
Spermolepis	Myrtaceae	Umbelliferae
Spiranthera	Convolvulaceae	Rutaceae
Spirostachys	Chenopodiaceae	Euphorbiaceae
Stilpnophyllum	Moraceae	Rubiaceae

Stipularia	Ranunculaceae	Rubiaceae
Talbotia	Acanthaceae	Velloziaceae
Tetradium	Crassulaceae	Rutaceae
Tetrastigma	Rubiaceae	Vitaceae
Todaroa	Orchidaceae	Umbelliferae
Tristania	Gramineae	Myrtaceae
Uncaria	Pedaliaceae	Rubiaceae
Wangenheimia	Araliaceae	Gramineae
Webera	Melastomataceae	Rubiaceae
Zenkeria	Bignoniaceae	Gramineae

Compleat Botanica - Spell-checker and formatting rules

Index to spell-checker and formatting topics

ℹ	**Understanding how the botanical name spell-checker works**	The Compleat Botanica contains a checklist of genus names, species epithets, sub-species and varieties. The overwhelming majority of these names are for vascular plants: angiosperms, gymnosperms, spore bearing ferns and their allies.
ℹ	**All about family names**	Families exhibit common characteristics that in a subjective sense group them together.
ℹ	**Family name endings**	The official taxonomic naming convention for families is that they end with -aceae. Only a few exceptions have survived.
ℹ	**Inter-generic hybrids**	Inter-generic hybrids are formally identified with a cross symbol prefixing their name.
ℹ	**What are the rules for proper formatting of botanical names?**	The genus name must begin with a capital letter and be followed by all lower case letters. Species epithets are to be all lower-case letters.
ℹ	**The Uncertain taxonomy checkbox**	Sometimes the full genus, species, and variety is not known for a specimen.

Compleat Botanica - Understanding how the botanical name spell-checker works

The Compleat Botanica contains a checklist of 26,334 genus names, 54,662 species epithets, 23,227 sub-species and varieties. The overwhelming majority of these names are for vascular plants: angiosperms, gymnosperms, spore bearing ferns and their allies.

As you create a new specimen record, you'll want to begin by typing the genus. If there's a question about it's correct spelling, just type the first few letters of the name then click on the combo-box button to find the genus in the drop-down list.

Genus **Ace**

    ▷ <incertae genus>
    Ⓖ Acelica
    Ⓖ Acentra
▶ Ⓖ Acer
    Ⓖ Aceranthus
    Ⓖ Aceras
    Ⓖ Acerates
    Ⓖ Aceratium
    Ⓖ Aceratorchis
    Ⓖ Aceriphyllum
    Ⓖ Acetosa
    Ⓖ Acetosella
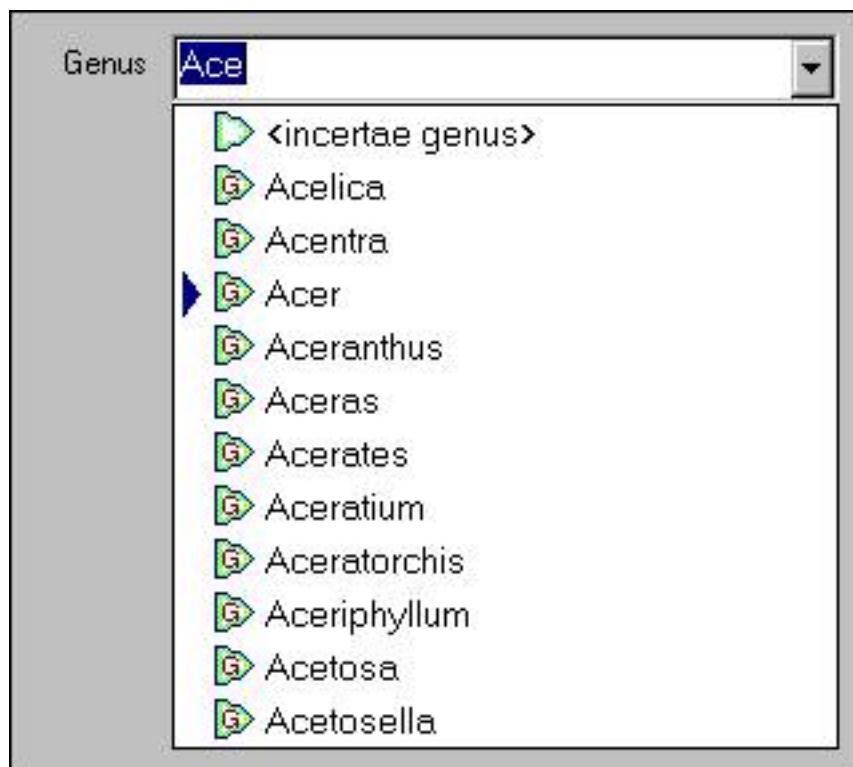
The species name can be typed in or chosen from the drop-down list. Only species of the current genus are listed. In this example, the species names for the *Acer* genus are listed.
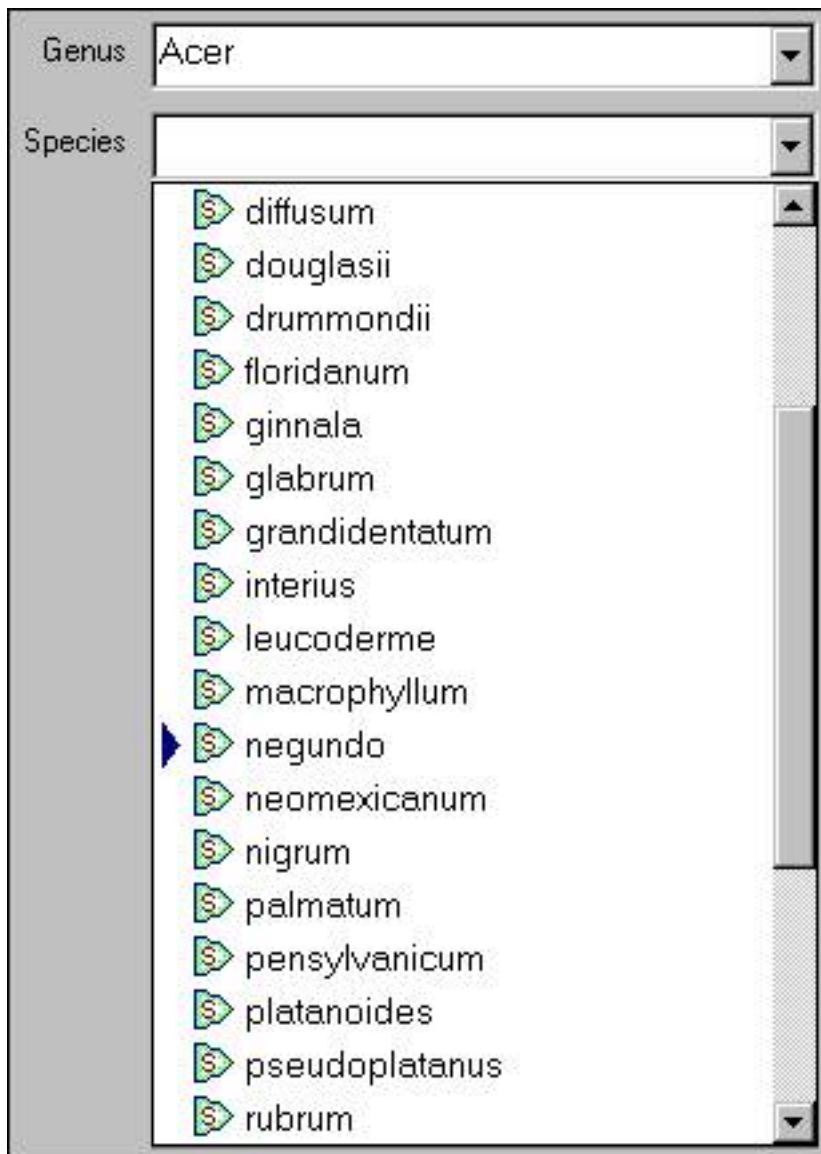
The same steps work for the variety. You can either type in the variety name or select from the drop-down list. In this example, the varieties and sub-species of *Acer negundo* are shown.

Genus	Acer
Species	negundo
Variety	

- V arizonicum
- V californicum
- S californicum
- V interius
- S interius
- S latifolium
- V negundo
- V texanum
- V violaceum

Note that the variety field is also used to enter the sub-species name if it exists. (The sub-species name is infrequently used and it's rare to have both a sub-species and a variety for an individual specimen.)

Compleat Botanica - All about family names

In the official taxonomic ordering of botanical names a family is a collection of tribes and a tribe is a collection of genera. For most of us, the tribe is not important and we like to conveniently assign a genus directly to a family. Families exhibit common characteristics that in a subjective sense group them together. For example, Juglandaceae (the walnut family) consists of 10 genera which bear nuts in a fleshy husk. Other characteristics such as their leaf shape and arrangement distinguish them in the minds of botanists from similar plants. Some families are quite large, such as Asteraceae (the sunflower family), which contains 1677 genera.

Subjective by their very nature, family names have recently become even more confusing with advancements in genetics. Genera are sometimes reassigned to different families and well-known families are renamed or disappear altogether. Making sense of this is the task of hard working researchers. The Compleat Botanica uses the family names of Walters & Keil who follow Cronquist in their general classification. This scheme is modified to show the validly published names above the rank of genus as identified by Reveal. The result is a taxonomic hierarchy of 1652 family names which give useful clues to the origin of the plant and its generic name.

Compleat Botanica - Family name endings

The official taxonomic naming convention for families is that they end with -aceae. Only a few exceptions have survived: Palmae, Gramineae, Cruciferae, Leguminosae, Guttiferae, Umbelliferae, Labiatae, and Compositae. (See Section 2, Article 18.5 of the International Code of Botanical Nomenclature for details).

Before the age of computers, the ending was spelled with the special letter æ so that Fabaceae was spelled Fabaceæ. Recently, with the introduction of UNICODE, a return to this older style of spelling has become more commonplace. The Complete Botanica allows both methods to be used. To switch from one style ending to the other use the Customize settings window.
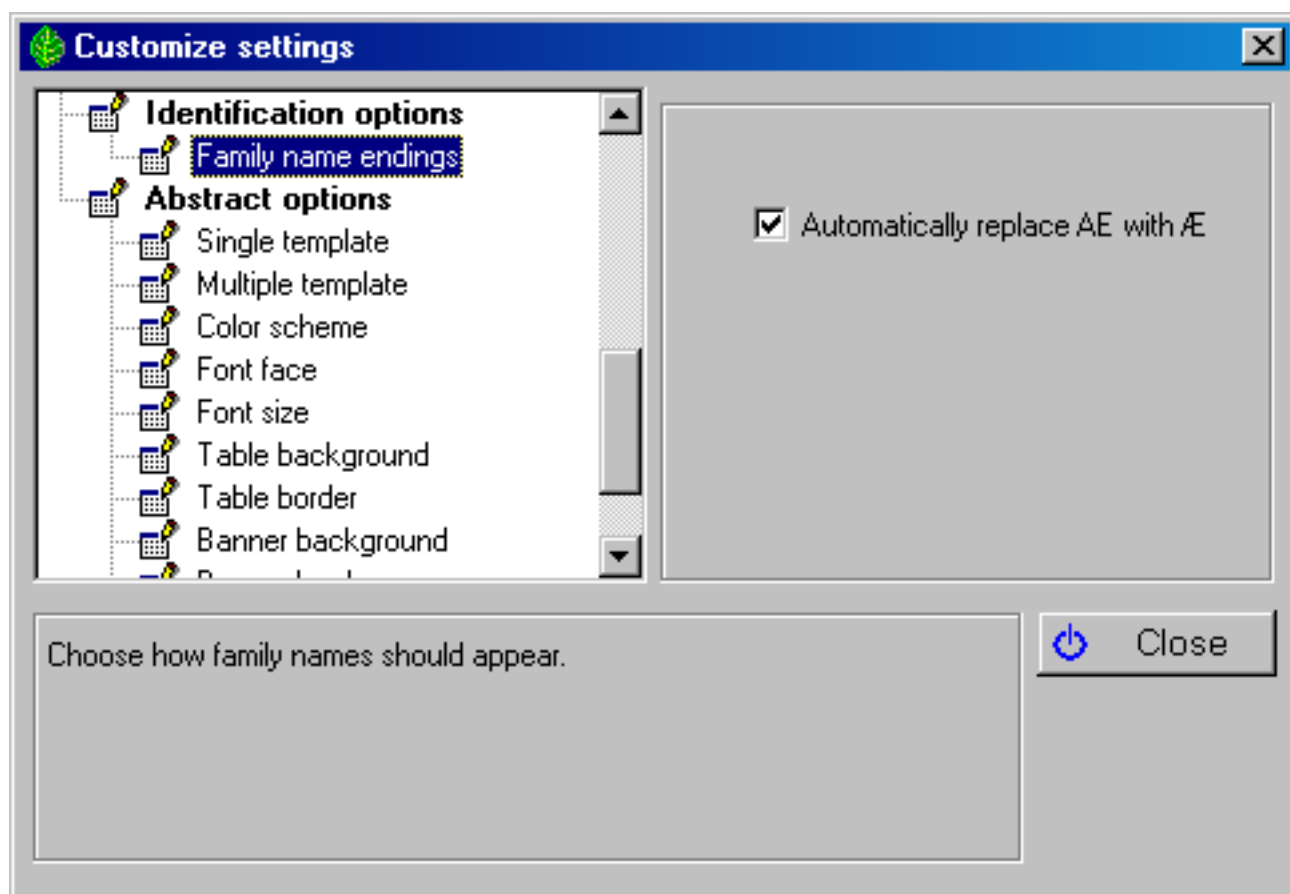
By convention, family names are usually shown in all upper case letters. Here is what the drop-down combo-box for all family names beginning with "AC" looks like:

Family AC

F> ACACIACEÆ
F> ACALYPHACEÆ
F> ACANTHACEÆ
F> ACANTHOCHLAMYDACEÆ
F> ACARNACEÆ
F> ACERACEÆ
F> ACHARIACEÆ
F> ACHATOCARPACEÆ
F> ACHRADACEÆ
F> ACHYRANTHACEÆ
F> ACMOPYLACEÆ
F> ACORACEÆ
F> ACRISTACEÆ
F> ACROSTICHACEÆ
F> ACTAEACEÆ
F> ACTINIDEACEÆ
F> ACTINIDIACEÆ
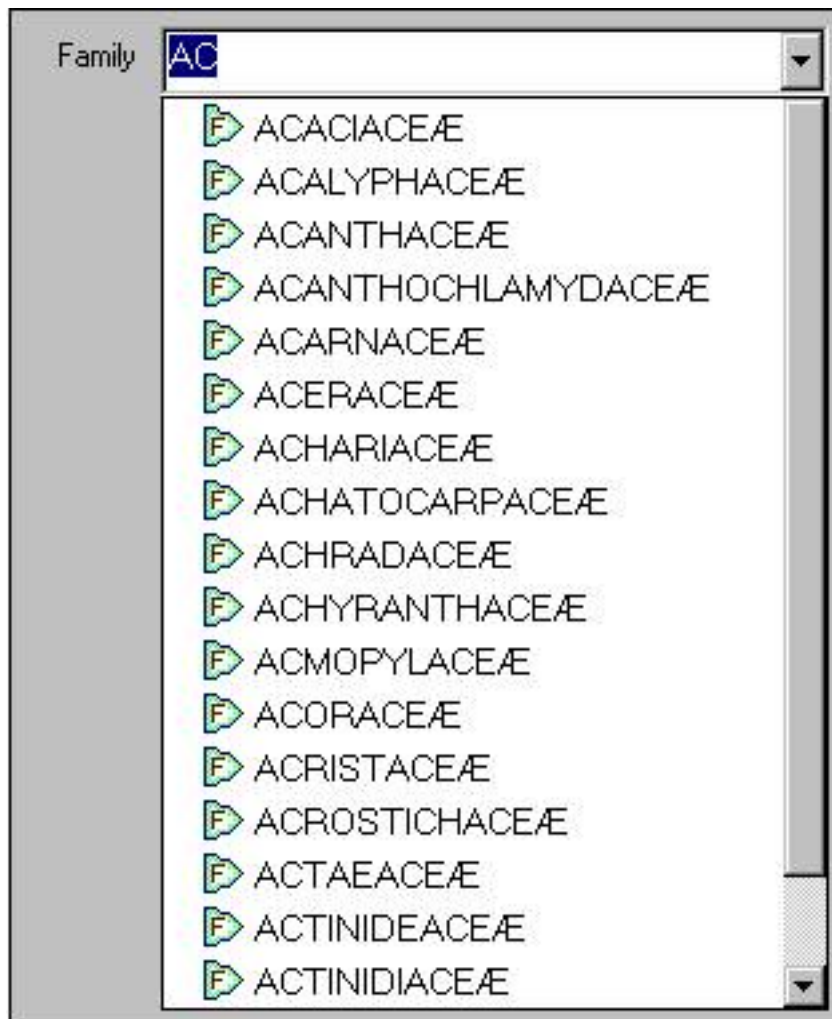
Note that regardless of how the names are displayed, they are always stored in the database as "AE".

Compleat Botanica - Inter-generic hybrids

Inter-generic hybrids are formally identified with a cross symbol prefixing their name. This symbol looks like a small letter "x". Before the advent of UNICODE, this symbol was not present in most computer fonts, thus the common practice was to substitute the cross symbol for with the lower case letter "x". This convention allows for easy entry of these names and has been adopted by The Compleat Botanica.

Genus	x Chitalpa
Species	tashkentensis

Note that the first letter of a species names is always capitalized (this is automatically done for you by the software). In the case of inter-generic hybrids the "x" is not considered to be the first letter.

Compleat Botanica - What are the rules for proper formatting of botanical names?

A botanical name consists of a **genus** name and a **species** epithet. The genus name must begin with a capital letter and be followed by all lower case letters. Species epithets are to be all lower-case letters. Both the genus and species should be italicized.

When a botanical name contains a **subspecies** component the abbreviation "ssp." or "subsp." is inserted before the subspecies in a non-italicized font.

When a botanical name contains a **variety** component the abbreviation "var." is inserted before the variety in a non-italicized font.

When a botanical name contains a **cultivar** component the name is surrounded by single quotes and is displayed in a non-italicized font.

The International Association for Plant Taxonomy has prescribed the following rules for formatting plant names:

Summary	International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (St. Louis Code)
Initial capital letter for genus	*20.1.* The name of a genus is a noun in the nominative singular, or a word treated as such, and is written with an initial capital letter. . . .
Species	*23.1.* The name of a species is a binary combination consisting of the name of the genus followed by a single specific epithet . . . . If an epithet consists of two or more words, these are to be united or hyphenated.
Species lower-case	*60F.1.* All specific and infraspecific epithets should be written with an initial lower-case letter, although authors desiring to use initial capital letters may do so when the epithets are directly derived from the names of persons (whether actual or mythical), or are vernacular (or non-Latin) names, or are former generic names
Cultivar epithets	*28 Note 5.* The *International code of nomenclature for cultivated plants* provides for the establishment of cultivar epithets differing markedly from epithets in Latin form.

Latin alphabet	*60.4.* The letters *w* and *y,* foreign to classical Latin, and *k,* rare in that language, are permissible in Latin plant names. Other letters and ligatures foreign to classical Latin that may appear in Latin plant names, such as the German *ß* (double *s*), are to be transcribed.

To be validly published, a botanical name must include its author. The Compleat Botanica's checklist of botanical names includes the author in most cases. Nevertheless the author's name is not shown on-screen or on reports because it is not of interest to the non-scientific community.

Compleat Botanica - The Uncertain taxonomy checkbox

Sometimes the full genus, species, and variety is not known for a specimen. In these cases, you can place a checkmark in the "Uncertain taxonomy" box to indicate this. The automatic botanical spell-checker does this for you if you mistype a name. If you are certain you've spelled the name correctly and it just isn't in the checklist, you can remove the checkmark.

Genus	Chitalpa
Species	tashkentensis
Variety	
Family	<incertae familia>
☑ Uncertain taxonomy	

This name is not in the checklist.

In some cases you may want to place "<incertae genus>", "<incertae species>", "<incertae varietas>", "<incertae familia>" in the fields that you are uncertain about. This serves as a reminder to do more research.

Compleat Botanica - Vernacular names

Index to vernacular name topics

Vernacular name list	The vernacular name list is used to display common name equivalents to proper botanical names.
Vernacular name view	The Vernacular name view displays additional information about a common name such as its country of origin and whether or not it is a non-English language name.
Common name popup	Common names are associated with entries in the specimen list and can be seen when the Identification View is active.

Compleat Botanica - **Vernacular name list**
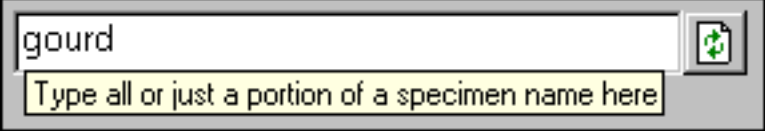
The **Vernacular name list** is used to display common name equivalents to proper botanical names. Using this window you can search for entries using just portions of a name and thus easily find obscure or hard to spell names. This window can be used to search for either botanical names or common names.

gourd	

Common	Botanical
figleaf gourd	Cucurbita ficifolia
fingerleaf gourd	Cucurbita digitata
gooseberry gourd	Cucumis myriocarpus
gourd	Cucurbita
hedgehog gourd	Cucumis dipsaceus
ivy gourd	Coccinia grandis
Manchu tubergourd	Thladiantha dubia
Missouri gourd	Cucurbita foetidissima
Okeechobee gourd	Cucurbita okeechobeensis
pointed gourd	Trichosanthes dioica
snakegourd	Trichosanthes cucumerina
snakegourd	Trichosanthes anguina
sponge gourd	Luffa aegyptiaca
Texas gourd	Cucurbita pepo var. texana
wax gourd	Benincasa hispida
waxgourd	Benincasa hispida
wild gourd	Cucurbita foetidissima

New	Duplicate	Delete
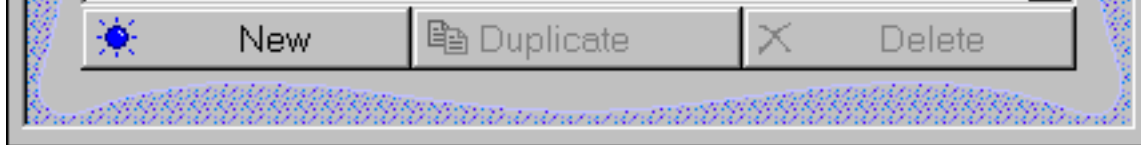
	Item	Notes
1	gourd Type all or just a portion of a specimen name here	Use this area to enter part or all of a name to look up. Press the refresh button to display the list of matching entries.
2		Toggle these two buttons like this to search for *common names* matching your request.
3		Toggle these two buttons like this to search for *botanical names* matching your request.
4		Toggle these two buttons like this to search for entries that *begin with your typed text*.
5		Toggle these two buttons like this to search for entries that *contain your typed text anywhere in its name*.

Compleat Botanica - Vernacular name view

The **Vernacular name view** displays additional information about a common name such as its country of origin and whether or not it is a non-English language name.

---

bois d'arc

Common name	bois d'arc
Botanical name	Maclura pomifera
Rank	▷ Species
Locality	French
Meaning	

☐ Preferred name

☐ Historical name

☑ Foreign language

Data source   Allergy p265;ColorNat p22

	Item	Notes
1	Common name	When a single common name applies to more than one botanical name, a separate vernacular name entry exists for each pair of names.
2	Botanical name	The formal botanical name that this common name refers to.
3	Rank	The taxonomic rank of the botanical name. This name is automatically supplied when you type a valid botanical name.
4	Locality	The country or other locality where this name is in common use.
5	Meaning	When this is an historical name or a foreign-language name, the translated meaning can be supplied here.
6	Preferred name	When more than one common name is used to refer to the same species, this is checked to indicate which is the one most often used.
7	Historical name	Checked when this is an older name that is used in historical writings but is not used in everyday speech.
8	Foreign language	Checked when this is not an English language name.
9	Data source	This is a reference to the source material where this common name can be found.
10		Press this button to create a new specimen record with this botanical name.
11		Go to the specimen record with this botanical name.

| 12 | | Go to the taxonomic details for the referenced botanical name. |

Compleat Botanica - Common name popup

Common names are associated with entries in the specimen list and can be seen when the Identification View is active. This same list of common names is associated with taxonomic entries and can be seen in the Checklist View. In both cases you can quickly add, remove, and change these common names using the little popup window accessible by pressing the button just to the right of the list.
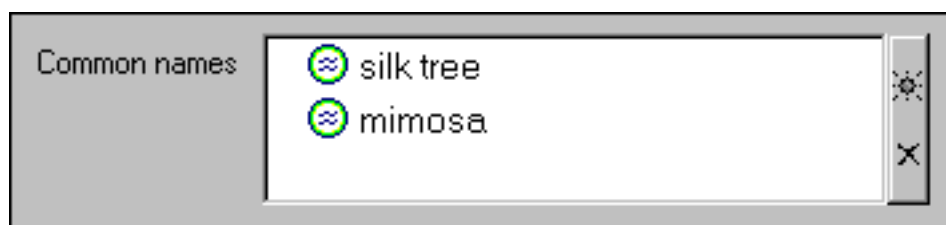
The three buttons along the top left of the popup window are for adding, removing, and saving changes made to a common name. The single button in the top right hand corner simply closes the popup window.
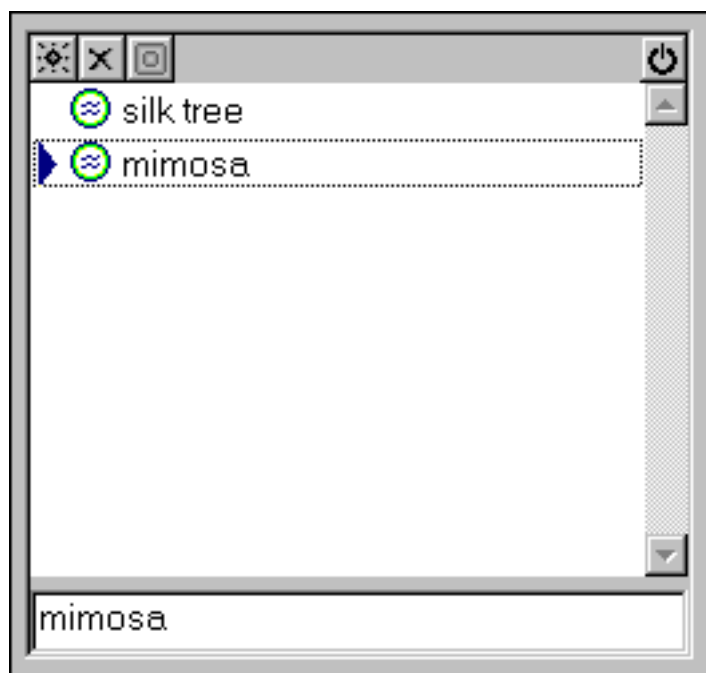
Changes made to this list will be visible in the Vernacular List where you can make additional changes to the name's detailed record.

Compleat Botanica - Things you can do with your pictures

Index to picture topics

ⓘ	**Recommendations for your picture files**	Your picture files are not stored in the database together with your specimen data; instead they are kept in their original location.
ⓘ	**Setting the default picture directory**	Picture files can be specified using the full drive and directory as part of the filename. Optionally, you can leave the drive letter and directory off the name of the picture file if it is located in the default directory.
ⓘ	**Overview of picture files**	Digital pictures captured with today's new cameras are easy to take and fun to have. Pictures of your specimen can be conveniently organized, displayed and printed using The Compleat Botanica.
ⓘ	**Using the picture previewer**	The picture previewer is a separate window which can float on top of other windows or behave in the normal overlapping fashion.

Compleat Botanica - Recommendations for your picture files

Your picture files are not stored in the database together with your specimen data; instead they are kept in their original location. The database only keeps the *location* of each picture file. The advantage to this is that these large picture files are only taking up space on your disk once. Your can organize your picture files in any way that makes sense to you.

To see your specimen pictures from within The Compleat Botanica program, enter the directory and filename in the space provided on the Sketch View.

Picture file   C:\My Pictures\Chamaecyparis.bmp

Compleat Botanica - Setting the default picture directory

Picture files can be specified using the full drive and directory as part of the filename. This is called an absolute file path. Optionally, you can leave the drive letter and directory off the name of the picture file if it is located in the default directory. This option is useful when you anticipate moving your pictures or when more than one database shares the pictures.

You can change the location of the default picture directory from the Customize settings window.
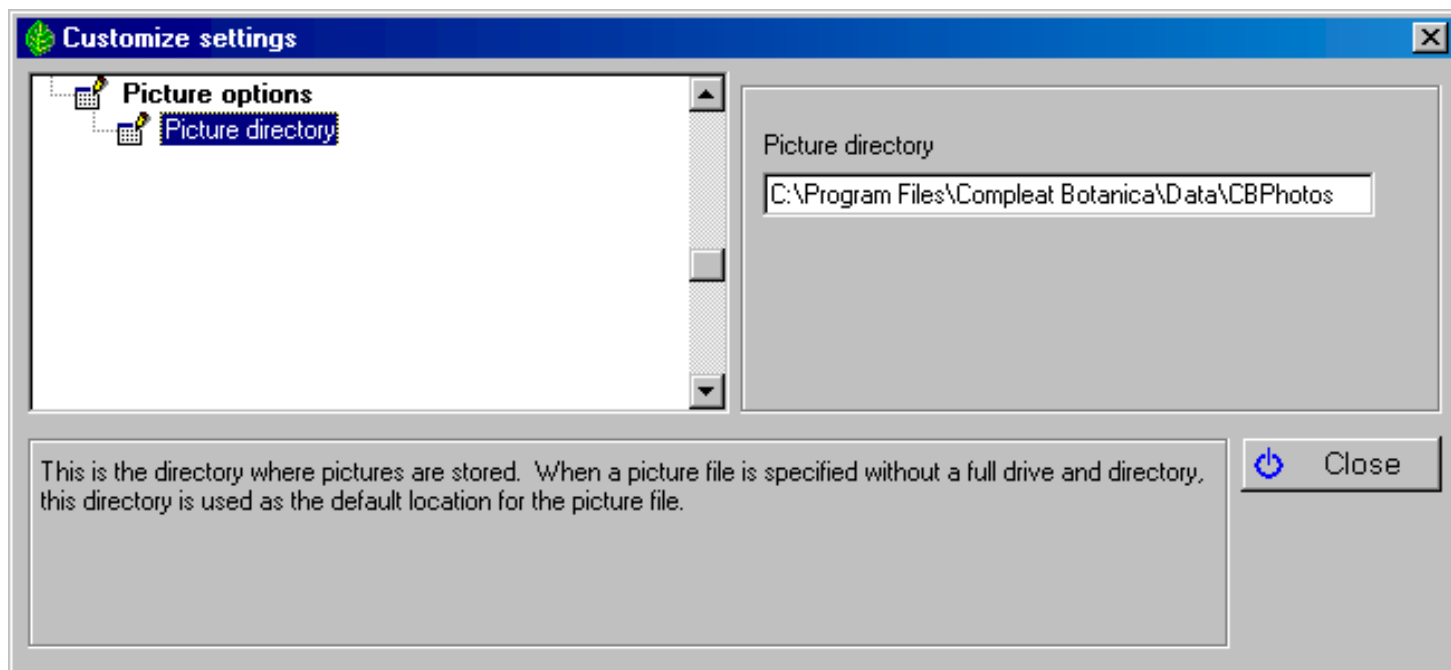
Compleat Botanica - Overview of picture files

Digital pictures captured with today's new cameras are easy to take and fun to have. Pictures of your specimen can be conveniently organized, displayed and printed using The Compleat Botanica.

Each specimen record has a special field designated for picture files. Use the file finder button to locate your picture file. Pictures stored in JPEG or GIF format can be accommodated. For more about how pictures are stored see the document Setting the default picture directory.

Picture file [   ] 📁

☑ Thumbnail

🔳

Preview picture in separate window
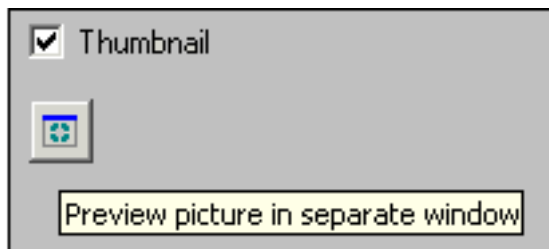
To see your pictures full-sized, use the picture preview button; this will display your pictures in a separate window. You can scroll through your pictures by keeping this window open and changing the currently selected specimen record. See the document Using the picture previewer for more about this.

Compleat Botanica - Using the picture previewer

The picture previewer is a separate window which can float on top of other windows or behave in the normal overlapping fashion. When kept in front, the preview window can be used to quickly look through all of your digital pictures. To do this, be sure the "Front" button is toggled on, then simply change the currently selected specimen record using the Specimen List. You can use the up and down arrow keys to scroll through your entire collection in this way.

The six buttons at the top of the window have the following use:

Button	Usage
Fit	Show the entire picture within the boundaries of the window. When you resize the window the picture will shrink or expand to fit entirely within the window
Full	Show the picture at full size. This is the pixel-for-pixel representation of the picture shown without any compression or expansion in size.
Front	Keep the picture preview window on top of all other windows. Use this option when scrolling through your specimen list.
Back	Place the picture preview window behind other windows when it isn't the active window. This is the normal behavior for windows.
Print	Print the full sized picture
Close	Close the picture preview window

Cotinus coggygria var. purpureus

Fit | Full | Front | Back | Print | Close
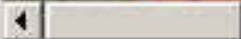
Index to printing topics

Printing reports	Index to report generation topics.	
Printing labels	Index to topics about printing labels.	
Printing Pathfinder documents	Index to printing Pathfinder documents.	
Printing Checklist reports	Index to printing Checklist reports.	

Compleat Botanica - Printing reports

Index to printing reports topics

ℹ	**Basic steps for printing specimen reports**	Good default values are set up for you when install the software so that you can begin printing without any fuss.
ℹ	**Tips for printing great looking reports**	Here are some tips for printing specimen reports that may not be obvious at first glance.
ℹ	**Choosing a report style**	When The Compleat Botanica is installed, a variety of report styles are preloaded.
ℹ	**WYSIWYG print preview**	The Print Preview window is a what you see is what you get (WYSIWYG) display.
ℹ	**Defining report style fonts**	Using the Fonts tab of the Report Style Definition you can change the characteristics of the text shown in the report.
ℹ	**Defining report style borders and shading**	Using the Borders tab of the Report Style Definition you can change the borders and shading of the report.
ℹ	**Defining report style options**	Using the Options tab of the Report Style Definition you can make changes to the overall appearance of the report.
ℹ	**Defining report style margins**	Using the Margins tab of the Report Style Definition you can override the automatic settings for the non-printable border area and the text margins.

Compleat Botanica - Basic steps for printing specimen reports

Good default values are set up for you when install the software so that you can begin printing without any fuss. But when you want to customize the look of your reports, there are several things to know that may not be obvious at first glance. Read the Tips for printing great looking reports to understand how the printing process works.

Step 1: Select a filter

The filter you're using defines the columns of your report, the records to include, the sorting order, and the relative column widths of the report. Use any existing filter, or create your own, with just the items you want to include on your report.

Step 2: Print command

Begin the print process by choosing the **Print Specimen** command from the **File** menu.

Step 3: Select a report style

Choose one of the predefined report styles, or create your own -- follow the instructions beginning with Defining report style fonts.

Choose whether to print all pages or a **From** and **To** range of pages.

If you have more than one printer, select which one to use. Use the **Print setup** button to change special printer characteristics.

Use the **Preview** button to switch between Landscape and Portrait orientations. See WYSIWYG print preview for more about this.

Print Complete Checklist

Select which report style to use

- April
- August
- August alternating
- August with lines
- August with stripes
- December
- February
- January
- January alternating
- January no graphics
- January side banner
- January with lines
- January with stripes
- July
- June
- March
- May
- ▶ November
- November fancy
- November roman
- November typewriter
- October
- September

New   Modify   Duplicate   Delete

Which printer:

HP OfficeJet R60

Print range

- ● All
- ○ From [   ]

to [   ]

Preview

Print

Close

Print setup

Step 4: Select portrait or landscape

On the Print preview window select the **Orientation** for your report. Select one of the standard paper sizes, or use the **Width** and **Height** items to print to custom sized paper.

Use the green arrows to scroll left and right, up and down to see how the report will look on paper.

The **Scaling** options allow you to zoom in on the report preview. Scaling does not affect how the report is printed.

Step 5: Press the Print button

  Use the **Print** button from step 3 to print selected pages or the **Print** button from step 4 to print all pages.

Compleat Botanica - Tips for printing great looking reports

Here are some tips for printing specimen reports that may not be obvious at first glance:

1   The current filter specifies which records are included in the Specimen List. This same set of records will be included on your printed reports. To include all of your specimen records, choose a filter that doesn't exclude anything.

2   The current filter defines which items are included the Specimen List. This same set of items, in the same column-by-column ordering is included on your printed report. To create a report that doesn't span the width of two or more pages, define a simpler filter which includes fewer columns.

3   The sorted order of records in your printed report is the same as the sorted order in your Specimen List. To read more about sorting see the document Sorting the list of specimen.

4   The width of columns in your printed report is proportional to the width of columns in the Specimen List. To adjust the column widths in your report to better fit your selected fonts and paper layout, return to the Specimen List and follow the instructions for Adjusting the specimen list column width. Note that column widths are proportional, not exact. Changing the font size of the of the Specimen List or the font size of your report will automatically adjust the column widths of the report.

5   Portrait and Landscape are controlled by the Orientation item on the Print Preview, not by the settings of your printer.

6

The list of fonts shown in the Report Style Definition are the fonts available for the selected printer. If the list of fonts seems too small, make sure you haven't selected a "Generic / Text Only" printer.

7

Each filtered set of records can be printed with any of the report styles. By default, the report will be printed with the report style previously used by the selected filter.

When The Compleat Botanica is installed, a variety of report styles are preloaded. These report styles are useful templates demonstrating color schemes, font styles and sizes, and the use of lines. The basic color schemes are represented with styles named for the months of the year.   Additional features are demonstrated by modifying the twelve base color schemes.

Once you see how the predefined report styles have been constructed, you'll want to experiment with creating your own styles.

Report style	Sample
January	
January side banner	

February

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

March

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

April

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

May

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

June

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

July

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

August

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

August alternating

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

August with lines

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

August with stripes

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

September

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

September jumbo

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety
Abutilon 'Bella mix'			
	Abutilon		
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'			
	Abutilon		
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'			
	Acer	palmatum	

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese la
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name	Family	Uncertain taxonomy	Specime
Abutilon 'Bella mix'								
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern	MALVACEÆ	☐	751
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'								
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering ma...	MALVACEÆ	☑	613
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'								
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...	ACERACEÆ	☐	557
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'								
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple	ACERACEÆ	☐	513

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name	Family	Uncertain taxonomy	Specimen Number
Abutilon 'Bella mix'								
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern	MALVACEÆ	☑	751
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'								
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple	MALVACEÆ	☑	613
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'								
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Japane...	ACERACEÆ	☑	557
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'								
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple	ACERACEÆ	☑	513
Acer palmatum 'Oshio Beni'								
	Acer	palmatum		Oshio Beni	Japanese Maple	ACERACEÆ	☑	519
Acer palmatum var. atropurpureum								
	Acer	palmatum	atropurpureum		Japanese maple	ACERACEÆ	☑	603
Acer palmatum 'Butterfly'								
	Acer	palmatum		Butterfly		ACERACEÆ	☑	682

October

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

November

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

November fancy

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering ma...
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

November roman

Complete Checklist

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Japan...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

Complete Checklist

November typewriter

	Genus	Species	Variety	
Abutilon 'Bella mix'				
	Abutilon			Bella
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'				
	Abutilon			Ashfo
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'				
	Acer	palmatum		Sango
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'				
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu

Complete Checklist

December

	Genus	Species	Variety	Cultivar	Common Name
Abutilon 'Bella mix'					
	Abutilon			Bella mix	Chinese lantern
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'					
	Abutilon			Ashford Red	Flowering maple
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'					
	Acer	palmatum		Sangokaku	Coral bark Jap...
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'					
	Acer	palmatum		Mizu Kuguri	Japanese Maple

Compleat Botanica - WYSIWYG print preview

The Print Preview window is a "what you see is what you get" (WYSIWYG) display. Using the print preview helps you to decide whether you need to adjust column widths, font sizes, or other features, all without wasting ink cartridges or paper.

There are several features which make the print preview useful:
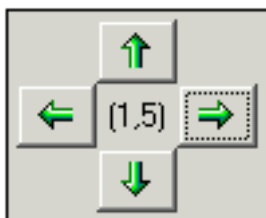
1

The left and right, up and down scrolling buttons allow you to see all pages of the report. The page numbers in the middle show the page down and page across numbers. This example is page one down and page five across.

Tip: To continuously scroll, press and hold the button down until you reach the desired page.

The page scale feature allows you to see more or less of the report on your screen. Remember also that the entire print preview window can be sized larger or smaller just like any

Scale:

```
100%                        ▼
   Whole page
   Page width
   Page height
   200%
   175%
   150%
   125%
 ▶ 100%
   90%
   80%
   70%
   60%
   50%
   40%
   30%
   20%
   10%
```
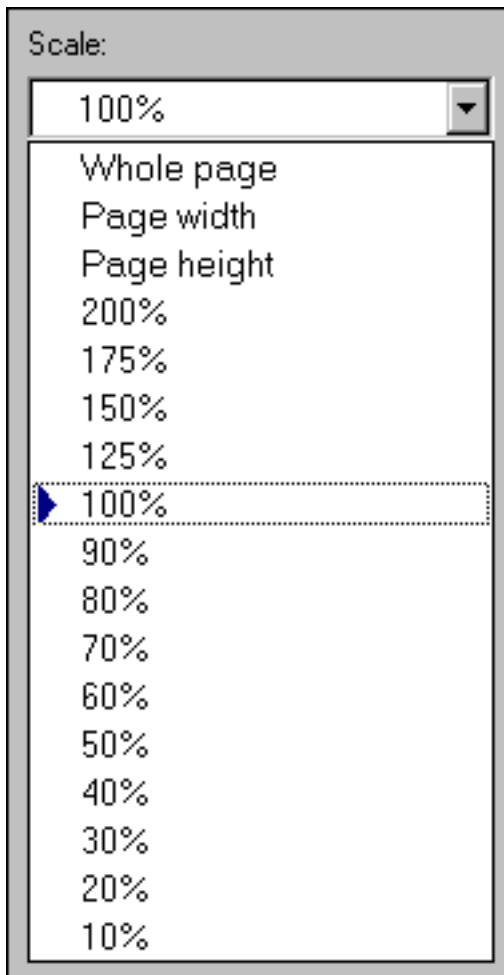
other sizable window.

2 The **whole page** option scales the preview so that you can see the complete page within the window. The **page width** option scales the preview so that you can see the entire width of the report within the window. The **page height** option scales the preview so that you can see the entire height of the report within the window.

Paper size:

```
A4                          ▼
   Letter
   Legal
   Executive
 ▶ A4
   A5
   B4
   B5
   B6
   Custom size
```
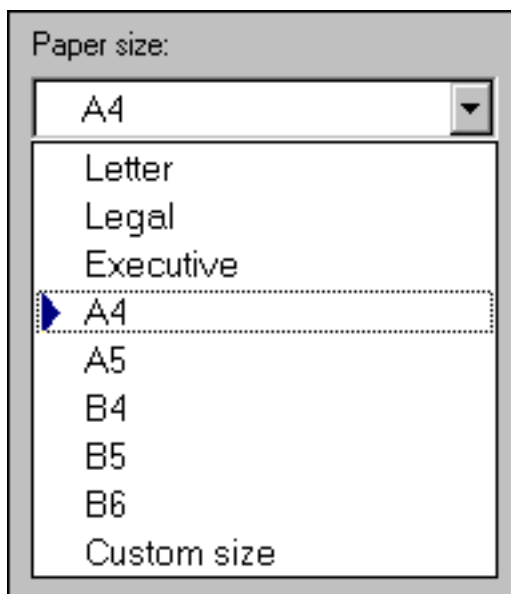
3 The paper size feature lets you match the size of paper in your printer to the size of the preview.

4 When using paper with a custom size, use the width and height items to match your paper's dimensions.

If you want to specify your dimensions in US Customary units (inches) or metric units (millimeters), you can use the Customize Setting window to change how units are specified. See the document Choosing measurement units for reports and labels.

5 Your report's orientation is set using this print preview feature; it is not set using the portrait/landscape option under printer settings.

Compleat Botanica - Defining report style fonts

Using the **Fonts** tab of the Report Style Definition you can change the characteristics of the text shown in the report.

| Sample | Fonts | Borders | Options | Margins |

Seven different sections of the report's page layout can be customized in this manner: the four edges of the page (title, left margin, right margin, and page footers), the column headers, and the two alternating bands of data.

The two alternating bands of formatting for the specimen data is helpful for readers of your report to follow a row of text across the page. If you don't need this feature, you can simply apply the same characteristics to both bands.

Here's an explanation of each item in the Fonts tab of the Report Style Definition:

Choose which section to format:

- ✒ <All sections>
- ✒ Title
- ▶ ✒ Column headers
- ✒ Page footers
- ✒ Left margin
- ✒ Right margin
- ✒ Specimen data (alternate 1)
- ✒ Specimen data (alternate 2)

*

To change the font characteristics for one section, choose that section's name using the list shown here. To apply changes to two or more sections simultaneously, use the <Ctrl> key on your keyboard to select multiple sections. To apply changes to all seven sections, choose the <All sections> item.

Disable section (checkbox, checked)

* If you do not want one of the four edges or the column headers, you can disable that section of the report.

Printer fonts:

- Az Tempus Sans ITC
- Az Times New Roman
- Az Webdings
- Az Wide Latin
- Az Bradley Hand ITC
- Az Comic Sans MS
- Az Mistral AV
- Az Script
- Az Viner Hand ITC
- ✳ Adolescence
- ✳ Bermuda Solid

* The list of fonts is grouped into four font types: sans serif fonts, serif fonts, script fonts, and special fonts. The blue symbols in the list indicate the font type.

The font names shown in this list is based on which printer you've selected. If you don't see very many fonts, make sure you haven't selected "Generic / Text only" as your destination printer.

Size:

- 6 points
- 7 points
- 8 points
- 9 points
- 10 points
- 11 points
- 12 points
- 14 points
- 16 points
- 18 points
- 20 points

* Font sizes range from 6 points to 72 points.

Text color: **Text color:**

When printing to color printers, use any of the standard text colors.

When printing to black and white printers, choose from the gray palette.

Style:

Regular
Bold
Bold Italic
Italic

Note that not all fonts have bold and italic. Choose a font style available for your selected font.

Alignment:

Left
Center
Right

Text is normally center aligned for the four edge sections and left aligned for the specimen data sections. But a custom appearance is possible by choosing a different alignment.

Place any text in the four edge sections, or use one of the replacement tags.

Text for section:

Page <PageNumber> of <NumberOfPages>

Page <PageNumber> of <NumberOfPages>
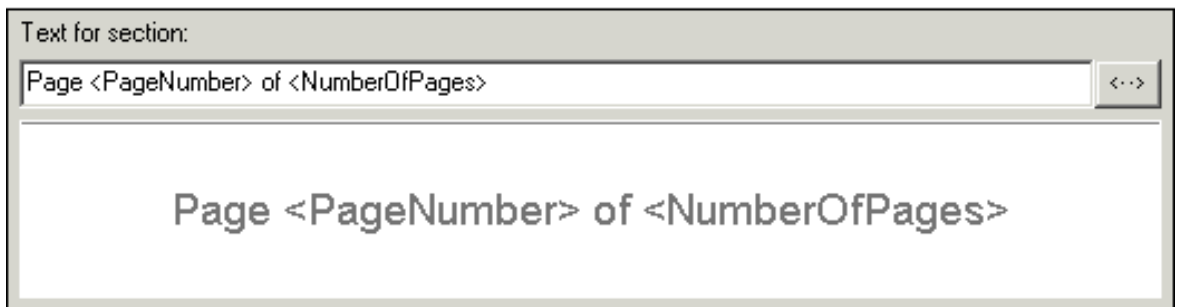
Replacement tags allow you to create a report style definition that's adaptive.

*

Number of specimen
Which page   ▶
Date / time   ▶
Filter name
Style name

Page number
Page down
Page across

Number of pages
Number of pages down
Number of pages across

Time :12 hour clock
Time : 24 hour clock
Day of week
Date : short form
Date : long form

Using the **Borders** tab of the Report Style Definition you can change the borders and shading of the report.

| Sample | Fonts | Borders | Options | Margins |

Each of the seven different sections of the report's page layout can have different background colors and border elements.

Here's an explanation of the items on the Borders tab:

Choose which section to format:

- / <All sections>
- / Title
- ▶ / Column headers
- / Page footers
- / Left margin
- / Right margin
- / Specimen data (alternate 1)
- / Specimen data (alternate 2)

* To change the color and border characteristics for one section, choose that section's name using the list shown here. To apply changes to two or more sections simultaneously, use the <Ctrl> key on your keyboard to select multiple sections. To apply changes to all seven sections, choose the <All sections> item.

☑ Disable section

* If you do not want one of the four edges or the column headers, you can disable that section of the report.

Background:

Background:

* The background for each section can be a different color. Use the lightest hues to make subtle and pleasing backgrounds without using a lot of printer ink.

Only shades of gray are available when you select the black and white option.

Edges:

- [ ] none
- [ ] top
- [ ] bottom
- ▶ [ ] left
- ▶ [ ] right
- [ ] frame
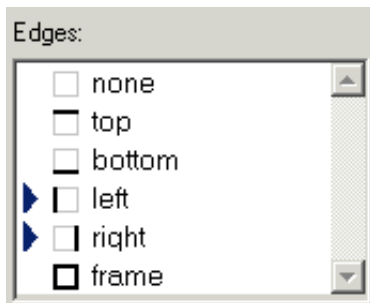
* Choose which edge or edges of the currently selected section you want to modify, then use the **Width**, **Style**, and **Edge color** items to make your customizations. To select two or more edges, use the <Ctrl> key on your keyboard.

You'll find the print preview sample window to be a convenient tool when defining edges because the edges of adjacent sections do not overlap, they abut each other. Try various combinations of edges to find one that works right for you. Look at how the predefined report styles have been set up for some ideas.

Width:

- 0.25 points
- 0.5 points
- ▶ 1.0 points
- 1.5 points
- 2.0 points
- 2.5 points
- 3.0 points
- 4.0 points
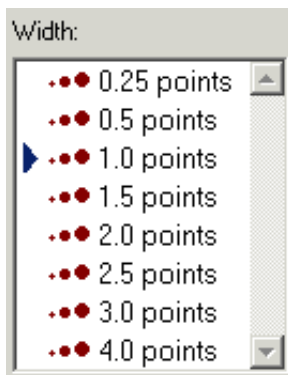
* The width of each edge can be adjusted from 0.25 font points to 4 font points. 0.25 is a hairline edge. 4.0 is a fat edge.

Style:
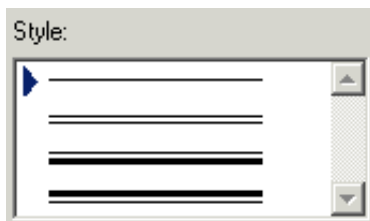
* Choose simple edges or one of the double-line edges.

Edge color:

Edge color:
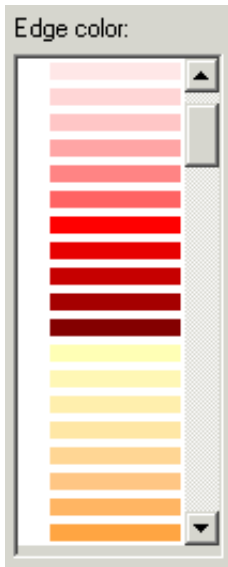
* Use darker colors for edges to make them more visible.

Only shades of gray are available when the black and white option is in effect.

See the sample at the bottom of the window to get a good idea of what the section will look like.

* Sample:

Page Title

Compleat Botanica - Defining report style options

Using the **Options** tab of the Report Style Definition you can make changes to the overall appearance of the report.

| Sample | Fonts | Borders | Options | Margins |

Here are explanations for the items under the Options tab:
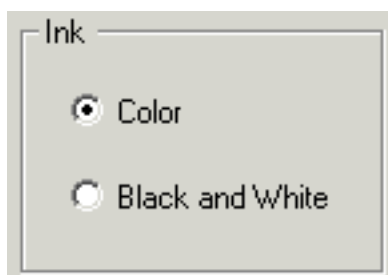
Choose either color or black and white. When black and white is chosen, only shades of gray are available for fonts, backgrounds, and borders.

Note that color icons, RHS color patches, and thumbnail pictures are still shown in color. If your printer does not automatically convert these to gray scale, you may want to use the **substitute with text** graphics option.
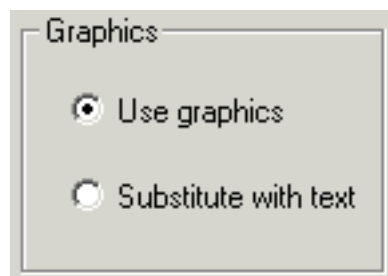
Choose the **use graphics** option to show embedded date-range graphics, height and spread symbols, icons, and thumbnail pictures.

Choose the **substitute with text** option to print without these graphical elements.

See Graphics in printed reports for samples.

The specimen data can be be printed using a single scheme or alternating schemes. When the **alternating row styles** option is left unchecked, all specimen data is formatted using the "Specimen data (alternate 1)" section definitions.

＊ When the **alternating row styles** option is turned on, you can choose how many rows are to be banded together in each of the two alternate schemes. Usually this value is 1, but for special effects you can use 2 or a higher number.

Compleat Botanica - Defining report style margins

Using the **Margins** tab of the Report Style Definition you can override the automatic settings for the non-printable border area and the text margins.

| Sample | Fonts | Borders | Options | Margins |

Non-printable border area

Override printer specifications

Top	3.2 mm	9.1 pts
Bottom	3.2 mm	9.1 pts
Left margin	6.3 mm	17.9 pts
Right margin	6.3 mm	17.9 pts

* The non-printable border area is the portion of each page that your printer uses for feeding, grasping, and ejecting the paper. This is different for each printer. Usually it is a very small portion of each edge. If you choose to override this setting be aware that your report may look great on one printer but may be clipped on another printer.

Text margins

Override automatic settings

Top	11.6 mm	32.9 pts
Bottom	5.4 mm	15.3 pts
Left margin	9.0 mm	25.5 pts
Right margin	9.0 mm	25.5 pts

* The text margin areas are used by the four edge sections defined in the **Fonts** and **Borders** tabs. The minimum amount of space required for the selected font and border sizes are automatically calculated and adjusted as you make changes to each section of the report. You may find it more pleasing to increase these minimum values to allow for extra space between elements.
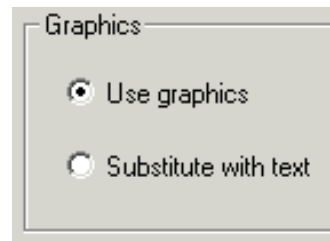
Tip: For best results, keep the **Override automatic settings** turned off while changing the font sizes and edge styles, then override the settings when you know what the minimum

values need to be.

Compleat Botanica - Graphics in printed reports

Printed reports can contain graphical icons, colors, pictures, and special symbols. When defining a new report style this feature can be kept or removed by specifying **Use graphics** or **Substitute with text**.

Graphics

⦿ Use graphics

◯ Substitute with text

Here are examples demonstrating the types of graphical output available.

Report style	Sample			
	Uncertain taxonomy	Specimen Number	Tag needs printing	Nursery
Checkboxes	☑	613	☐	🏠🌲 Jack Frazer
	☑	531	☐	🏠🌲 Don's at Tuoli
	☑	506	☐	🏠🌲 Jack Frazer
	☑	750	☐	🏠🌲 Hiro's friend

Icons

Compost	Size	One of many	Garden	Propagule
☐	🪣 6 pack	1		
☐	🪣 6 pack	1	🌷 Driveway en	
☑	🪣 6 pack	6	🌷 Central trian	
☐	🪣 bare root	2	🌷 Front entryw	
☐	🪣 bare root	1	🌷 back yard	
☐	🪣 bare root	1	🌷 back yard	
☐	🪣 bare root	1	🌷 Fruit tree line	
☐	🪣 bulb	40	🌷 Summerfield	🥔 Tuber
☐	🪣 bulb	1	🌷 Summerfield	🥔 Tuber

Date ranges and RHS colors

Blooming period	Principle color	Accent color
J F M A M J J A S O N D	33A	
J F M A M J J A S O N D	N66C	1C
J F M A M J J A S O N D	54D	
J F M A M J J A S O N D	41A	
J F M A M J J A S O N D	4A	
J F M A M J J A S O N D	192D	
J F M A M J J A S O N D	70A	
J F M A M J J A S O N D		
J F M A M J J A S O N D	N34A	177B
J F M A M J J A S O N D	98D	187A
J F M A M J J A S O N D	107A	6A
J F M A M J J A S O N D	1B	

Height and spread

Height	Spread
2' - 3'	5"
6"	6"
1' - 2'	7" - 2'
4" - 6"	8" - 1'
1'	8"
2' 4"	8"
1' 6" - 2'	10"
3" - 70'	11" - 40'

Climate zones

USDA Zones	Sunset Zones
11 — Above 40° F	16 — Central and northern California
11 — Above 40° F	16 — Central and northern California
10a 11 — Zones 10a-11	16 — Central and northern California
10a 11 — Zones 10a-11	16 — Central and northern California
09a 11 — Zones 09a-11	16 — Central and northern California
07a — 0° to 5° F	16 — Central and northern California
06a 09b — Zones 06a-09b	16 — Central and northern California
06a 09b — Zones 06a-09b	16 — Central and northern California
06a 09b — Zones 06a-09b	16 — Central and northern California
06a 08b — Zones 06a-08b	16 — Central and northern California
05a 08b — Zones 05a-08b	16 — Central and northern California
05a — -20° to -15° F	16 — Central and northern California

Symbols

Sunshine	Water
☀ Shade	Regular watering
☀☀ Partial sun or shade	Regular watering
☀ Morning sun	Well drained
☀ Morning sun	Well drained
☀ Full sun	Regular watering
☀☀ Full or partial sun	Regular watering
☀ Full sun	Regular watering

More icons

Life cycle	Stature	Best uses	Desirable qualities
Perennial	Vine	Fences and walls	withstands abuse
Deciduous	Shrub		Fragrant
Deciduous	Shrub		Fragrant
Perennial	Vine		Flowers good in dried arra
Perennial	Tree	Shade tree	Elegant habit
Deciduous	Shrub		Colorful berries and fruits
Deciduous	Tree		Autumn foliage
Deciduous	Tree		Autumn foliage
Perennial	Goundcover		

Thumbnail pictures

	Common Name	Specimen Number	Picture file
Tanacetum parthenium Feverfew		876	
Abutilon 'Ashford Red' Flowering maple		613	
Acer pseudoplatanus 'Atropurpureum' Sycamore maple		843	
Achillea lachsschönheit 'Salmon Beauty' Yarrow		510	
Achillea millefolium 'Pink Deb' Yarrow		716	
Alchemilla mollis Lady's mantle		755	
Alstroemeria Peruvian lily		594	
Alyogyne huegelii Blue Hibiscus		507	
Anemone x hybrida 'Luise Uhink' Japanese Anem...		505	

Compleat Botanica - Printing labels

## Index to topics about labels

ⓘ	**Basic steps for printing labels**	Here's an overview of what it takes to prepare and print labels.
ⓘ	**Tips for setting up accurate label layouts**	Here are some not-so-obvious tips for setting up and printing labels.
ⓘ	**Choosing a label format**	When The Compleat Botanica is installed, several sizes of label layouts are predefined.
ⓘ	**WYSIWYG label preview**	The Label Preview window is a what you see is what you get (WYSIWYG) display.
ⓘ	**Defining label text and data values**	Use the Design Label window in the label format editor to specify text and data values to include on your labels.
ⓘ	**Defining label fonts and colors**	Using the Design Label window you can change the fonts and colors used on each line of the label.
ⓘ	**Choosing label options**	These options change the way labels appear.
ⓘ	**Using the page layout editor**	The label layout editor is where you specify label dimensions, label gaps, page margins, and overall column/row layout criteria.

Compleat Botanica - **Basic steps for printing labels**

Here's an overview of what it takes to prepare and print labels.

Step 1: Selecting which labels to print

You can use two different methods to select which
specimen to include on your labels. One method uses your
currently selected filter, the other method uses the "Tag
needs printing" column.

If you're comfortable creating and using filters, you'll find
this to be a powerful way to select exactly which specimen
to include. You can use any existing filter or you can create
a new one just for the purpose of selecting which records to
include on your labels. Use the normal methods for
defining and selecting your filter, then proceed to Step 2.
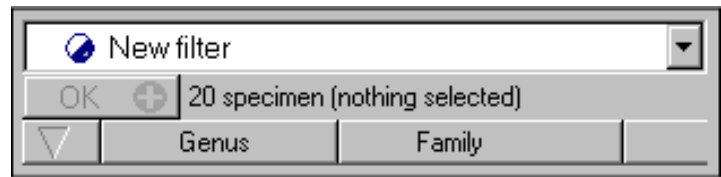
If you want to quickly print labels for just a few of your specimen,
you'll find the second method to be fast and straightforward. Go to the
Herbarium View and check the box named "Tag needs printing" for
each specimen to be printed.

Note that each new specimen record that you create automatically has
this box checked making it convenient for you to print labels for all
your new entries.

Step 2: Print command
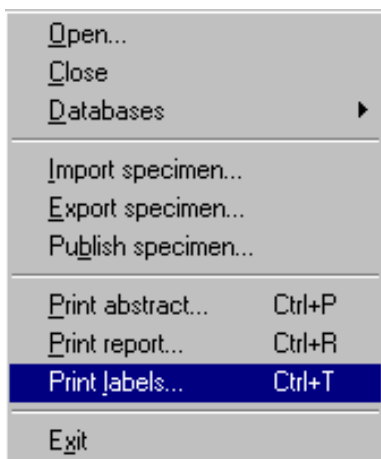
Begin the print process by choosing the **Print Labels** command from the **File** menu.
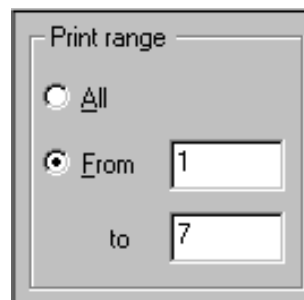
Step 3: Modify an existing label format

Choose one of the predefined label formats as a template for your own custom label layout. Double-click on the item to modify the layout, formatting, and printing options. See the document Choosing a label format for snapshots of a few of the pre-installed layouts.
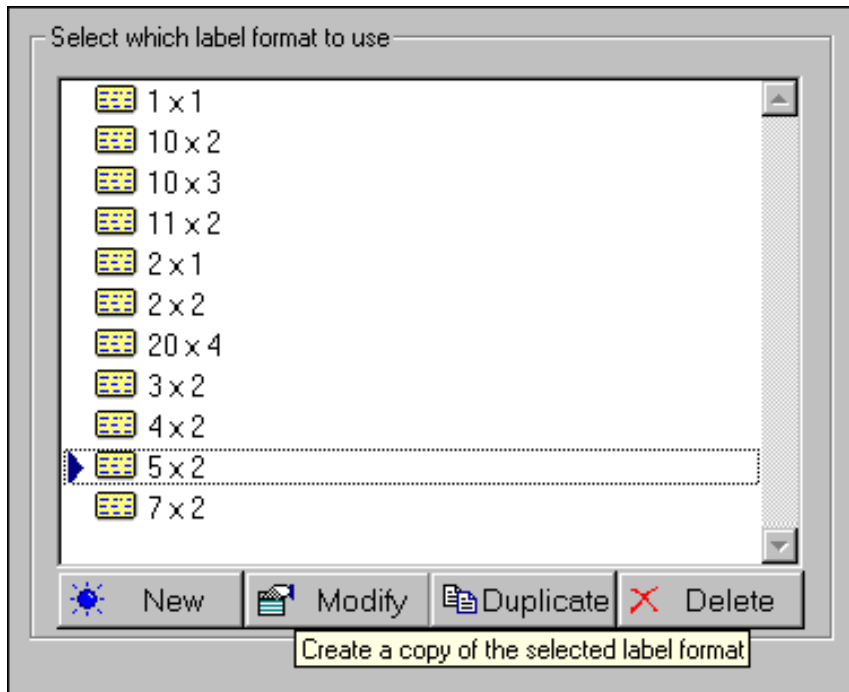
Step 4: Check your printing options

Choose whether to print all pages or a **From** and **To** range of pages.

Missing labels:

4

Use the **Missing labels** option to re-use a sheet of labels that's already been partially been used. See WYSIWYG label preview for more about this.

Which printer:

HP DeskJet Print setup

If you have more than one printer, select which one to use. Use the **Print setup** button to change special printer characteristics.

Step 5: Press the Print button

Print

Load the sheets of labels in your printer's tray and press the print button.

You'll also want to read the special Tips for setting up accurate label layouts.

Compleat Botanica - Tips for setting up accurate label layouts

At first glance everything looks straightforward, but there are a few things about printing labels that may not be so obvious. Here are some tips for setting up and printing labels.

1

The size and layout of each sheet of labels is determined by six things:

- *Paper size.* The overall dimensions of the sheet of labels. If you live in the USA this will most likely be "Letter size" or 8.5" by 11.0". If you live in any country which uses ISO paper sizes this will most likely be "A4" or 210mm x 297mm.
- *Orientation.* Whether the labels are laid out in portrait or landscape mode. Most sheets of labels are oriented as portrait.
- *Label layout.* The number of labels across the page and the number of labels down the page.
- *Page margins.* The amount of space reserved for your printer to grab the sheet and pull it through the device. This is unprintable space.
- *Label dimensions.* The width and height of each label.
- *Spacing between labels.* The amount of space between each row of labels and between each column of labels. Many sheets of labels are arranged so that each label is adjacent to its neighbors; you'll specify zero for these types of labels.

2

The "scale" affects only the on-screen print preview, not the actual paper printing size.

3

When printing labels using the "Selected specimen" option, the sorted order of labels is the same as the sorted order in your Specimen List. To read more about sorting see the document Sorting the list of specimen.

When printing labels using the "Tag needs printing" checkbox, the sorted order of labels is alphabetical by botanical name.

4 To add additional spacing between two lines of text on your labels you can add an extra line with no text. Simply use the "font size" to adjust the size of this blank line and thus the amount of blank spacing between your lines of text.

5 Portrait and Landscape are controlled by the Orientation item on the Print Preview, not by the settings of your printer.

6 The list of fonts shown in the Design Label window are the fonts available for the selected printer. If the list of fonts seems too small, make sure you haven't selected a "Generic / Text Only" printer.

7 When using the "Tag needs printing" option, you can choose to automatically clear the checkbox when the labels have been satisfactorily printed.

When *The Compleat Botanica* is installed, several sizes of label layouts are predefined. These layouts demonstrate a variety of different styling and formatting possibilities. Use them as templates to get started with your own custom labels.

Once you see how the predefined label layouts have been constructed, you'll want to experiment with fonts, colors, column values, and so forth. Remember, what you see is what you get, so prepare your labels first using the on-screen previewer, and there will be no suprises when the finished labels roll off the press.

A few snapshots are shown here to help you visualize the possibilities. Each of these are shown at 100% scaling with the bottom half of the page clipped off.

	1 x 1
	10 x 2
	10 x 3
	11 x 3
	2 x 1
	2 x 2
	20 x 4
	3 x 2
	4 x 2
	5 x 2
	7 x 2
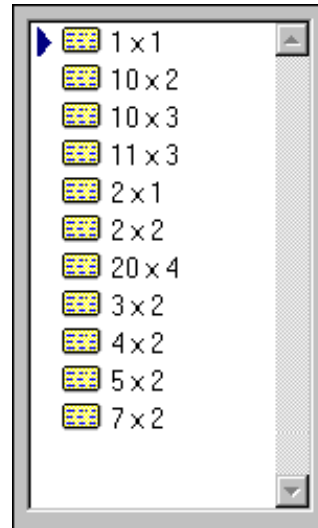
Report style	Sample
20 x 4	

Abelia chinensis	Abelia grandiflora	Abelia triflora	Abelia x grandiflora glossy abelia
Abelmoschus esculentus okra	Abies 'Compacta' fir	Abies balsamea balsam fir,balm of Gilead	Abies concolor white fir,Colorado fir
Abies nobilis noble fir	Abobra tenuifolia cranberry gourd	Abronia arenaria	Abronia fragrans Four o'clock,white abronia
Abronia latifolia :al sand verbena,yellow abi	Abronia maritima red sand verbena	Abronia salsa sand puffs	Abronia umbellata prostrate sand verbena
Abronia villosa pink sand verbena	Abrus precatorius rosarypea,jequirity	Abutilon 'Ashford Red' flowering maple	Abutilon 'Bella mix' Chinese lantern
Abutilon hybridum inese lantern,flowering maj	Abutilon indicum ikeybush,kanghi,Indian ma	Acacia acuminata Raspberry jam tree	Acacia arabica babul
Acacia baileyana amundra wattle,Bailey's ac	Acacia cambagei stinking wattle	Acacia catechu cutch,gum catechu,black ca	Acacia constricta acacia
Acacia dealbata silver wattle	Acacia dealbata 'Variegatus silver wattle	Acacia decurrens acacia	Acacia farnesiana sweet acacia

10 x 3

Botanical name: Abelia chinensis Family name: CAPRIFOLIACEÆ Common name: Specimen Number: S5514	Botanical name: Abelia grandiflora Family name: CAPRIFOLIACEÆ Common name: Specimen Number: S5515	Botanical name: Abelia triflora Family name: CAPRIFOLIACEÆ Common name: Specimen Number: S5255
Botanical name: Abelia x grandiflora Family name: CAPRIFOLIACEÆ Common name: glossy abelia Specimen Number: S11385	Botanical name: Abelmoschus esculentus Family name: MALVACEÆ Common name: okra Specimen Number: S8295	Botanical name: Abies 'Compacta' Family name: ABIETACEÆ Common name: fir Specimen Number: S11444
Botanical name: Abies balsamea Family name: ABIETACEÆ Common name: balsam fir,balm of Gilead Specimen Number: S6922	Botanical name: Abies concolor Family name: ABIETACEÆ Common name: white fir,Colorado fir Specimen Number: S13915	Botanical name: Abies nobilis Family name: ABIETACEÆ Common name: noble fir Specimen Number: S13966
Botanical name: Abobra tenuifolia Family name: Common name: cranberry gourd Specimen Number: S5499	Botanical name: Abronia arenaria Family name: Common name: Specimen Number: S6047	Botanical name: Abronia fragrans Family name: Common name: Four o'clock,white abroni Specimen Number: S6939

7 x 2

Botanical name: Abelia chinensis
Common name:

Life cycle: Woody perennial   Typical Height: Typical Spread: Sunshine: Various   Water: Various   USDA hardiness zones: Not classified

Botanical name: Abelia grandiflora
Common name:

Life cycle: Woody perennial   Typical Height: Typical Spread: Sunshine: Various   Water: Various   USDA hardiness zones: Not classified

Botanical name: Abelia triflora
Common name:

Life cycle: Woody perennial   Typical Height: Typical Spread: Sunshine: Various   Water: Various   USDA hardiness zones: Not classified

Botanical name: Abelia x grandiflora
Common name: glossy abelia

Life cycle: Woody perennial   Typical Height: 4' 11"   Typical Spread: 2' 11" - 5' 11"   Sunshine: Various   Water: Dry   USDA hardiness zones: USDA 05a-10b

Botanical name: Abelmoschus esculentus
Common name: okra

Life cycle: Annual   Typical Height: 1' 11" - 5' 11"   Typical Spread: Sunshine: Various   Water: Moist   USDA

Botanical name: Abies 'Compacta'
Common name: fir

Life cycle: Woody perennial   Typical Height: 2'   Typical Spread: 3' - 4'   Sunshine: Full sun   Water: Dry to moist

4 x 2

Specimen Number: S11923

Genus: Aeonium
Species: arboreum
Family: CRASSULACEÆ
Common name: aeonium

Life cycle: Perennial   Typical Height: 11" - 2' 11"
Typical Spread: Sunshine: Full sun   Water: Well
drained   USDA hardiness zones: USDA 09a-11

Specimen Number: S11924

Genus: Aeonium
Species: tabuliforme
Family: CRASSULACEÆ
Common name: aeonium

Life cycle: Perennial   Typical Height: 11" - 2' 11"
Typical Spread: Sunshine: Full sun   Water: Well
drained   USDA hardiness zones: USDA 09a-11

Specimen Number: S5335

Genus: Aerides
Species: angustifolium
Family:
Common name: epiphytic orchid

Life cycle: Various   Typical Height: Typical Spread:

Specimen Number: S5336

Genus: Aerides
Species: expansum
Family:
Common name: epiphytic orchid

Life cycle: Various   Typical Height: Typical Spread:

2 x 1

Genus: Abelia
Species: chinensis
Family: CAPRIFOLIACEÆ
Common name:

Life cycle

Life cycle: Woody perennial   Life span: 5 - 20 years   Annual cycle: Depends on climate   Stature: Shrub
  Growth Form: Various Growth Habit: Not applicable Typical Height: Typical Spread:

Climate

Sunshine: Various   Water: Various   Soil Texture: Various   Optimal soil pH: Various   Optimal USDA
hardiness zones: Not classified   Recommended AHS Heat zones: Not classified

Special qualities

Tolerates drought: No   Tolerates high humidity: No Tolerates seaside conditions: No   Deer resistant: No
  Attracts butterflies: No Attracts hummingbirds: No   Colorful autumn foliage: No Colorful berries in
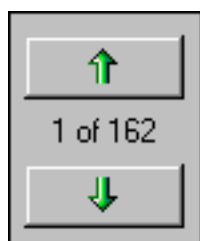winter: No

Medicinal properties

Compleat Botanica - WYSIWYG label preview

The Label Preview window is a "what you see is what you get" (WYSIWYG) display. Using the label preview enables you to precisely see how each sheet of labels will look when printed.

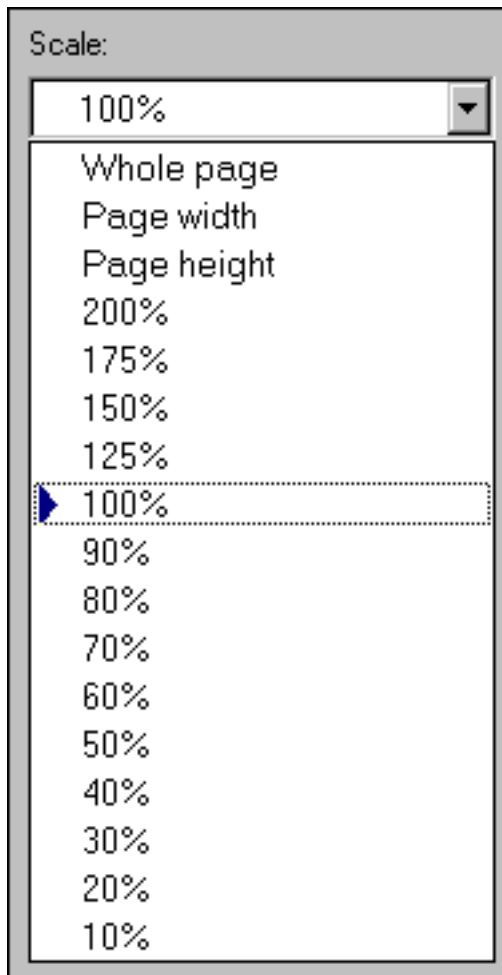There are several features which make the label preview useful:

1

The up and down scrolling buttons allow you to see each of the label sheets to be printed.

Tip: To continuously scroll, press and hold the button down until you reach the desired page.

The page scale feature allows you to see more or less of the sample layout on your screen. Remember also that the entire label preview window can be sized larger or smaller just like any other sizable window.

The **whole page** option scales the preview so that

Scale:

100% ▼
Whole page
Page width
Page height
200%
175%
150%
125%
▶ 100%
90%
80%
70%
60%
50%
40%
30%
20%
10%

2 you can see the complete page within the window. The **page width** option scales the preview so that you can see the entire width of the sheet of labels within the window. The **page height** option scales the preview so that you can see the entire height of the sheet of labels within the window.

Paper size:

A4 ▼
Letter
Legal
Executive
▶ A4
A5
B4
B5
B6
Custom size
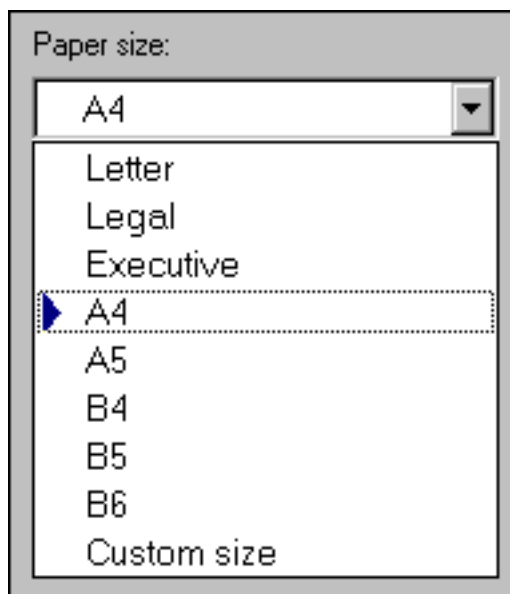
3 The paper size selector lets you choose the size of the label sheets that are in your printer. You should make this selection before setting up the dimensions of each label because adjusting the paper size will automatically adjust the size of the labels to fit on the page.

4

When using paper with a custom size, use the width and height items to match your paper's dimensions.

If you want to specify your dimensions in US Customary units (inches) or metric units (millimeters), you can use the Customize Setting window to change how units are specified. See the document [Choosing measurement units for reports and labels](#).

5

Your report's orientation is set using this print preview feature; it is not set using the portrait/ landscape option under printer settings. Most sheets of labels are portrait. Note that changing this selection will automatically adjust the size of the labels to fit the page, so you'll want to make this selection before specifying your label layout options.

6

You can reuse a sheet of labels that has already been partially used by specifying how many labels are missing. Missing labels are shown with a light gray outline in the preview window.
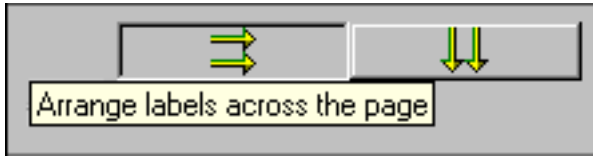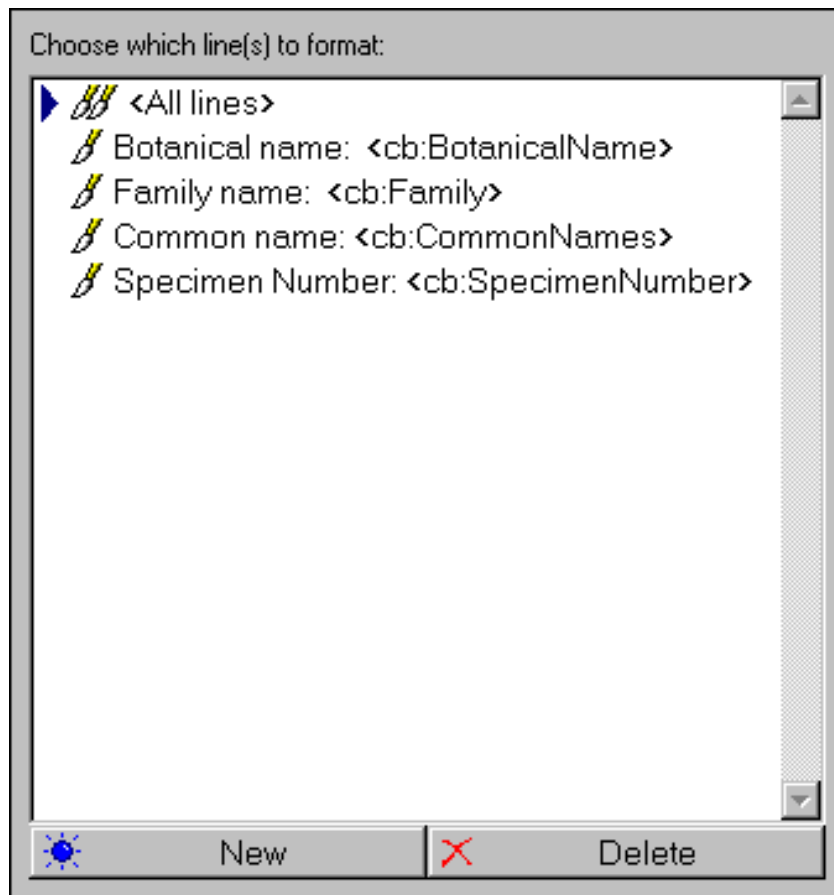
7

Labels can be arranged to go across the page or down the page.

Compleat Botanica - Defining label text and data values

Use the **Design label** window to specify text and data values to include on your

| Show preview | Design label | Label options | Page layout | Choose specimen |
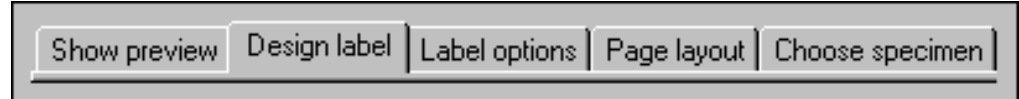
labels. You can specify text that appears on each label exactly as typed, or you can specify data values that are separately pulled from your specimen list for each label. Data values are specified by entering one of the replacement tags that follow the form: <cb:xxxxx>. See the Alphabetical index to column specifications for the names used in these replacement tags.

1

Choose which line(s) to format:

▶ ✏️ <All lines>
✏️ Botanical name: <cb:BotanicalName>
✏️ Family name: <cb:Family>
✏️ Common name: <cb:CommonNames>
✏️ Specimen Number: <cb:SpecimenNumber>

Each line of the label is specified with a separate format line.

☀ New   ✗ Delete

2
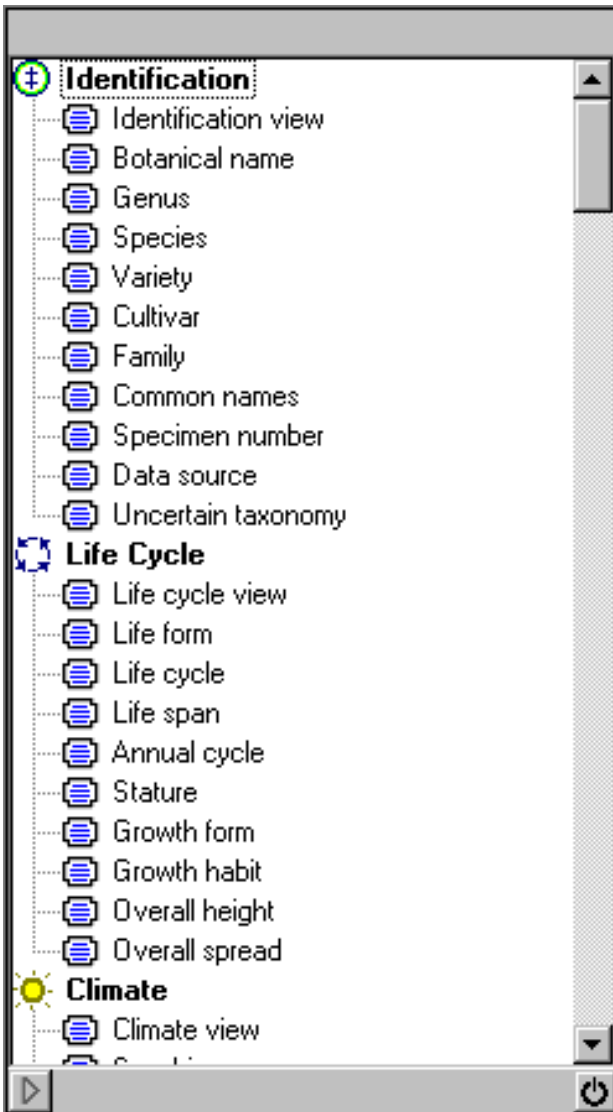
To show the list of data values that can be added to the label, press the **Insert Columns** button. Double-click an item in the list to add it's special replacement tag to the label.

3

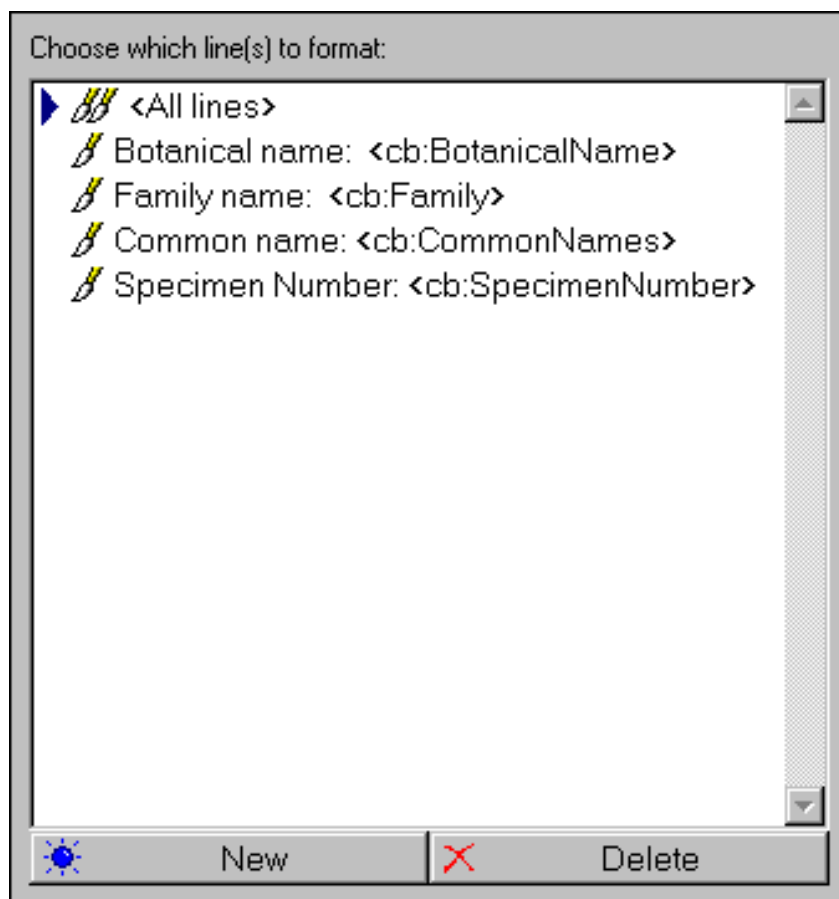Enter both the replacement tags and your special text in this part of the window. Note that a single line can contain a mixture of text and data, including multiple data items. A sample of how the line will appear on the label is shown at the very bottom.
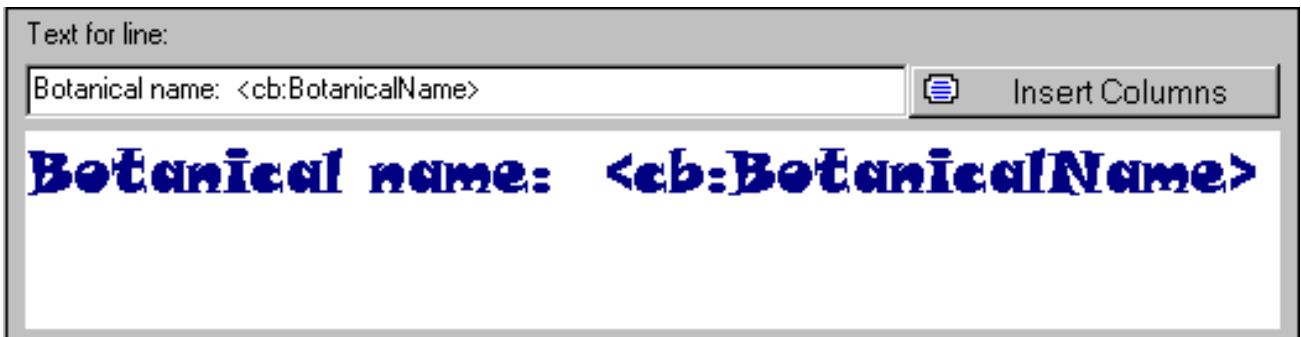
Compleat Botanica - Defining label fonts and colors

Using the **Design label** window you can change the fonts and colors used on each line of the label. Here's an explanation of the options available.

| Show preview | Design label | Label options | Page layout | Choose specimen |

Choose which line(s) to format:

▶ ⬛ **<All lines>**
✏ Botanical name: <cb:BotanicalName>
✏ Family name: <cb:Family>
✏ Common name: <cb:CommonNames>
✏ Specimen Number: <cb:SpecimenNumber>

| ☀ | New | ✗ | Delete |
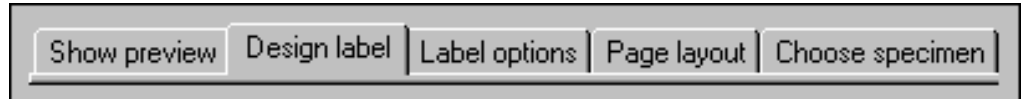
To change the font characteristics for one line, choose that line using the list shown here. To apply changes to two or more lines simultaneously, use the <Ctrl> key on your keyboard to select multiple lines. To apply changes to all lines, choose the <All lines> item.

You can add as many lines as you want to each label.
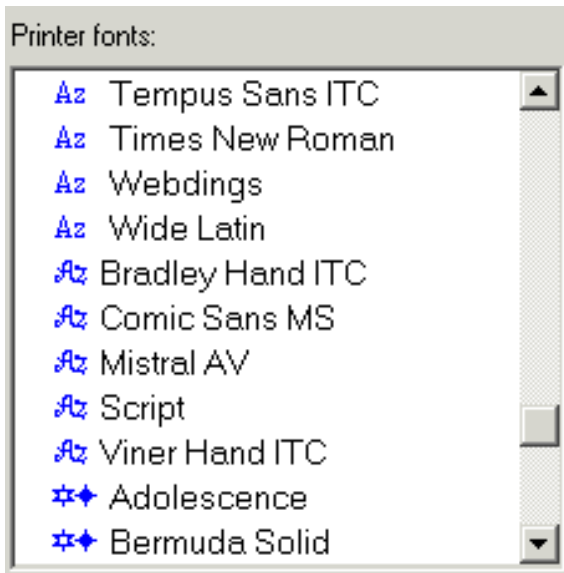
Printer fonts:

Az Tempus Sans ITC
Az Times New Roman
Az Webdings
Az Wide Latin
Az Bradley Hand ITC
Az Comic Sans MS
Az Mistral AV
Az Script
Az Viner Hand ITC
✿✦ Adolescence
✿✦ Bermuda Solid

Size:

6 points
7 points
8 points
9 points
10 points
11 points
12 points
14 points
16 points
18 points
20 points

The list of fonts is grouped into four font types: sans serif fonts, serif fonts, script fonts, and special fonts. The blue symbols in the list indicate the font type.

The font names shown in this list is based on which printer you've selected. If you don't see very many fonts, make sure you haven't selected "Generic / Text only" as your destination printer.

Font sizes range from 6 points to 72 points.
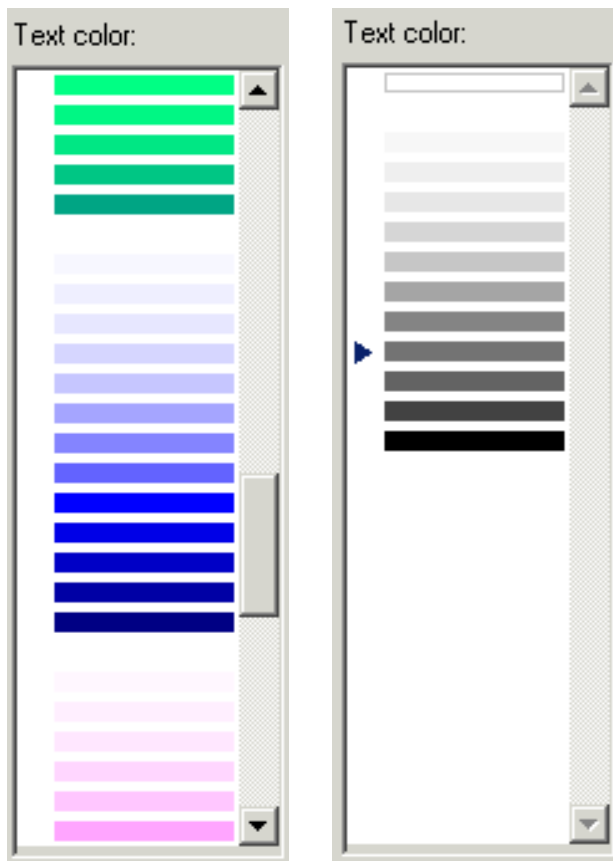
Text color:

When printing to color printers, use any of the standard text colors.

When printing to black and white printers, choose from the gray palette.

Style:

- ▶ Regular
- Bold
- Bold Italic
- Italic

Note that not all fonts have bold and italic. Choose a font style available for your selected font.

Alignment:

- ☰ Left
- ▶ ☰ Center
- ☰ Right

Align the text within the label.

Word wrap

Use the word wrap option when a single line item is allowed to span multiple lines on the label. This is also useful when you specify more than one data value on the same line and you want to have the appearance of a paragraph.

*

See Defining label text and data values for an overview of the options available for text entry.

Text for line:
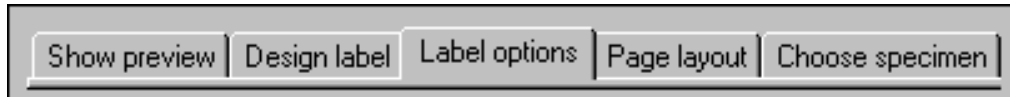
Botanical name: <cb:BotanicalName>   Insert Columns

Botanical name: <cb:BotanicalName>

Compleat Botanica - Choosing label options

By using the **Label options** tab in the label format editor you can make changes to the overall appearance of your labels. Here's what you can do:

| Show preview | Design label | Label options | Page layout | Choose specimen |

Ink
- Color
- Black and White

* Choose either color or black and white. When black and white is chosen, only shades of gray are available in the **Design label** window.

Label margins

Top	4.0 mm	11.3 pts
Bottom	4.0 mm	11.3 pts
Left margin	4.0 mm	11.3 pts
Right margin	4.0 mm	11.3 pts

* Label margins are the non-printing portion of each label. You can specify these values using US Customary units (inches) or metric units (millimeters) by making your choice in the Customize Setting window. See the document Choosing measurement units for reports and labels.

☑ Show label outline when printing

* When printing to plain paper instead of to actual labels, you may want to check the **Show label outline when printing** checkbox. This will print the background shading and outline of the simulated label. This is especially useful when printing placards that are intended to be laminated.

Summary

Printable height: 19.2 mm (54.4 pts)

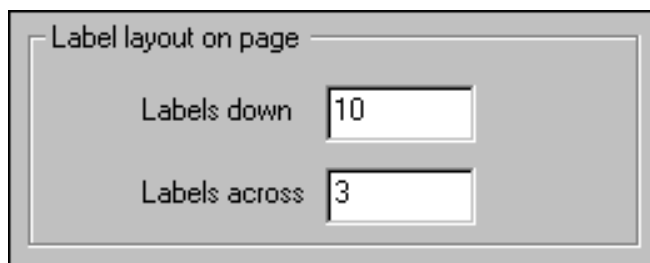Printable width: 59.9 mm (169.8 pts)

* This summary area shows the amount of space available for each label. This is calculated by taking into consideration the label's dimensions less the non-printable margins.

Compleat Botanica - Using the page layout editor

The **Page layout** editor is where you specify label dimensions, label gaps, page

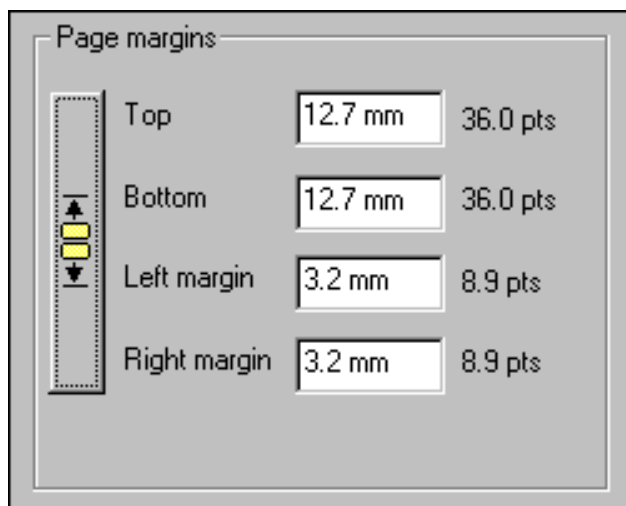| Show preview | Design label | Label options | Page layout | Choose specimen |
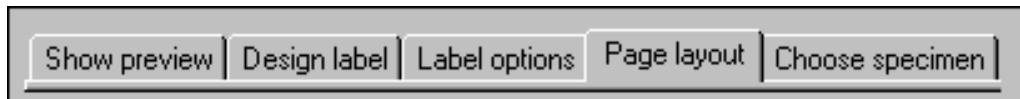
margins, and overall column/row layout criteria. Before making changes here, be sure to set your paper size and orientation in the **Show preview** window because they control the total amount of space available for printing. To obtain accurate label layouts, a ruler is helpful in determining precise dimensions.

Note that dimensions are stored internally using points. A point is defined as 1/72 of an inch. Points are further divided into 20 units called *twips*. When values are specified in the page layout editor they are coverted from millimeters or inches into twips and stored with a precision of 1440 twips per inch or approximately 567 twips per millimeter.

Label layout on page

Labels down `10`

Labels across `3`

* Begin by entering the number of labels that each sheet contains.

Page margins

Top	`12.7 mm`	36.0 pts
Bottom	`12.7 mm`	36.0 pts
Left margin	`3.2 mm`	8.9 pts
Right margin	`3.2 mm`	8.9 pts

* The outer portion of each sheet of labels is reserved for the printer to use in grabbing the sheet and pulling it through the device. Specify each of these values here.

The **auto-adjust** button is useful in determining these values if you've already specified both the label dimensions and the label spacing.

Label dimensions

Label height	27.1 mm	77.0 pts
Label width	67.9 mm	192.4 pts

When you purchase your labels, the manufacturer will supply you with the dimensions for each label. Enter the width and height of a single label here.

Most label dimensions can easily be entered here, but some labels are specified with widths or heights that are irrational numbers (numbers whose precision goes on forever such as 0.3333). For these types of dimensions, enter the nearest rational number. If you are using metric units the nearest value will be to a precision of 1/10 of a millimeter. If you are using US Customary units the nearest value will be 1/32 of an inch. For example, a label dimension of 2 1/3" can be entered as 2 11/32".

The **auto-adjust** button can be used if you've already specified both the page margins and the label spacing.

Spacing between labels

Row gap	0 mm	0.0 pts
Column gap	0 mm	0.0 pts

The amount of space between labels is the gap between adjacent columns or adjacent rows of labels. Many sheets have labels that are placed directly adjacent to each other; you'll enter zero in this area for those types of labels.

The **auto-adjust** button can be used if you've already specified both the page margins and the label dimensions.

Available height: 0 mm   (0.3 pts)

Available width: 0 mm   (0.1 pts)

The amount of available space is the remaining space on the page that needs to be accounted for somehow. Press one of the **autoadjust** buttons to evenly divide this unaccounted for space. When everything is in order these values should both be zero. If a value is negative, then you've probably specified label dimensions that are too large for the page or you've indicated an incorrect number of labels per column / labels per row.

Occasionally there will be a tiny fraction of unaccounted for space remaining. This sometimes happens when the number of labels across or down is an odd number instead of an even number. Test print a single sheet of these labels to be sure that

the layout is close enough to be acceptable.

Compleat Botanica **- Choosing which labels to print**

The **Choose specimen** tab is where you'll choose which specimen to include with your labels.

| Show preview | Design label | Label options | Page layout | Choose specimen |

There are two methods for making your choice -- one method uses the current filter, the other method uses the "Tag needs printing" checkbox.
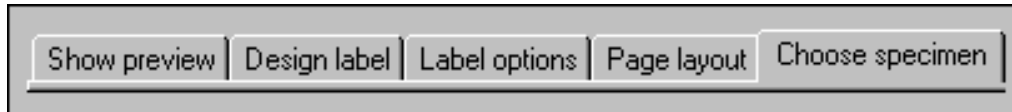
This is also where you'll make your selection of how many labels to print for each specimen included in the layout.

Choose which specimen to print

○ Use the "Tag needs printing" checkbox

● Use the selected specimen

For a general discussion on selecting which labels to print refer to the Basic steps for printing labels document.

If you choose the **Tag needs printing** method, your labels will include only those specimen with that box checked. See the Herbarium View for a snapshot showing where to find this checkbox.

If you choose to **use the selected specimen** method, your labels will include only those specimen that meet the criteria of the currently selected filter. (These are the items shown in the Specimen List when you started the Print Labels operation.)

Choose how many of each to print

○ Use the "Quantity" item

● Print this many: 1

There are two ways to specify how many labels to print for each specimen. One way is to use the **Quantity** item. See the Garden View for a snapshot showing where to find this item. If you use this item, each specimen will have a different number of labels printed. Note that no labels will be printed for any specimen whose **Quantity** item is blank.

The second way to specify how many labels to print is to enter a number in the **Print this many** item. Using this option, each specimen will have the same number of labels printed.

```
┌─ Summary ──────────────────────┐
│                                │
│   Number of specimen to print:  4994   │
│                                │
│   Number of labels to print:  4994    │
│                                │
│   Number of pages:  162              │
│                                │
└────────────────────────────────┘
```

*
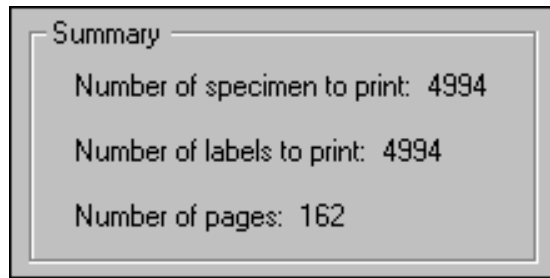
The summary area gives you some feedback on the number of labels to be printed. The **Number of labels to print** will be an even multiple of the **Number of specimen to print** when you use the second option for specifying quantities. If you use the first option, either of these two quantities could be much greater or much less than the other.

It's especially important to check this summary area when using the **Tag needs printing** or **Quantity** options since you'll often find surprises with these options.

Compleat Botanica - Printing Pathfinder documents

Index to printing Pathfinder topics

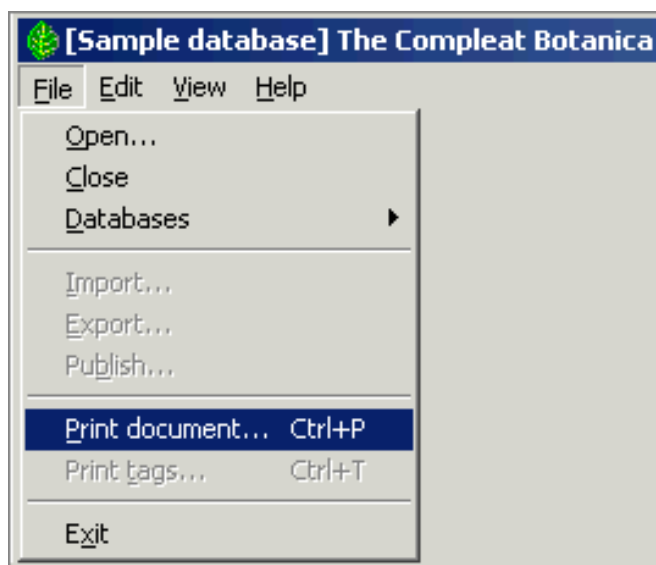General instructions for printing Pathfinder documents

Printing documents from within the Pathfinder View is easy. Just select the Print document option from the File menu.

Compleat Botanica **- General instructions for printing Pathfinder documents**

Printing documents from within the Pathfinder View is easy. Just select the **Print document** option from the **File** menu.

Only one document at a time can be printed. Pathfinder documents make extensive use of hyperlinks to allow easy navigation from one topic to another. Printing the entire set of Pathfinder documents with a single command is not supported.

```
┌──────────────────────────────────────────┐
│ 🌿 [Sample database] The Compleat Botanica │
├──────────────────────────────────────────┤
│ File  Edit  View  Help                     │
│  ┌──────────────────────────┐              │
│  │ Open...                   │             │
│  │ Close                     │             │
│  │ Databases            ▶    │             │
│  │                           │             │
│  │ Import...                 │             │
│  │ Export...                 │             │
│  │ Publish...                │             │
│  │                           │             │
│  │ Print document...  Ctrl+P │             │
│  │ Print tags...      Ctrl+T │             │
│  │                           │             │
│  │ Exit                      │             │
│  └──────────────────────────┘             │
└──────────────────────────────────────────┘
```
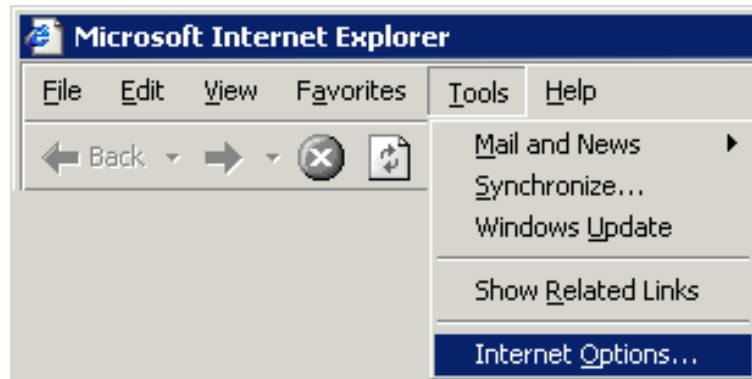
The options and layout of this Print window will vary depending on which operating system and which version

of Microsoft
Internet Explorer
is installed on
your computer.
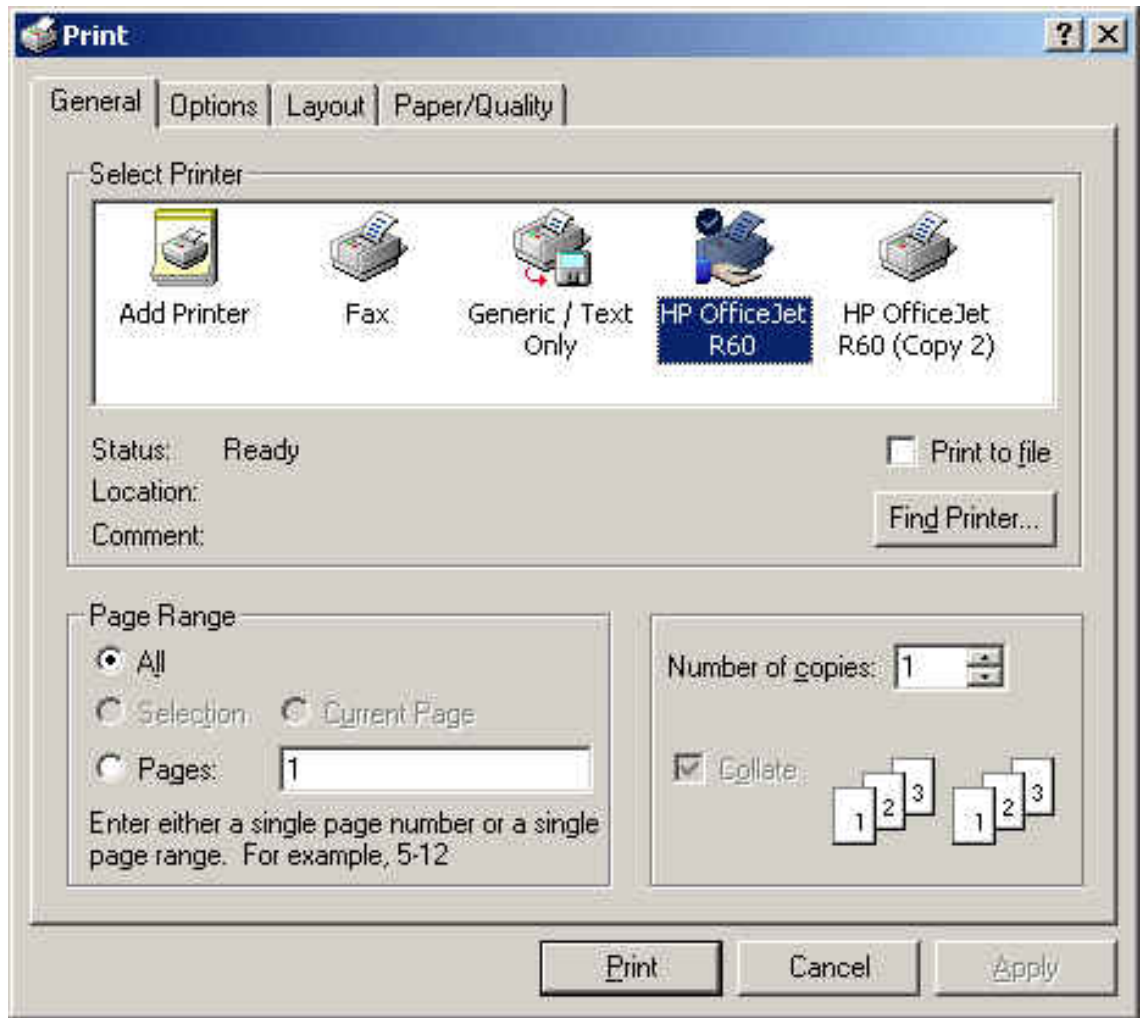
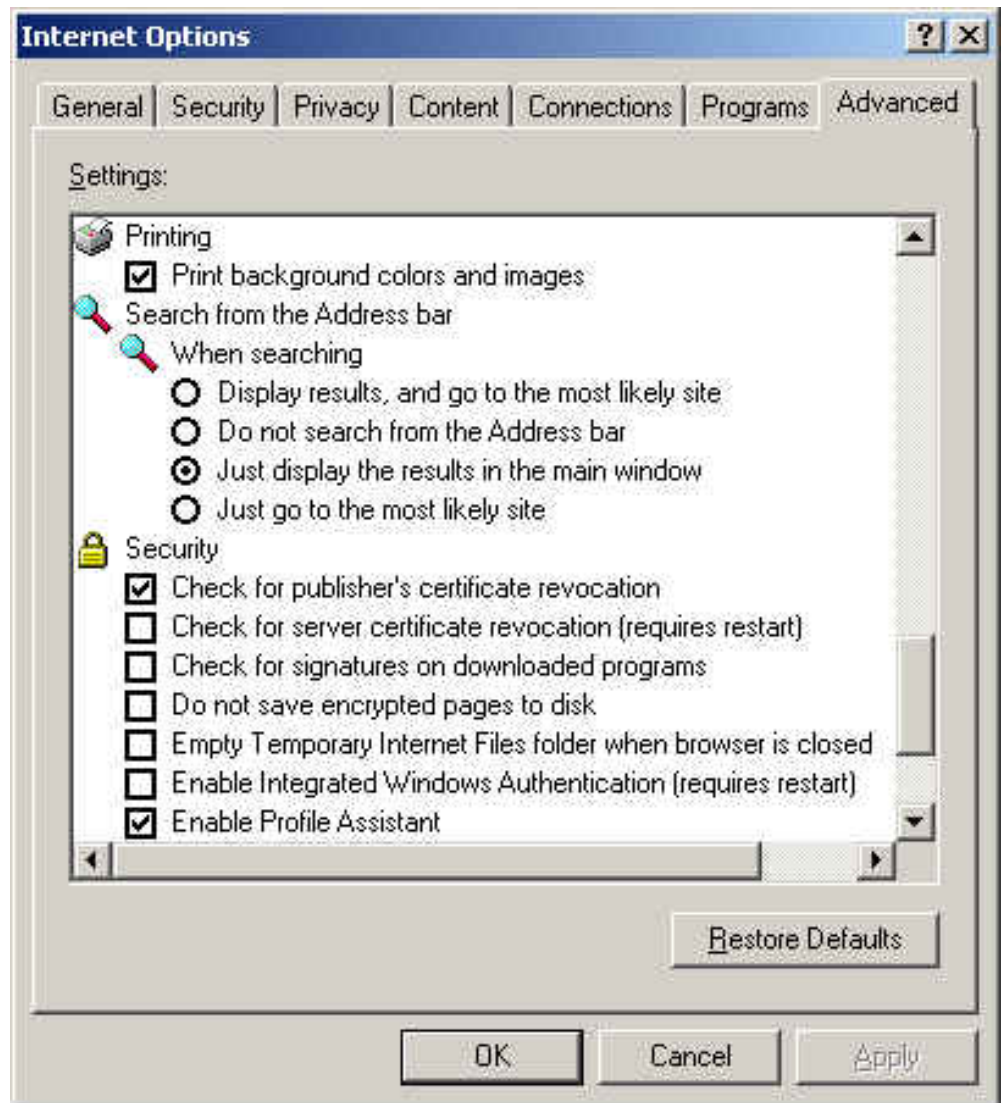## Printing options are controlled by Microsoft Internet Explorer

To change printing options,
start Microsoft Internet
Explorer and go to the
Internet Options menuitem
under the **Tools** menu.

Here's where you can change the option to print background colors and images.

The Pathfinder documents use background colors to make reading documents online easier, but printing background colors can use a lot of color ink cartridges.

Printing background colors may be necessary in order to see white text (such as titles) on a white sheet of paper.

Internet Options   ? ✕

| General | Security | Privacy | Content | Connections | Programs | Advanced |

Settings:

🖨 Printing
  ☑ Print background colors and images
🔍 Search from the Address bar
  🔍 When searching
      ○ Display results, and go to the most likely site
      ○ Do not search from the Address bar
      ⊙ Just display the results in the main window
      ○ Just go to the most likely site
🔒 Security
  ☑ Check for publisher's certificate revocation
  ☐ Check for server certificate revocation (requires restart)
  ☐ Check for signatures on downloaded programs
  ☐ Do not save encrypted pages to disk
  ☐ Empty Temporary Internet Files folder when browser is closed
  ☐ Enable Integrated Windows Authentication (requires restart)
  ☑ Enable Profile Assistant

Restore Defaults

OK   Cancel   Apply

Compleat Botanica - Printing Checklist reports

Index to printing Checklist reports

ℹ	**General instructions for printing checklist reports**	Checklist reports are a simple alternative to the more sophisticated specimen reports.
ℹ	**Preparing checklist reports**	Checklist reports provide a simple way for you to look at hierarchical listings of plant names.
ℹ	**Previewing checklist reports**	The checklist report generator and previewer is simple and straightforward.

Compleat Botanica - General instructions for printing checklist reports

Overview

Checklist reports are a simple alternative to the more sophisticated specimen reports. Although simple, they can provide an interesting snapshot of both your collection and the Plant Kingdom at large.

Restrictive or General

Checklist reports can be prepared in a restrictive way or in a general purpose way. Restrictive reports include only names for which you have specimen entries. This type of report is useful for seeing the diversity or the concentration of your collection. The report shows a colored checkmark symbol for each name that is in your specimen collection.

On the other hand, general purpose reports include *all* of the taxonomic names found in the checklist without regard to your specimen collection. This type of report is useful for seeing your collection in the shadow of the Plant Kingdom.

Hierarchical or Flat

Checklist reports can also be printed in two different fashions: hierarchical or flat. Hierarchical reports begin with the supra-ranks of a given name and proceed down the hierarchy to a particular level. For example a hierarchical report for the genus *Lavandula* would show Magnoliophyta > Rosopsida > Lamiales > Lamiaceae (and the intermediate sub-taxa) before listing the species of the genus.

Flat reports list the named members of a rank without including any supra-ranks. This type of report can be useful in preparing a list of all family names, or all names of some other rank.

A combination report can also be created. These show all names of a given rank and further include

Regnum *Plantae*

Divisio *Magnoliophyta*

Subdivisio *Magnoliophytina*

Classis *Rosopsida*

Subclassis *Lamiidae*

SuperOrdo *Lamianae*

Ordo *Lamiales*

Subordo *Lamiineae*

Familia *Lamiaceae*

Subfamilia *Lavanduloideae*

Tribus *Lavanduleae*

Subtribus *Lavandulinae*

Genus *Lavandula*

Species *angustifolia*

Species *officinalis*

Species *spica*

Species *stoechas*

Species *vera*

names of sub-ranks down to a particular level.

By choosing restrictive or general and hierarchical or flat, you can produce a variety of simple reports that are informative and useful.

Getting started

Begin by displaying the Checklist View, then select the **Print checklist** option from the **File** menu.

Follow the detailed instructions in [Preparing checklist reports](#).
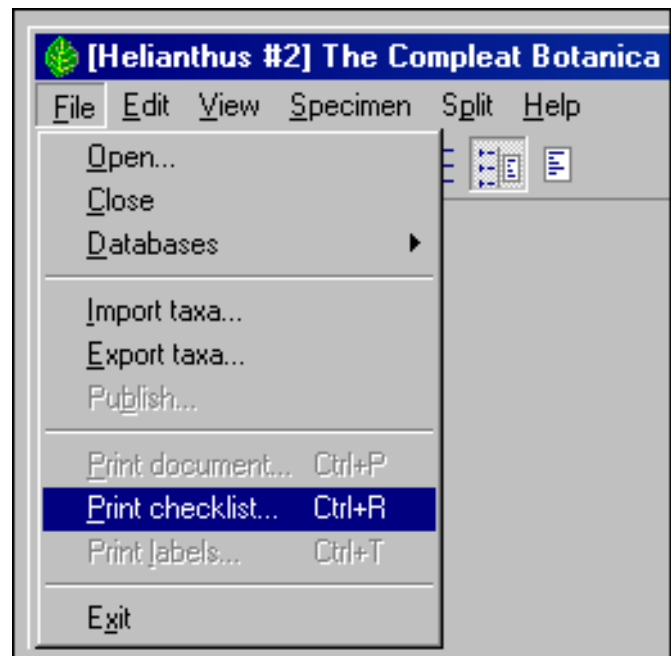
Compleat Botanica - Preparing checklist reports
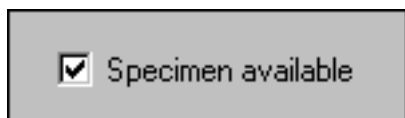
Checklist reports provide a simple way for you to look at hierarchical listings of plant names. These are not a replacement for the more powerful specimen reports, but they do provide printed information in a useful layout. Checklist reports are based on the data which is stored in the Checklist View, and because of this provide no individual specimen details.

Here's how the features of the **Print checklist** window are interpreted and used by the software:

*
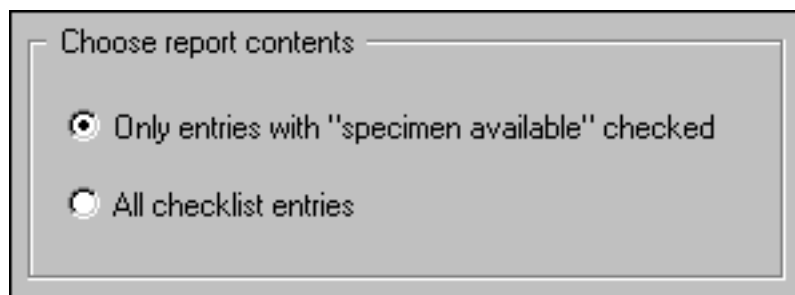
By choosing the option to print **Only entries with "specimen available"** you're instructing the report generator to produce a restrictive report. This type of report is useful for seeing the diversity or the concentration of your collection.

☑ Specimen available

The "specimen available" checkbox of the Checklist View is automatically updated for each entry you add to your collection.
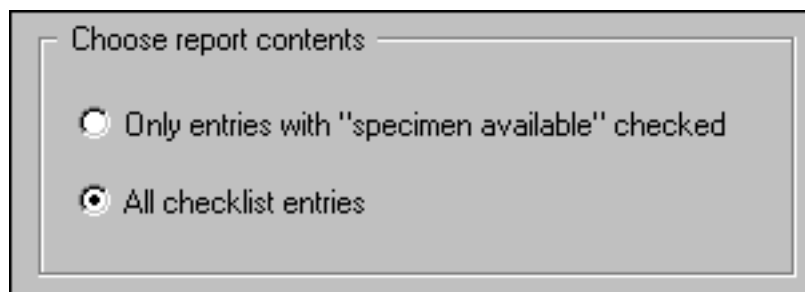
Choose report contents

⦿ Only entries with "specimen available" checked

○ All checklist entries
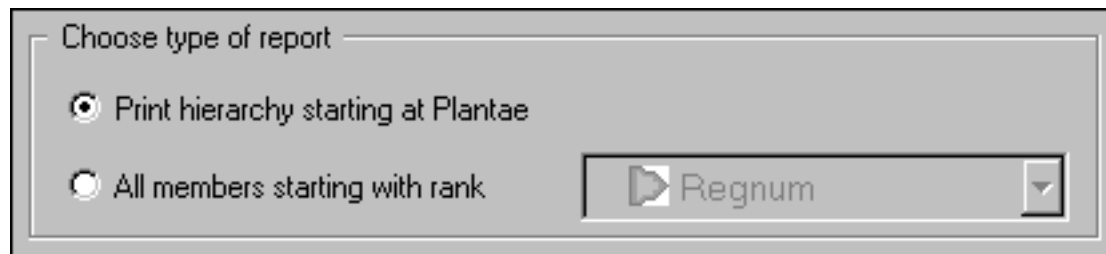
By choosing the **All checklist entries** option, you're instructing the report generator to include taxonomic names for everything in the Checklist View, even if your personal collection has no corresponding entries. This type of report is useful for seeing your collection in relationship to the entire Plant Kingdom.

Choose report contents

○ Only entries with "specimen available" checked

● All checklist entries
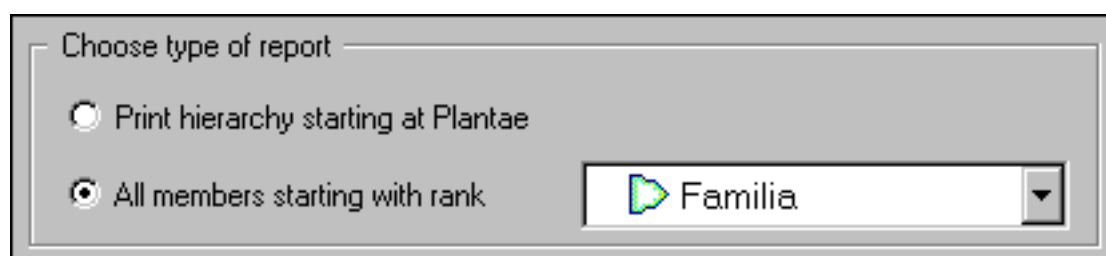
Choose type of report

● Print hierarchy starting at Plantae

○ All members starting with rank ▷ Regnum

By choosing the **Print hierarchy starting at X** option you're instructing the report generator to begin with the supra-ranks of a given name and proceed down the hierarchy to a particular level. To use this option, you must select which item in the Checklist you want to create the report for before showing this print window. The name shown in place of the "X" is the starting point for the report.

Choose type of report

○ Print hierarchy starting at Plantae

● All members starting with rank ▷ Familia

By choosing the **All members starting with rank** option you're instructing the report generator to list the named members of a rank without including any supra-ranks. This type of report can be useful in preparing a list of all family names, or all names of some other rank. Choose which rank to list in the report using the adjacent droplist.

When using this option, be sure to carefully choose the **Include all ranks to this level** option (see next item below for a description). Usually, you'll want to choose the same rank here and in the droplist above.

It's possible though to produce meaningful reports using various combinations of these two.

In the list to **Include all ranks down to this level** you're instructing the report generator where to stop its listing. Choose the lowest rank in the hierarchy to include. When producing lists of your own collection you might like to set this at species or sub-species -- this will produce a good list of your specimen.

When producing lists of the entire taxonomic checklist, you should carefully set this. Setting it too low can easily produce a report that is hundreds of pages long!
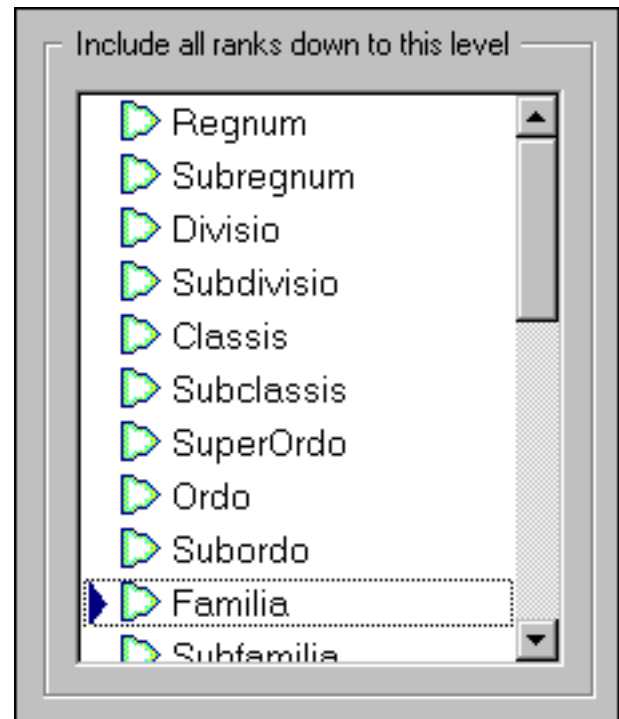
Include outline numbers. Turns on the numbering of each item. Each sub-rank in the hierarchy starts all over again with the number "1".

Include rank. Prints the rank for each name (something like "classis", "ordo", "familia", "genus", "species", etc.)

Include author. Prints the name of the person who wrote the official description of the plant.

Include publication. Prints the name of the book or journal where the official description of the plant was first published.

Include synonym. Prints the true name of the item if this item is a synonym.

Include vernacular names. Prints the common name as well as the botanical name.

Include symbols. Prints a red checkmark for any name which has the "specimen available" box checked. Prints a blue checkmark if the name is of rank *species*.

After choosing which options you want for the report, you can generate a preview of it by pressing the **Preview** button. See [Previewing the checklist report](#) for more about this.

Compleat Botanica - **Previewing checklist reports**

The checklist report generator and previewer is simple and straightforward.

*

After choosing your options and pressing the **Preview** button (on the previous window), you'll see a window like this one that monitors the progress of the report generation. Simple reports can be produced quickly. More complicated reports can take a long time to produce. Wait for the message that indicates the report is finished being prepared, then press the **Preview** button to continue.

Preparing checklist report

Preparing report...
Plantae
Bryophyta
Equisetophyta
Lycopodiophyta
Magnoliophyta
Pinophyta
Polypodiophyta
Psilotophyta
Finished preparing report. Press the Preview button to continue.

X Cancel   Preview

*
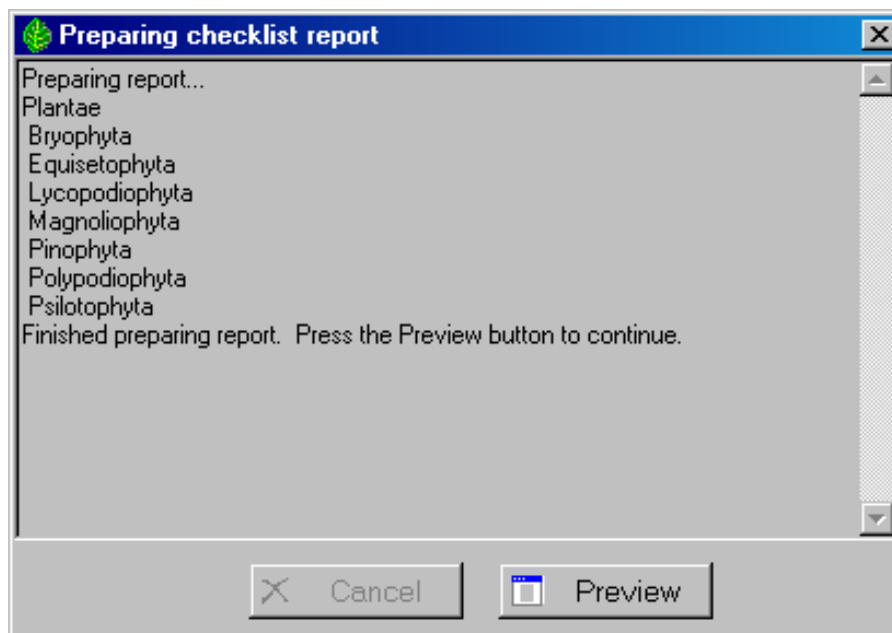
Use the preview window to decide if this is the report as you want to see it. If not, close the window and change your options.
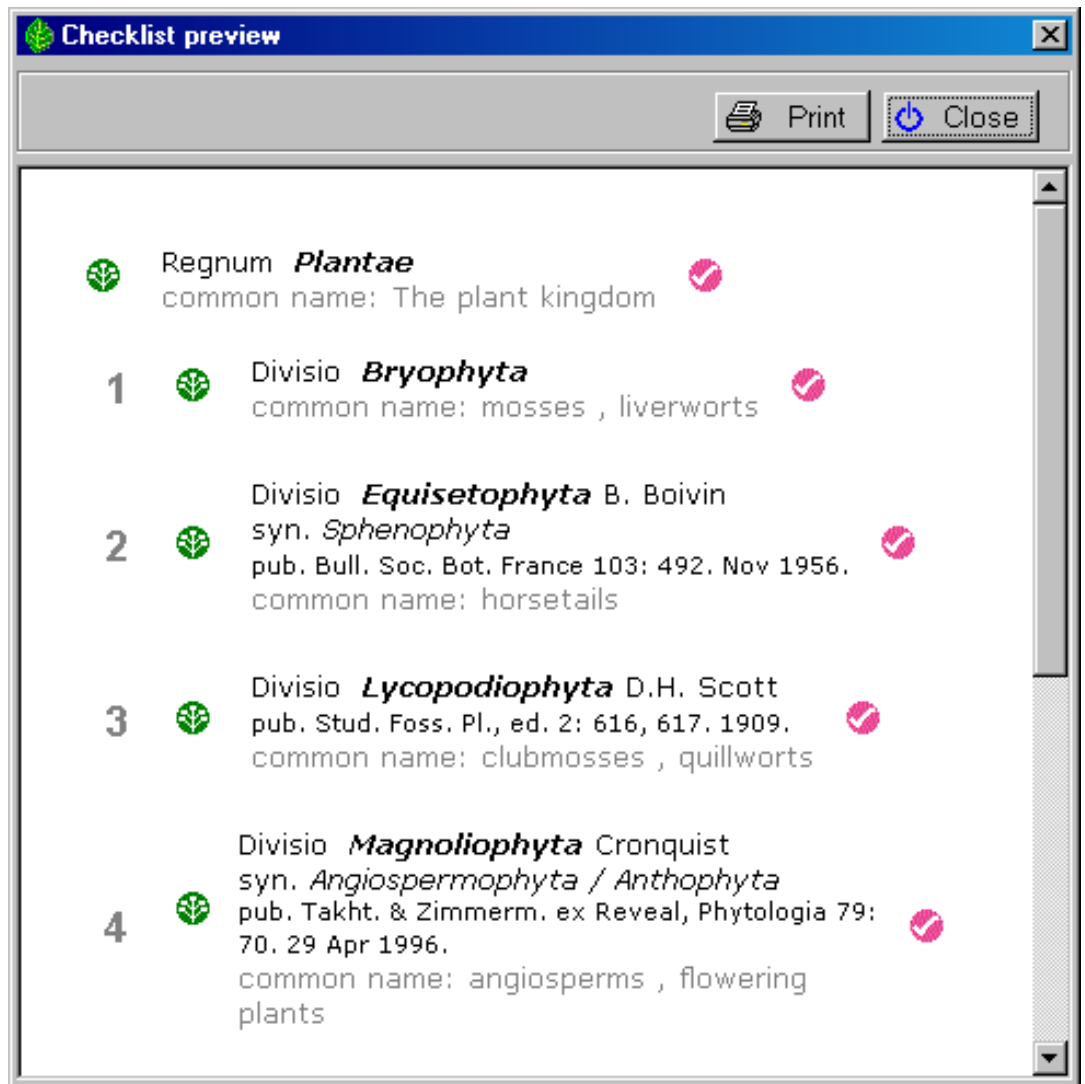
The actual printing operation is handled by the built-in Internet Explorer browser. This means that page breaks and final page layout may be slightly different from what you see in the preview window.
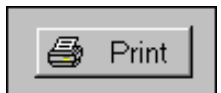
Index to import/export topics

✚ **Importing from other applications**	Index to topics about how to import data from other applications.
✚ **Exporting data to other applications**	Index to topics about how to export data to other applications.
✚ **Data validation and import/export rules**	Index to topics on data validation and import/export rules.

Compleat Botanica - Importing from other applications

Index to importing topics

ℹ	Overview of how to import specimen	Specimen records may be added to your database by importing data from another Compleat Botanica database or from a general purpose database that supports delimited files.
ℹ	Steps for importing specimen from XML files	To begin the XML import process for Specimen, be sure your current view is one of the five specimen views.
ℹ	Steps for importing specimen from delimited files	To begin the delimited file (CSV,TXT) import process for Specimen, be sure your current view is one of the five specimen views.
ℹ	Importing Category records	Importing category records is handy if you've created a collection of categories in one database and you want to copy them into a new database.
ℹ	Importing Filters	You may want to import a filter from another computer rather than re-entering it manually.
ℹ	Importing Taxonomic records	Importing taxonomic records is an advanced feature for those whose want to use a different family / order / class hierarchy system.

Compleat Botanica - Overview of how to import specimen

Specimen records may be added to your database by importing data from another Compleat Botanica database or from a general purpose database that supports delimited files. A delimited file is sometimes referred to in general terms as an ASCII file. Delimited files follow these three rules: 1) they have one line of text per specimen record, 2) each line of text is broken into columns where either a tab or a comma separates each column, and 3) the first line of text contains the names of the columns and subsequent lines contain the records.

The import process can check for duplicate entries in the database and can proceed in one of four ways: duplicates can be merged with the existing record, they can be skipped entirely, they can be replaced entirely, or they can be created without regard to the existing record. Duplicates are determined by matching import records to existing records based on either the botanical name or the specimen number.

To understand how the data files are processed, what the column names are, and what special formatting rules apply to each column, refer to the documents for each individual column. See the Alphabetical index to column specifications.

To see snapshots of the screens you will encounter during the import process, see the documents:

- Steps for importing specimen from XML files
- Steps for importing specimen from delimited files

To begin the import process for Specimen, be sure your current view is one of the specimen views. From the File menu select the Import command.

Use the "Select data file" window to choose the XML file containing specimen records to be imported. See the file Specimen.xml for a sample of a valid XML file.

For a complete list of tagged values that can be used in the XML file see the document type definition contained in CompleatBotanicaSchema.xml.

For validation rules used by the XML import parser see the documents referenced in the Alphabetical index to column specifications.

Press the **Next** button.

1

Import specimen - select data file

Please specify the name of the file to import

C:\ImportExport

Selected file:

Specimen.xml

```
C:\
  G98w
  ImportExport
  Inetpub
  Office
  PFE
  Program Files
  RECYCLER
  Registry
  System Volume Information
  TEMP
  VisualStudio
```

Specimen.xml

(A:) Floppy
(C:) Disk 1 Part A (213 MB Available)
(D:) 4 x 9.1 Gb (6.75 GB Available)
(E:) Removable

Show files of type:

XML files (*.xml)
Comma separated files (*.csv)
Tab delimited files (*.txt)
All files (*.*)

< Back   Next >   Cancel

Select one of the four possibilities for dealing with records that are both in the XML file and in your database.

For the bottom three possibilities, you will also need to select how records in the database are compared with records in the XML file.

2

Press the **Next** button.

Import specimen - duplicate processing   ⊠

How do you want to handle specimen records which are in the import file
and also in the database?

- ◉ Import all specimen records, even if they already exist
- ○ Entirely replace the existing specimen with the new one
- ○ Leave the existing specimen alone, skip the new one
- ○ Merge the existing specimen with fields from the new one

When checking for duplicates, how should specimen records be compared?

- ◉ By specimen number
- ○ By botanical name

[< **B**ack]   [**N**ext >]   [Cancel]

3

Press the **Start** button to import the records.

Begin process   ⊠

Ready to process. Press the Start button to begin.

Reading C:\ImportExport\Specimen.xml
  1: Creating 550 Buddleia davidii 'Harlequin'
  2: Creating 549 Buddleia davidii 'White profusion'
  3: Creating 602 Buddleia x weyeriana 'Sungold'

Process terminated.

Press the Restart button to begin processing the files again. Press the Back button to change your
selections. Press the Finish button to return to the main window.

[< **B**ack]   [Start]   [Skip]

To begin the import process for Specimen, be sure your current view is one of the specimen views. From the File menu select the Import command.

1

Use the "Select data file" window to choose the comma separated file or the tab delimited file containing specimen records to be imported. See the files Specimen.csv and Specimen.txt for samples of valid delimited files.

For a complete list of column names and their validation rules see the documents referenced in the Alphabetical index to column specifications.

Press the **Next** button.

Import specimen - select data file

Please specify the name of the file to import

C:\ImportExport

Selected file:

Specimen.csv

- C:\
  - G98w
  - ImportExport
  - Inetpub
  - Office
  - PFE
  - Program Files
  - RECYCLER
  - Registry
  - System Volume Information
  - TEMP
  - VisualStudio

Specimen.csv

- (A:) Floppy
- (C:) Disk 1 Part A (213 MB Available)
- (D:) 4 x 9.1 Gb (6.75 GB Available)
- (E:) Removable

Show files of type:

XML files (*.xml)
Comma separated files (*.csv)
Tab delimited files (*.txt)
All files (*.*)

< Back   Next >   Cancel

2

Select one of the four possibilities for dealing with records that are both in the delimited file and in your database.
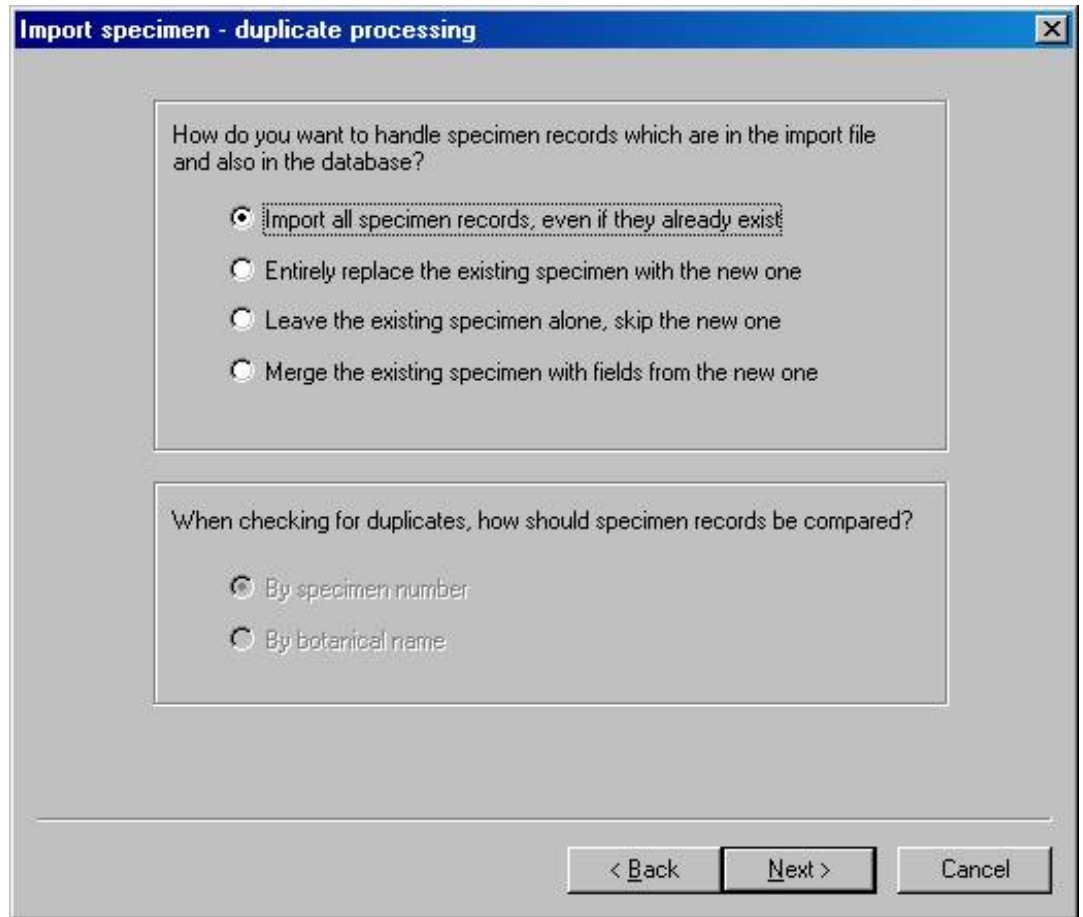
For the bottom three possibilities, you will also need to select how records in the database are compared with records in the delimited file.
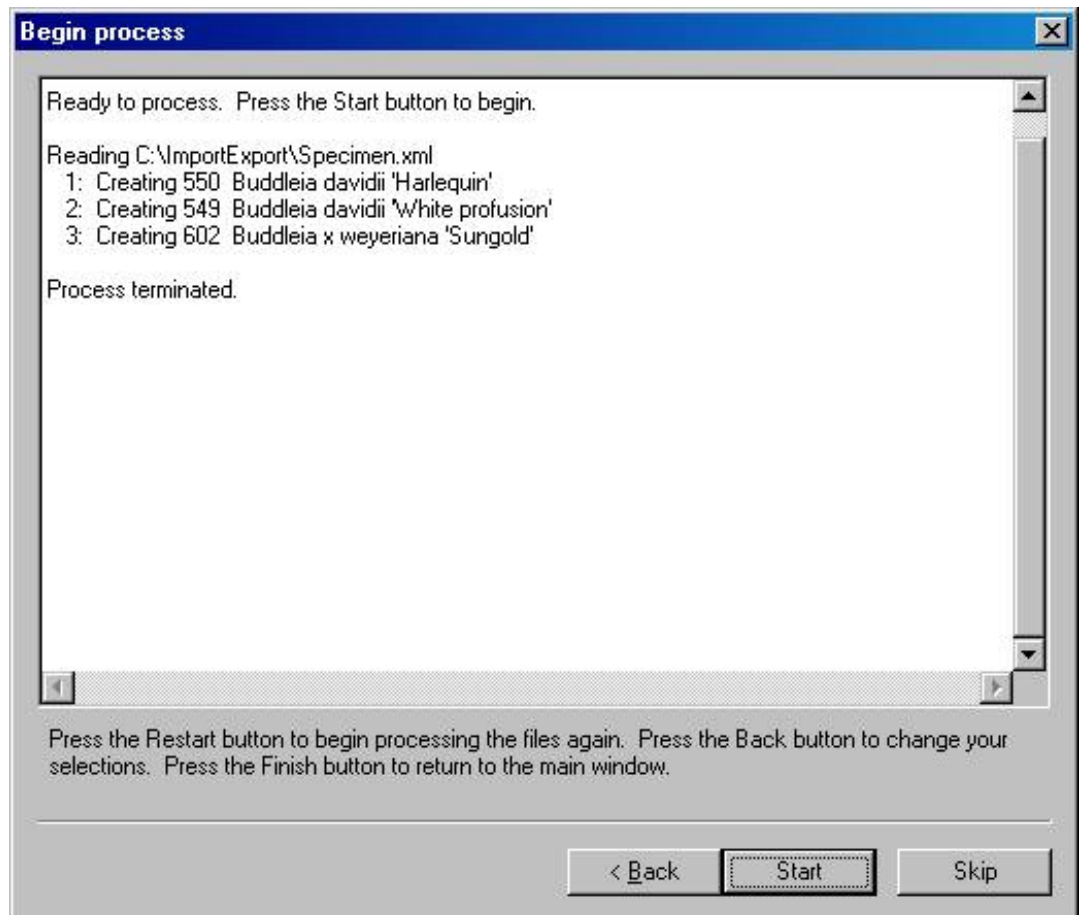
Press the **Next** button.

Import specimen - duplicate processing ✕

How do you want to handle specimen records which are in the import file and also in the database?

- ⦿ Import all specimen records, even if they already exist
- ○ Entirely replace the existing specimen with the new one
- ○ Leave the existing specimen alone, skip the new one
- ○ Merge the existing specimen with fields from the new one

When checking for duplicates, how should specimen records be compared?

- ⦿ By specimen number
- ○ By botanical name

< Back   Next >   Cancel

Press the **Start** button to import the records.

3

Import specimen - progress log ✕

```
Ready to process.  Press the Start button to begin.
 1:  Creating 565  Acer macrophyllum
 2:  Creating 519  Acer palmatum 'Oshio Beni'
 3:  Creating 603  Acer palmatum var. atropurpureum
 4:  Creating 635  Achillea tomentosa
 5:  Creating 506  Ajuga reptans
 6:  Creating 755  Alchemilla mollis
 7:  Creating 507  Alyogyne huegelii
 8:  Creating 750  Amaranthus tricolor 'Illumination'
 9:  Creating 505  Anemone hupehensis var. japonica
10:  Creating 761  Angelonia angustifolia

Process completed successfully.
```

Press the Restart button to begin processing the files again. Press the Back button to change your selections. Press the Finish button to return to the main window.

< Back   Restart   Finish

Importing category records is handy if you've created a collection of categories in one database and you want to copy them into a new database. To begin the import process for Categories, be sure your current view is the Category View. From the File menu select the Import command.

Use the "Select file" window to choose the XML file containing category records to be imported. See the file Category.xml for a sample of a valid XML file.
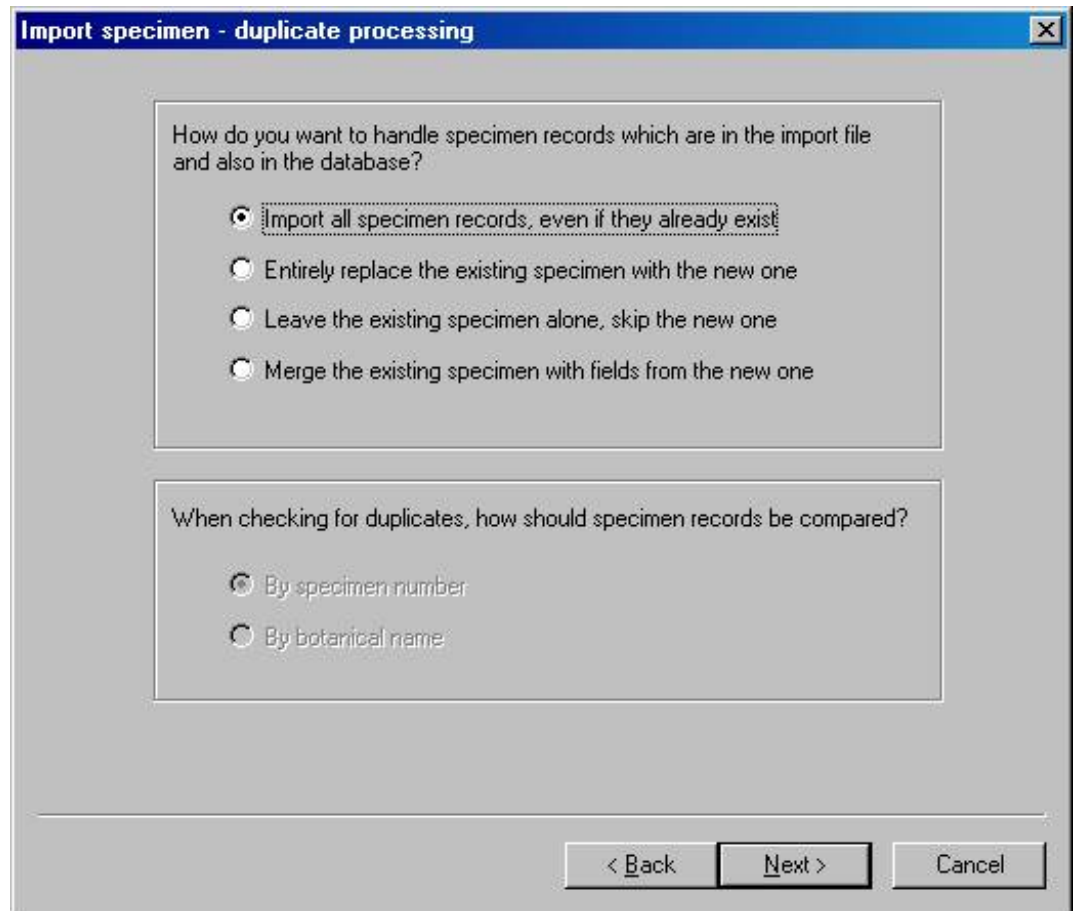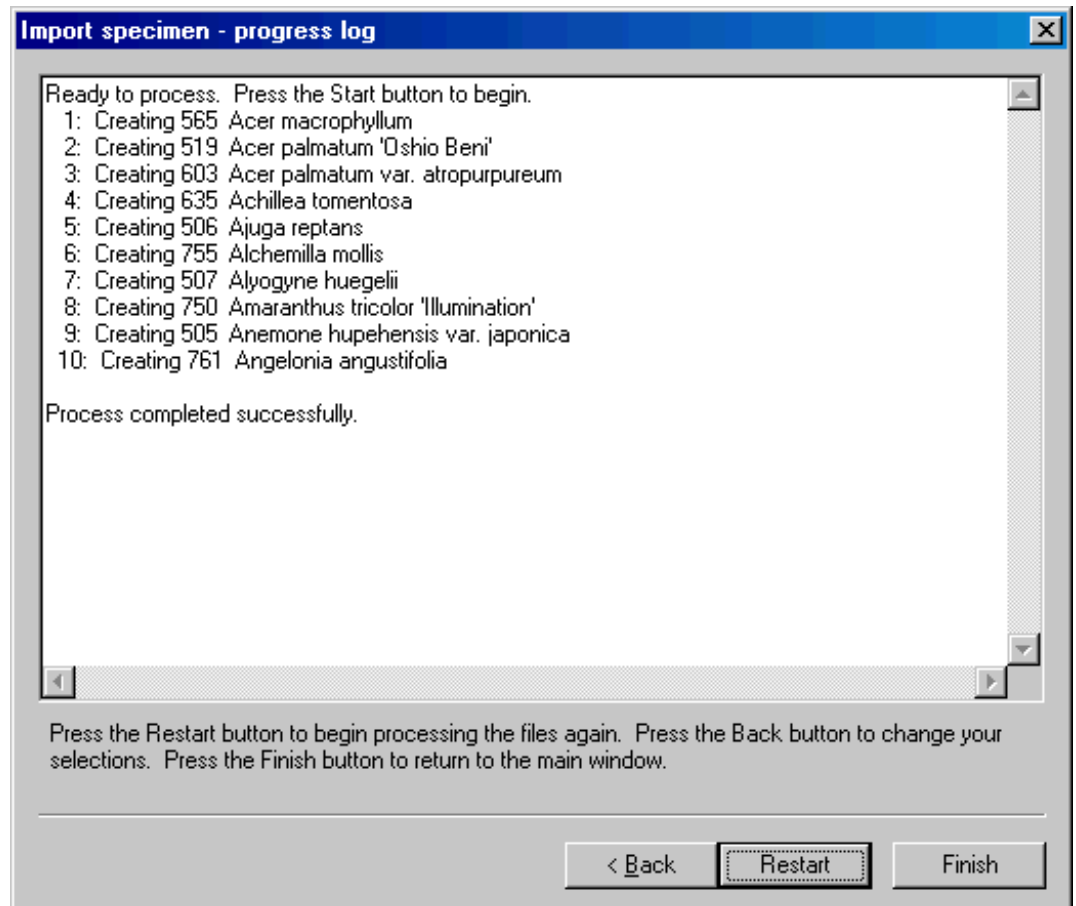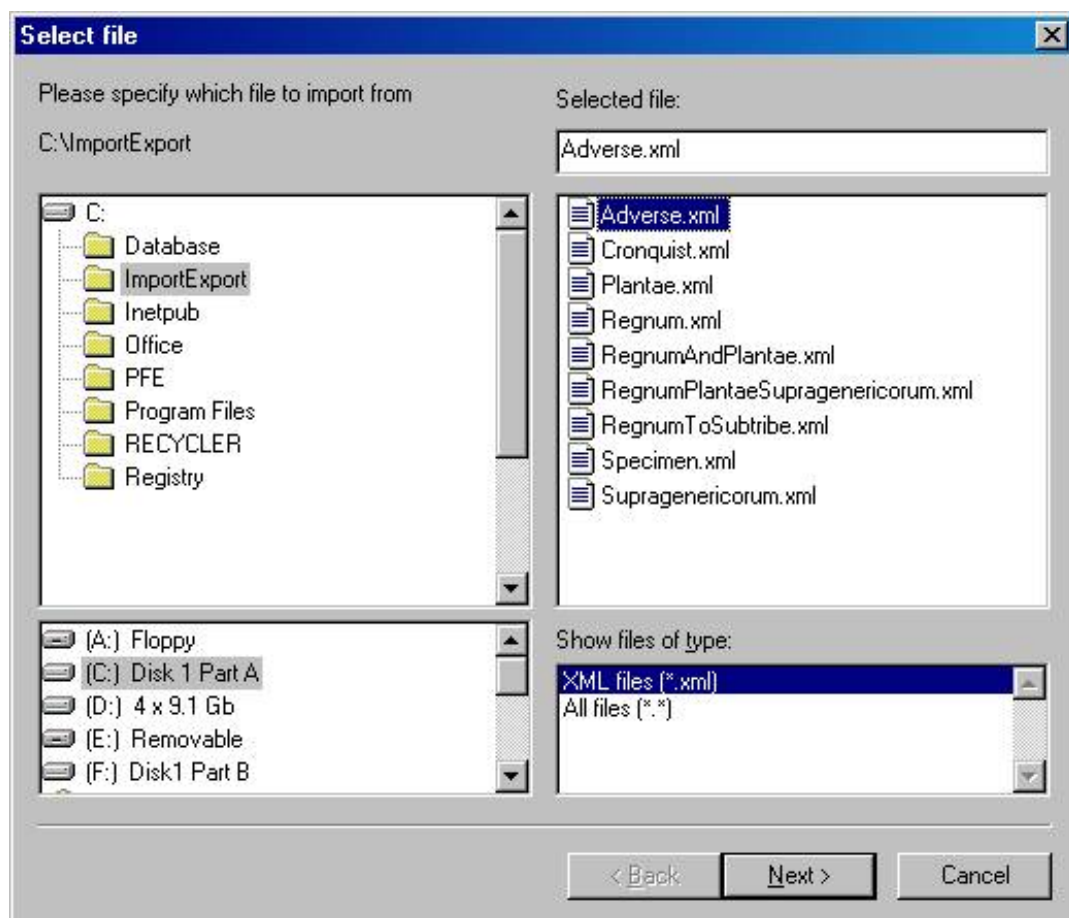
For a complete list of tagged values that can be used in the XML file see the document type definition contained in CompleatBotanicaSchema.xml.

1
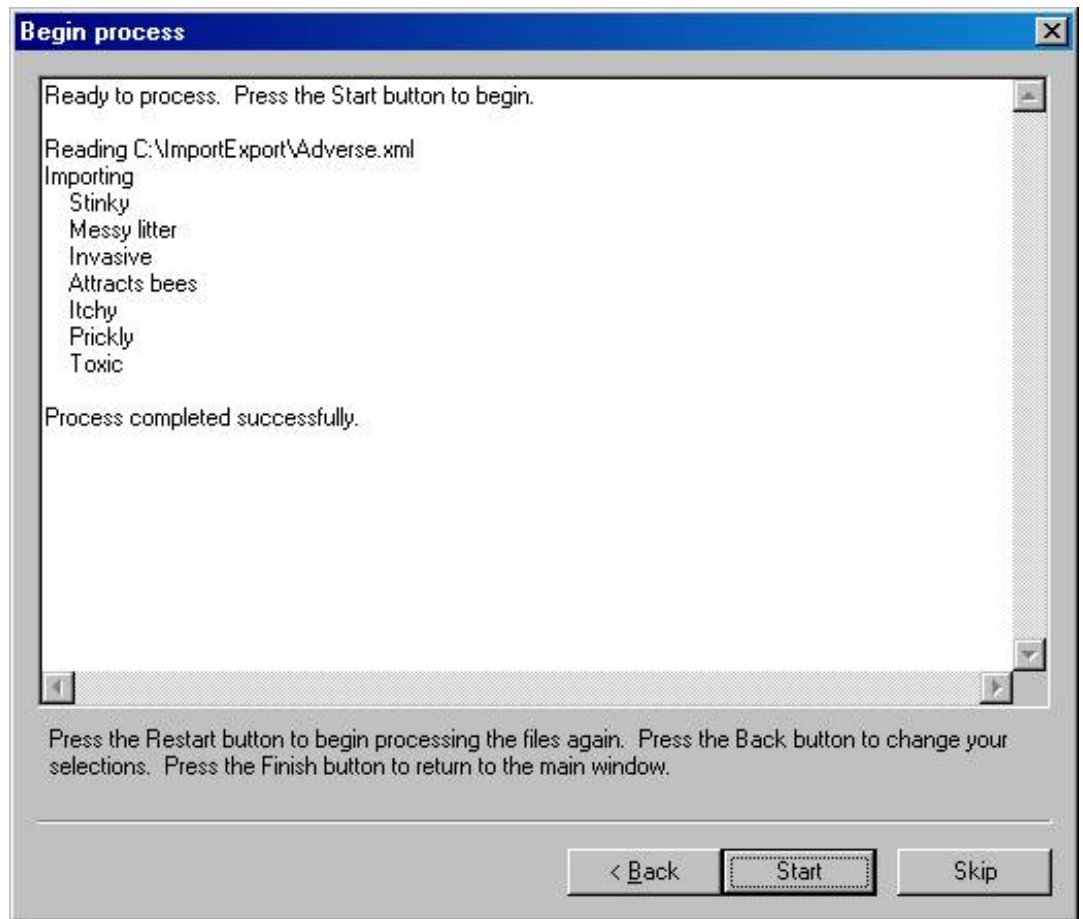
Select file   ✕

Please specify which file to import from   Selected file:

C:\ImportExport   Adverse.xml

� C: Adverse.xml
    Database   Cronquist.xml
    ImportExport   Plantae.xml
    Inetpub   Regnum.xml
    Office   RegnumAndPlantae.xml
    PFE   RegnumPlantaeSupragenericorum.xml
    Program Files   RegnumToSubtribe.xml
    RECYCLER   Specimen.xml
    Registry   Supragenericorum.xml

(A:) Floppy   Show files of type:
(C:) Disk 1 Part A   XML files (*.xml)
(D:) 4 x 9.1 Gb   All files (*.*)
(E:) Removable
(F:) Disk1 Part B

                                    < Back   Next >   Cancel

Press the **Next** button.

2

Press the **Start** button to import the records.
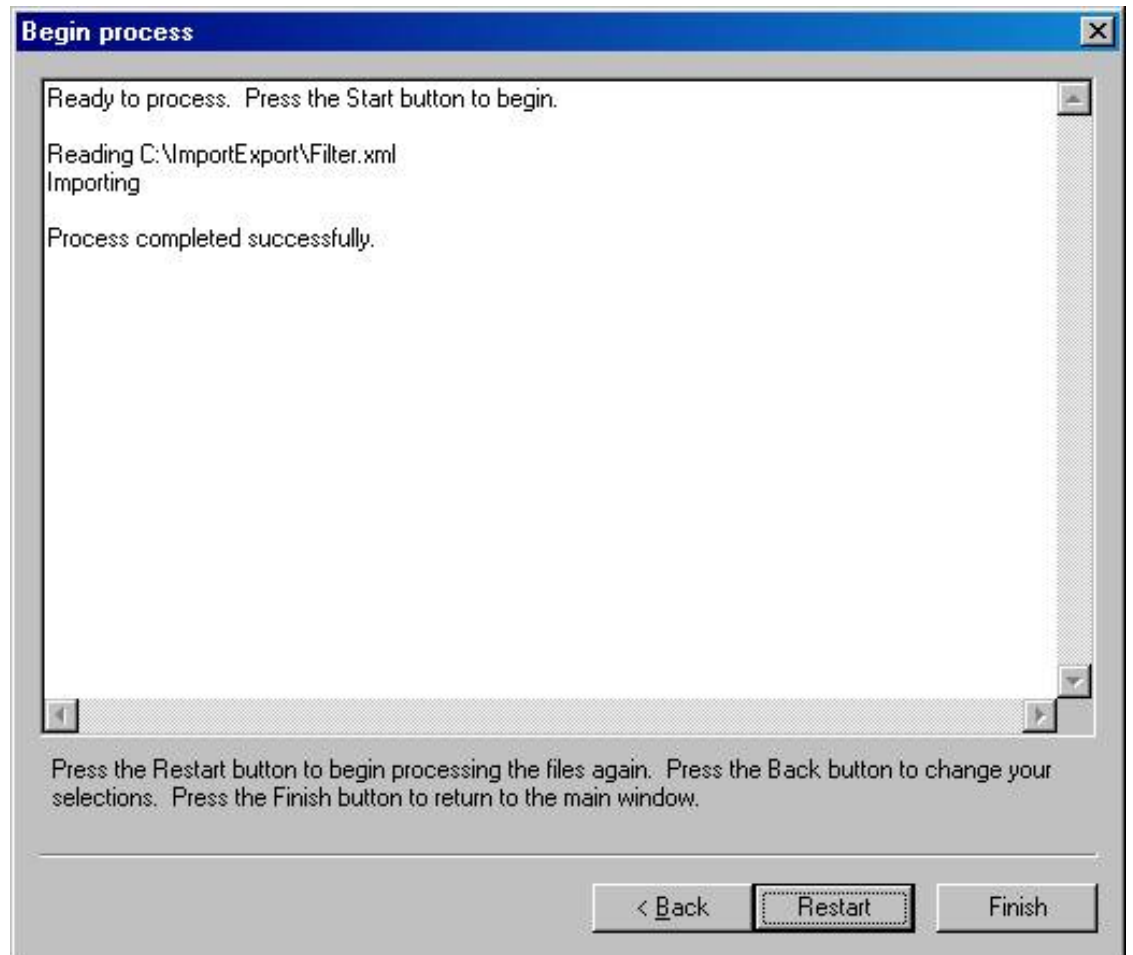
```
Begin process                                                    ☒

Ready to process.  Press the Start button to begin.

Reading C:\ImportExport\Adverse.xml
Importing
    Stinky
    Messy litter
    Invasive
    Attracts bees
    Itchy
    Prickly
    Toxic

Process completed successfully.



Press the Restart button to begin processing the files again.  Press the Back button to change your
selections.  Press the Finish button to return to the main window.

                                      < Back        Start          Skip
```

Unlike the Import Specimen operation, the Import Category operation always deals with duplicates the same way. Categories in the database and in the XML file are matched by **category code**. If they are the same, the values in the XML file are merged with the values in the database. On the other hand, if the XML file contains a category that does not exist in the database, it is added.

You may want to import a filter from another computer rather than re-entering it manually. To begin the import process for filters, be sure your current view is the Filter View.
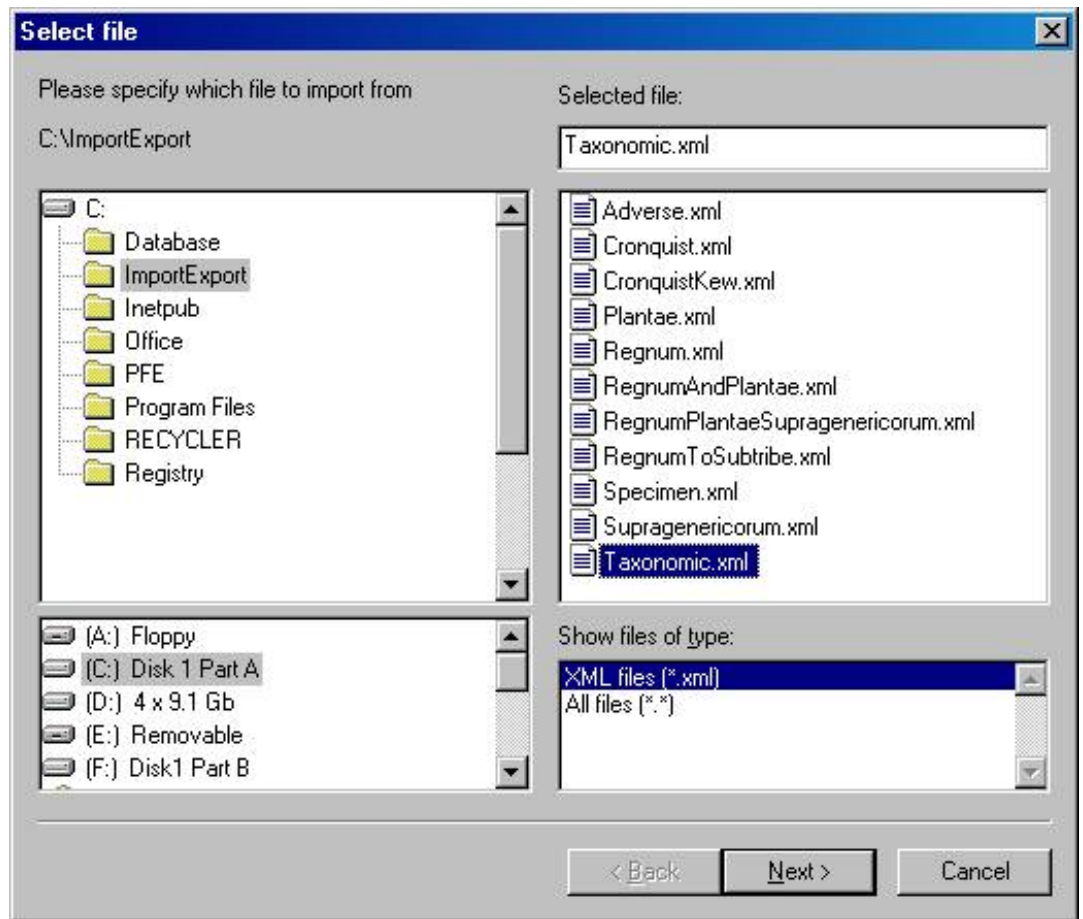
Use the "Select file" window to choose the XML file containing filter to be imported. See the file Filter.xml for a sample of a valid XML file.
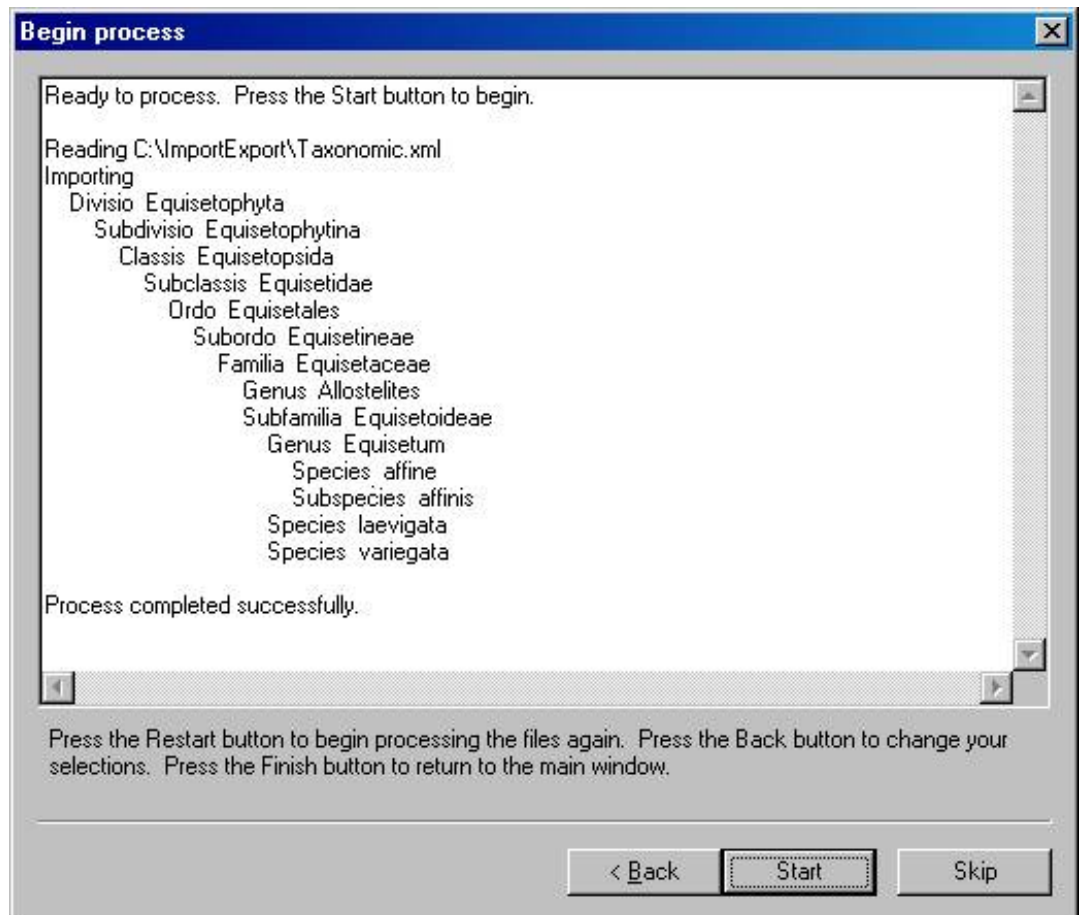
1

Press the **Next** button.
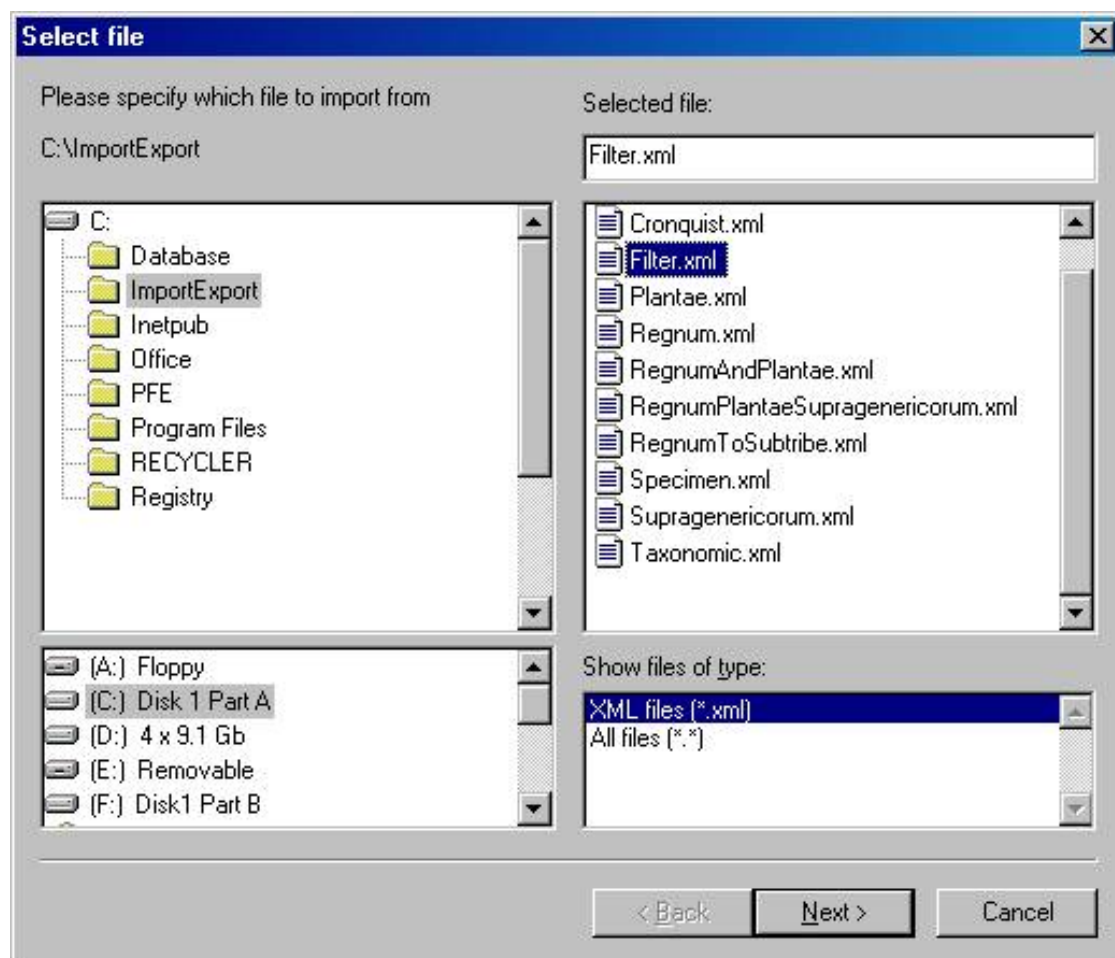
Press the **Start** button to import

the records.

2

Begin process

Ready to process. Press the Start button to begin.

Reading C:\ImportExport\Filter.xml
Importing

Process completed successfully.

Press the Restart button to begin processing the files again. Press the Back button to change your selections. Press the Finish button to return to the main window.

< Back   Restart   Finish

Compleat Botanica - Importing Taxonomic records

Importing taxonomic records is an advanced feature for those whose want to use a different family / order / class hierarchy system. The system employed by The Compleat Botanica is somewhat different from the recognized systems of Cronquist, Walters & Keil, or others. For more about this see All about family names.

To begin the import process for taxonomic records, be sure your current view is the Checklist View.

1

Before starting, select the record in the taxonomic hierarchy that will become the parent of the imported records.

After selecting the parent record, begin the import process by choosing the Import command from the File menu.

2
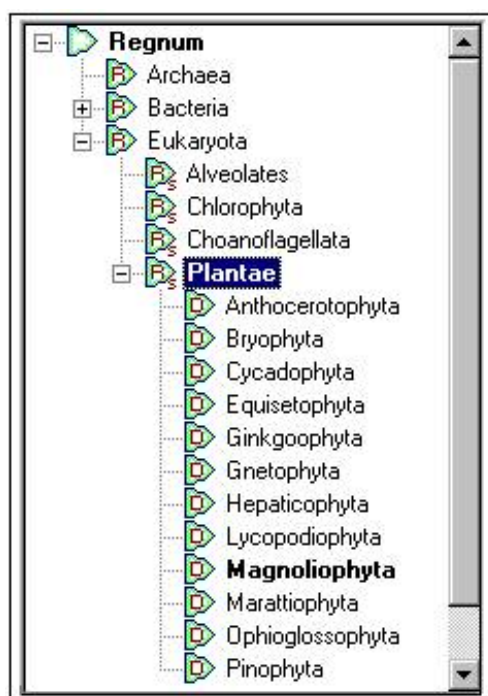
Use the "Select file" window to choose the XML file containing taxonomic records to be imported. See the file Taxonomic.xml for a sample of a valid XML file.

For a complete list of tagged values that can be used in the XML file see the document type definition contained in CompleatBotanicaSchema.xml.

Press the **Next** button.

Select file

Please specify which file to import from

C:\ImportExport

Selected file:

Taxonomic.xml

- C:
  - Database
  - ImportExport
  - Inetpub
  - Office
  - PFE
  - Program Files
  - RECYCLER
  - Registry

- Adverse.xml
- Cronquist.xml
- CronquistKew.xml
- Plantae.xml
- Regnum.xml
- RegnumAndPlantae.xml
- RegnumPlantaeSupragenericorum.xml
- RegnumToSubtribe.xml
- Specimen.xml
- Supragenericorum.xml
- Taxonomic.xml

- (A:) Floppy
- (C:) Disk 1 Part A
- (D:) 4 x 9.1 Gb
- (E:) Removable
- (F:) Disk1 Part B

Show files of type:

XML files (*.xml)
All files (*.*)

< Back   Next >   Cancel

Press the **Start** button to import the records.

3

Begin process

Ready to process. Press the Start button to begin.

Reading C:\ImportExport\Taxonomic.xml
Importing
  Divisio Equisetophyta
    Subdivisio Equisetophytina
      Classis Equisetopsida
        Subclassis Equisetidae
          Ordo Equisetales
            Subordo Equisetineae
              Familia Equisetaceae
                Genus Allostelites
                Subfamilia Equisetoideae
                  Genus Equisetum
                    Species affine
                      Subspecies affinis
                  Species laevigata
                  Species variegata

Process completed successfully.

Press the Restart button to begin processing the files again. Press the Back button to change your selections. Press the Finish button to return to the main window.

< Back   Start   Skip

No checking is done for duplicate records; thus everything in the XML file is guaranteed to be imported. If you need to merge selected data into existing taxonomic records, you should first export the hierarchy, then make your changes to the XML file, and finally import the modified XML file.

Compleat Botanica - Exporting data to other applications

Index to exporting topics

	Exporting Specimen records	Instructions for exporting specimen records from The Compleat Botanica.
	Exporting Category records	Instructions for exporting category records from The Compleat Botanica.
	Exporting Taxonomic records	Instructions for exporting taxonomic records to make large scale changes to the hierarchy.
	Exporting Filters	You may want to export a filter so that it can be used on another computer, or as a preparatory step to upgrading your software.

To export specimen records be sure your current view is one of the specimen record views. Select which filter you want to apply to your data before you begin the export process.

If you only want to export some of the records in the current filter, select them (using the <Ctrl> key and the mouse) before starting the export process.

1
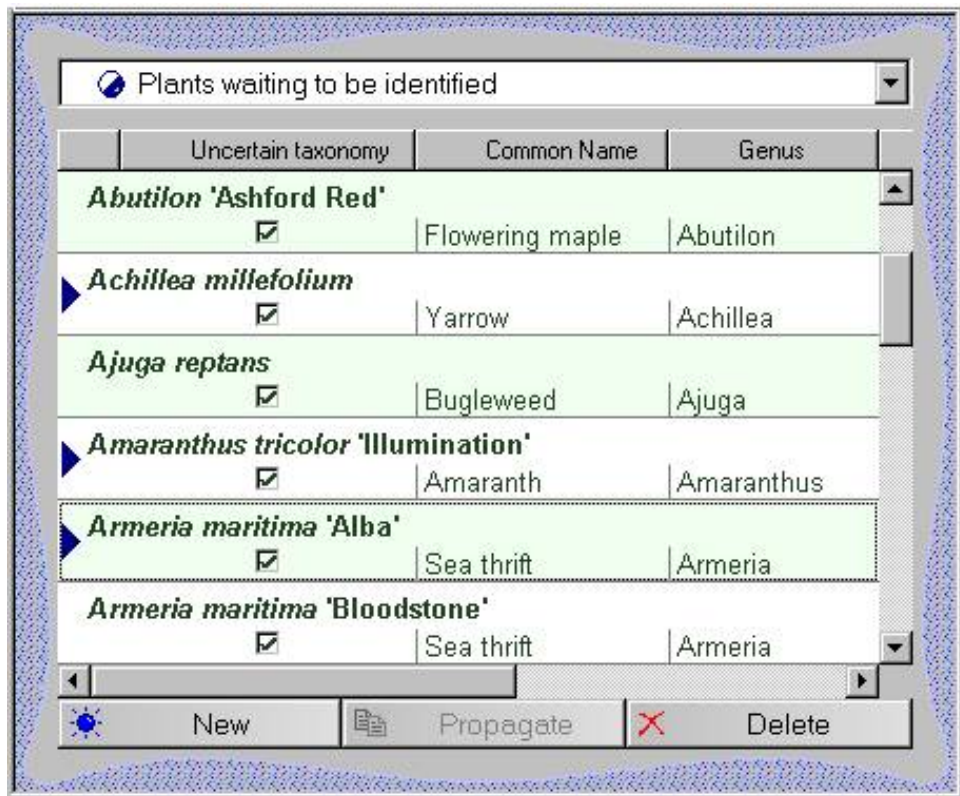
Use the "Select file" window to enter the filename where you want the exported records to be placed.

Press the **Next** button.

2

Select file

Please specify which file to import from

C:\ImportExport

Selected file:

Plants waiting to be identified.xml

- C:
  - Database
  - **ImportExport**
  - Inetpub
  - Office
  - PFE
  - Program Files
  - RECYCLER
  - Registry

- Plantae.xml
- Regnum.xml
- RegnumAndPlantae.xml
- RegnumPlantaeSupragenericorum.xml
- RegnumToSubtribe.xml
- Specimen.xml
- Supragenericorum.xml
- Taxonomic.xml

- (A:) Floppy
- (C:) Disk 1 Part A
- (D:) 4 x 9.1 Gb
- (E:) Removable
- (F:) Disk1 Part B

Show files of type:

XML files (*.xml)
All files (*.*)

< Back   Next >   Cancel

Answer two questions on this window:

1. Do you want to export all records of the current filter or just the ones selected (as shown in the first step above)?

3

2. Do you want to export the columns as specified in the current filter, or all columns in the database?

Export specimen - which rows and columns

Choose which specimen to export

- ⦿ Export all specimen of the current filter
- ○ Export the selected specimen only

Choose which columns to export

- ⦿ Export all columns of the specimen
- ○ Export only columns shown in the current filter

< Back   Next >   Cancel

Press the **Start** button to export the records.

4

Begin process

Ready to process. Press the Start button to begin.
  1: Exporting 531 Achillea millefolium
  2: Exporting 750 Amaranthus tricolor 'Illumination'
  3: Exporting 614 Armeria maritima 'Alba'

Writing C:\ImportExport\Plants waiting to be identified.xml

Process completed successfully.

Press the Restart button to begin processing the files again. Press the Back button to change your selections. Press the Finish button to return to the main window.

< Back   Restart   Finish

Exporting category records is most useful in conjunction with its twin, "importing category records". You'll want to use this pair of functions when moving data from one computer to another. To begin the export process for categories, be sure your current view is the Category View. From the File menu select the Export command.

First select which group of category records you want to export.

Select the root of the hierarchy to export all categories.

1
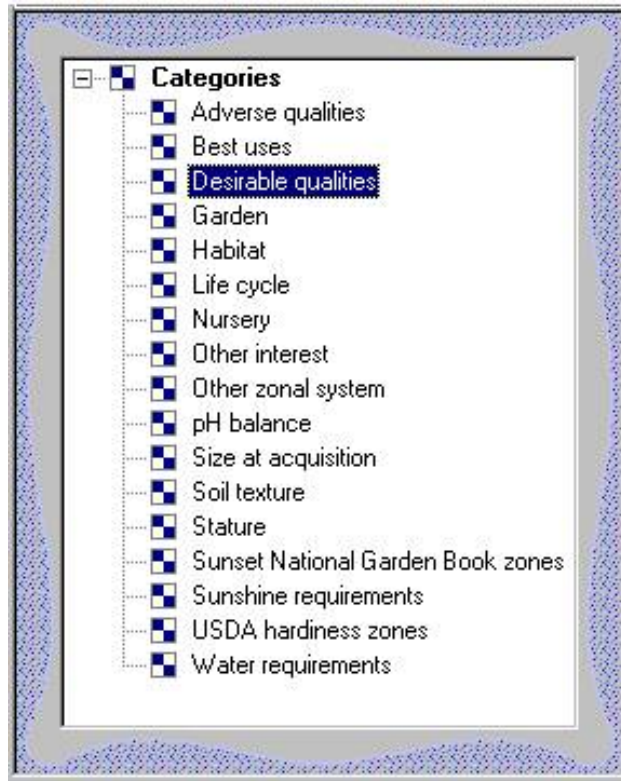
Use the "Select file" window to type in the name of the file where you want to put the category records. All output files are in XML format.

Press the **Next** button.

2

Select file

Please specify which file to import from

C:\ImportExport

Selected file:

Category.xml

- C:
  - Database
  - ImportExport
  - Inetpub
  - Office
  - PFE
  - Program Files
  - RECYCLER
  - Registry

- Plantae.xml
- Regnum.xml
- RegnumAndPlantae.xml
- RegnumPlantaeSupragenericorum.xml
- RegnumToSubtribe.xml
- Specimen.xml
- Supragenericorum.xml
- Taxonomic.xml

- (A:) Floppy
- (C:) Disk 1 Part A
- (D:) 4 x 9.1 Gb
- (E:) Removable
- (F:) Disk1 Part B

Show files of type:

XML files (*.xml)
All files (*.*)

< Back   Next >   Cancel

Press the **Start** button to Export the records.

3

Begin process

Ready to process. Press the Start button to begin.
Exporting
Desirable qualities
  Fragrant
  Attracts hummingbirds
  Attracts butterflies
  Deer resistant
  Zeriscaping
  Tolerates damp
  Shade tolerant
  Tolerates wind
  Oceanside/tolerates salt
  Colorful berries and fruits
  Attractive winter bark
  Autumn foliage

Writing C:\ImportExport\Category.xml

Process completed successfully.

Press the Restart button to begin processing the files again. Press the Back button to change your selections. Press the Finish button to return to the main window.

[< Back]   [Restart]   [Finish]

Compleat Botanica - Exporting Taxonomic records

Exporting taxonomic records is useful if you want to make large-scale changes to the family / order / class hierarchy system. If this is what you need to do you can export all or part of the Checklist to an XML file. After exporting you can use a file editor to make global changes to the individual records. Finally, you can use the import command to bring the changed records back into the database.

To begin the Export process for taxonomic records, be sure your current view is the Checklist View.

Before starting, select the highest record in the taxonomic hierarchy that you want to export.

After selecting the highest record, begin the Export process by choosing the Export command from the File menu.
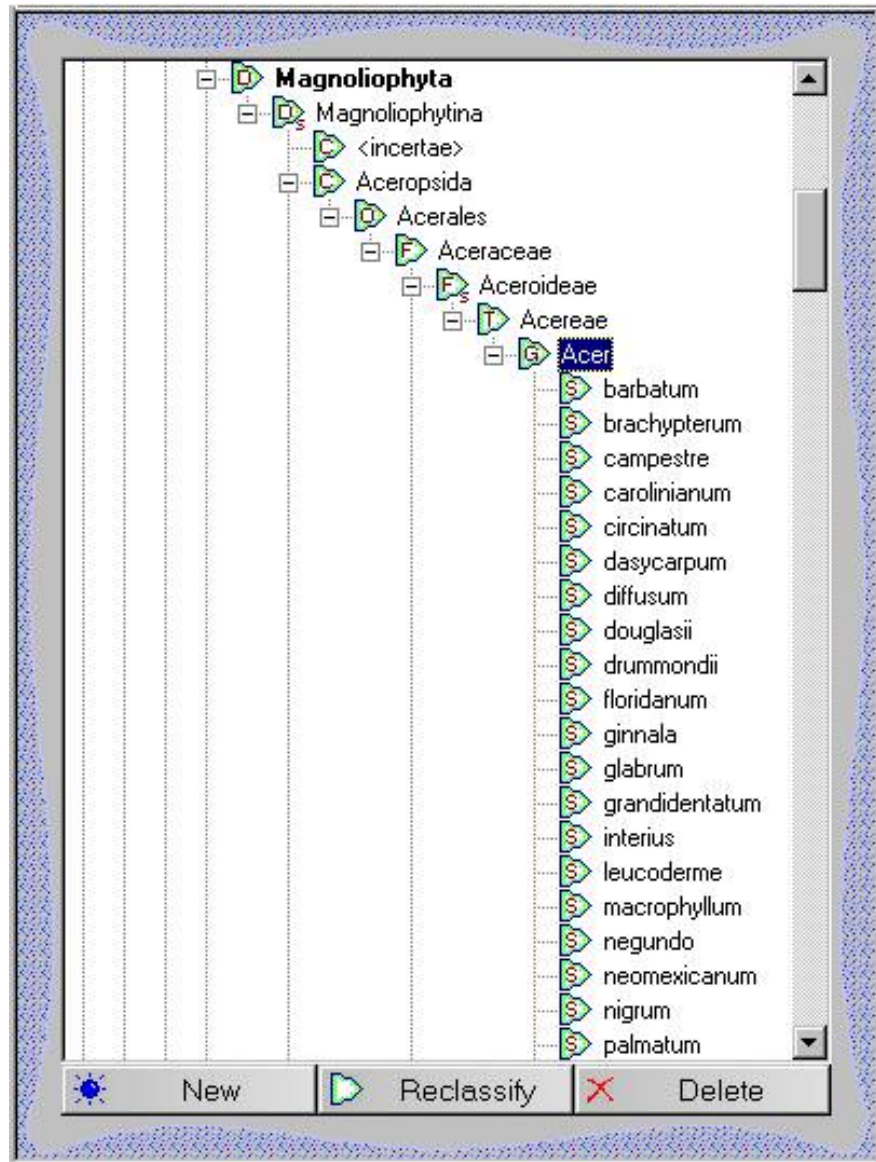
Use the "Select file" window to specify the name of the file to be used for the exported records.

Press the **Next** button.

Select file ✕

Please specify which file to import from

C:\ImportExport

Selected file:

Taxonomic.xml

C:
    Database
    ImportExport
    Inetpub
    Office
    PFE
    Program Files
    RECYCLER
    Registry

Plantae.xml
Regnum.xml
RegnumAndPlantae.xml
RegnumPlantaeSupragenericorum.xml
RegnumToSubtribe.xml
Specimen.xml
Supragenericorum.xml

(A:) Floppy
(C:) Disk 1 Part A
(D:) 4 x 9.1 Gb
(E:) Removable
(F:) Disk1 Part B

Show files of type:

XML files (*.xml)
All files (*.*)

< Back   Next >   Cancel

Decide whether you want to export a single record or the entire hierarchy of subordinate taxa.

Press the **Next** button.

Export taxa - options

Choose which taxa to export

- ⦿ Export the selected taxa and all its subordinate taxa records
- ○ Export only the selected taxa record

< Back   Next >   Cancel

Press the **Start** button to Export the records.

4

Begin process

```
Ready to process.  Press the Start button to begin.
Exporting
Genus  Acer
  Species  barbatum
    Varietas  longii
    Varietas  villipes
  Species  brachypterum
  Species  campestre
  Species  carolinianum
  Species  circinatum
  Species  dasycarpum
  Species  diffusum
  Species  douglasii
  Species  drummondii
  Species  floridanum
    Varietas  longii
    Varietas  villipes
  Species  ginnala
  Species  glabrum
    Subspecies  diffusum
    Varietas  diffusum
```

Press the Restart button to begin processing the files again. Press the Back button to change your selections. Press the Finish button to return to the main window.

< Back   Restart   Finish

You may want to export a filter so that it can be used on another computer, or as a preparatory step to upgrading your software. To begin the Export process for filters, be sure your current view is the Filter View.

Use the "Select file" window to specify the name of the file to use for the exported filter. This file will be in XML format.

Note that this XML file cannot be used directly from within the "Filters" subdirectory, you must use the Import command to bring it into the new computer.

Press the **Next** button.

1
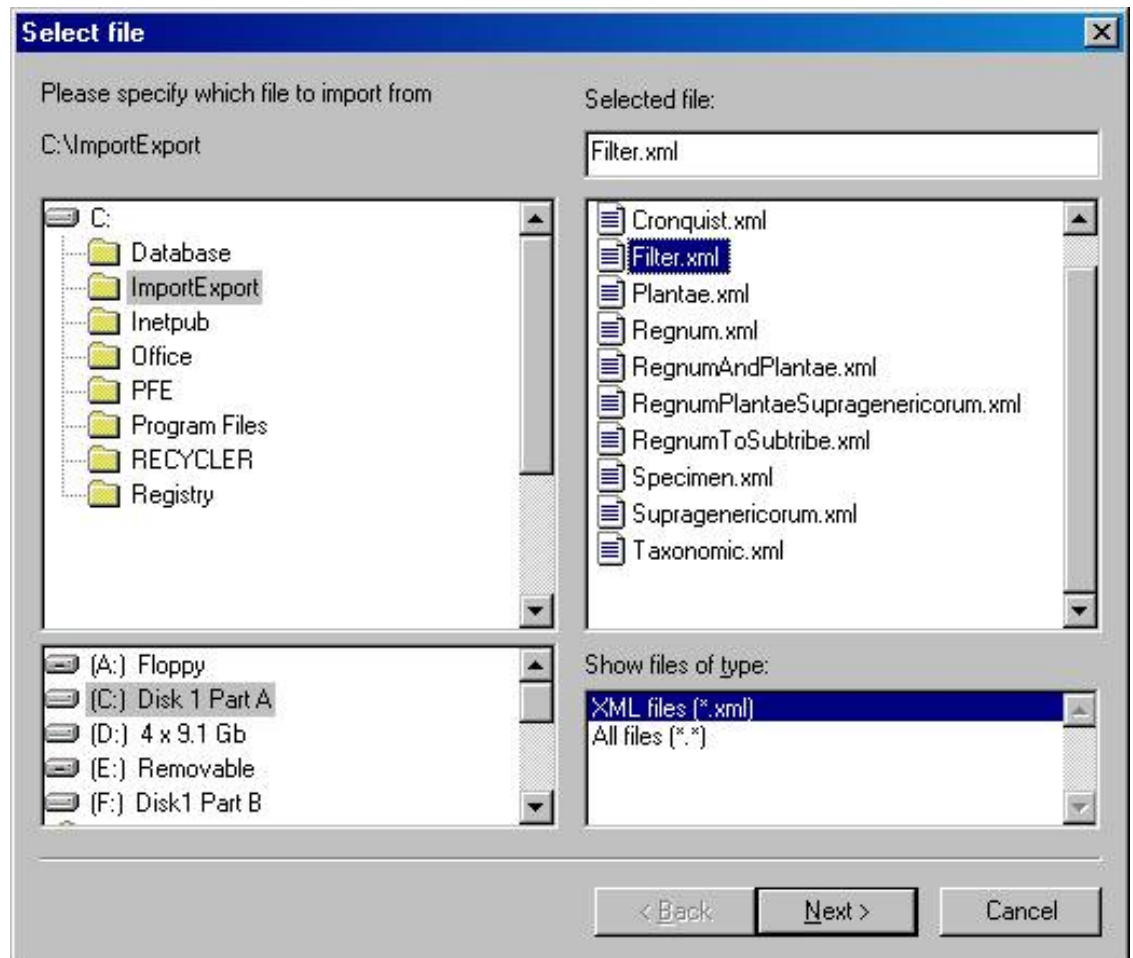
Press the **Start** button to Export

the filter.

2

Begin process   ✕

Ready to process. Press the Start button to begin.
Exporting Specimen

Writing C:\ImportExport\Filter.xml

Process completed successfully.

Press the Restart button to begin processing the files again. Press the Back button to change your selections. Press the Finish button to return to the main window.

< Back   Restart   Finish
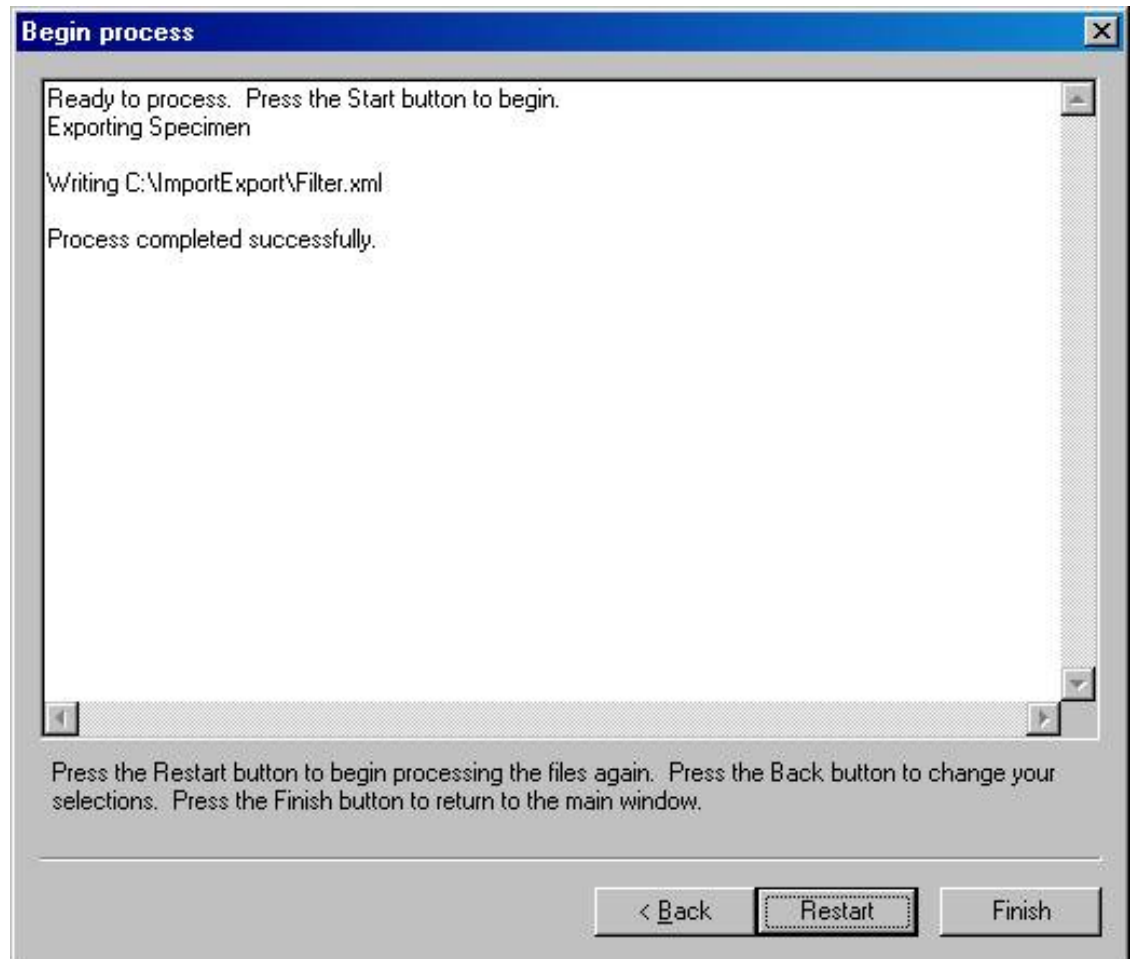
Compleat Botanica - Data validation and import/export rules
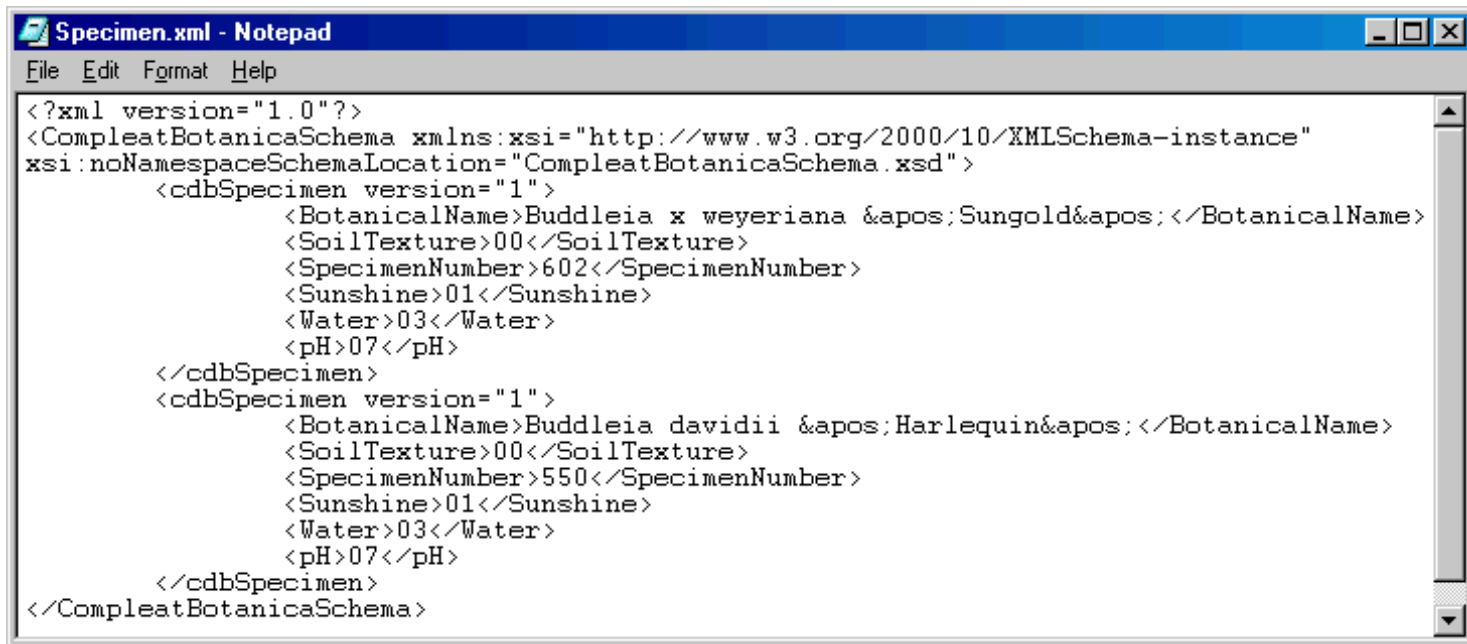
Index to validation topics

XML viewers	The Import and Export commands use XML files to transfer data into and out of The Compleat Botanica.

Compleat Botanica - XML viewers

The Import and Export commands use XML files to transfer data into and out of The Compleat Botanica. Although most newer applications can use this file format directly, there may be times when you'll want to edit XML files yourself. This can be done using any simple editor like Notepad. Here's what an XML file looks like when viewed with Notepad.

For a more sophisticated tool you may want to get a special XML editor. One such tool is Microsoft's XML Notepad. Here's what it looks like when the Compleat Botanica file Specimen.xml is opened.

Specimen.xml - XML Notepad

File Edit View Insert Tools Help

Structure	Values
CompleatBotanicaSchema	
xmlns:xsi	http://www.w3.org/2000/10/XMLSc...
xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation	CompleatBotanicaSchema.xsd
cdbSpecimen	
version	1
BotanicalName	Buddleia x weyeriana 'Sungold'
SoilTexture	00
SpecimenNumber	602
Sunshine	01
Water	03
pH	07
cdbSpecimen	
version	1
BotanicalName	Buddleia davidii 'Harlequin'
SoilTexture	00
SpecimenNumber	550
Sunshine	01
Water	03
pH	07

For Help, press F1

Compleat Botanica - Publishing your data

Index to publishing topics

Step-by-step guide to publishing	Before you begin the publishing process, be sure to select the filter that you want to apply to your data. The selected filter will be used by the publish process to select which records to include.
The publish previewer	As you go through the step-by-step publishing process you can see what your finished publication will look like by using the Publish Preview feature.
How the publishing parser works	The step-by-step publishing process is all you need to know in order to produce great looking labels, abstracts, Web pages, pre-press books, and more.
Publication style sheets	Each published document references three style sheets: cbs-colorscheme.css, cbs-fontface.css, and cbs-pointsize.css.
Publication template replacement tags	Replacement tags inside publishing templates take the form <cb: TagName>.

Compleat Botanica - **Step-by-step guide to publishing**

Step 1: Select a filter

Before you begin the publishing process, be sure to select the filter that you want to apply to your data. (See All about filters). The selected filter will be used by the publish process to select which records to include. Many of the templates also make use of the selected filter to decide which columns to publish. For example, all of the publishing templates described as "Columns of the current filter", will publish only the columns of specimen data which are part of the selected filter.

Step 2: The publish command
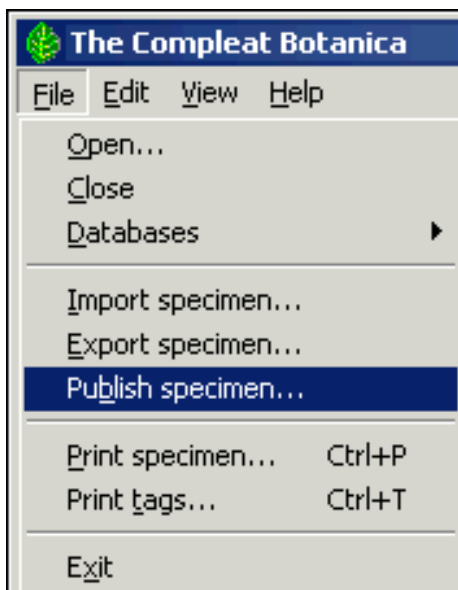
From the File menu, select the **Publish specimen** command. Note that this menu item is only available when one of the Specimen Views is active.

Step 3: Choose the publishing mode

There are two basic types of documents that can be created using the publish tool: detailed pages and summary pages. Both can use any of the specimen data fields, and both use any combination of style sheets to produce sophisticated layouts with colors, fonts, and graphics. Detailed pages contain the data for exactly one specimen record, whereas summary pages contain the data for all specimen.

Detailed pages are useful for creating nursery placards, web pages, and book layouts. Summary pages are useful for creating indexes, table of contents, photo proof sheets, labels, and abstracts.

Choose which publishing mode to use

○ Publish one detailed page per specimen record

○ Publish a single page summarizing all specimen

● Publish both detailed pages and a summary table with hyperlinks between the two

When choosing which publishing mode to use, remember that the summary page mode will produce exactly one document, while the detailed page mode will produce multiple documents.

If you want to produce an index or table of contents together with hyperlinks to more detailed pages, choose the third publishing mode.

Step 4: Choose which specimen to publish

Choose which specimen to publish

● Publish all specimen of the current filter

○ Publish the selected specimen only

If you want to publish only a few of your specimen records, you can use the multiple-selection feature of the Specimen List together with the "Publish the selected specimen only" option. This is also useful when you simply want to print or publish a single specimen record.

Typically though, you'll want to "Publish all specimen of the current filter". Remember to select the proper filter before you begin the publish process.

Step 5: Choose styles to use

Four different types of styling can be applied to your published documents: color schemes, font styles, font sizes, and logos.

Color scheme

- ▶ Apple barrel
- Ashes of roses
- Christmas wreath
- Key lime pie
- Lemon chiffon
- Little boy blue
- Monochrome

The color scheme applies a combination of two or three basic colors to your published document. Each scheme sets the font colors, background colors for tables, and line-break colors.

Font style

- Az Paper hand sketch
- Az Paper impact
- Az Paper sans serif
- Az Paper serif
- Az Typewriter
- Az Web classic
- ▶ Az Web hand sketch
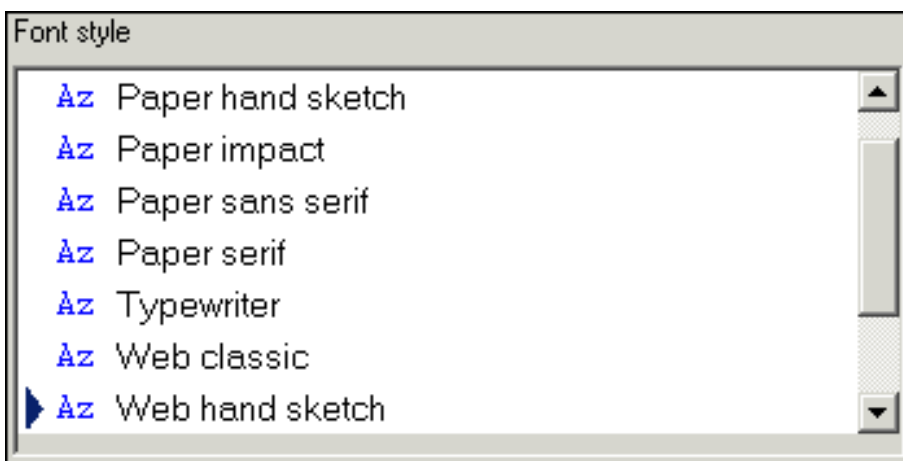
The font style defines which combination of fonts will be applied to your documents. Some styles apply the same font throughout. Some apply one font for labels and another for data values. Others set specific fonts for titles.

When publishing to the Web, it's best to use the Web compatible font styles. When your publishing results are intended to be printed it's better to use the "Paper" styles.

Font size

- 06 points
- 07 points
- 08 points
- 09 points
- 10 points
- 11 points
- ▶ 12 points
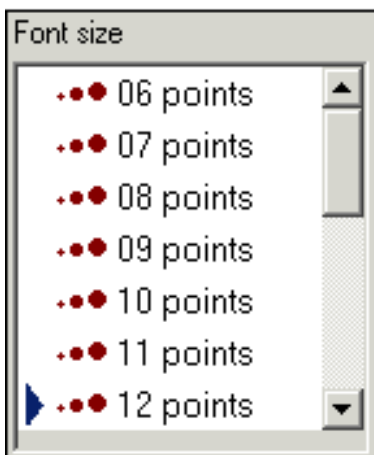
Choose any available font size. Note that most of your document will use this font size but some will be slightly larger (titles) or smaller (footers).

Choose any of the pre-supplied logos. To add you own logo to this list, simply copy a GIF format picture file to the directory `"C:/Program Files/ CompleatBotanica/Programs/Publish Templates/Style Sheets/ Logos"` and it will appear in this list.

To see a sample of your selected styles, press the Show Sample button. You can keep this publish preview window open as you proceed through the remaining steps of the publish process.
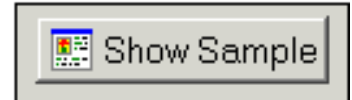
Step 6: Choose summary table template

Note: The "Choose summary table template" step is not shown if you picked "Publish one detailed page per specimen record" in step 3.
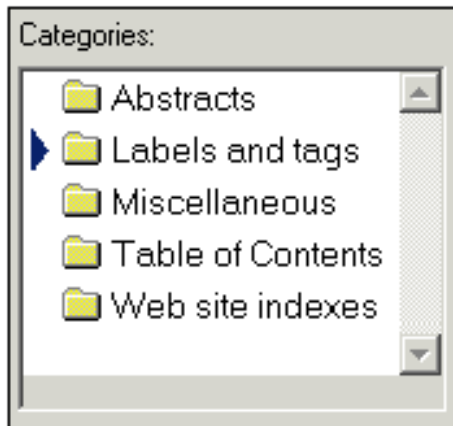
There are several categories of summary table templates. Select a category on the left hand side to see the associated templates on the right-hand side.

When publishing to the Web, be sure to use a summary table template that has hyperlinks, since those templates are specifically customized for creating links to the detailed documents. See the templates under "Table of Contents" and "Web site indexes".
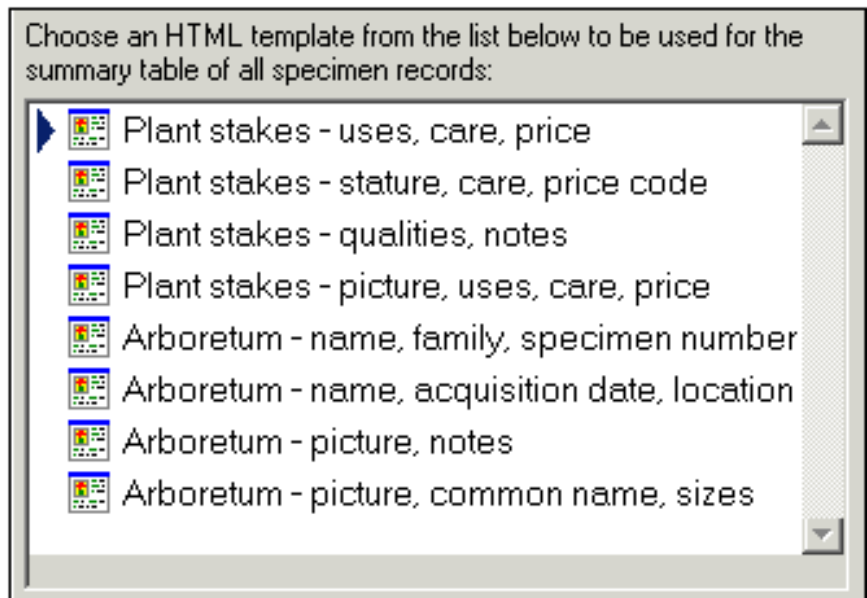
Step 7: Choose detailed page template

Note: The "Choose detailed page template" step is not shown if you picked "Publish a single page summarizing all specimen" in step 3.
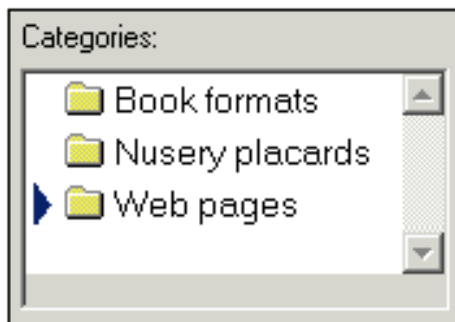
There are several categories of detailed page templates. Select a category on the left hand side to see the associated templates on the right-hand side.

When publishing to the Web, be sure to use one of the custom tailored templates that have hyperlinks for navigating to the previous and next pages (look under "Web pages").
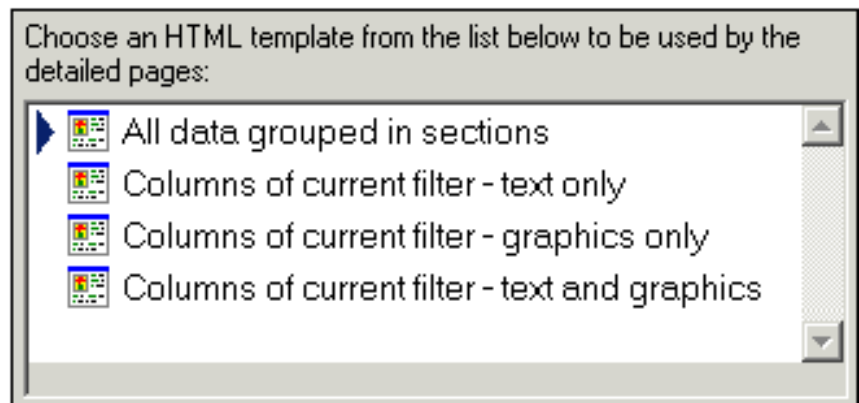
Step 8: Select output directory

Selected Directory:

C:\Program Files\Compleat Botanica\Publish

```
        📁 Compleat Botanica
           📁 Backup
           📁 Data
           📁 DesktopEngine
           📁 ExportImport
           📁 Folder Settings
           📁 Images
           📁 Programs
           📁 Publish
           📁 Setup
```

```
💾 (C:) Disk 1 Part A (214 MB Available)
💾 (D:) 4 x 9.1 Gb (4.24 GB Available)
💾 (E:) Removable
```
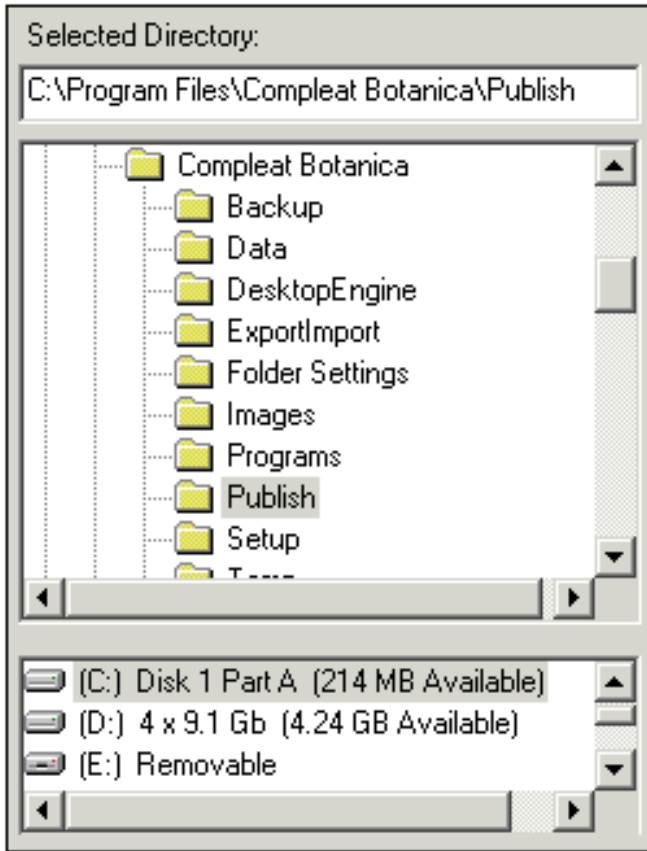
Choose where you want the newly-created documents to be placed. If the selected directory already has documents from a previous publication process, you can choose whether to overwrite them or not.

Document files are given a filename corresponding to their "Specimen number". Thus a detailed page for specimen number "S101" would be published in the document "S101.htm" and any pictures and bitmaps would be copied to the sub-directory "S101_files".

The document name for the summary table of all specimen is always "index.htm"
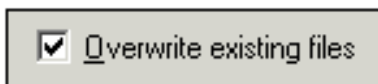
If you choose to overwrite existing documents from a previous publication process, the standard document names will be re-used (see above).

If you choose not to overwrite existing documents, the newly-created documents will be given artificial names like "1.htm", "2.htm", etc.

☑ Overwrite existing files

Step 9: Start the process

| < Back | Start | Skip |

Simply press the start button to begin.

```
Publish - begin process                          ☒

Ready to process.  Press the Start button to begin.
Preparing to publish ...
   1:  Publishing 839  Wisteria floribunda 'Texas Purple'
   2:  Publishing 667  Cornus kousa var. chinensis
   3:  Publishing 845  Humulus lupulus
   4:  Publishing 681  Prunus yedoensis 'Akebono'
   5:  Publishing 855  Sambucus nigra 'Variegated'
   6:  Publishing 688  Cornus florida var. Rubra
Publishing Summary Table:  index.htm

Process completed successfully.
```

The progress of the publication process is shown in as each specimen document is created. (The `index.htm` file always takes longer than the individual detail pages.)

```
[🖼]   Show
```

Use the **Show** button when the process is complete to see your published pages in the publish preview window.

Since your finished pages are standard HTML files, you can use any Web browser or Web publishing tool such as Front Page, to display and print your finished documents. You can also further edit them to create special effect or to touch-up the generated documents.

Compleat Botanica - The publish previewer

As you go through the step-by-step publishing process you can see what your finished publication will look like by using the Publish Preview feature. This button is available from steps 5, 6, 7, and 9 as described in the Step-by-step guide to publishing.

The six buttons at the top of the window have the following use:

Button	Usage
Prev	Navigate to the previous HTML document. Note that this is only useful when viewing the finished publication as produced by step 9.
Next	Navigate to the next HTML document. Note that this is only useful when viewing the finished publication as produced by step 9.
Front	Keep the publish preview window on top of all other windows.
Back	Place the publish preview window behind other windows when it isn't the active window. This is the normal behavior for windows.
Print	Print the currently displayed document
Close	Close the publish preview window

Prev | Next | Front | Back | Print | Close

Web site index of Complete Checklist

Details	Botanical Name	Genus	Species	Variet
Details 1	*Wisteria floribunda* 'Texas Purple'	Wisteria	floribunda	
Details 2	*Cornus kousa var. chinensis*	Cornus	kousa	chinens

Compleat Botanica - How the publishing parser works

The step-by-step publishing process is all you need to know in order to produce great looking labels, abstracts, Web pages, pre-press books, and more. But if you're familiar with HTML you can customize every aspect of your final publication. This page describes how.

At the heart of The Compleat Botanica publishing process is the parser. The parser's role is to take HTML templates, to replace special keyword tags with data from the database, and to create new HTML documents with the user's selected style sheets. Conceptually there are three inputs and one output to the process. It looks like this:
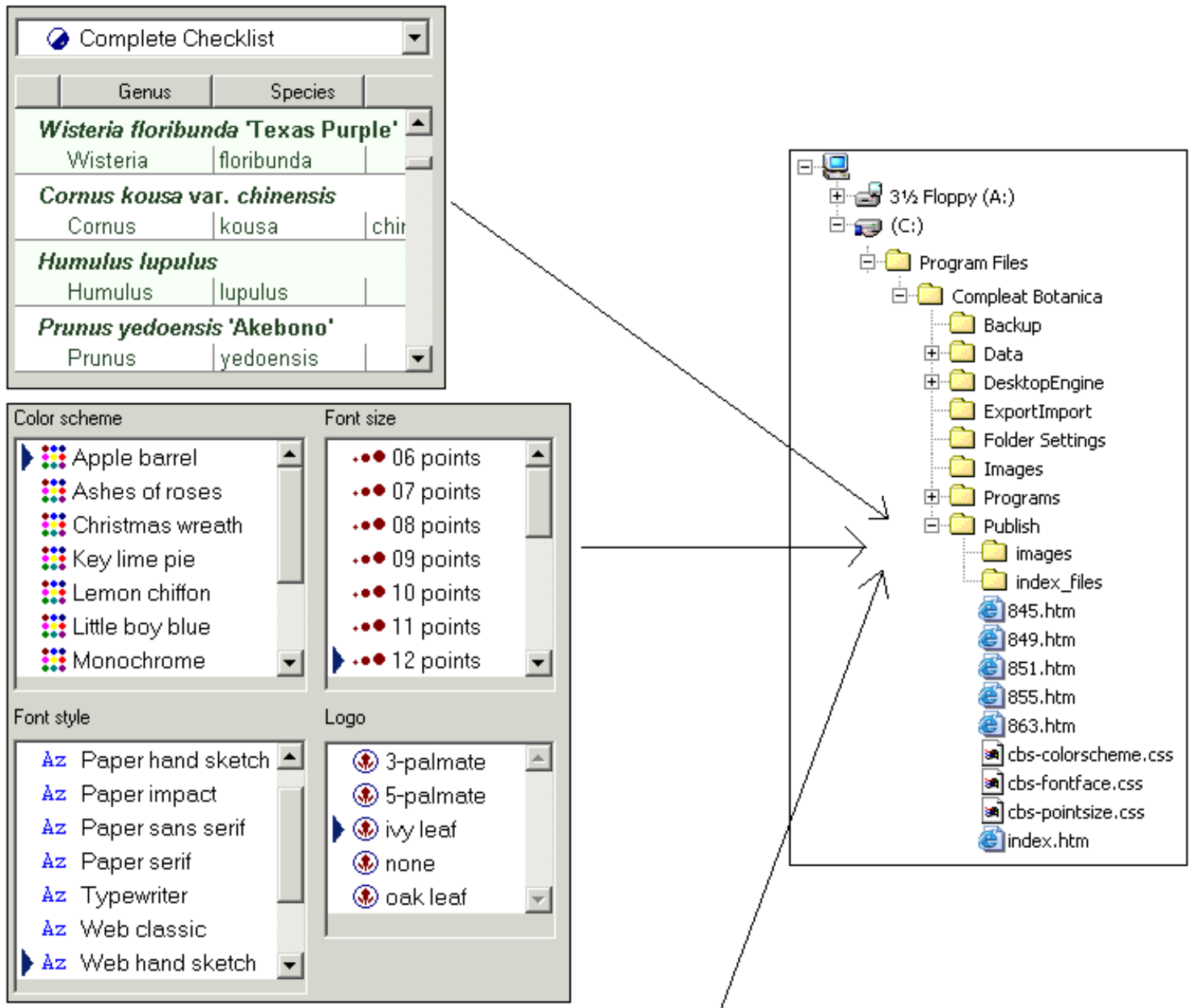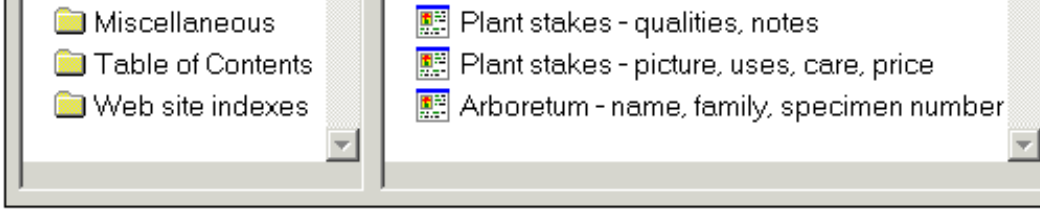
Input 1: Current filter

The first of the three inputs to the parser is the currently selected filter. This determines which records to publish and in some cases also determines which columns to publish. Use the usual process for defining and selecting a filter to show only the records and columns that you want to publish.

Input 2: Style sheets

The second of the three inputs are the style sheets. Each published document references three style sheets: `cbs-colorscheme.css`, `cbs-fontface.css`, and `cbs-pointsize.css`. When the user selects a color scheme using the step-by-step process, the publish parser copies the selected scheme to the well-known filename `"cbs-colorscheme.css"` in the publication directory. Similarly, the selected font style is copied to `"cbs-fontface.css"` and the selected point size is copied to `"cbs-pointsize.css"`.

Although it is not actually a style sheet, the selected logo is pre-processed the same way as the other three style sheets: the selected logo file is copied to the well-known name `"images/logo.gif"` in the publication directory.

The source files for the three types of style sheets and the logo files can be found under the "Publish Templates" directory. By modifying any of the pre-defined style sheets you can customize the overall appearance of the documents created. See the document on Publication style sheets for more about this.

You can also create your own style sheets by copying an existing one and saving it to one of the three style sheet subdirectories. New style sheets created by you are dynamically added to the step-by-step user-interface the next time you start a publish process.

Adding a logo file to the "Logos" directory is just a simple. Logo files must be in GIF format and have a GIF filename extension. For best results pay attention to the transparency settings of your logo file to prevent mismatched backgrounds. Logo files can have any dimensions. The standard templates will automatically shrink or expand your logo in some cases. If you are creating your own template files, there are no artificial restrictions placed on the size of your logo.
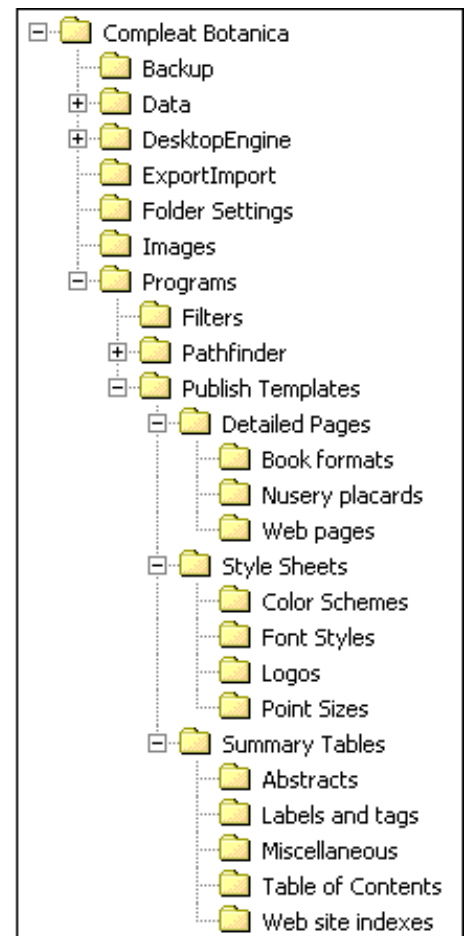
Input 3: Templates

The last of the three inputs to the parser are the two template files: one each from the "Detailed Pages" directory and the "Summary Tables" directory. These templates contain embedded keyword tags that are replaced with data from the database. For example, for the sample diagram shown above, the tag `<cb:BotanicalName>` would be replaced with "Wisteria floribunda 'Texas Purple'" for the first document, then "Cornus kousa var. chinensis" for the second document, and so on. In addition to replacement tags for data fields, there are special processing tags like `<cb:Prev>` and `<cb:Next>` which are replaced with hyperlinks to the previous and next documents in the publication list. For details about these replacement tags see Publication template replacement

[tags](#).

All other aspects of a template file may be freely modified. For example, to insert header and footer information that you want to appear on each page, simply edit the template file using your favorite HTML editor.

Compleat Botanica - Publication style sheets

Each published document references three style sheets: `cbs-colorscheme.css`, `cbs-fontface.css`, and `cbs-pointsize.css`. These files are copied to the publication directory by the *publish parser* from the user-selected style sheets. You can change any of the predefined style sheets or create your own. Here's what three typical style sheets look like

```
.cbs-pagetitle { color: #204020 }
.cbs-textlabel { color: #808080 }
.cbs-textvalue { color: #204020 }
.cbs-pagefooter { color: #808080 }
.cbs-table { }
.cbs-tableheader { background-color: #F0F0F0; color: #204020 }
.cbs-tablevalue { background-color: #FFFFE0; color: #204020 }
.cbs-break { color: #FFFFE0}
```

"Lemon chiffon.css" defines a color scheme

```
.cbs-pagetitle { font-family: Comic Sans MS; text-align: Center }
.cbs-textlabel { font-family: Verdana }
.cbs-textvalue { font-family: Georgia }
.cbs-pagefooter { font-family: Verdana }
.cbs-table { }
.cbs-tableheader { font-family: Verdana }
.cbs-tablevalue { font-family: Georgia }
.cbs-break { }
```

"Web classic.css" defines a font style

```
.cbs-pagetitle { font-size: 18pt; }
.cbs-textlabel { font-size: 12pt; }
.cbs-textvalue { font-size: 12pt; }
.cbs-pagefooter { font-size: 12pt }
.cbs-table { }
.cbs-tableheader { font-size: 12pt }
.cbs-tablevalue { font-size: 12pt; }
.cbs-break { }
```

"12 points.css" defines font point sizes

Each of the three style sheet defines different aspects of the same eight styles. These eight styles are used as follows:

style	description
cbs-pagetitle	Used for the document title.
cbs-textlabel	Used for labels that describe a data field when not inside a table.
cbs-textvalue	Used for data fields when not inside a table.
cbs-pagefooter	Used for text at the bottom of a document.
cbs-table	Used to define overall attributes of a table
cbs-tableheader	Used for the first row of a multi-row table or the first column of a multi-column table.
cbs-tablevalue	Used for data fields when they are part of a table
cbs-break	Used to define the color of line breaks.

Compleat Botanica - Publication template replacement tags

Replacement tags

Replacement tags inside publishing templates take the form `<cb:TagName>`. As the publication parser encounters a replacement tag, it looks up the current value for the tag and inserts it into the output file. For example, if the current specimen record being processed is number "S101" and the genus and species are "Alchemilla", and "mollis" the parser would make these substitutions:

```
<html>
  <body>
    Specimen Number <cb:SpecimenNumber>
    Specimen Name <cb:Genus> <cb:
Species>
  </body>
</html>
```

```
<html>
  <body>
    Specimen Number S101
    Specimen Name Alchemilla mollis
  </body>
</html>
```

Template with replacement tags   Output file

Attributes

Replacement tags can accept attributes. Attributes are paired values that take the form `<cb:TagName attribute="value">`. Each replacement tag recognizes certain attributes, and ignores all others. For example, many tags understand the attributes "text" and "graphics", both of which can take the values "on" or "off". Thus the replacement tag `<cb:Propagule>` might take several forms in the template as shown in the table below (where the current specimen's value for propagule is "Gemmate").

Template file	Output file	Browser
`<cb:Propagule text="on" graphics="on">`	`<img src="./images/6313.jpg"> Gemmate`	Gemmate

`<cb:Propagule text="on" graphics="off">`	Gemmate	**Gemmate**
`<cb:Propagule text="off" graphics="on">`	`<img src="./images/6313.jpg">`	
`<cb:Propagule text="off" graphics="off">`		

Table of replacement tags

By default, each replacement tag assumes that certain attributes are "on" even when they are not explicitly specified. For a listing of these defaults see the [Alphabetical index to column specifications](#).

Table of attributes

The meaning of **on** and **off** for each attribute is explained in this table.

Attribute	on	off
text	Display the data field in text form.	Do not display the data field in text form.
graphics	For RHS colors and fields which use colors to represent codes, such as the climate fields, display a rectangular color patch. For fields which have an iconic representation, display the icon. For fields which are represented by a checkbox, display a checked or unchecked graphic of a checkbox. For the Picture field, display the picture.	Do not display any embedded graphics for this field. For checkboxes, display the value as "yes" or "no". For the picture field, display the picture filename.
code	For fields which use colors to represent codes, display the color patch with the code on top.	Do not display the code on the color patch.
plaintext	For the BotanicalName field only, display the field without italics.	For the BotanicalName field only, display the field in proper botanical name format.

richtext	For the notes fields, display the text using the fonts and colors as they were applied by the user in the notes editors.	For the notes fields, display the text string using the fonts and colors as specified in the publication template and style sheets.	
thumbnail	For the picture field, make a copy of the picture file compressing its filesize to match the display size of the picture. This option is best for Web pages.	For the picture field, make a full sized copy of the picture file retaining its original composition quality. This option will increase Web page display times.	

The picture field can also accept optional width and height attributes. If one of the width or height attributes is present the picture will be scaled to the specified width or height. If both are present, the picture will loose its aspect ratio. If neither are specified and the thumbnail attribute is on, the picture is displayed with a height of 60.

Additional replacement tags

In addition to the replacement tags which directly correspond to database fields, there are replacement tags which allow the template designer to embed hyperlinks and special values as well as replacement tags which are used to control repetition and accumulation.

Hyperlink replacement tag	Description
<cb:PrevPage>	This tag is replaced with a hyperlink to the previous document in the publication.
<cb:NextPage>	This tag is replaced with a hyperlink to the next document in the publication.
<cb:IndexPage>	This tag is replaced with a hyperlink from the current detail page to the summary table of all specimen.
<cb:DetailPage>	This tag is replaced with a hyperlink from the summary table of all specimen to a particular detail page.

Each of these hyperlink replacement tags can accept the **linktext** attribute. This attribute is used to define what text to display for the hyperlink. For example to display the botanical name in the hyperlink from a summary table to a detail page you would code the tag as: `<cb:DetailPage linktext="cb:BotanicalName">`

Special value replacement tag	Description
<cb:CurrentFilter>	Replaced with the name of the current filter used for the publication.
<cb:PageNumber>	Replaced with the current page number for detail page templates, and the current item in the specimen list for summary table templates.
<cb:PageCount>	Replaced with the total number of specimen records published.

Repetition replacement tag	Description
<cb:Specimen> </cb:Specimen>	Everything between the opening and closing tags is repeated for each specimen in the publication.
<cb:Column> </cb:Column>	Everything between the opening and closing tags is repeated for each data field in the current filter. This replacement pair is usually placed within a <cb:Specimen></cb:Specimen> pair.
<cb:HeaderValue>	Replaced with the name of the current column. For example, to create a list of all data field names in the current filter, the template would look like this: ``` <cb:Column> <cb:HeaderValue> <p> </cb:Column> ``` This replacement tag only has meaning when placed within a <cb:Column></cb:Column> pair.

<cb:ColumnValue>	Replaced with the value of the current column. For example, to create a table of all data field values in the current filter, the template would look like this: ``` <table> <tr> <td> <cb:Column> <cb:ColumnValue> </cb:Column> </td> </tr> </table> ``` This replacement tag only has meaning when placed within a <cb:Column></cb:Column> pair.

Accumulation replacement tag	Description

<cb:Repeat>
 	
</cb:Repeat>
	The text between these two tags is inserted when the requested number of specimen has been reached. Use the **every** attribute to request how often to trigger this insertion.
	
	For example, to insert a paragraph break after every fourth specimen the template would look like:
	
	``
	<cb:Specimen>
	  . . .
	  . . .
	  <cb:Repeat every="4"><p></cb:Repeat>
	</cb:Specimen>
	``
	
	This replacement pair only has meaning when placed within a <cb:Specimen></cb:Specimen> pair.

<cb:Store> </cb:Store>	Everything between the opening and closing tags is accumulated, but not copied to the output file, until the next <cb:Release> tag is encountered.
<cb:Release>	Everything accumulated by the <cb:Store></cb:Store> pair is copied to the output file. For example, to copy the botanical names to the output file in groups of 5, with a line break every 5th specimen, the template would look like: ``` <cb:Specimen> <cb:Store> <cb:BotanicalName> </cb:Store> <cb:Repeat every="5"> <cb:Release> <hr> </cb:Repeat> </cb:Specimen> ```

Compleat Botanica - Finding

Index to "finding" topics

	Finding specimen records	To begin the search for specimen records be sure that your current view is one of the five specimen views. In addition, the Find command only works when the "current focus" is the List View.
	Finding taxonomic entries	To begin the search for taxonomic entries be sure that your current view is the Checklist View. In addition, the Find command only works when the "current focus" is the List View.

Compleat Botanica - Finding specimen records

The Find command takes two forms: one for finding specimen records and one for finding taxonomic entries. See the document Finding taxonomic entries for more about that.

To begin the search for specimen records be sure that your current view is one of the five specimen views. In addition, the **Find** command only works when the "current focus" is the List View. See What is the significance of the fancy borders? for more about this.

Here are some details about the Find window:

Item	Description

Find what	Type a word or the first few letters of a word that you are searching for.
Exact full word match	When this is checked, partial word matches are not considered. For example, searching for "palm" will not return entries for "palmatum".
Case sensitive	When this is checked, only words with the same capitalization are considered. For example, searching for "Purp", will return entries for "Purple", but not for "purpurea".
Find next	Searches forward through the current set of filtered specimen to find the next match. Automatically scrolls the specimen list to the record matching the request.
Find prev	Searches backward through the current set of filtered specimen to find the previous match. Automatically scrolls the specimen list to the record matching the request.
	The bottom portion of this window shows the item (the index position from the top of the list) matching your search request and the name of the column where it was found.

Note: The Find command searches through the records and columns of the currently defined filter. To search your entire collection, be sure to set the current filter to something like "Complete checklist" so that all records, and all columns are searched.

Compleat Botanica - Finding taxonomic entries

The Find command takes two forms: one for finding specimen records and one for finding taxonomic entries. See the document Finding specimen records for more about that.

To begin the search for taxonomic entries be sure that your current view is the Checklist View. In addition, the **Find** command only works when the "current focus" is the List View. See What is the significance of the fancy borders? for more about this.

Here are some details about the Find window:

Item	Description
Find what	Type a taxonomic entry or the first few letters of an entry that you are searching for.
Exact full word match	When this is checked, partial matches are not considered. For example, searching for "Acer" will not return entries for "Aceraceae".
Find next	Searches forward through the Checklist to find the next match. Automatically opens the taxonomic tree to the entry matching the request.
Find prev	Searches backward through the Checklist to find the previous match. Automatically opens the taxonomic tree to the entry matching the request.
	The bottom portion of this window shows the name(s) found and their rank.

Compleat Botanica - Managing your databases

Index to database topics

✚ Database operations	Index to topics about database commands.
✚ Special database issues	Index to topics about special database issues.
✚ ODBC and MSDE	Index to topics about Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) and Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine (MSDE).

Compleat Botanica - Database operations

Index to database operations topics

ℹ	**The Data Manager utility**	You can use The Compleat Botanica program to create and delete databases as well as backup and restore databases.
ℹ	**Opening a database**	Opening a database and problems that may occur.
ℹ	**Closing a database**	Closing a database is optional. Whenever you exit from The Compleat Botanica software the database is automatically closed.
ℹ	**Creating a new database**	Your specimen are typically stored in a single database; however, there are times when you may want to create additional databases.
ℹ	**Deleting a database**	Rules and precautions for deleting a database.
ℹ	**Making a backup copy of your database**	It's essential to make a backup of your database whenever you've made changes to any of your specimen records. The backup process compresses your data and places it in a special format which can be used by the Restore database operation.
ℹ	**Restoring a database from a previous backup**	You can restore a database to it's active state by using the Data Manager utility or directly from within The Compleat Botanica software.

Compleat Botanica - The Data Manager utility

All of the major operations for working with your databases are accessible from the File menu. You can use The Compleat Botanica program to create and delete databases as well as backup and restore databases.
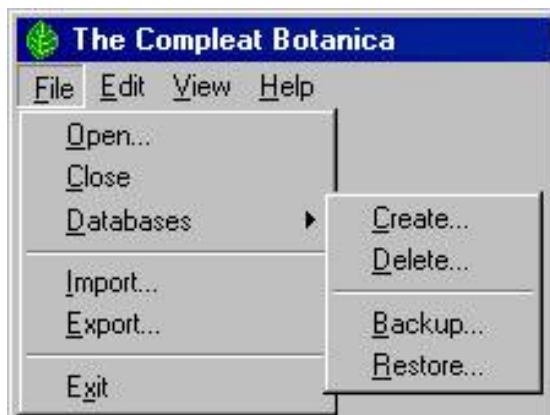
Sometimes though it is more convenient to do this outside of the program. The Data Manager utility is a stand-alone program which can perform these tasks.

Here is a snapshot of the utility:
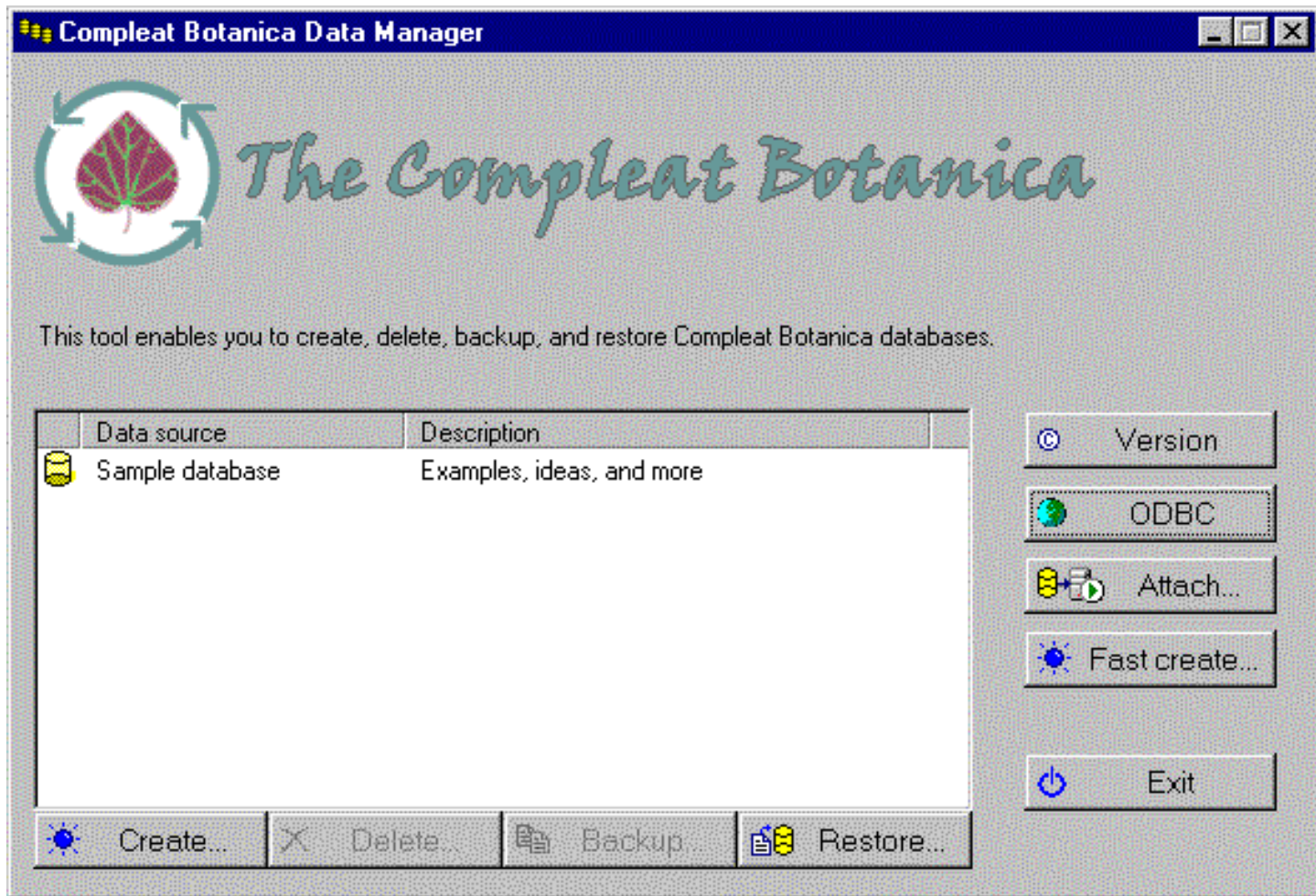
See the related documents for instructions on each menuitem or button.

Opening a database

Opening a different
database is simple, just
double-click on the
data source name.

Opening an older database
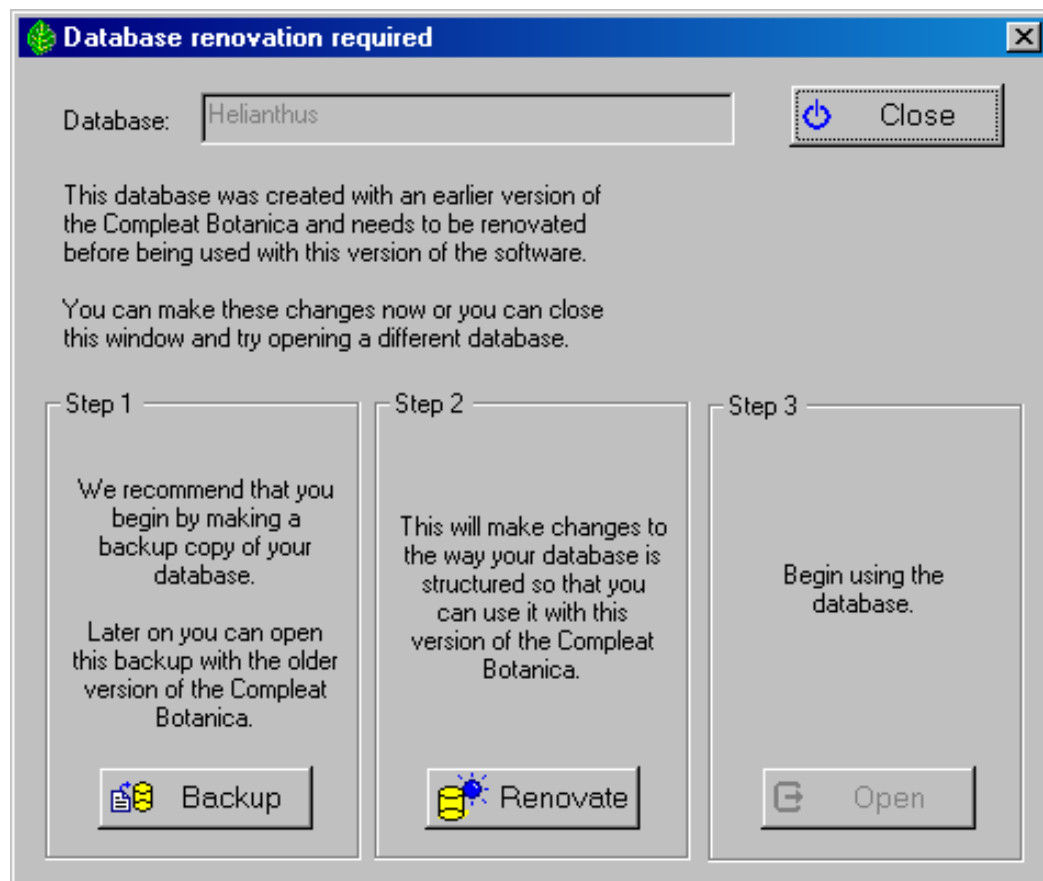
If you have older databases from
a previous version of the
software, they'll need to be
"renovated" before being
opened. You'll be prompted
automatically when this
situation is recognized. Just
follow the three steps for safely
backing up, renovating, and
opening your database.

Creating a database backup is
optional but recommended,
especially if you plan on ever
using the older version of the
software.

Opening a newer database

If you attempt to open a database that was created with a more recent version of The Compleat Botanica software, you'll see a message similar to this one. Newer versions of a database can only be opened with the newer version of the software.

The Compleat Botanica

The Helianthus database is in a newer format which is not compatible with 2003 Edition (Build 85) of The Compleat Botanica

Sorry, but this database can only be used with the newer version of the software.

OK
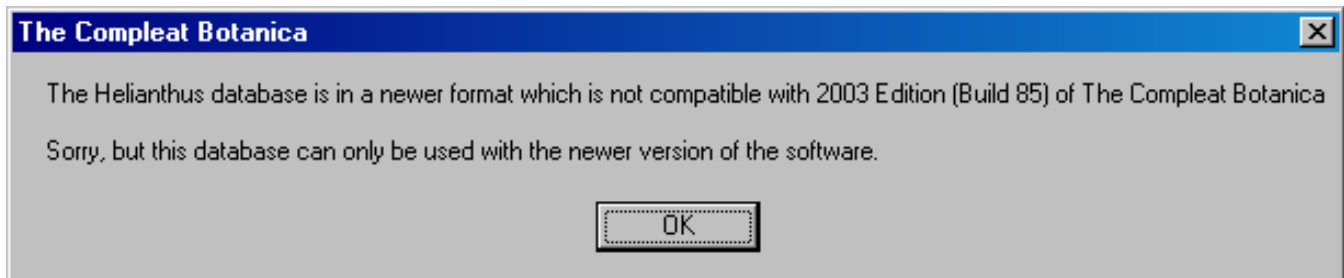
Problems with opening a database

If you see the "Unable to open database" message window, you'll need to figure out what the problem is.

Unable to open database

The attempt to open the database has failed.
Follow these troubleshooting steps, one at a time, and try again.

Step 1: Make sure you've selected a valid Compleat Botanica data source. (Note that not all data sources in the list are Compleat Botanica databases.)

Troubleshooting Step 1

Have you selected a valid Data Source for this application?   MyGardens

Step 2: Both the Authentication ID and Password should be "Catalog".

Troubleshooting Step 2

Are the authentication ID and Password correct?

Authentication ID: Catalog

Authentication Password: xxxxxxx

Step 3: The SQL Server Desktop Engine should be automatically started. There is no need to troubleshoot this.

Troubleshooting Step 3

Is the SQL Server Desktop Engine service running?   SQL Server Manager...

Step 4: Follow the steps for Troubleshooting the ODBC configuration. This is most likely to solve your problem.

Troubleshooting Step 4

Does the ODBC entry for the Data Source test OK?   ODBC Manager...

Try again   Cancel
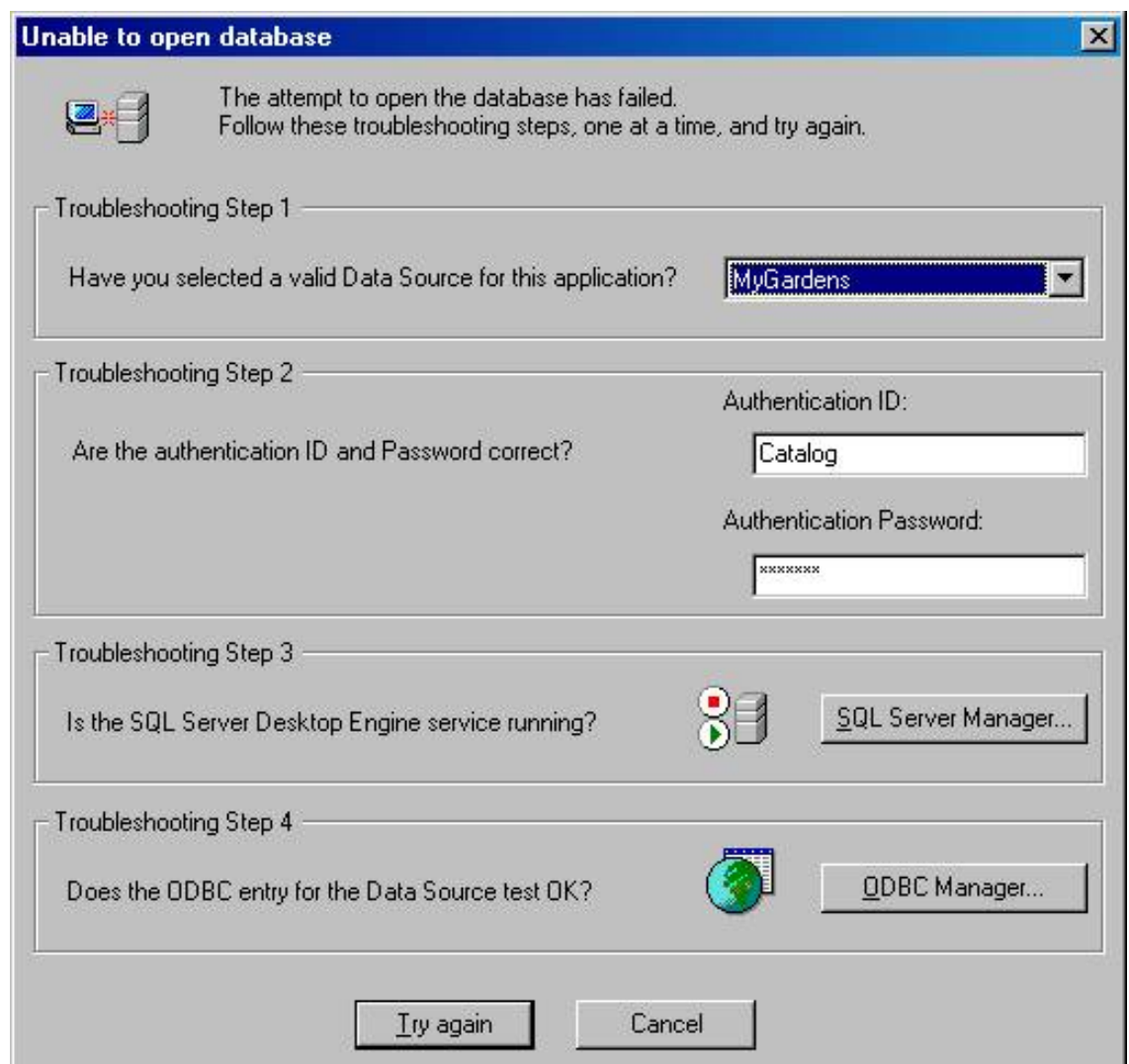
Compleat Botanica - Closing a database

Closing a database is optional. Whenever you exit from The Compleat Botanica software the database is automatically closed. The next time you start the software the same database is automatically reopened.

Occasionally you'll want to close a database so that you can perform some operation in the Data Manager utility. To close a database simply select the menu item.

Compleat Botanica - Creating a new database

Your specimen are typically stored in a single database; however, there are times when you may want to create additional databases. For example, you may want to test a new feature of the software without worrying about losing data in your master database. Or you may want to keep your nursery specimen separated from your personal collection. You can create as many databases as you like.

You create a new specimen database either from the File menu of The Compleat Botanica program or from the **Create** button of the Data Manager utility. Here is the window you use to specify the new database name:

Field name	Description
Data source name	The ODBC name used when opening the database. By default this is the name of your computer. Choose a more appropriate name.

Description	Additional descriptive text to help you distinguish one database from another.
Database name	The Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine name. You will not use this name except in this window. This name is restricted to alphabetic characters.
Where should the database files be placed?	Choose a disk and directory name where the database will be placed. Each database consists of two files: a data file (with the extension .mdf) and a log file (with the extension of .ldf)
Include botanical name checklist	Leave this checkmark "on" to include the standard taxa entries. This is required for the botanical name spell-checker to work. Remove this check mark only if you are running low on disk space, or you want to use your our botanical name checklist.
Include standard categories	Leave this checkmark "on" to include the standard categories.

There are several things to watch out for:

The database creation process uses the "CBSample" database backup file as a template for the new database. If this file is missing, you will see this message. See the note about Using the fast create option for an alternate way to create a new database.
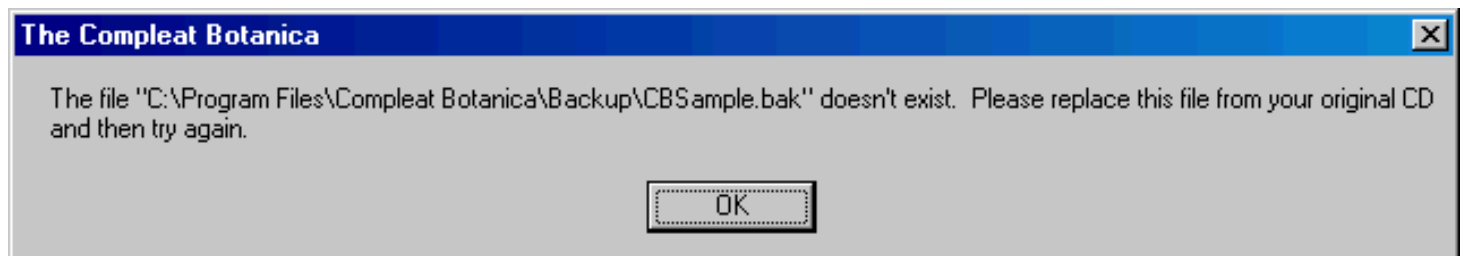
All database names must be different from one another.

Most of the special characters on the keyboard are not allowed in either the ODBC name or the database name.

The first character must be a letter from A to Z (numbers and underscores are allowed in the rest of the name.)

New Database

Data source names cannot contain any of the letters []{}(),;?*=!@\.

Please change the name and try again.

OK

Create database

Close

Unable to create the database.
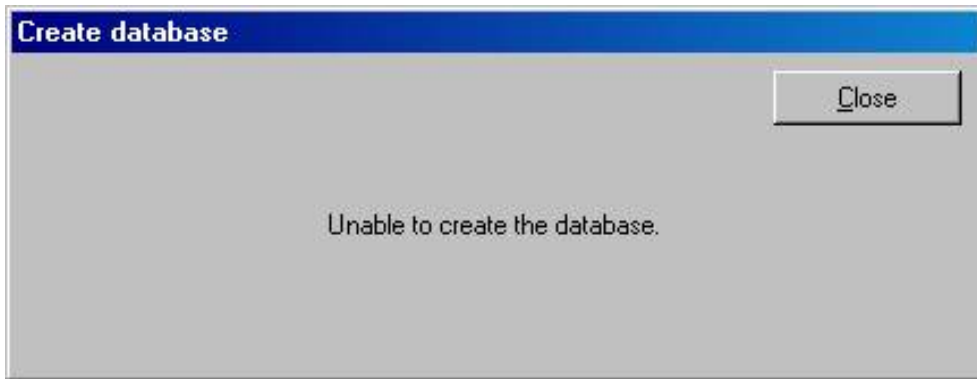
If you see this message, you've either specified an invalid name, or you don't have enough disk space for the new database, or the disk is read-only.

Compleat Botanica - Deleting a database

Deleting a database is simple, but if you ever want to restore the database be sure to back it up before deleting. The delete operation is permanent.
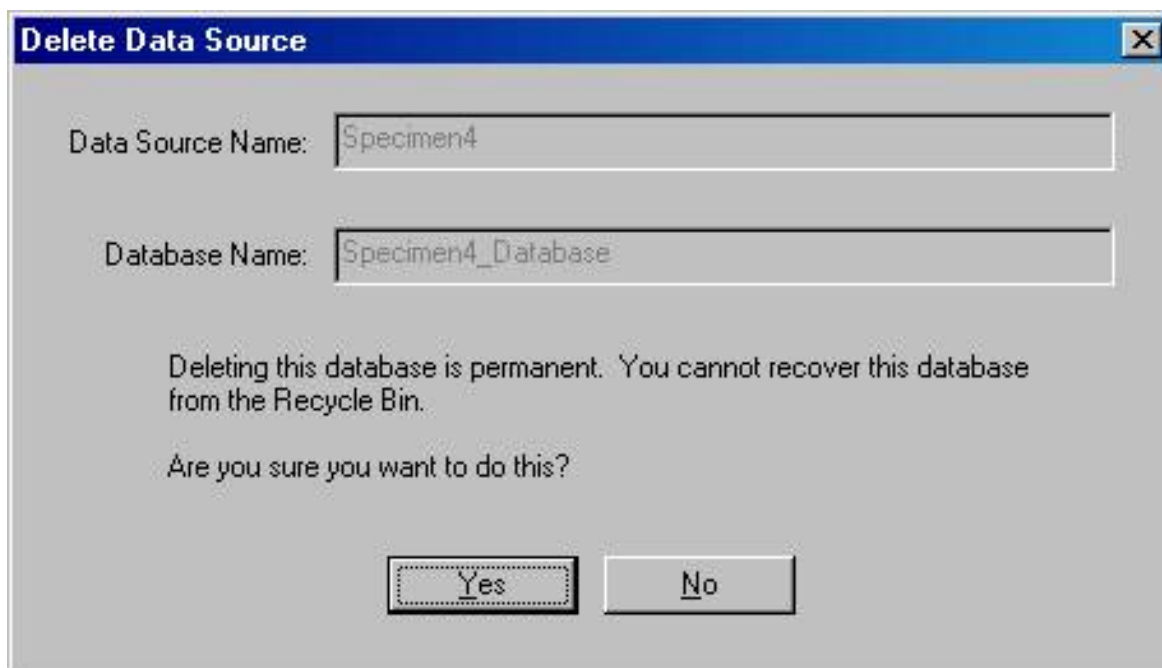
Problems with deleting a database

If you see this message, you'll have to use the **ODBC Manager utility** to delete the database entry, and the Windows Explorer to delete the underlying database files.

Compleat Botanica - Making a backup copy of your database

It's essential to make a backup of your database whenever you've made changes to any of your specimen records. The backup process compresses your data and places it in a special format which can be used by the Restore database operation. Backing up a database is straightforward. Use the Data Manager utility or the backup option located in the File menu of The Compleat Botanica software.
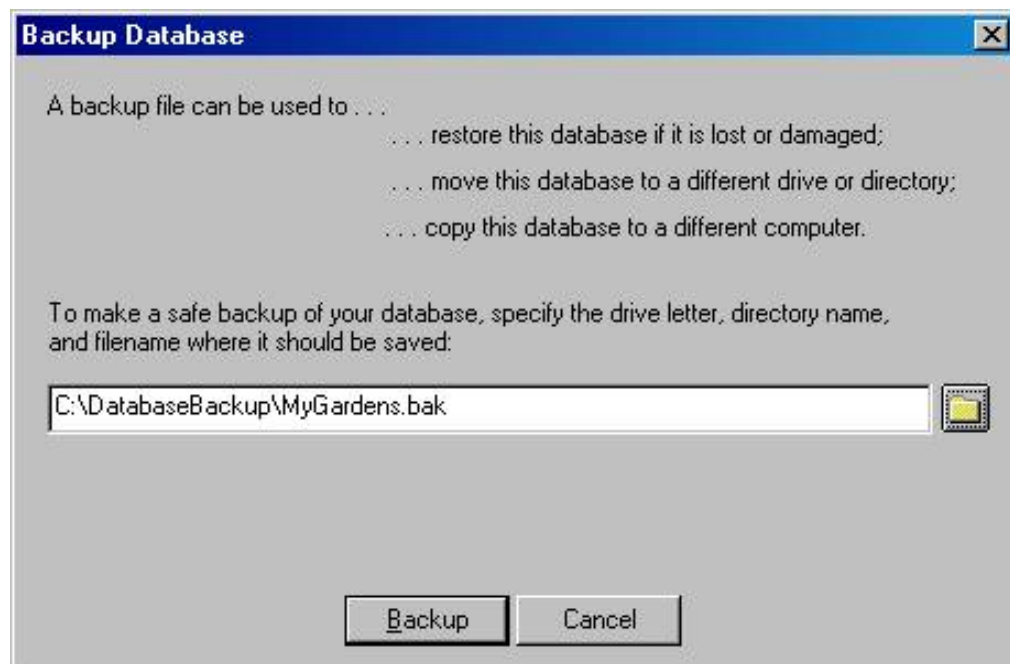
Problems with backing up a database

If you see this message, when attempting to backup a database, it's a signal indicating that the ODBC entry is no longer valid. You'll probably have to use the ODBC Manager utility to correct the situation before backing up.

This may occur if

you've reinstalled the [Microsoft SQL Server Database Engine](#) after creating this database.
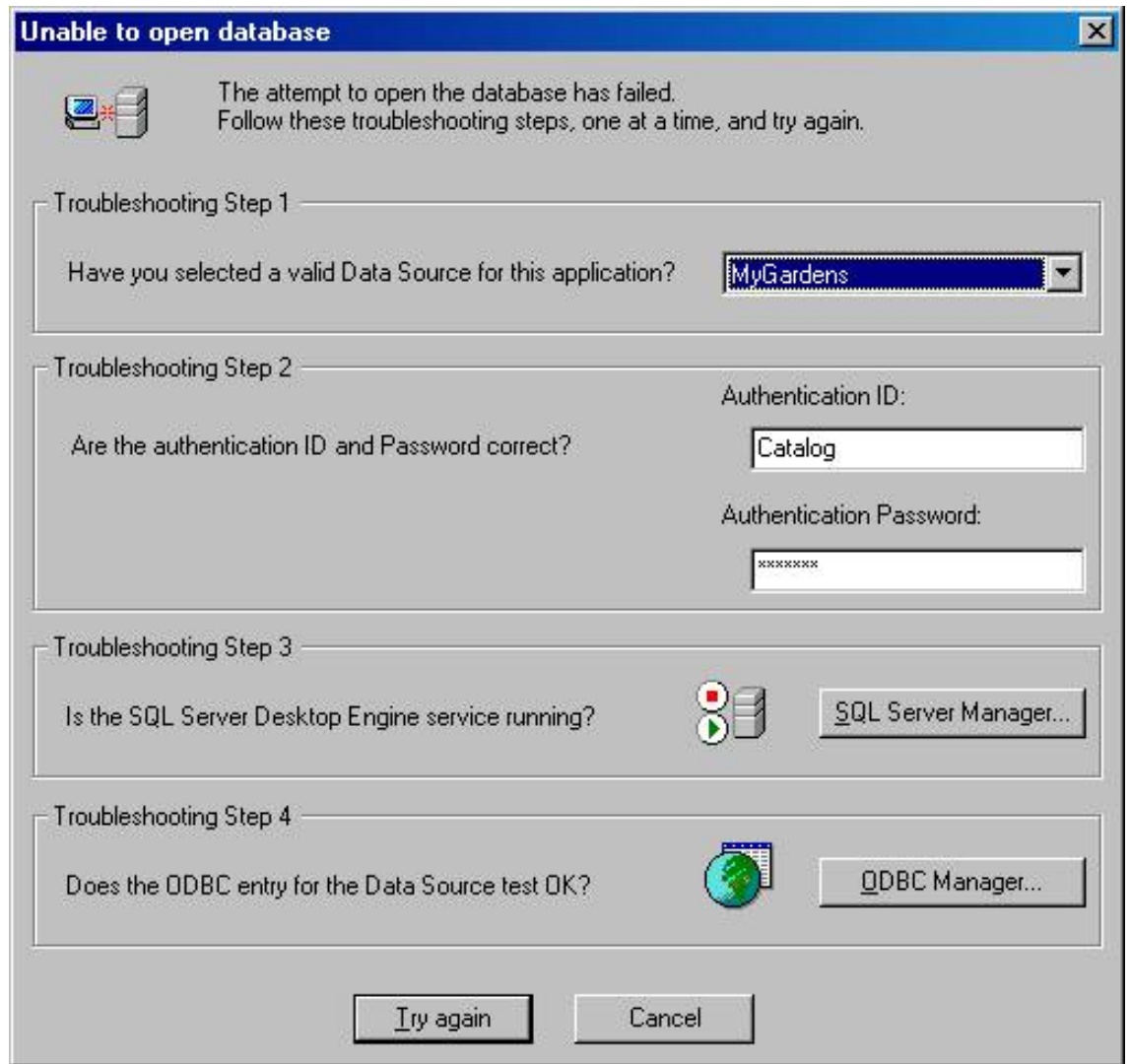
Compleat Botanica - Restoring a database from a previous backup

You can restore a database to it's active state by using the Data Manager utility or directly from within The Compleat Botanica software. Here's what the window looks like:

Restore database

- ● Restore from a recent backup

Filename	Date	
D:\DatabaseBackup\July 6, 2001...	Jul 06, 2001 08:19 PM	

- ○ Use an alternate backup

  C:\

Where should the restored database files be placed?

C:\Database

Data source name: GAEA (July 6)
The ODBC name used when opening the database.

Description: Database of specimen
Additional descriptive text to help you distinguish one database from another.

Database name: GAEA__July_6__Database
The Desktop Engine name.

Authorization ID: Catalog

Authorization Password: Catalog

Restore   Cancel

Field	Description
Restore from a recent backup	This list of recent backups is a convenient way to choose which database to restore. If the backup file is not in the list (for example, if the backup is coming from a different computer), use the alternate backup option.
Use an alternate backup	Type in the name of the backup file, or search your computer for the backup to be restored.
Where should the restored database files be placed?	This is a disk with adequate space for the restored file.
Data source name	The ODBC name used when opening the database. By default this is the name of your computer. This name does not need to be the same as your original name.
Description	Additional descriptive text to help you distinguish one database from another.
Database name	The Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine name. You will not use this name except in this window. This name is restricted to alphabetic characters. It must not be the same as any other active database.
Authorization ID	This is fixed at "Catalog" so that you will not be prompted for authorization each time you start the software.
Authorization Password	This is fixed at "Catalog" so that you will not be prompted for authorization each time you start the software.

Index to special database issues

ℹ️	The difference between database files and backup files	Your specimen data is stored in a special database format managed by Microsoft's SQL Server Desktop Engine.
ℹ️	Moving your database files	Your databases are stored in two special files which are managed by SQL Server Desktop Engine.
ℹ️	Using the fast create option	The fast create button is available only from within the Data Manager utility.
ℹ️	Attaching a database from a previous installation	The Attach button can be used in some emergency situations where otherwise valid database files become detached from the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine.
ℹ️	The database version control utility	Each of the database tables used by The Compleat Botanica is identified with a version number.

Your specimen data is stored in a special database format managed by Microsoft's SQL Server Desktop Engine. Using the create database command you can create extra databases for special needs. Each database is stored on your computer's hard disk using two files. One of these two files stores all of your data, the other is a transaction log file used to ensure that changes to the first file are always carried out without corruption.

The location of these two database files is set by you when you create the database. The names of the two files is automatically determined when you type in the name of the database.
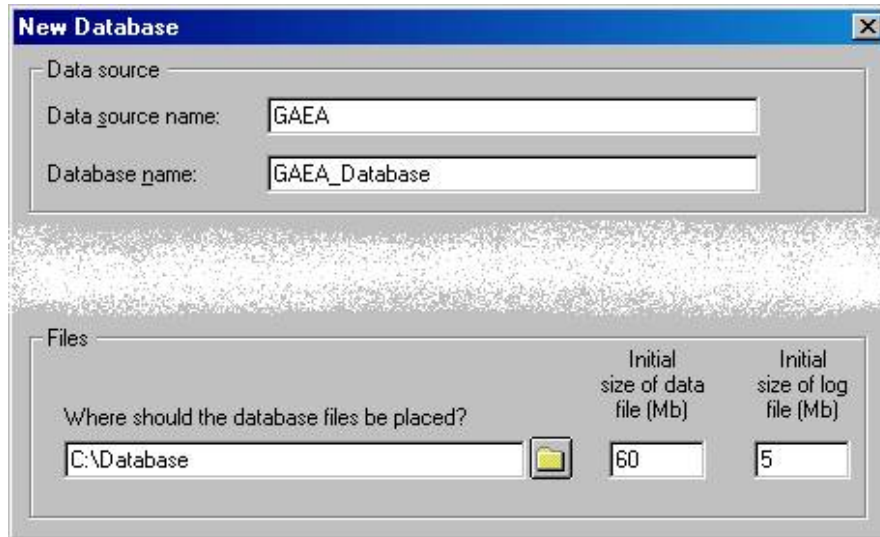
For the parameters shown above the two files would be like this:
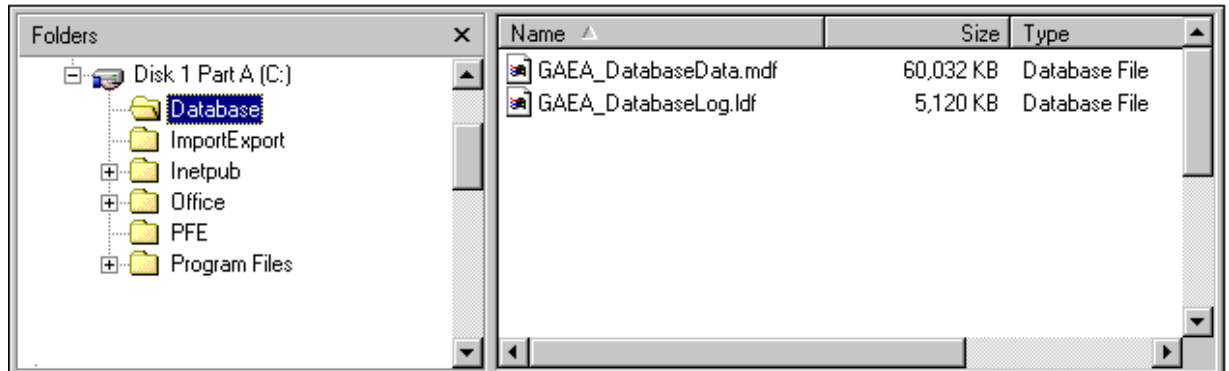
Caution: Do not attempt to move these two files using Windows Explorer. Moving these files to a different directory or a different disk will damage them so that you'll be unable to use your database. If you need to change their location follow the instructions for Moving your database files.

When you make a backup of your database, the two files are compressed into one special backup file. This backup file is suitable for use with the database restore operation.

When you make a backup copy of your database, the backup file can be placed in any directory on any drive.

Backup Database

A backup file can be used to . . .

. . . restore this database if it is lost or damaged;

. . . move this database to a different drive or directory;

. . . copy this database to a different computer.

To make a safe backup of your database, specify the drive letter, directory name, and filename where it should be saved:

D:\DatabaseBackup\GAEA.bak

Unable to determine the estimated size of the backup file.

Backup   Cancel

Note that this backup file can only be used with the database restore operation. It cannot be opened directly with the database open command.

Folders	×
4 x 9.1 Gb (D:)	
Database	
DatabaseBackup	
Inetpub	
Office	
PFE	
Program Files	

Name △	Size	Type
GAEA.bak	55,315 KB	BAK File File
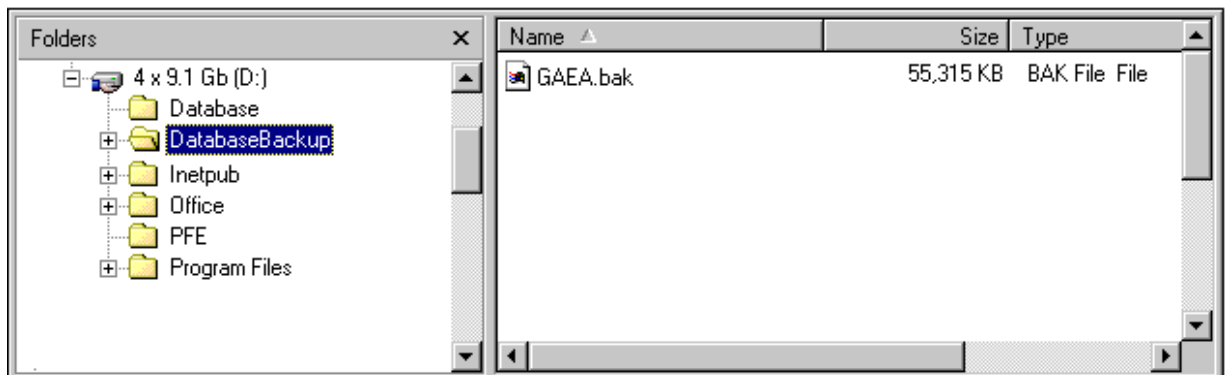
Compleat Botanica - Moving your database files

Your databases are stored in two special files which are managed by SQL Server Desktop Engine. Do not attempt to move these files using Windows Explorer. If you've run out of disk space, or if you're upgrading your hard disk, or if you want to change the location of these two files for any reason, follow these instructions for backing up and restoring your database.

The overview of want you'll need to do to move your database files is simple:

1   [Backup your database](#)

2   [Restore the backup copy of your database](#) using a new location

3   [Delete your original database](#)

Follow the instructions for each step as detailed in those documents. For step two, use a name for the restored database that's different from the original database name (all active databases must have distinguishing names). When restoring the backup file you can place the database on any drive or directory that has adequate space.

Compleat Botanica - Using the fast create option

The fast create button is available only from within the Data Manager utility. It is used to create a new database without any taxonomic records. It does not use the "CBSample.bak" file as a template the way the normal create button does.

Here is the window you use to specify the new database name:

Field name	Description

Data source name	The ODBC name used when opening the database. By default this is the name of your computer. Choose a more appropriate name.
Description	Additional descriptive text to help you distinguish one database from another.
Database name	The Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine name. You will not use this name except in this window. This name is restricted to alphabetic characters.
Where should the database files be placed?	Choose a disk and directory name where the database will be placed. Each database consists of two files: a data file (with the extension .mdf) and a log file (with the extension of .ldf)
Initial size of data file (Mb)	The data file will grow in size as you add more specimen. It is safe to accept the default value of 60. Change this only if you know your database will be much larger or much smaller.
Initial size of log file (Mb)	The log file is used during lengthy import/export operations to safely stage the updating of your database. Accept the default value in all cases.
Authorization ID	This is fixed at "Catalog" so that you will not be prompted for authorization each time you start the software.
Authorization Password	This is fixed at "Catalog" so that you will not be prompted for authorization each time you start the software.

There are several things to watch out for

New Database

There is already a Data Source with this name.

Please choose a unique name.

OK

All database names must be different from one another.

Most of the special characters on the keyboard are not allowed in either the ODBC name or the database name.

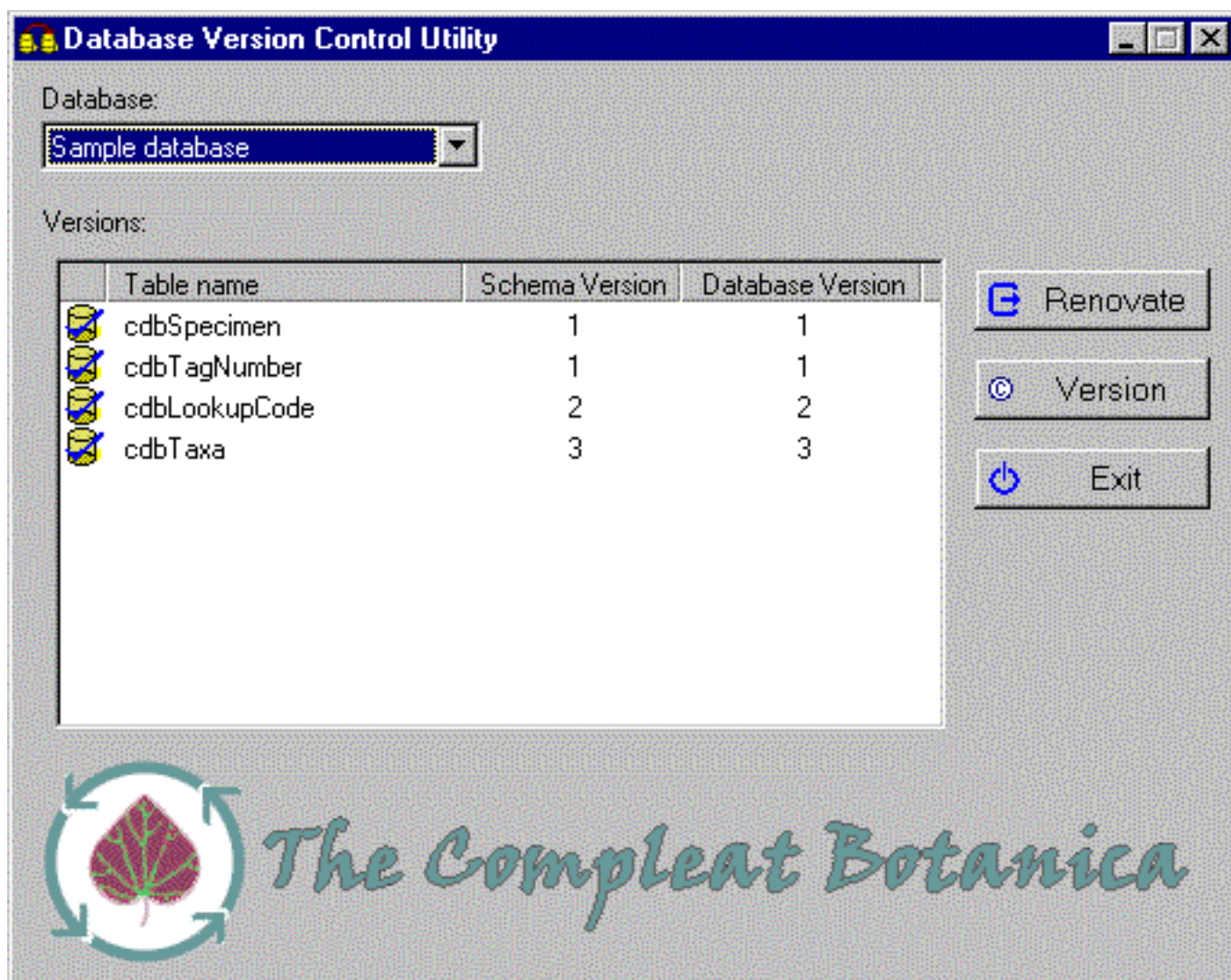The first character must be a letter from A to Z (numbers and underscores are allowed in the rest of the name.)

New Database

Data source names cannot contain any of the letters []{}(),.?*=!@\.

Please change the name and try again.

OK

If you see this message, you've either specified an invalid name, or you don't have enough disk space for the new database, or the disk is read-only.

Create database

Close

Unable to create the database.

Compleat Botanica - Attaching a database from a previous installation

The Attach button can be used in some emergency situations where otherwise valid database files (*.mdf, *.ldf) become detached from the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine. Typically this situation occurs only when you reinstall the SQL Server Desktop Engine software.

> The Attach button is not the favored way of dealing with a reinstallation of SQL Server Desktop Engine. The safest process is to create a backup of your database, then reinstall the software, and finally restore the backup to the new installation.

The Attach button is available only from within the Data Manager utility. Here is the window you will use to perform this process:

Attach database

Which detached MDF and LDF database files do you want to re-attach?

Data file (MDF) location:

`D:\Database\My_Specimen_DatabaseData.mdf`

Log file (LDF) location:

`D:\Database\My_Specimen_DatabaseLog.ldf`

Data source name: `My Specimen`
The ODBC name used when opening the database.

Description: `Database of specimen`
Additional descriptive text to help you distinguish one database from another.

Database name: `My_Specimen_Database`
The Desktop Engine name.

Authorization ID: `Catalog`

Authorization Password: `Catalog`

Attach   Cancel

Field name	Description
Data file (MDF) location	The full path and filename of the master database file containing the Compleat Botanica database needing to be re-attached.
Log file (LDF) location	The full path and filename of the log file associated with the above-specified database file.
Data source name	The ODBC name used when opening the database. By default this is the name of your computer. Choose a more appropriate name.

Description	Additional descriptive text to help you distinguish one database from another.
Database name	The Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine name. You will not use this name except in this window. This name is restricted to alphabetic characters.
Authorization ID	This is fixed at "Catalog" so that you will not be prompted for authorization each time you start the software.
Authorization Password	This is fixed at "Catalog" so that you will not be prompted for authorization each time you start the software.

There are several things to watch out for

All database names must be different from one another.

Most of the special characters on the keyboard are not allowed in either the ODBC name or the database name.

The first character must be a letter from A to Z (numbers and underscores are allowed in the rest of the name.)

Attach database

Close

Unable to attach the database.
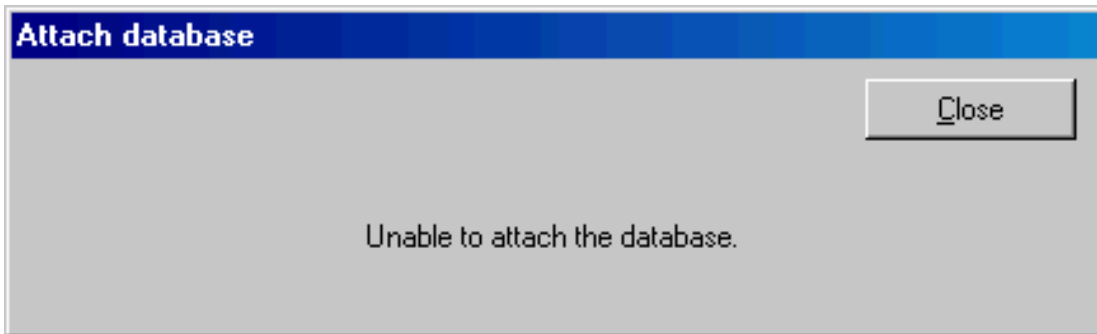
If you see this message, your database file is either corrupted and can't be used, or it's already attached to the SQL Server Desktop Engine.

Compleat Botanica - The database version control utility

Each of the database tables used by The Compleat Botanica is identified with a version number. As changes to the software are made, the version numbers increase. The Version utility will show you the current version numbers of each table in your database. This is may be useful in some troubleshooting situations. More importantly, this utility has the ability to update older databases to the current version used by the software.

If any of the tables is missing newer columns the **Renovate** button will safely add them to your active database.

Index to ODBC and MSDE topics

What is the ODBC Manager?	The Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) Manager is a utility for adding, configuring, and deleting database names.
Eight steps to creating an ODBC data source	Use these instructions to create a data source directly using the ODBC Manager.
Troubleshooting the ODBC configuration	Use these instructions to test the validity of an existing ODBC data source.

Compleat Botanica - What is the ODBC Manager?

The Open Database Connectivity (ODBC) Manager is a utility for adding, configuring, and deleting database names. It contains a list of names (called *data sources*) used by many different database applications. Normally, The Compleat Botanica software handles the creation and deletion of data source entries in this list; however, when abnormal conditions occur this list can get out of synchronization with the true list of databases on your computer. If that happens, you'll need to make additions, changes, and deletions using this utility. Here is what version 3.520 of the ODBC Manager looks like:
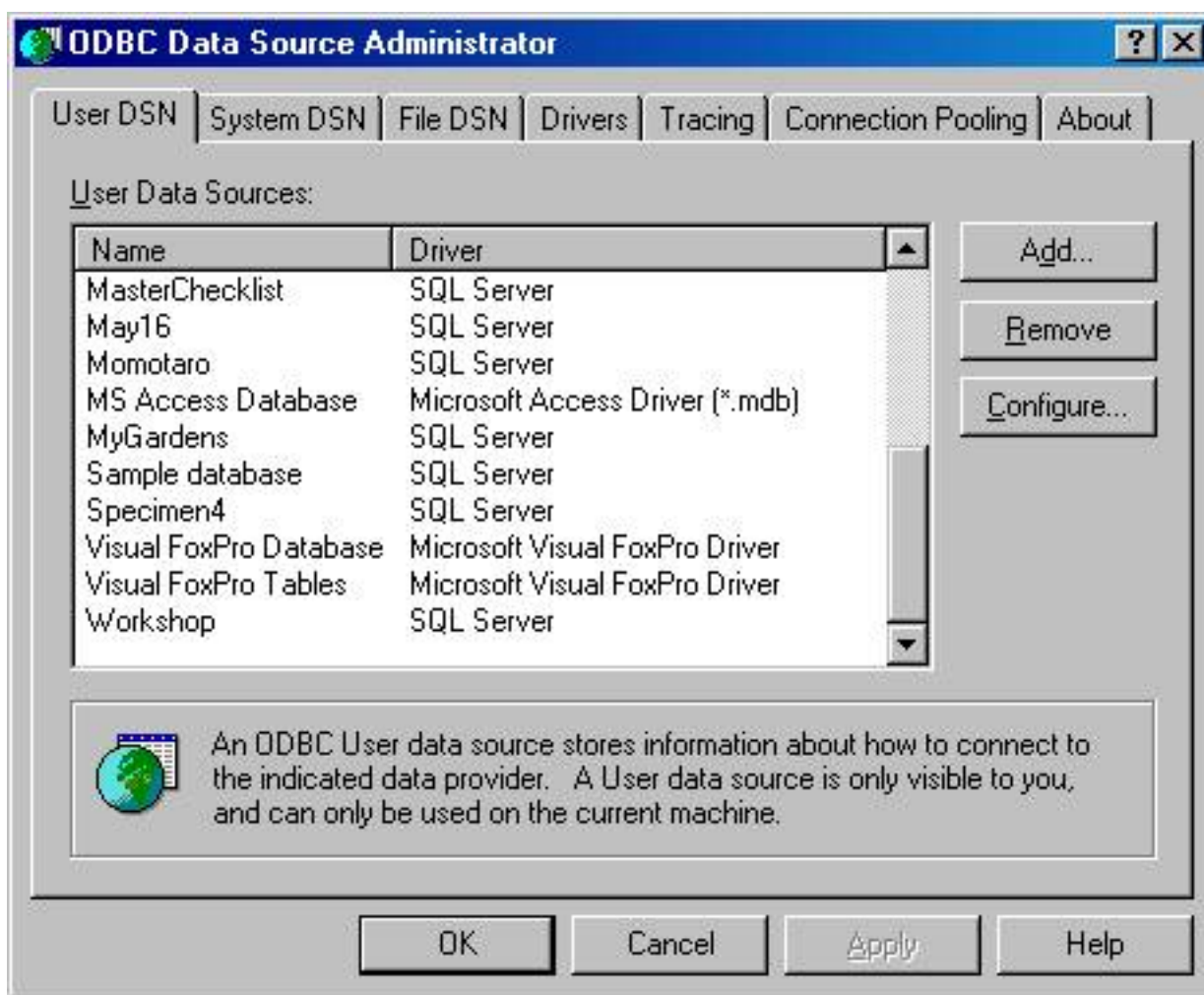
Each entry in the list is merely a reference to the actual data. Because of this, the creation and deletion of these references is autonomous with respect to the actual databases themselves; thus you can safely delete an entry in this list without affecting the actual database itself.

If you need to create a new entry in this list in order to make an existing database "visible", follow the Eight steps to creating an ODBC data source. If you need to correct a problem with an existing ODBC data source entry, check the

instructions for [Troubleshooting the ODBC configuration](#).

> Caution: The full list of ODBC entries for your computer probably contains entries which have nothing to do with The Compleat Botanica. Making changes to those entries may affect the operation of other applications installed on your computer.
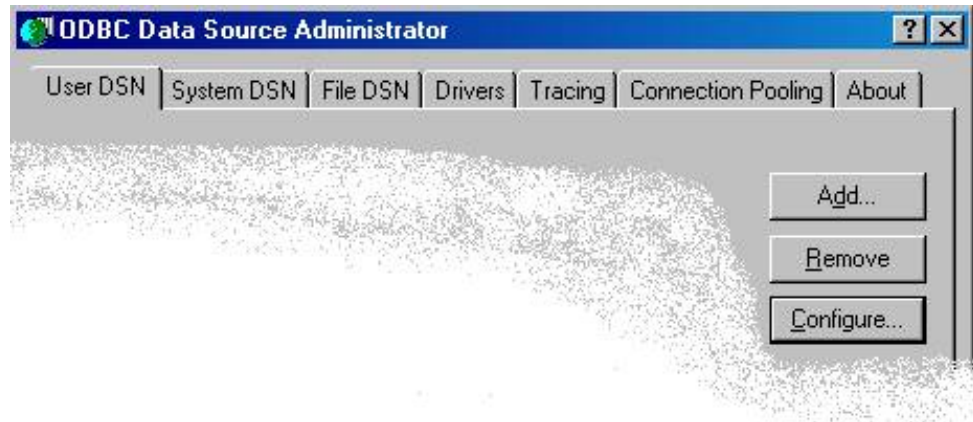
Compleat Botanica - **Eight steps to creating an ODBC data source**

Use these instructions to create a data source directly using the ODBC Manager. This should be done only under abnormal conditions.

Press the **Add** button

1

Select the **SQL Server** driver.
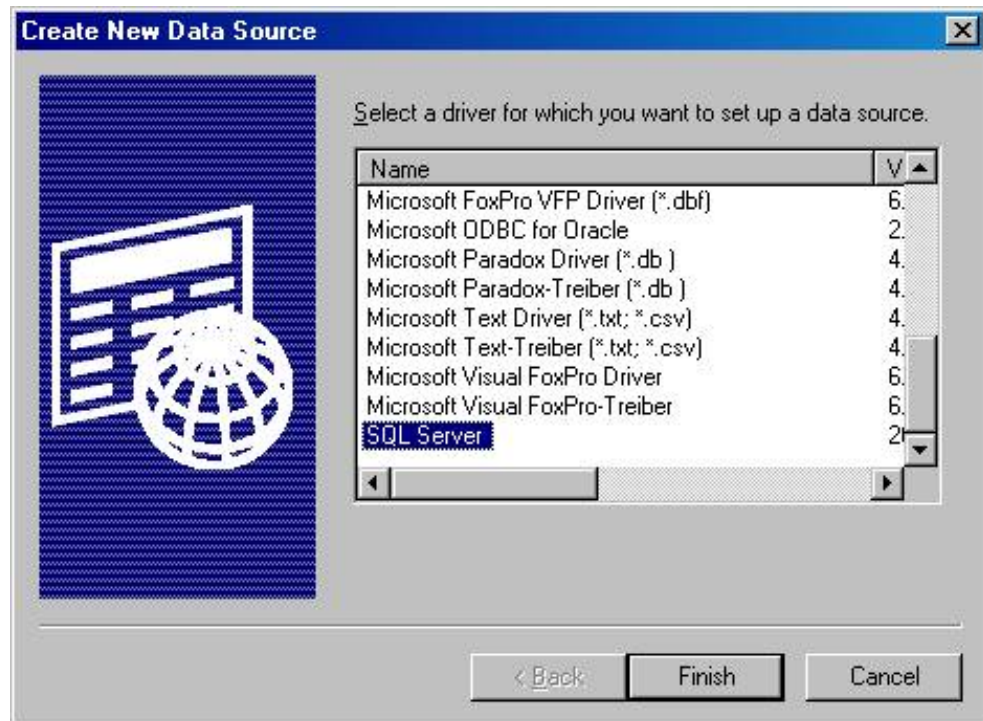
Press the **Finish** button.

2

The **Name** is required.

The **Description** is optional.

Which SQL Server do you want to connect to? should be the SQL Server Desktop Engine with a name ending in "\CompleatBotanica"(The prefix is your computer name).

Press the **Next** button.

3

Create a New Data Source to SQL Server ☒

This wizard will help you create an ODBC data source that you can use to connect to SQL Server.

What name do you want to use to refer to the data source?

Name: Penstemon

How do you want to describe the data source?

Description: My private collection

Which SQL Server do you want to connect to?

Server: GAIA\CompleatBotanica ▼

[Finish] [Next >] [Cancel] [Help]

Click on the second button – **"With SQL Server authentication using a login ID and password entered by the user."**

Change the **Login ID** to "sa" (This is the System Administrator ID).

Do not supply a **Password**.

Press the **Next** button.

4

Create a New Data Source to SQL Server ☒

How should SQL Server verify the authenticity of the login ID?

○ With Windows NT authentication using the network login ID.

◉ With SQL Server authentication using a login ID and password entered by the user.

To change the network library used to communicate with SQL Server, click Client Configuration.

[Client Configuration...]

☑ Connect to SQL Server to obtain default settings for the additional configuration options.

Login ID: sa
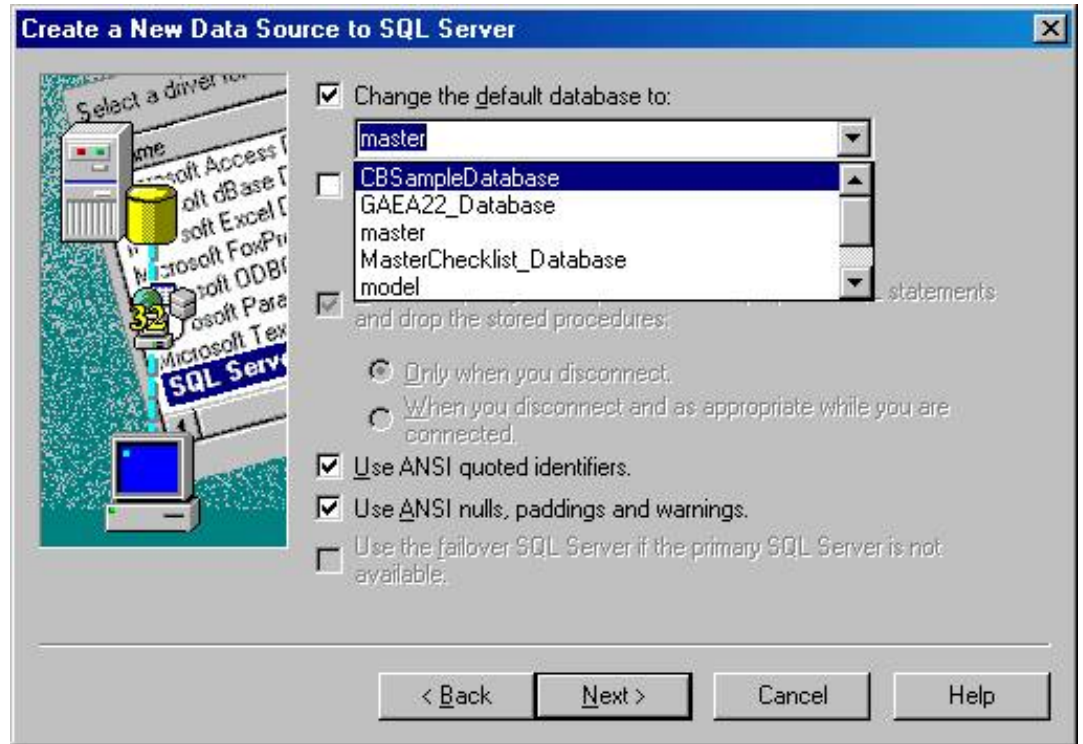
Password:

[< Back] [Next >] [Cancel] [Help]

Check the box labeled:
"Change the default database to"

Use the drop-drop combo-box to select the existing database that you are making this ODBC entry for.

Leave all other buttons on this screen at their default values.
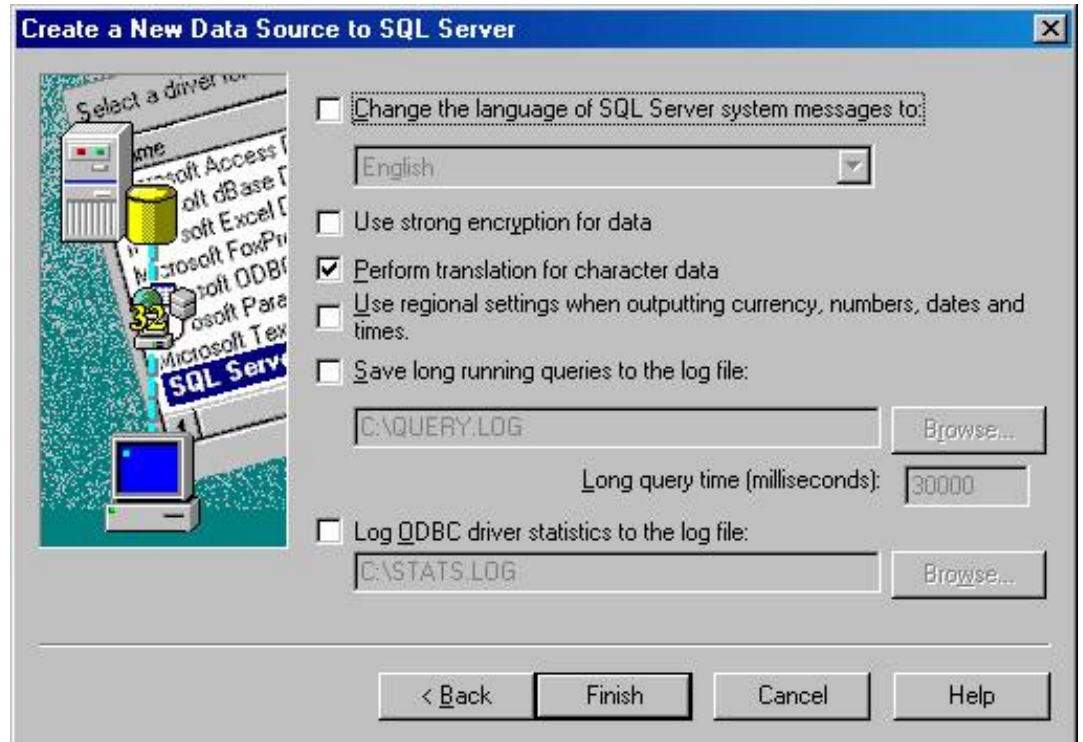
Press the **Next** button.

5

Create a New Data Source to SQL Server
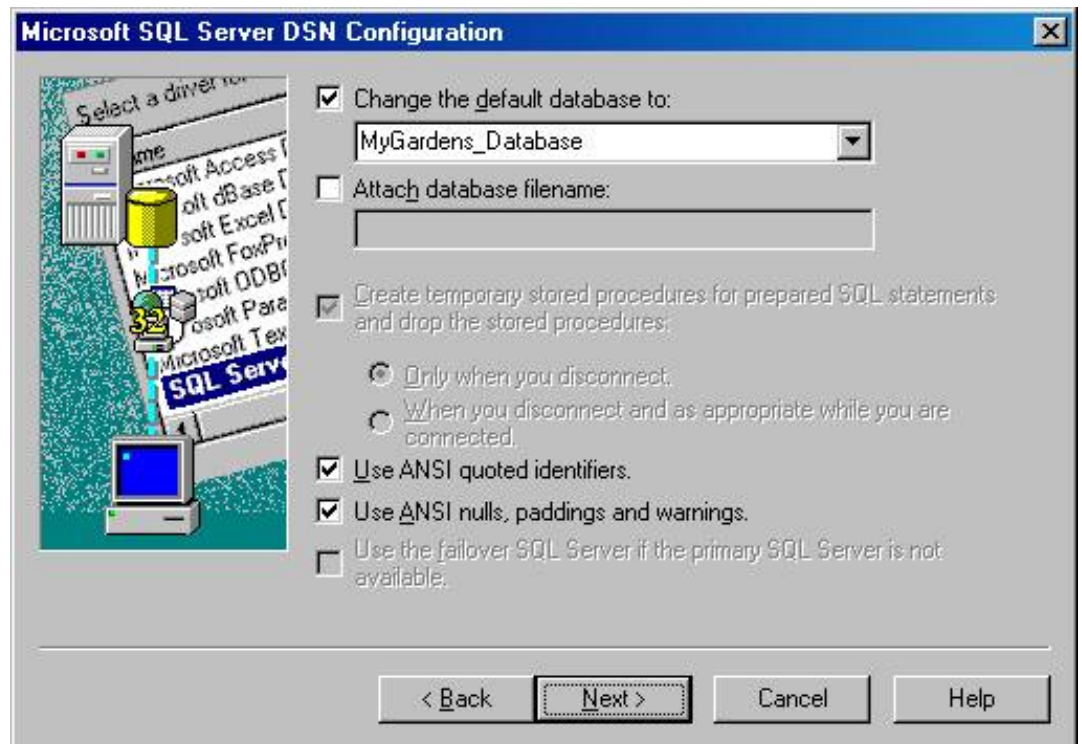
☑ Change the default database to:

master ▼

CBSampleDatabase
GAEA22_Database
master
MasterChecklist_Database
model

☐ ... statements and drop the stored procedures:

○ Only when you disconnect.
○ When you disconnect and as appropriate while you are connected.

☑ Use ANSI quoted identifiers.

☑ Use ANSI nulls, paddings and warnings.

☐ Use the failover SQL Server if the primary SQL Server is not available.

< Back   Next >   Cancel   Help

Leave all options on this screen as they are.

Press the **Finish** button.

6

Create a New Data Source to SQL Server

☐ Change the language of SQL Server system messages to:

English ▼

☐ Use strong encryption for data

☑ Perform translation for character data

☐ Use regional settings when outputting currency, numbers, dates and times.

☐ Save long running queries to the log file:

C:\QUERY.LOG   Browse...

Long query time (milliseconds): 30000

☐ Log ODBC driver statistics to the log file:

C:\STATS.LOG   Browse...

< Back   Finish   Cancel   Help

Press the **Test Data Source** button

7

ODBC Microsoft SQL Server Setup

A new ODBC data source will be created with the following configuration:

Microsoft SQL Server ODBC Driver Version 03.80.0194

Data Source Name: Penstemon
Data Source Description: My private collection
Server: GAIA\CompleatBotanica
Database: CBSampleDatabase
Language: (Default)
Translate Character Data: Yes
Log Long Running Queries: No
Log Driver Statistics: No
Use Integrated Security: No
Use Regional Settings: No
Prepared Statements Option: Drop temporary procedures on disconnect
Use Failover Server: No
Use ANSI Quoted Identifiers: Yes
Use ANSI Null, Paddings and Warnings: Yes
Data Encryption: No

Test Data Source...   OK   Cancel

Verify that the "Tests Completed Successfully."

Press the **OK** button.

8

SQL Server ODBC Data Source Test

Test Results

Microsoft SQL Server ODBC Driver Version 03.80.0194

Running connectivity tests...

Attempting connection
Connection established
Verifying option settings
Disconnecting from server

TESTS COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY!

OK

Use these instructions to test the validity of an existing ODBC data source. You may need to do this if the SQL Server Desktop Engine has been reinstalled, or if the data source name has gotten out of synchronization with the underlying database files.

Select the data source name to troubleshoot.

1

Press the **Configure** button
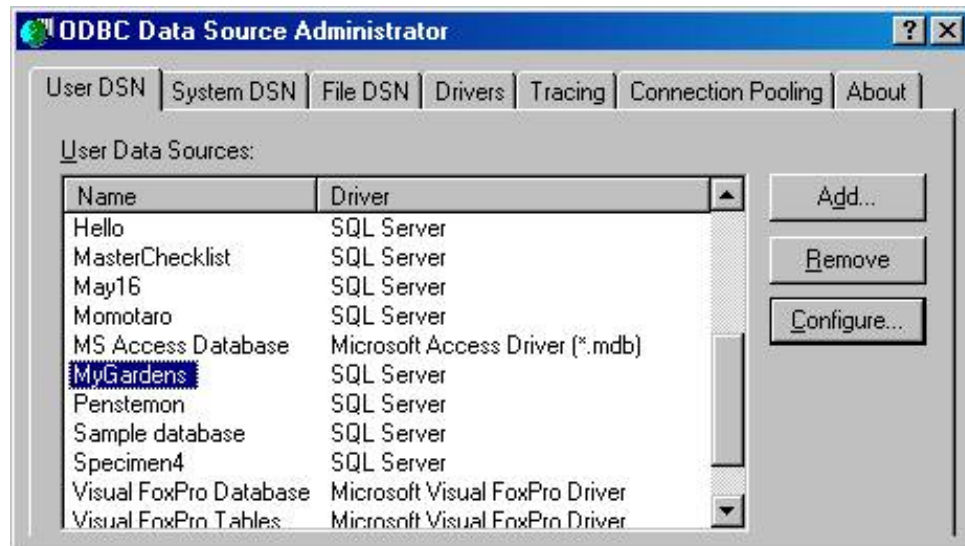
The **Name** is required.

The **Description** is optional.

Which SQL Server do you want to connect to? should be the SQL Server Desktop Engine with a name ending in "\CompleatBotanica"(The prefix is your computer name).

2
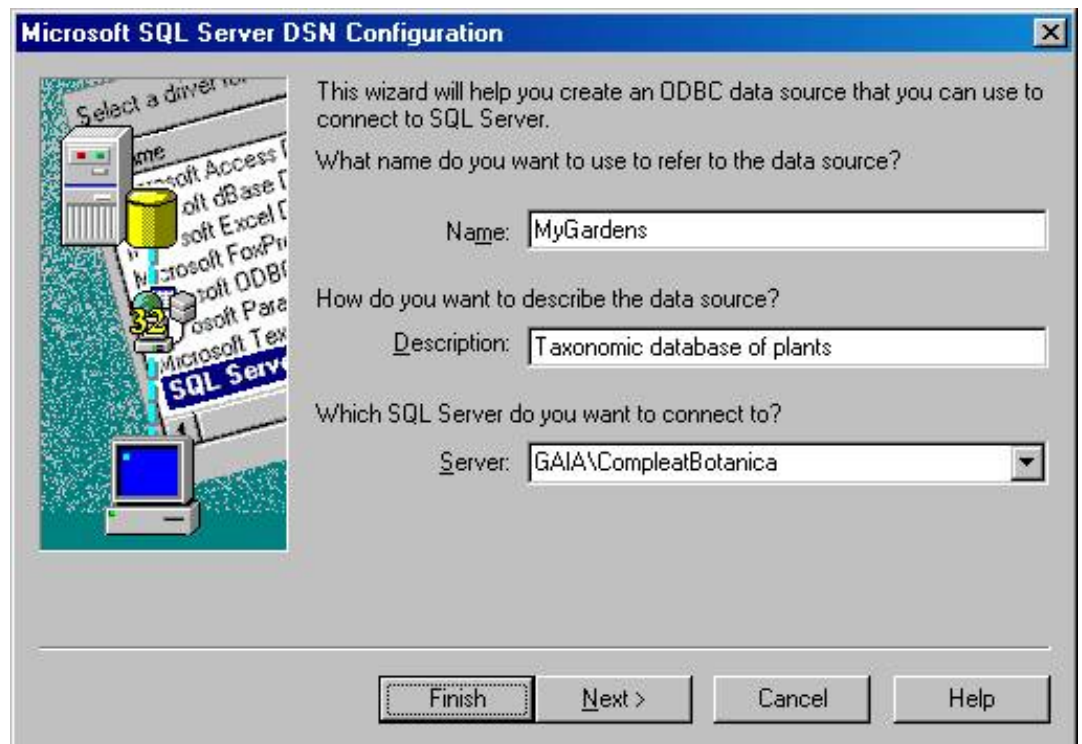
Press the **Next** button.

Ensure that the second button is selected – **"With SQL Server authentication using a login ID and password entered by the user."**

Ensure that the **Login ID** is "sa" (This is the System Administrator ID).

Ensure that the **Password** is empty.

Press the **Next** button.

3

Microsoft SQL Server DSN Configuration

How should SQL Server verify the authenticity of the login ID?

○ With Windows NT authentication using the network login ID.

⊙ With SQL Server authentication using a login ID and password entered by the user.

To change the network library used to communicate with SQL Server, click Client Configuration.

Client Configuration...

☑ Connect to SQL Server to obtain default settings for the additional configuration options.

Login ID: |sa

Password: |

< Back   Next >   Cancel   Help

Ensure that the box labeled: **"Change the default database to"** is checked.

Use the drop-drop combo-box to select the existing database that you are making this ODBC entry for.

Leave all other buttons on this screen at their default values.

Press the **Next** button.

4

Microsoft SQL Server DSN Configuration

☑ Change the default database to:

MyGardens_Database ▼

☐ Attach database filename:

☑ Create temporary stored procedures for prepared SQL statements and drop the stored procedures:

○ Only when you disconnect.

○ When you disconnect and as appropriate while you are connected.

☑ Use ANSI quoted identifiers.

☑ Use ANSI nulls, paddings and warnings.

☐ Use the failover SQL Server if the primary SQL Server is not available.

< Back   Next >   Cancel   Help

This message means that the database you've selected is no longer valid. You should delete this ODBC data source name and restore a backup copy of your database.

5

Microsoft SQL Server DSN Configuration ☒

The database entered is not valid

[OK]

Leave all options on this screen as they are.

6

Press the **Finish** button.

Microsoft SQL Server DSN Configuration ☒

☐ Change the language of SQL Server system messages to:

[English ▾]

☐ Use strong encryption for data

☑ Perform translation for character data

☐ Use regional settings when outputting currency, numbers, dates and times.

☐ Save long running queries to the log file:

[C:\QUERY.LOG] [Browse...]

Long query time (milliseconds): [30000]

☐ Log ODBC driver statistics to the log file:

[C:\STATS.LOG] [Browse...]

[< Back] [Finish] [Cancel] [Help]

7

Press the **Test Data Source** button.

ODBC Microsoft SQL Server Setup

A new ODBC data source will be created with the following configuration:

```
Microsoft SQL Server ODBC Driver Version 03.80.0194

Data Source Name: MyGardens
Data Source Description: Taxonomic database of plants
Server: GAIA\CompleatBotanica
Database: MasterChecklist_Database
Language: (Default)
Translate Character Data: Yes
Log Long Running Queries: No
Log Driver Statistics: No
Use Integrated Security: No
Use Regional Settings: No
Prepared Statements Option: Drop temporary procedures on
disconnect
Use Failover Server: No
Use ANSI Quoted Identifiers: Yes
Use ANSI Null, Paddings and Warnings: Yes
Data Encryption: No
```

Test Data Source...   **OK**   **Cancel**

Verify that the "Tests Completed Successfully."

Press the **OK** button.

8

SQL Server ODBC Data Source Test

Test Results

```
Microsoft SQL Server ODBC Driver Version 03.80.0194

Running connectivity tests...

Attempting connection
Connection established
Verifying option settings
Disconnecting from server

TESTS COMPLETED SUCCESSFULLY!
```

OK

Index to general usage topics

✚	The notes editor	Index to topics about the notes editor.	
✚	Focus dependent commands	Index to topics about the current focus.	
✚	Suggested data collection methods	Index to suggested data collection methods.	

Compleat Botanica - The notes editor

Index to the notes editor topics

ℹ️	**What's possible with the notes area**	The notes areas found on the Acquisition View and the Calendar View can contain general purpose descriptive text that just doesn't fit into any of the standard categories.
ℹ️	**Adding cross references to specimen in the notes area**	Sometimes when you're making a note about a specimen, you may want to mention another specimen in your collection.
ℹ️	**Limitations on the note fields**	The three notes fields (acquisition, nature, checklist) are modestly limited in the amount of text they can store.

Compleat Botanica - What's possible with the notes area

The notes areas found on the Acquisition View and the Calendar View can contain general purpose descriptive text that just doesn't fit into any of the standard categories. These notes can be enhanced with word processing-like features for selecting fonts and styles. In addition, you can insert hyperlinks from one specimen record to another -- see the document on Adding cross references to specimen in the notes area.

Nature notes

Cercis occidentalis

This genus is made up of small deciduous trees or shrubs. Their profuse clusters of pea-like flowers line the bare branches in spring.
The name *Redbud* comes from the neat pointed buds deeper in color than the flowers. The heart-shaped leaves are distinctive and delightful.

See Cercis canadensis
Cercis canadensis 'Forest Pansy'
Cercis canadensis var. texensis 'Oklahoma'

B *I* U ⬧ [▬▬▬▬ ▼] 𝒜𝓏 Comic Sans M ▼ •●● 9 points ▼

Use the **font style buttons** to change the selected text to bold, italics, and underlined	Use the **green leafed button** to add a hyperlink to another specimen	Use the **font color selector** to change the selected text color	Use the **font face selector** to change the selected text font	Use the **font size selector** to change the selected text size

B / U	🍃			

Font list:
- Az Tempus Sans
- Az Times New Ro
- Az Webdings
- Az Wide Latin
- Az Bradley Hand I
- Az Comic Sans MS
- Az Mistral AV
- Az Script
- Az Viner Hand ITC
- ✿ Adolescence
- ✿ Bermuda Solic
- ✿ Bookshelf Sym
- ✿ Falstaff Festiva
- ✿ Figaro MT
- ✿ KidTYPEPaint
- ✿ Marlett
- ✿ Monotype Sort
- ✿ MS Outlook

Az Arial

Point size list:
- 6 points
- 7 points
- 8 points
- 9 points
- 10 points
- ▶ 11 points
- 12 points
- 14 points
- 16 points
- 18 points
- 20 points
- 24 points
- 28 points
- 32 points
- 36 points
- 48 points
- 60 points
- 72 points

11 points

The font formatting applied to your notes is displayed only in the special rich-text note fields. No formatting is displayed in the Specimen List or on any printed report.

Compleat Botanica - Adding cross references to specimen in the notes area

Sometimes when you're making a note about a specimen, you may want to mention another specimen in your collection. For example, one specimen may be propagated from another specimen, or one specimen may have features which are compared to another specimen.

Follow this simple two-step process to create a hyperlink inside your notes area.

Pressing the green-leaf **Insert specimen link** button displays this list.

Acquisition notes

A. 'Ashford Red' is erect to spreading, evergreen shrub. Also obtained

B / U 🍃 [▬▬▬▬ ▼] | Az System ▼ | •• 10 p(▼
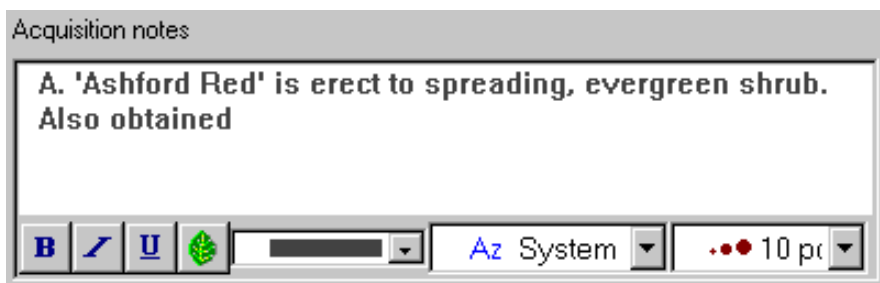
Pressing the **Add selections** button inserts a hypertext link into the notes area.

🔳 Select specimen   ☒

⊘ Features   ▼

Life cycle	Stature
Abutilon 'Ashford Red'	
🐞 Perennial	⊤ Shrub
Abutilon 'Bella mix'	
🐞 Perennial	⊤ Shrub
Acer macrophyllum	
🐞 Perennial	⊤ Shrub

☀ Add selections | ⏻ Close

Acquisition notes

A. 'Ashford Red' is erect to spreading, evergreen shrub. Also obtained **Abutilon 'Bella mix'** at the same time.

B / U 🍃 [▬▬▬ ▾] Az System ▾ •●● 10 p(▾
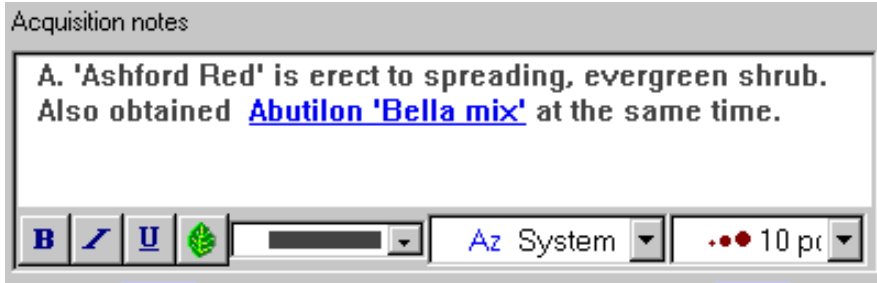
Now A. 'Ashford Red' is associated with A. 'Bella mix' and can be displayed by clicking on the blue hypertext link.

Note that the hypertext linking feature is not available on computers running Windows 98. Only computers with version 2.0 of the RichEdit control can use this feature.

Compleat Botanica - Limitations on the note fields

The five word processing-like document areas (garden, herbal medicine, horticulture, herbarium and checklist) are modestly limited in the amount of text they can store. This limit is approximately 8,000 characters. The exact size is determined by the amount of formatting applied to the notes. The total size of all text and formatting in a document must not exceed 8192 characters. If this limit is exceeded you may see the following message in the notes field:

Compleat Botanica - Focus dependent commands
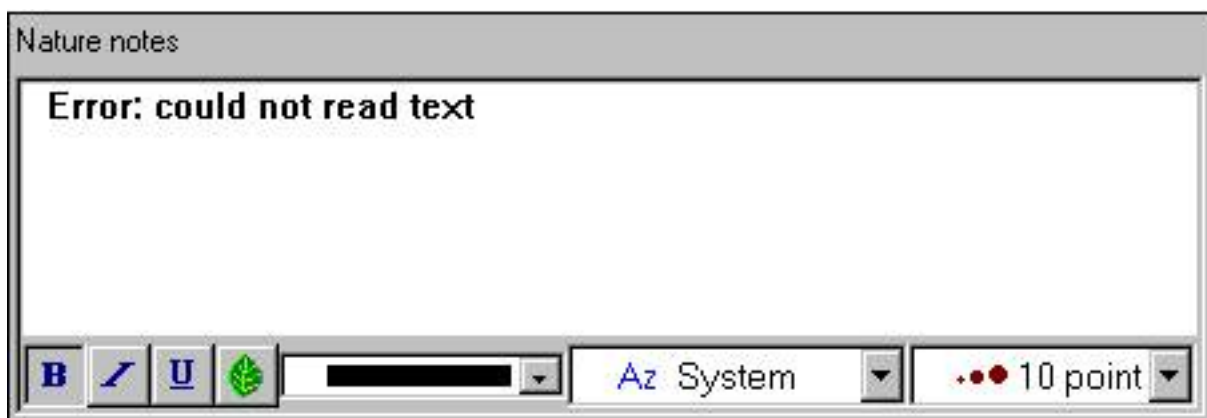
Index to topics about the current focus

What is the significance of the fancy borders?	Each view within The Compleat Botanica is framed with a fancy border. This border is more than just decorative. The view that is highlighted in blue has the "current focus"; the view that is shaded gray does not.
Dynamic file menu commands	File menu items that change depending upon the current focus.
Dynamic edit menu commands	Edit menu items that change depending upon the current focus.

Compleat Botanica - What is the significance of the fancy borders?

Each view within The Compleat Botanica is framed with a fancy border. This border is more than just decorative. The view that is highlighted in blue has the "current focus"; the view that is shaded gray does not.

This view has the focus . . .   This view does not . . .
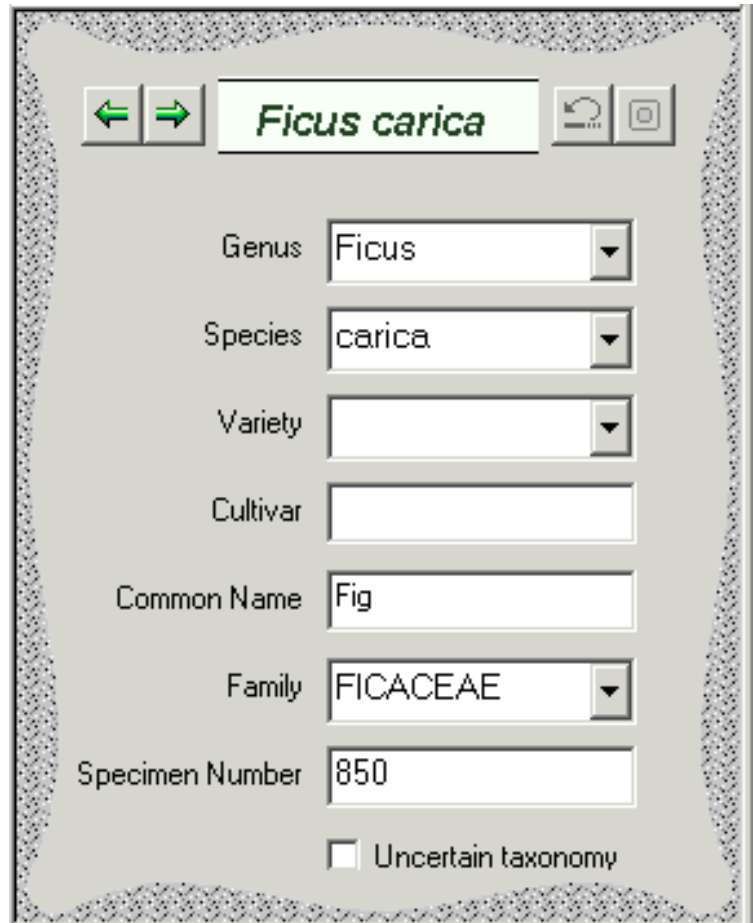
The view that has the current focus is the one that becomes the target of all Cut, Copy, Paste, and Find commands. Setting the focus to either the List view or the Detail view is automatic whenever you click within that window. To use your keyboard to switch focus, press down and hold the <Ctrl> key together with the left or right arrows.

Compleat Botanica - Dynamic file menu commands

Some of the file menu items perform different tasks depending on which view currently has the focus. This is true for the import, export and publish commands as well as all three print commands: print document, print report, and print tags.

The database commands are not affected by the current focus.

Import commands

Current view	Effect
Pathfinder	N/A
Specimen	Imports specimen
Filter	Imports filters
Vernacular	Imports common names
Checklist	Imports botanical names
Categories	Imports categories

Export commands
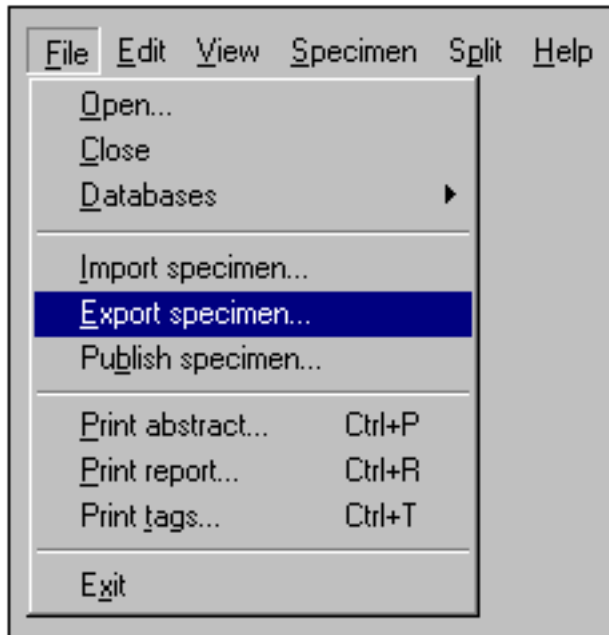
Current view	Effect
Pathfinder	N/A
Specimen	Exports specimen
Filter	Exports filters
Vernacular	Exports common names
Checklist	Exports botanical names
Categories	Exports categories

Publish command
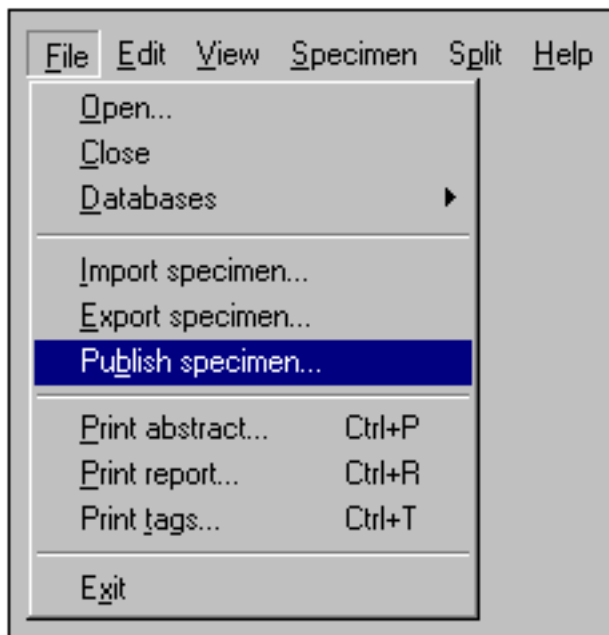
Current view	Effect
Pathfinder	N/A
Specimen	Publishes specimen
Filter	N/A
Vernacular	N/A
Checklist	N/A
Categories	N/A

Print document commands

Current view	Effect
Pathfinder	Prints the current Pathfinder document
Specimen abstract view	Prints the current abstract
Specimen gateway view	Prints the current Gateway document
All other Specimen views	N/A
Filter	N/A
Vernacular	N/A
Checklist	N/A
Categories	N/A

Print report commands

Current view	Effect
Pathfinder	N/A
Specimen	Prints a report based on the current filter
Filter	N/A
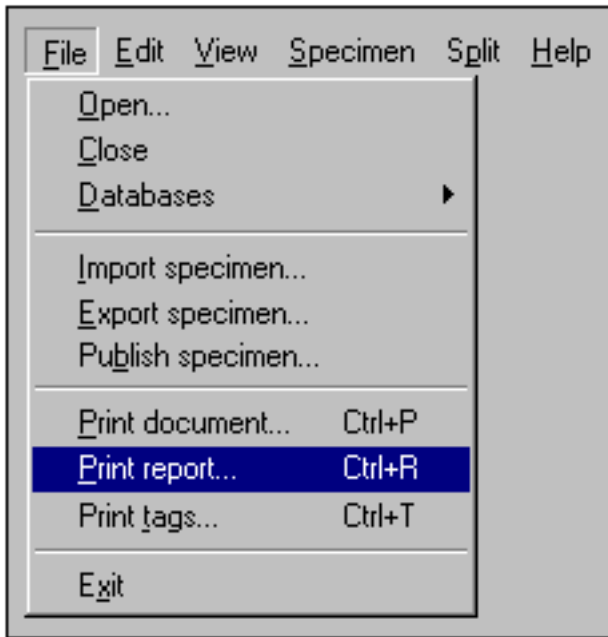
Vernacular	Prints a checklist report based on the currently selected taxonomic entry
Checklist	N/A
Categories	N/A

Print labels command
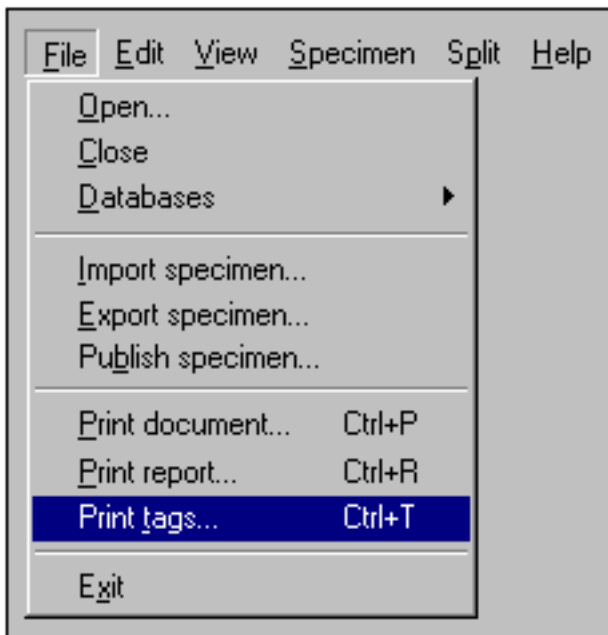
Current view	Effect
Pathfinder	N/A
Specimen	Prints labels for specimen in your collection
Filter	N/A
Vernacular	N/A
Checklist	N/A
Categories	N/A

Compleat Botanica - **Dynamic edit menu commands**

Some of the edit menu items perform different tasks depending on the current view. In particular you should note that the clipboard cut/ copy/paste commands and the find command operate in this chameleon-like manner.

Cut command
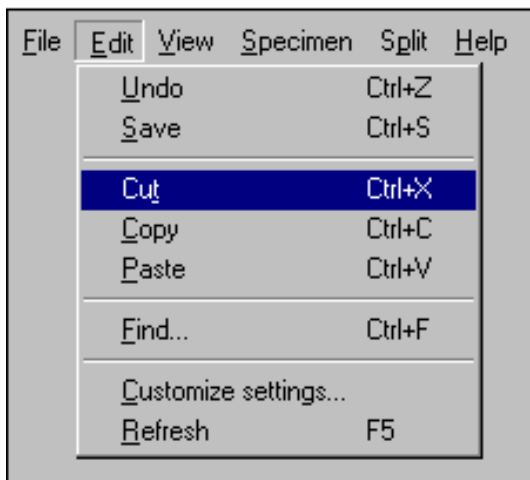
Current view	Left-hand side List view	Right-hand side Detail view
Pathfinder	N/A	N/A
Specimen	Deletes the selected specimen record(s)	Deletes the selected text of the item with the focus
Filter	Deletes the selected filter	Deletes the selected text of the item with the focus
Vernacular	Deletes the selected common name(s)	Deletes the selected text of the item with the focus
Checklist	Deletes the selected botanical name and all names lower in rank order	Deletes the selected text of the item with the focus
Category	Deletes the selected custom category	Deletes the selected text of the item with the focus

Copy command
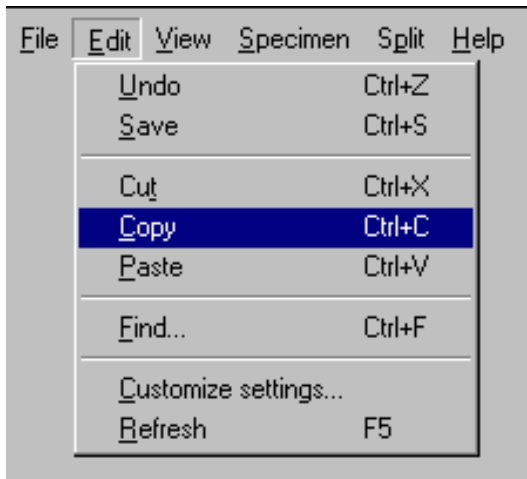
Current view	Left-hand side List view	Right-hand side Detail view
Pathfinder	N/A	N/A
Specimen	Copies the selected specimen record(s) to the clipboard	Copies the selected text of the item with the focus
Filter	Copies the selected filter to the clipboard	Copies the selected text of the item with the focus
Vernacular	Copies the selected common name(s) to the clipboard	Copies the selected text of the item with the focus
Checklist	Copies the selected botanical name and all names down **two ranks lower in order** to the clipboard	Copies the selected text of the item with the focus
Category	Copies the selected custom category to the clipboard, or if it is a high-level item copies all subordinate categories	Copies the selected text of the item with the focus

Paste command

Current view	Left-hand side List view	Right-hand side Detail view
Pathfinder	N/A	N/A
Specimen	Pastes specimen records from the clipboard	Pastes the current clipboard text into the item with the focus
Filter	Pastes filters from the clipboard	Pastes the current clipboard text into the item with the focus
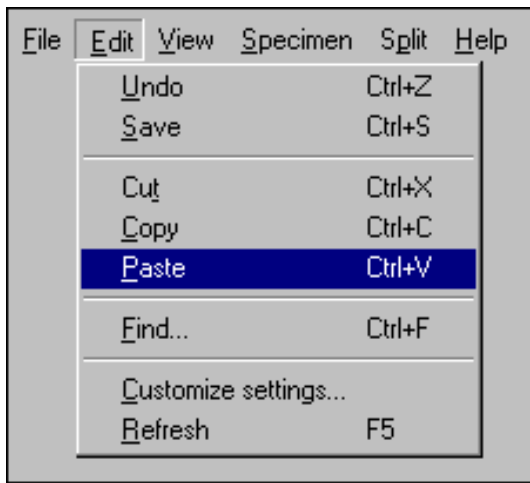
Vernacular	Pastes common names from the clipboard	Pastes the current clipboard text into the item with the focus
Checklist	Pastes a hierarchy of botanical names from the clipboard	Pastes the current clipboard text into the item with the focus
Category	Pastes a single custom category from the clipboard, or if available pastes a hierarchy of subordinate categories	Pastes the current clipboard text into the item with the focus

Find command
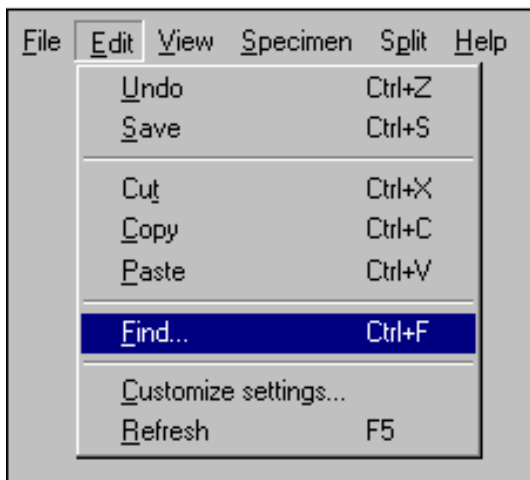
Current view	Effect
Pathfinder	N/A
Specimen	Searches all columns of the current specimen list (i.e. the current filter) for a specified text value
Filter	N/A
Vernacular	N/A
Checklist	Searches all ranks of the taxonomic checklist for a botanical name similar to the specified text value
Category	N/A

Note that the clipboard commands (cut/copy/paste) use the XML language standard for all operations involving the left-hand list view.

Index to suggested data collection methods

Choosing which data to collect	Each of us is interested in different things, so it's our choice when it comes to what data to collect and what to ignore.

Compleat Botanica - Choosing which data to collect

Each of us is interested in different things, so it's our choice when it comes to what data to collect and what to ignore. The Compleat Botanica has many different suggested categories of data, but filling in everything is not realistic for any of us.

As a starting point though, all of us need a common way to identify what we have. You'll want to carefully identify the genus and species in the Identification View. The botanical spell-checker will help you with this. There is no minimum set of fields that must be filled in. As your interests expand you can change which fields you use.

Here are some ideas for which categories to begin with:

Professional groups

Arborist: Record tree forms, life spans, fertilizer requirements, and best practices.

Conservation: Develop lists of native, endemic, and rare plants in a conservation area for informed management decisions.

Plant society: Develop regional flora to record exactly what can be found in the natural landscape -- from natives to exotics, from endemics to invasives.

Restoration: Record lists of suitable species for hillside erosion control projects, wetland edge projects, highway beautification projects, and the like.

Silviculturist: Record species data for optimal spacing, life span, and yield.

Wetland management: Develop checklists using the wetland indicator and wetland classification fields.

Botanical sciences

Botanist: Record descriptive keys for underground parts, wood, bark, leaves, inflorescences, fruits and more.

Ecology: Record symbiotic relationships, key indicator species, and plant communities for an area of study.

Ethnobotany: Record historical plant uses and plant lore for indigenous people.

Herbarium: Record sheet number, collector's name, collection location, collection date, and collection number for

herbarium specimen.

Horticulture: Record best conditions for optimal growth. Record propagation protocols, seed & pollen parents, and derivation methodologies.

Taxonomist: Organize supra-generic names based on your own research criteria. Cross check data on publication and author citations. Record notes on original names and synonyms.

🍃 Home economics

Cooking: Record preparation methods and parts used for both common and unusual fruits and vegetables, herbs and spices, and non-traditional food stuffs.

Dietician: Record and organize nutritional data such as proteins & fatty acids, vitamins & minerals, and trace elements for fruits, vegetables, leafy greens, grains and nuts.

Florist: Develop lists of flowers available by season and by best uses such as dried arrangements, floral bouquets, and so forth.

🍃 Gardening

Arboretum & Botanical Gardens: Create lists of plants in bloom for easy reference by your docents and visitors.

Flower gardening: Investigate flowering times, colors, and forms. Develop plans using height and spread. Compare climate suitability with USDA zones, water & sunshine requirements, or soil pH & texture.

Garden club: Organize club sales, member lists and exchanges, capture anecdotal information, print tags and data sheets.

Landscape architecture: Record lists of decorative plants by stature, suitability to location, compatibility to climate, price, availability, etc.

Nursery: Create placards to prominently feature plants. Develop lists of plants in bloom on a season by season basis. Use price codes or special prices fields for each record.

Vegetable gardening: Record best practices for your neighborhood, keep track of seed collections, develop year-over-year harvest data.

🍃 Specialties

Herbalist: Record traditional medicinal remedies, parts used, therapeutic actions, precautions, and poisonous indications.

Dye maker: Record the dyeing properties of plants including possible colors achieved and plant parts used.

Perfumer: Record fragrance descriptions, fragrance intensity, fragrance category, and plant parts used.

Photographer: Capture plant pictures and organize your photo album with proof sheets, zoom and pan, annotated picture printouts, and all of the sorting and categorizing tools of the software.

Agriculture

Agricultural Extensions: Record common pests and diseases, best cultivation practices, and probable yields.

Pomology: Record cultivation, pollination and propagation details and relate these details to yields, flavor & texture, or fruit & nut quality.

Index to keyboard/mouse topics

ℹ	**What's going on with the auto-save button?**	The auto-save button is located in the upper right corner of The Compleat Botanica.
ℹ	**Using the height and spread manipulator**	The height and spread of a specimen is displayed using an intuitive control that can be used to indicate both single values and value ranges.
ℹ	**Entering date ranges for bloom, harvest, hay fever and other interest**	The items for seasonal interests are shown in a date-range control. This date-range control can be manipulated using the "mouse-drag" operation.
ℹ	**Keyboard shortcuts**	Sometimes using the mouse to navigate from one place to another is distracting. If you're a touch-typist, you'll want to learn the keyboard shortcuts that can help you get from one part of The Compleat Botanica to another.

Compleat Botanica - **What's going on with the auto-save button?**

The auto-save button is located in the upper right corner of The Compleat Botanica.
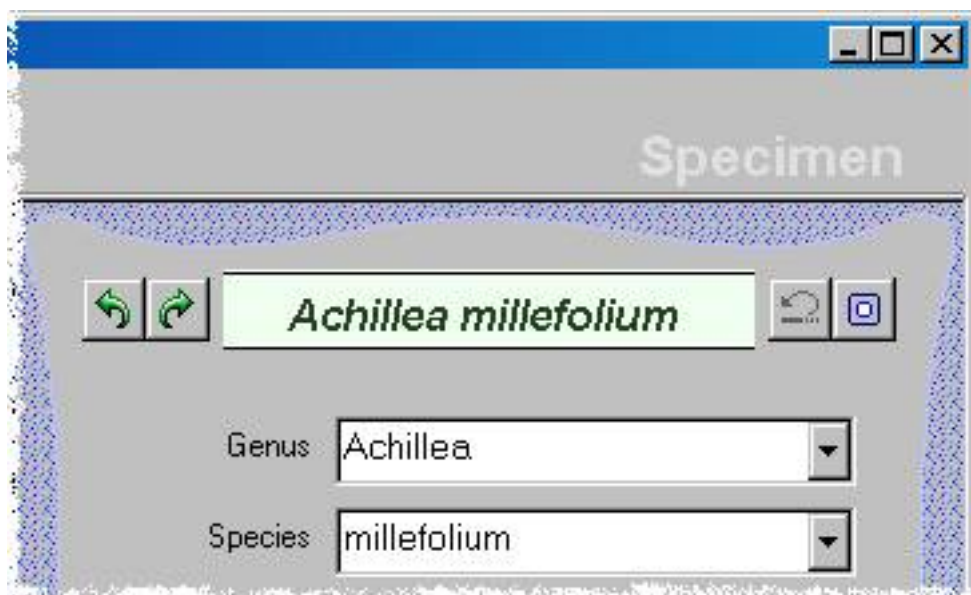
The auto-save button

Whenever any change is made to a specimen record, this button momentarily lights up. This is an indicator to you that you've made a change to the record. If you want to force these changes to be saved to the database immediately, just press the **auto-save** button. Normally however this explicit operation is not necessary because your changes are automatically saved to the database whenever you navigate to a new view.

A dimmed button is an indicator that everything has been saved.

This indicator status works the same way for the Filters, Checklist, and Category views as well.

Compleat Botanica - Using the height and spread manipulator

The height and spread of a specimen is displayed using an intuitive control that can be used to indicate both single values and value ranges.

To indicate single values for height or spread, simply click on the rule at the appropriate place.

Overall height
| – | | + |
0   10   20   30   40   50cm
20cm
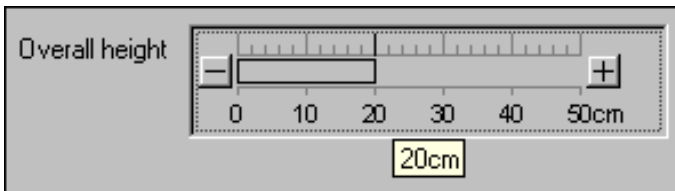
Use the "-" buttons to decrease the rule's scale.
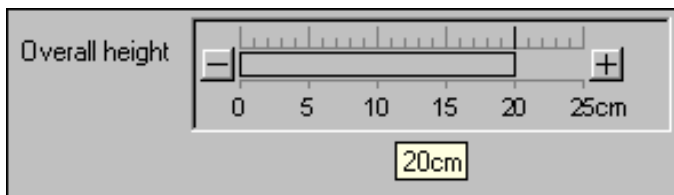
Use the "+" buttons to increase the rule's scale.

Overall height
| – | | + |
0   5   10   15   20   25cm
20cm

Overall height
| – | | + |
0   20   40   60   80   100cm
20cm
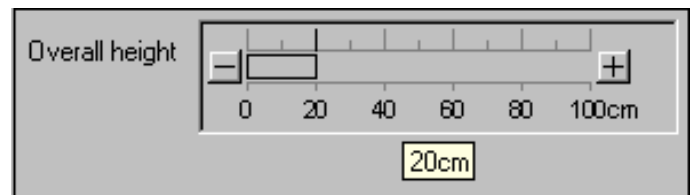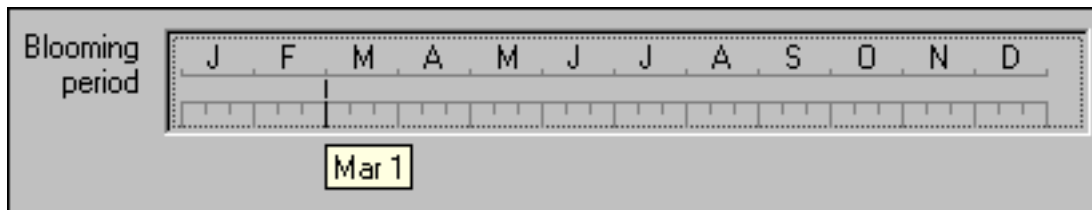
To indicate a range of values use the "mouse-drag" operation like this: position the mouse over the lower value and press down on the mouse button, then drag the mouse to the right until the ending value of the range is reached, then release the mouse button.

Overall height
| – | | + |
0   20   40   60   80   100cm
20cm - 40cm
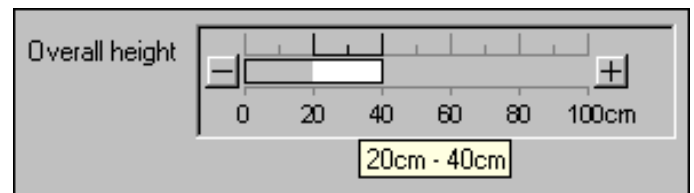
Compleat Botanica - Entering date ranges for bloom, harvest, hay fever and other interest

The items for seasonal interests are shown in a date-range control. This date-range control can be manipulated using the "mouse-drag" operation. Position the mouse over the starting date and press down; drag the mouse to the right; then release the mouse button when you've reached the ending date.
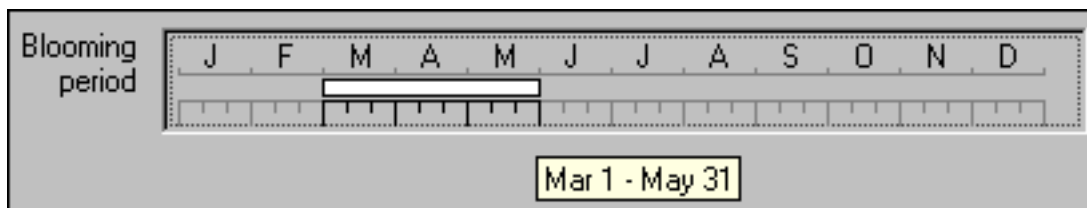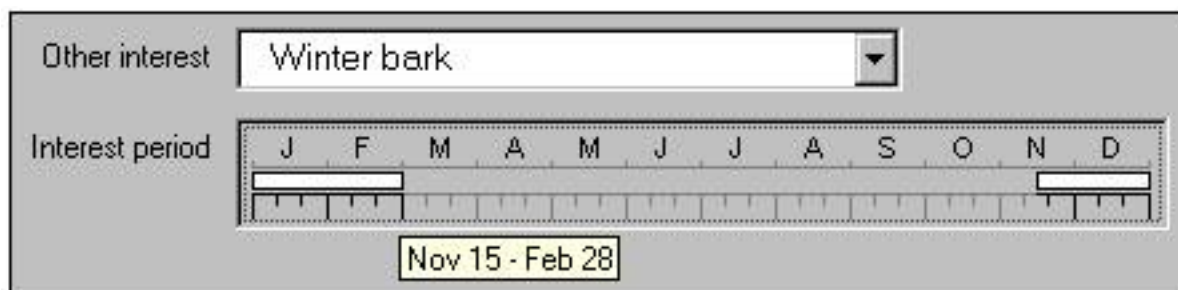
To specify a date-range that spans the end of the year, simply drag the mouse left instead of right.

Compleat Botanica - Keyboard shortcuts

Sometimes using the mouse to navigate from one place to another is distracting. If you're a touch-typist, you'll want to learn the keyboard shortcuts that can help you get from one part of The Compleat Botanica to another.

Key combination	Command
<Ctrl> <page up>	Go to previous page
<Ctrl> <page down>	Go to next page
<Ctrl> <left>	Switch to left pane
<Ctrl> <right>	Switch to right pane
<Ctrl> F	Find
<Ctrl> X	Cut and place on clipboard
<Ctrl> C	Copy to clipboard
<Ctrl> V	Paste from clipboard
<Ctrl> P	Print
<Ctrl> T	Print tags

F5	Refresh
<Alt> <left>	Go back one page in the Pathfinder
<Alt> <right>	Go forward one page in the Pathfinder

Compleat Botanica - Charts

Index to chart topics

The RHS color chart numbering system	The three fields for describing the colors of leaves and flowers use the Royal Horticultural Society's color numbering system.
Soil texture and the Bienz Soil Chart	The twelve soil textures used in The Compleat Botanica come from the Bienz Soil Chart published by the United States Department of Agriculture.
USDA plant hardiness zone map	The United States Department of Agriculture's plant hardiness zones were originally developed in 1960 with the assistance of the American Horticultural Society.

Compleat Botanica - The RHS color chart numbering system

The fields for describing the colors of leaves, flowers, bark, dyes, and other interest use either the Royal Horticultural Society's color numbering system or common names.

First developed in 1966, the RHS system uses a set of "paint chips" each with a small hole in the center. The color strip is placed over the leaf or blossom and is matched by peering through the hole. In all there are 884 different colors arranged in four fans. Growers, registration authorities, and specialist organizations use these colors to precisely describe plants.

> Note that the colors shown on your monitor are only approximations of the true RHS color.

The alternative to using RHS colors is to use the less precise, but much more imaginative system of common color names. You can use the category view to define you own color names or you can use the basic or expanded set of names supplied with the software.

Compleat Botanica - Soil texture and the Bienz Soil Chart

The twelve principal soil textures used in The Compleat Botanica come from the Bienz Soil Chart published by the United States Department of Agriculture.
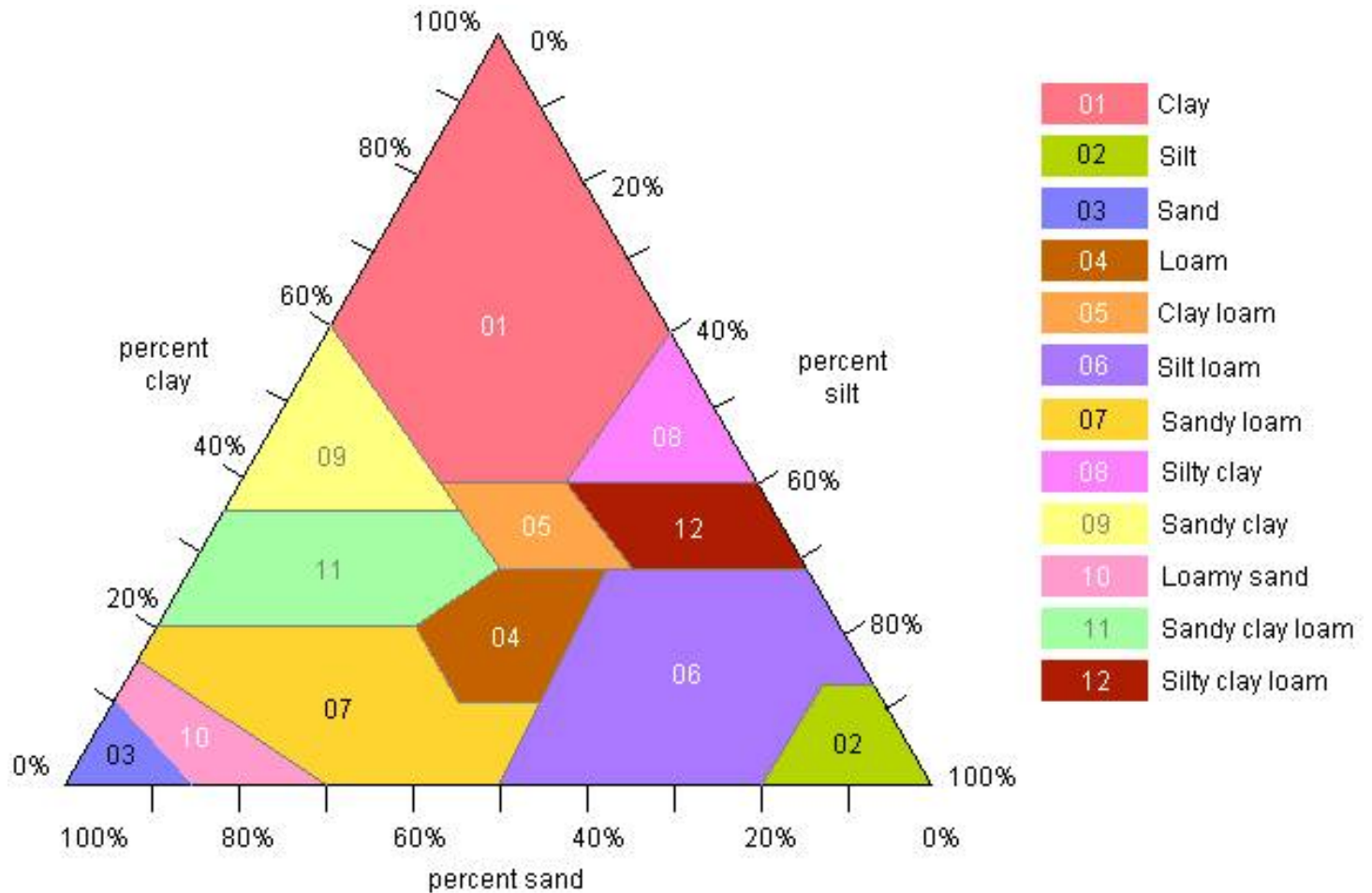
sand	particles more than 0.05 mm in diameter
silt	particles between 0.002 mm and 0.05 mm in diameter
clay	particles less than 0.002 mm in diameter
loam	equal amounts of sand, silt, and clay particles along with humus, water, and air.

In addition to the twelve Bienz soil textures, many horticulture and garden books use a less precise set of soil types. These are listed as numbers 20 through 31 in the chart below.

00	Various
01	Clay
02	Silt
03	Sand
04	Loam
05	Clay loam
06	Silt loam
07	Sandy loam
08	Silty clay
09	Sandy clay
10	Loamy sand
11	Sandy clay loam
12	Silty clay loam
20	Light
21	Heavy
22	Fertile
23	Rich
24	Bog
25	Organic
26	Average
27	Loose
28	Poor
29	Sandy
30	Gravelly
31	Rocky

Compleat Botanica - USDA plant hardiness zone map

The United States Department of Agriculture's plant hardiness zones were originally developed in 1960 with the assistance of the American Horticultural Society. The original 11 zones became synonymous with "mean minimum temperature" because the zones were stratified by increments of ten degrees Fahrenheit, and were identified with the average lowest winter temperature for a geographic region. In fact, the original basis for the zones was latitude and longitude with local variances applied for wind, snow, winter sunshine, humidity and soil.

The zones were updated in 1990 splitting each of zones 2 through 10 into an upper and lower half, labeled "a" and "b", which were assigned five degree Fahrenheit increments in the legend. This latest version of the map is based on lowest recorded temperatures in the United States and Canada between 1974 and 1986; and the lowest recorded temperatures in Mexico between 1971 and 1984.

The zone ratings in practice are used to indicate not just mere survival of a plant species, but excellent adaptability of the species to the climate.

USDA Plant Hardiness Zone Map

Compleat Botanica - Customizing the software
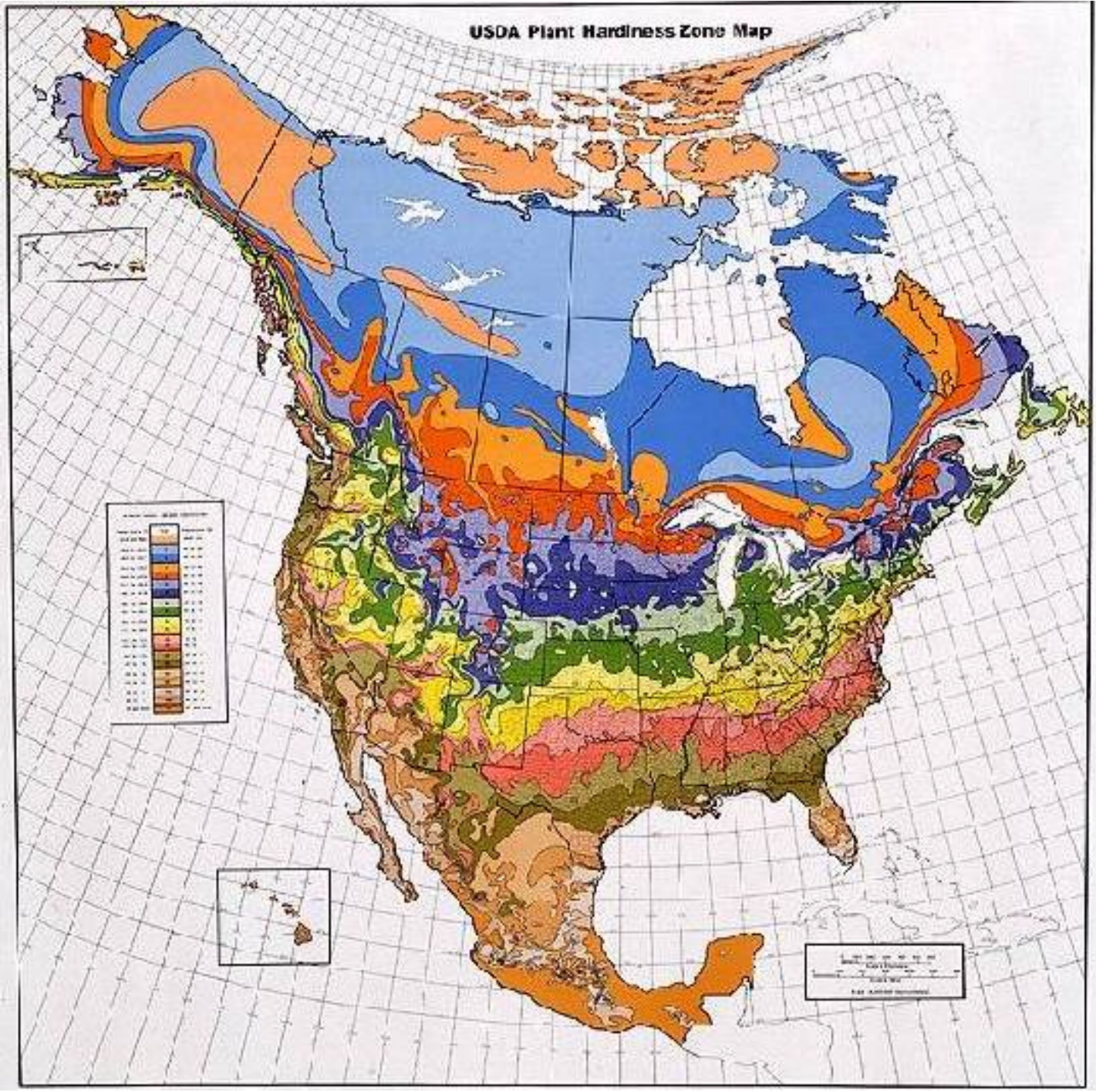
Index to customizing topics

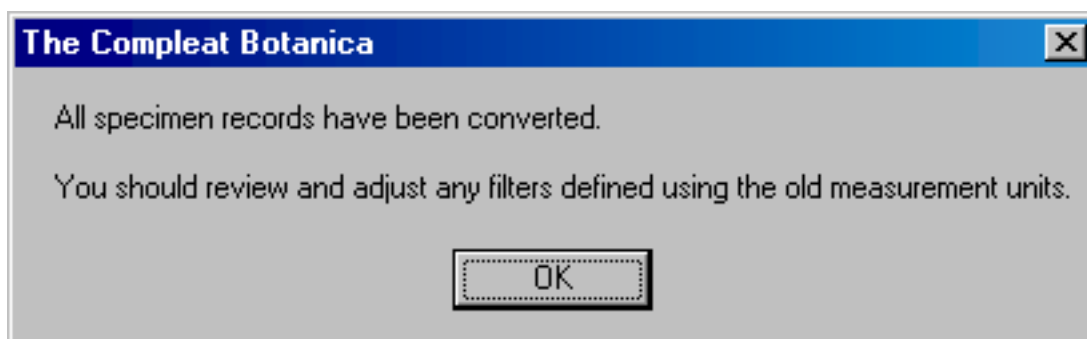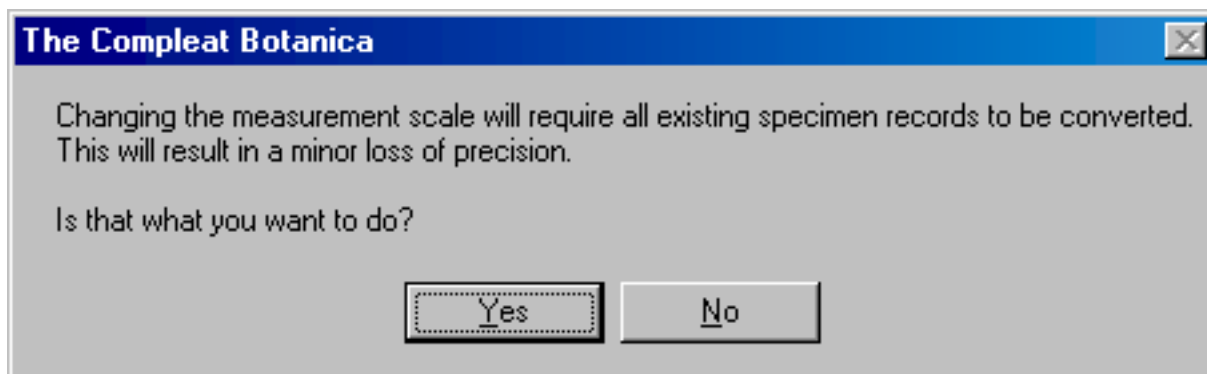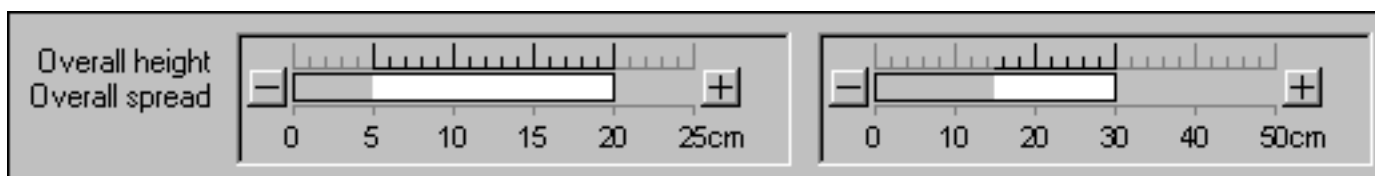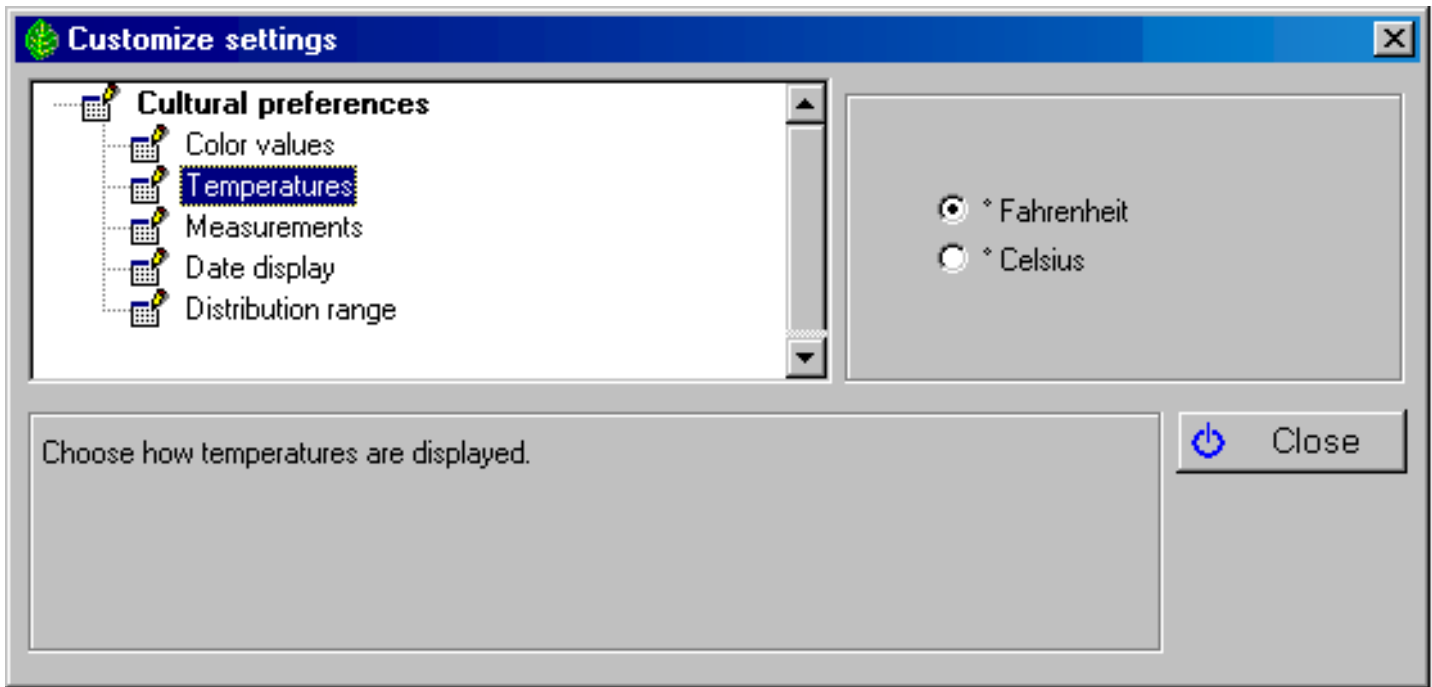|	
Customizing the appearance of the software	There are several options for customizing the appearance of The Compleat Botanica.
Choosing measurement units for database entries	When you first install The Compleat Botanica, measurements for height and spread use US Customary units (inches and feet). If you prefer, you can change this to the metric system (centimeters and meters).
Choosing measurement units for reports and labels	Printing units can be either metric or US Customary units.
Switching between Fahrenheit and Celsius scales	When The Compleat Botanica is first installed, the temperature scale for USDA hardiness zones is set to Fahrenheit. If you want to use Celsius instead you can make the switch in the Customize Settings window.
Changing the display format for dates	We all have different customs when it comes to abbreviating dates.
Formatting specimen numbers	The Compleat Botanica is designed to automatically generate unique specimen numbers whenever you create a new record.
Changing the specimen list font size	As an aid in making it more comfortable to use The Compleat Botanica, you can increase the size of the font used in the Specimen List.

ℹ️	**Changing the window color scheme**	As the seasons progress and your mood changes, you may like to change the color scheme used for The Compleat Botanica's windows.
ℹ️	**Choosing which color values to use**	You can choose to use common names or Royal Horticultural Society color chart numbers in each of the color value columns.
ℹ️	**Changing the list of distribution codes**	If you are collecting and recording species distribution data, you'll want to customize which codes appear in the distribution column.

Compleat Botanica - Customizing the appearance of the software

There are several options for customizing the appearance of The Compleat Botanica. If you want to change the color scheme or font size of the windows look here for more information:

*   [Changing the window color scheme](#)

*   [Changing the specimen list font size](#)

*   [Initial record limit](#)

If you want to change the way temperatures, measurements, colors and dates are displayed look here for more information:

*   [Switching between Fahrenheit and Celsius scales](#)

*   [Choosing measurement units for database entries](#)

*   [Choosing measurement units for reports and labels](#)

*   [Choosing which color values to use](#)

*   [Changing the display format for dates](#)

*   [Changing the list of distribution codes](#)

If you want to modify the way new specimen numbers are formatted look here for more information:

* [Formatting specimen numbers](#)

If you want to change the way family names are shown look here for more information:

* [Family name endings](#)

If you want to change the location of your picture files look here for more information:

* [Setting the default picture directory](#)

If you want to change the contents and appearance of items in the Abstract View look here:

* [How do I customize the Abstract View](#)

Compleat Botanica **- Choosing measurement units for database entries**

When you first install The Compleat Botanica, measurements for height and spread use US Customary units (inches and feet).
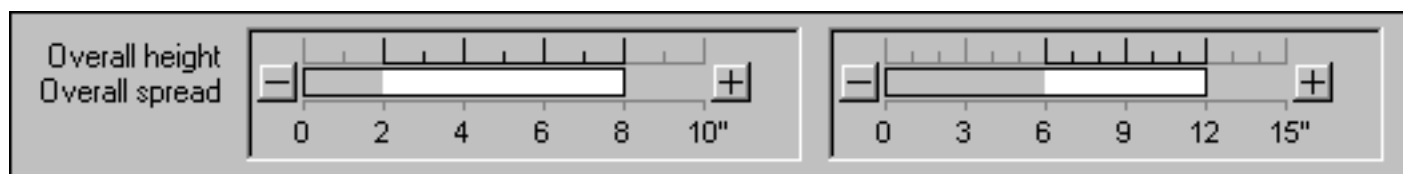
If you prefer, you can change this to the metric system (millimeters, centimeters and meters). To do this, go to the Customize settings window.
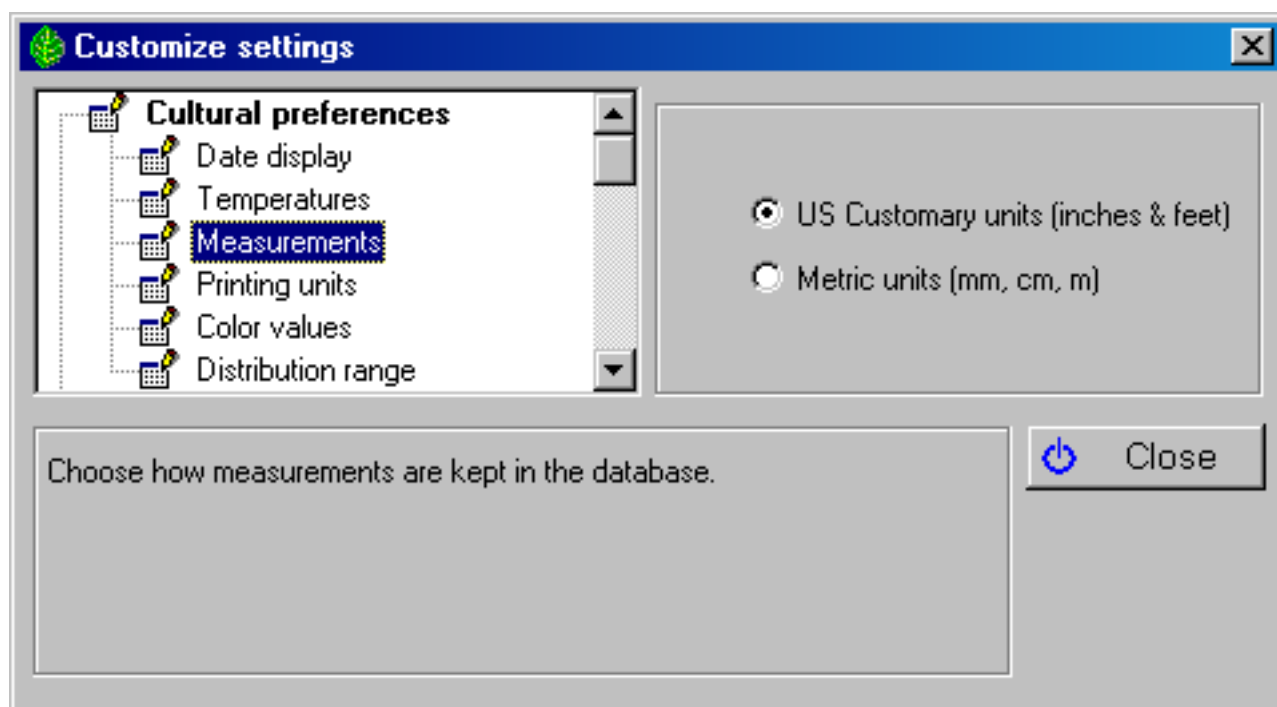
Note that all existing specimen records will be converted and that this conversion, while accurate in one direction, is not reversible. For example, converting 6" from US Customary to metric will result in 15cm, but converting 15cm from metric to US Customary will result in 5" .

The Compleat Botanica ✕

Changing the measurement scale will require all existing specimen records to be converted. This will result in a minor loss of precision.

Is that what you want to do?

[Yes]   [No]

The Compleat Botanica ✕

All specimen records have been converted.

You should review and adjust any filters defined using the old measurement units.

[OK]

Here is what the converted height and spread will look like:

Overall height
Overall spread

─│ ┃━━━━━━━━━━━┃ ┃＋│
0   5   10   15   20   25cm

─│ ┃━━━━━━━━━━━┃ ┃＋│
0   10   20   30   40   50cm

Compleat Botanica - Choosing measurement units for reports and labels

When you print labels or reports for the first time, you are prompted to choose which type of units to use for specifying dimensions.
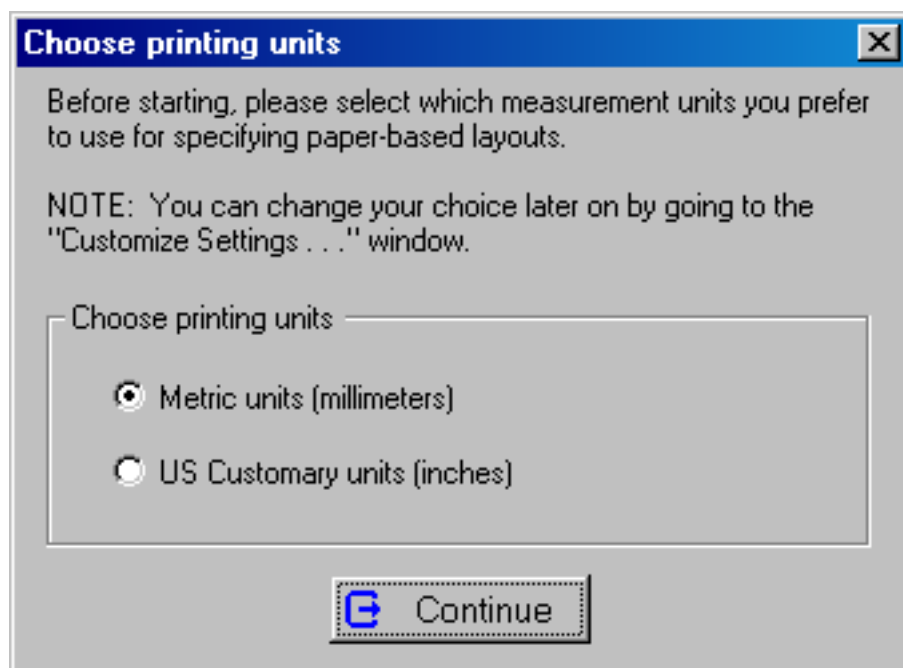
This choice can be made again at a later time using the **Printing units** option under **Cultural preferences**.

This choice is used by both report definitions and the label format editor. New reports and labels that you create will start with either ISO "A4" or Amerian "Letter" dimensions based on this choice.

Width:

210.0 mm

Height:

297.0 mm

Width:

8 1/2"
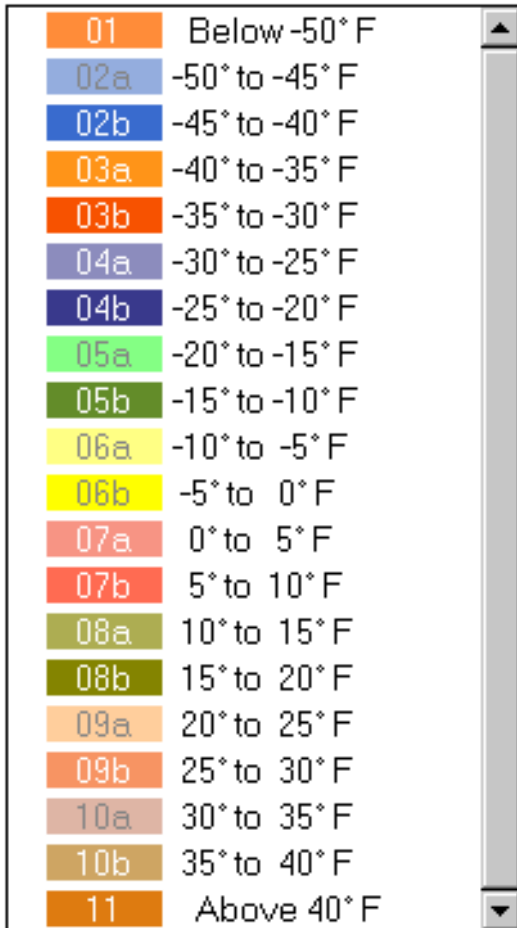
Height:

11"

Compleat Botanica - Switching between Fahrenheit and Celsius scales

When The Compleat Botanica is first installed, the temperature scale for USDA hardiness zones is set to Fahrenheit.

01	Below -50° F
02a	-50° to -45° F
02b	-45° to -40° F
03a	-40° to -35° F
03b	-35° to -30° F
04a	-30° to -25° F
04b	-25° to -20° F
05a	-20° to -15° F
05b	-15° to -10° F
06a	-10° to -5° F
06b	-5° to 0° F
07a	0° to 5° F
07b	5° to 10° F
08a	10° to 15° F
08b	15° to 20° F
09a	20° to 25° F
09b	25° to 30° F
10a	30° to 35° F
10b	35° to 40° F
11	Above 40° F

If you want to use Celsius instead you can make the switch in the Customize Settings window.

Customize settings

- **Cultural preferences**
  - Color values
  - **Temperatures**
  - Measurements
  - Date display
  - Distribution range

- ( ) ° Fahrenheit
- ( ) ° Celsius

Choose how temperatures are displayed.

Close

Now the USDA hardiness zones will look like this:

Zone	Temperature
01	Below -46° C
02a	-46° to -43° C
02b	-43° to -40° C
03a	-40° to -37° C
03b	-37° to -34° C
04a	-34° to -32° C
04b	-32° to -29° C
05a	-29° to -26° C
05b	-26° to -23° C
06a	-23° to -21° C
06b	-21° to -18° C
07a	-18° to -15° C
07b	-15° to -12° C
08a	-12° to -10° C
08b	-10° to -7° C
09a	-7° to -4° C
09b	-4° to -1° C
10a	-1° to 2° C
10b	2° to 5° C
11	Above 5° C

Compleat Botanica - **Changing the display format for dates**

We all have different customs when it comes to abbreviating dates. You can specify how dates should be shown by using the Customize settings window.
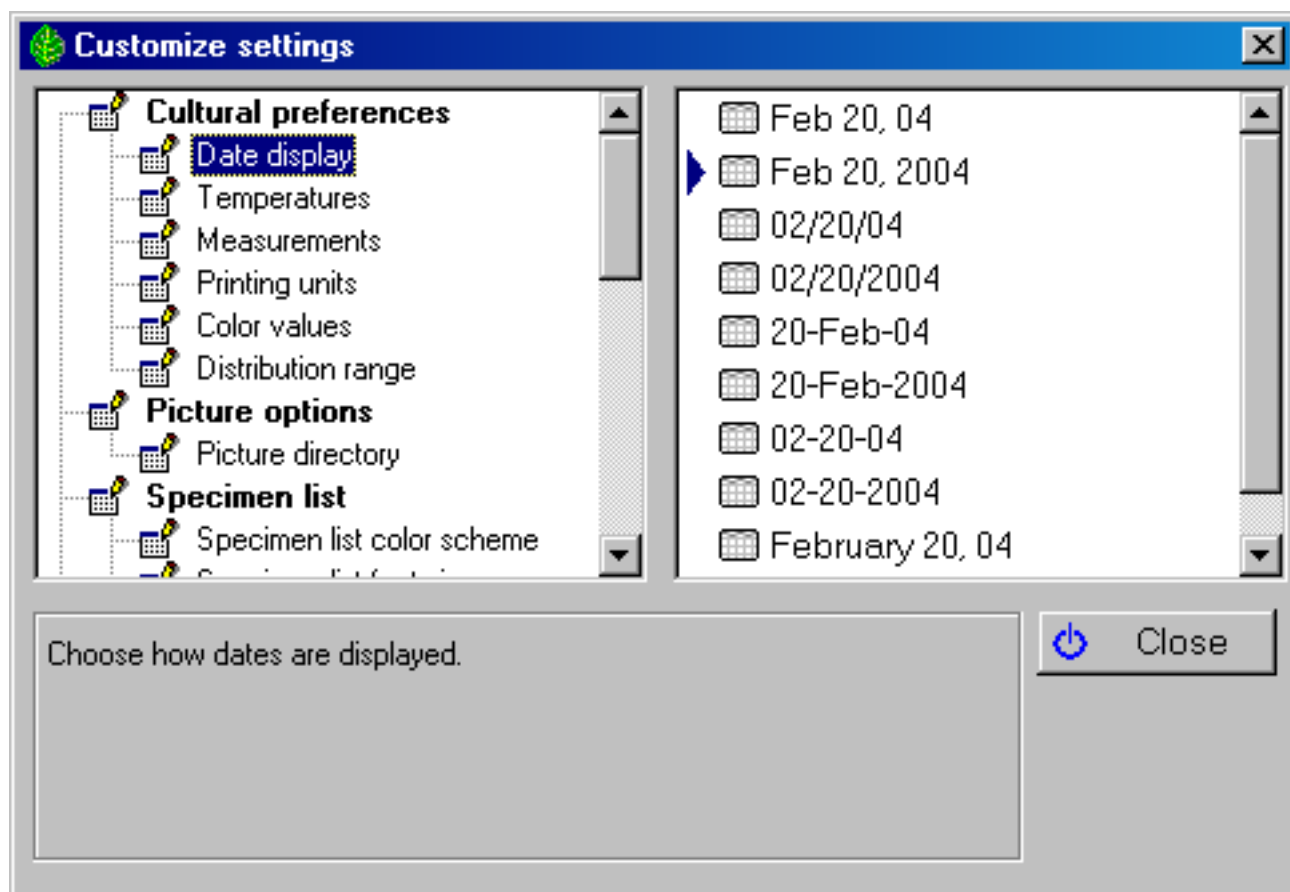
Here's a sample of the result.
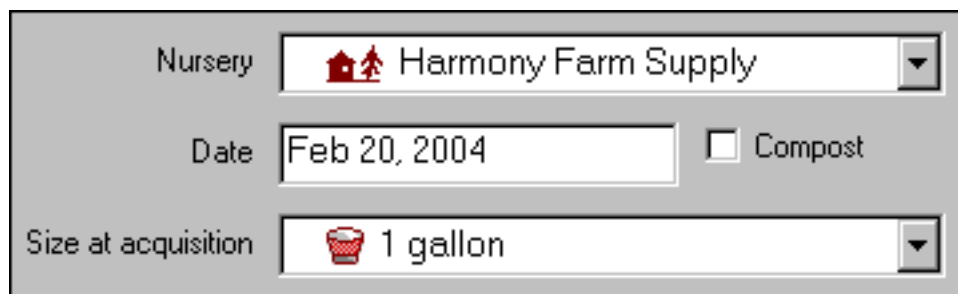
Compleat Botanica - Formatting specimen numbers

The Compleat Botanica is designed to automatically generate unique specimen numbers whenever you create a new record. Note that some herbaria use the term "accession number" instead of "specimen number". These terms have the same meaning in The Compleat Botanica.

You have some flexibility in how these numbers are assigned and formatted. Using the Customize settings window you can specify how the numbers are to be formatted.

Type any prefix or suffix you want attached to all new specimen numbers here.
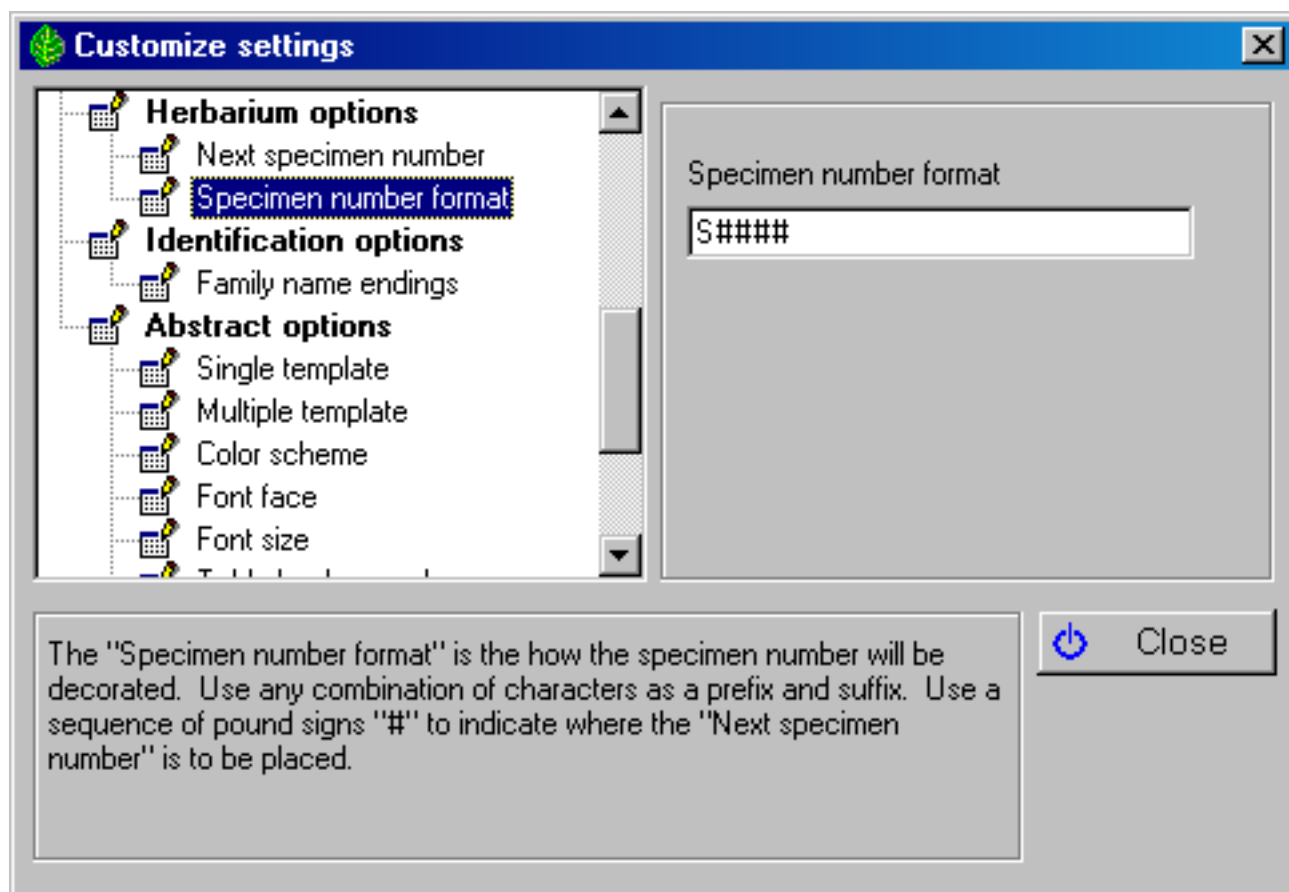
Use a sequence of pound signs "#" to indicate where you want the "Next specimen number" to be inserted.

Note that the total length of the specimen number including any prefix or suffix is limited to 20 characters.

Use the "Next specimen number" option to specify the unique portion of the specimen number. This is the portion that will automatically be incremented with each new record.

Compleat Botanica - Changing the specimen list font size
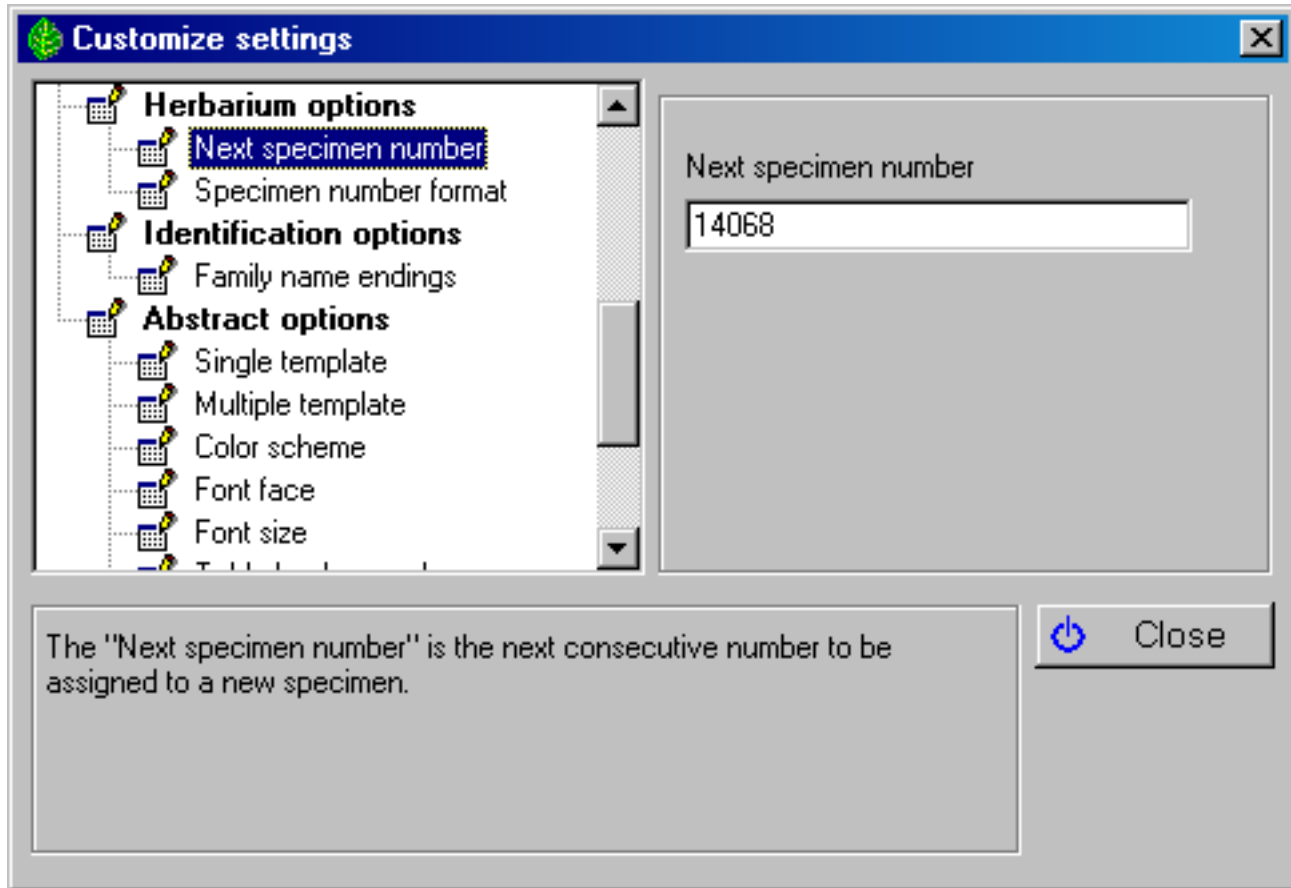
As we age it becomes a bit more stressful on our eyes to read tiny print. As an aid in making it more comfortable to use The Compleat Botanica, you can increase the size of the font used in the Specimen List. Use the Customize setting window to do this:
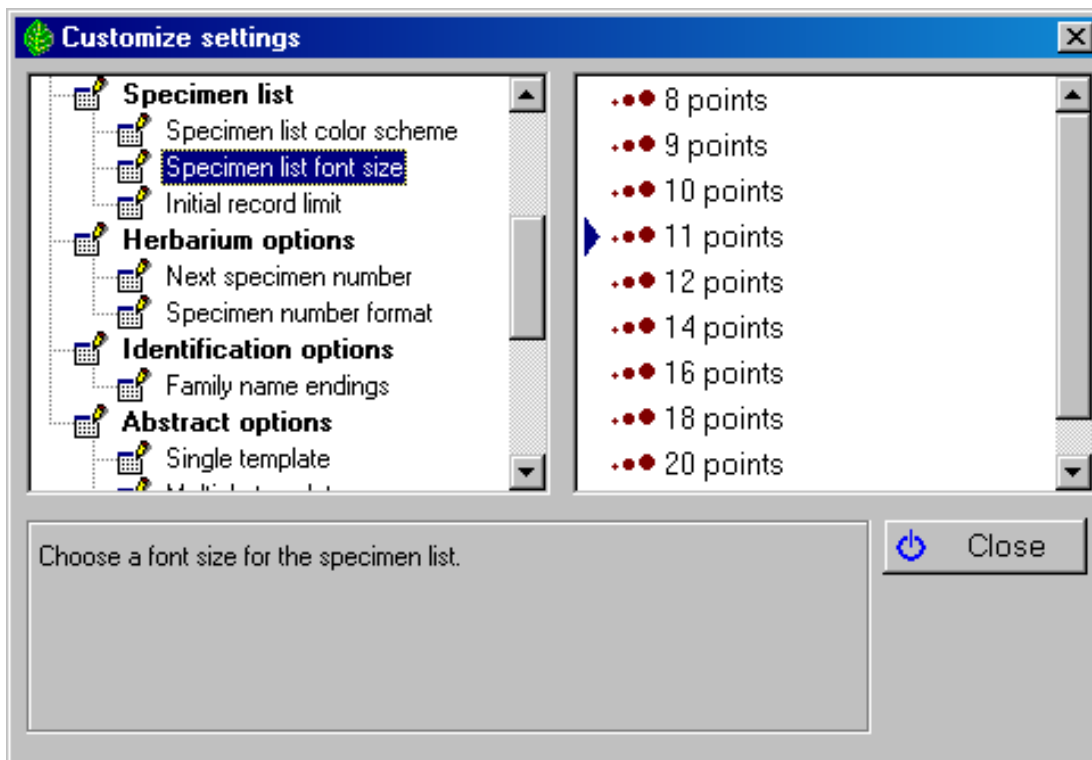
The smallest font is 8 points

⚠	USDA Zones	⚠ Sunshine	Desirable qualities
Acer macrophyllum			
	03b 11 Zones 03b-11	☀ Full sun	Tolerates wind
Acer palmatum 'Butterfly'			
	05a 11 Zones 05a-11	☀☀ Partial sun or shade	Shade tolerant
Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'			
	05a 11 Zones 05a-11	☀☀ Partial sun or shade	Attractive winter bark
Acer palmatum 'Oshio Beni'			
	05a 11 Zones 05a-11	☀☀ Partial sun or shade	Autumn foliage
Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'			
	05a 11 Zones 05a-11	☀☀ Partial sun or shade	Autumn foliage
Acer palmatum var. atropurpureum			
	05a 11 Zones 05a-11	☀☀ Partial sun or shade	Autumn foliage

The largest font is 24 points

Botan...	USDA Zones	Sunshine

Acer macrophyllum
| 03b | 11 | Zones 03b-11 | ☀ Full sun |

Acer palmatum 'Butterfly'
| 05a | 11 | Zones 05a-11 | ☀ Partial sun or shade |

Acer palmatum 'Mizu Kuguri'
| 05a | 11 | Zones 05a-11 | ☀ Partial sun or shade |

Acer palmatum 'Oshio Beni'
| 05a | 11 | Zones 05a-11 | ☀ Partial sun or shade |

Acer palmatum 'Sangokaku'
| 05a | 11 | Zones 05a-11 | ☀ Partial sun or shade |

Acer palmatum var. *atropurpureum*
| 05a | 11 | Zones 05a-11 | ☀ Partial sun or shade |

Compleat Botanica - Changing the window color scheme

As the seasons progress and your mood changes, you may like to change the color scheme used for The Compleat Botanica's windows. Do this using the Customize settings window:
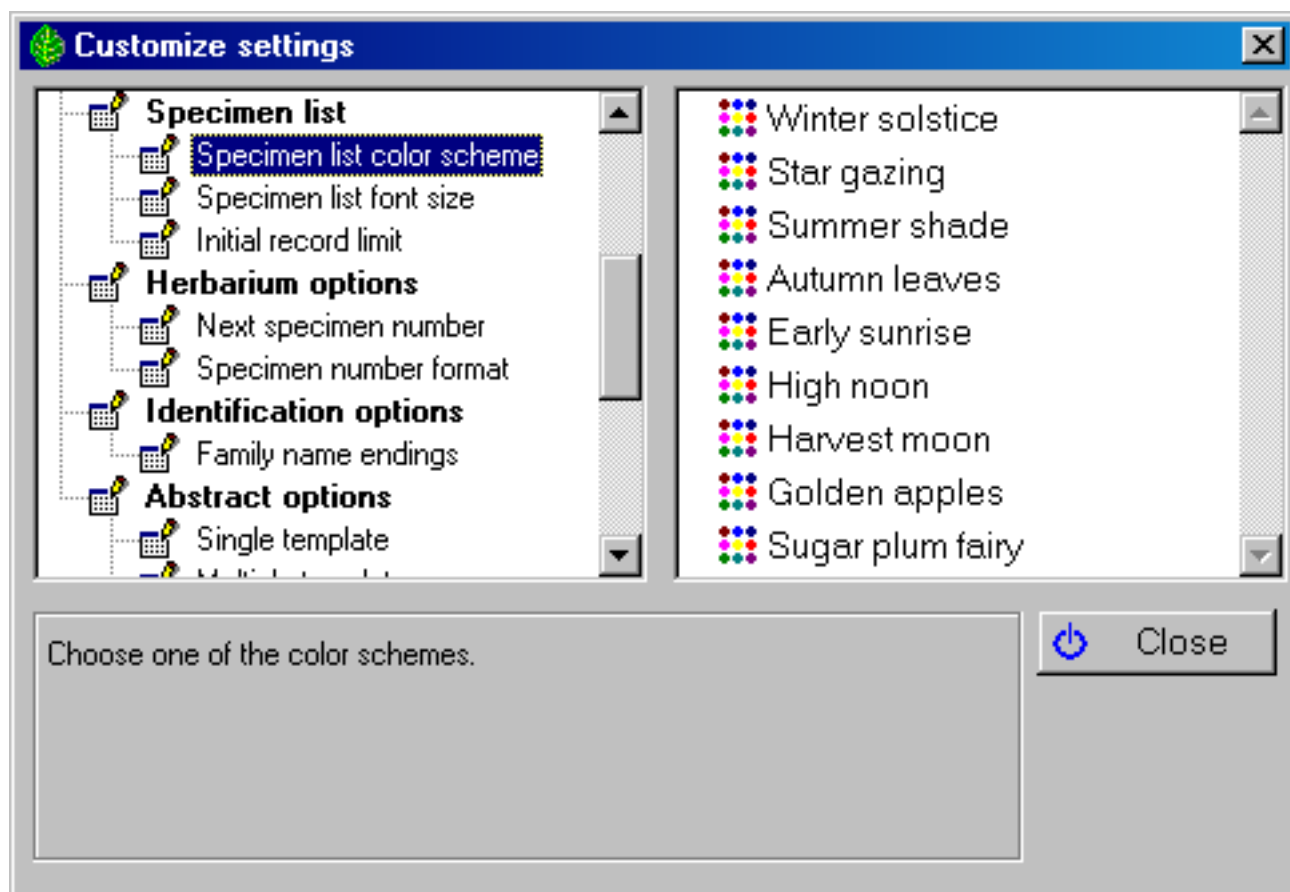
These settings affect the Specimen List and the banner at the top of each view

Winter solstice
Star gazing
Summer shade
Autumn leaves
Early sunrise
High noon
Harvest moon
Golden apples
Sugar plum
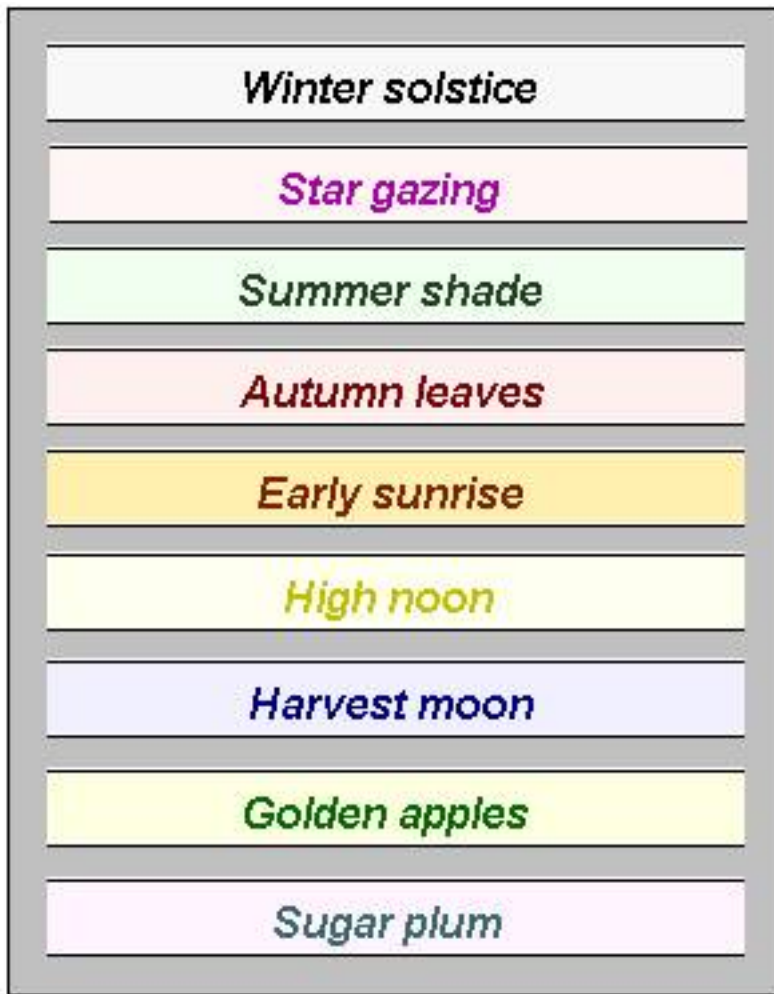
Some of these color schemes are approximations of Bonnie Rosser Krims' excellent book *The perfect palette: fifty inspired color plans for every room in your home,* Warner Books Inc., 1998, New York.

Compleat Botanica - Choosing which color values to use

You can choose to use popular color names or Royal Horticultural Society color chart numbers in each of the color value columns.
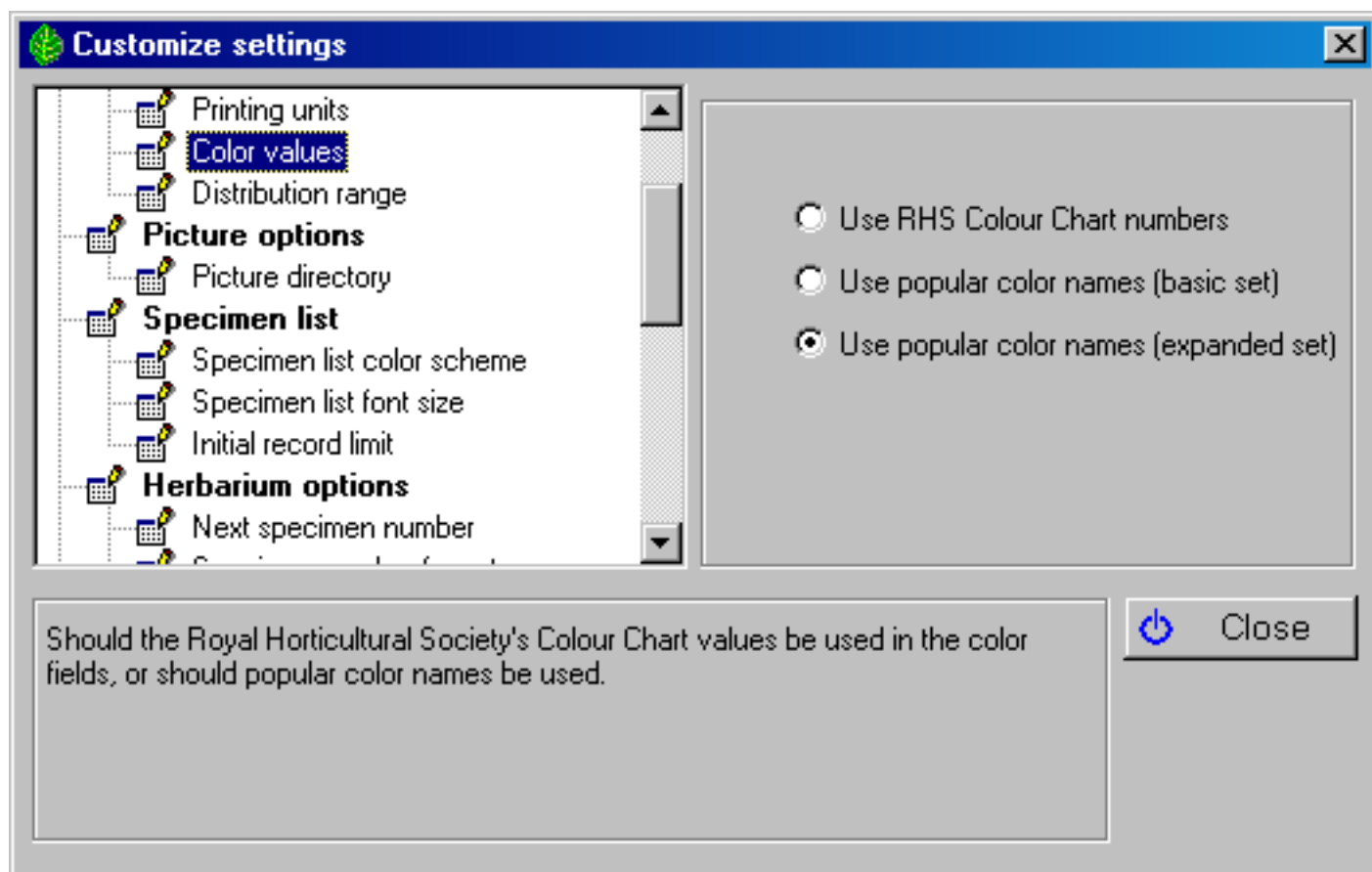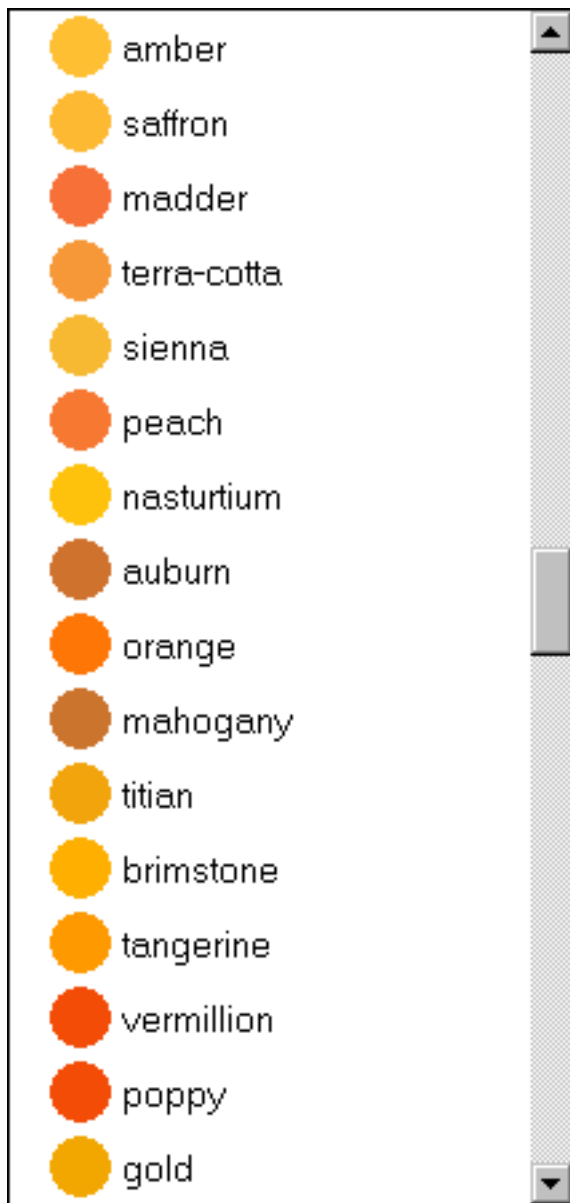

The 884 Royal Horticultural Society's color chart numbers will appear in color value columns looking something like this snapshot

●	46D
●	47A
●	47B
●	47C
●	47D
●	48A
●	48B
●	48C
●	48D
●	49A
●	49B
●	49C
●	49D
●	50A
●	50B
●	50C
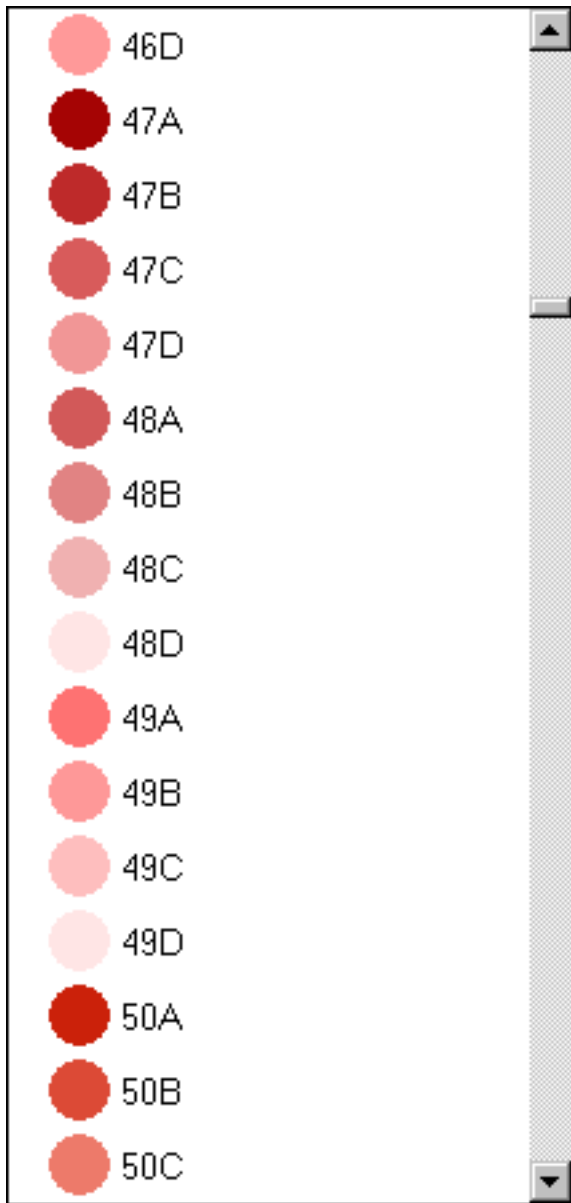
The Basic set of popular color names will appear something like this snapshot

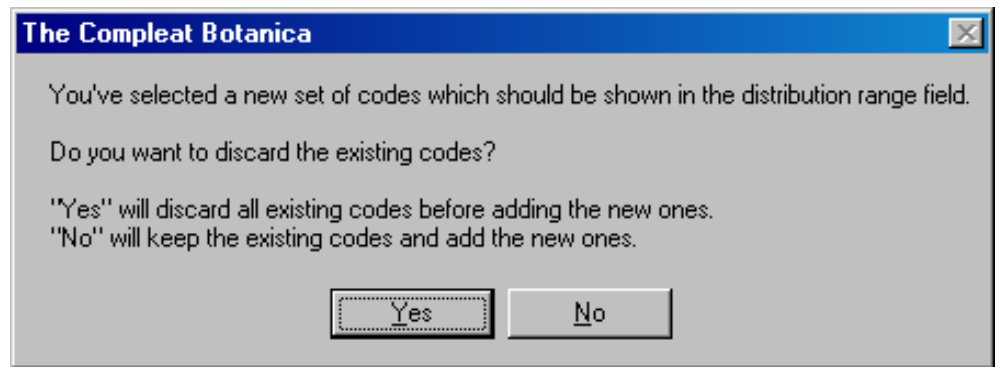The Extended set of popular color names will appear something like this snapshot

- amber
- saffron
- madder
- terra-cotta
- sienna
- peach
- nasturtium
- auburn
- orange
- mahogany
- titian
- brimstone
- tangerine
- vermillion
- poppy
- gold

Compleat Botanica - Changing the list of distribution codes

If you're collecting and recording species distribution data, you'll want to customize which codes appear in the distribution column.
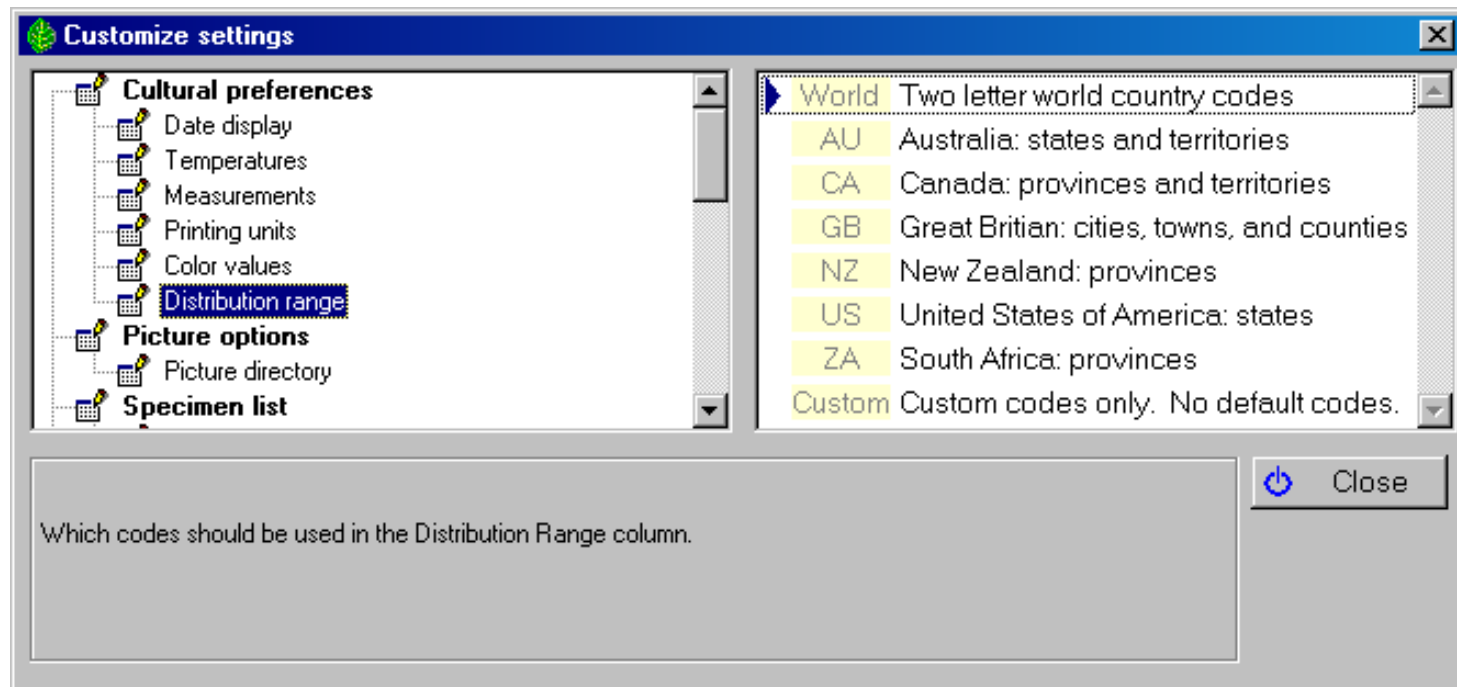
World	Two letter country codes for United Nations member countries.
AU	Australian states and territories.
CA	Canadian provinces and territories.
GB	Great Britain's cities, towns and counties.
NZ	New Zealand's provinces.
US	State names for the United States of America.
ZA	Provinces of South Africa.
Custom	Everything is deleted and only your own codes, as defined in the Categories View, are used.

Whenever you make a change to the distribution codes in this way, you'll need to decide what to do with the existing codes that are defined. You can either keep the existing codes or completely start over.

The Compleat Botanica

You've selected a new set of codes which should be shown in the distribution range field.

Do you want to discard the existing codes?

"Yes" will discard all existing codes before adding the new ones.
"No" will keep the existing codes and add the new ones.

[Yes]   [No]

Compleat Botanica - Citations and references

Index to citations and references

ⓘ Colors used in The Compleat Botanica	The beauty in plants is often brought to its peak by color.	1
ⓘ Soil types used in The Compleat Botanica	The twelve soil textures used in The Compleat Botanica are recognized descriptions which have measurable characteristics.	2
ⓘ Climate zones used in The Compleat Botanica	Climatology is the study of seasonal weather patterns occurring in a geographic region.	3
ⓘ Checklist of botanical names used in The Compleat Botanica	The rules for taxonomic nomenclature have been under refinement ever since Linneaus first developed the binomial naming system.	4
ⓘ Sample database citations	The sample database contains partial entries from a variety of sources to demonstrate how the software can be used for different purposes.	5
ⓘ Fragrance classifications used in The Compleat Botanica	The eighteen different fragrance classifications provided as a starting point come from The Book of Perfumes	6
ⓘ Distribution classifications used in The Compleat Botanica	Classification systems for wetlands, native plants, and endangered species.	7

Compleat Botanica - Colors used in The Compleat Botanica

Colors used in The Compleat Botanica

The beauty in plants is often brought to its peak by color. Sometimes intense but more frequently subtle, the colors in bark, leaves, flowers, and fruit is usually the first thing we notice about a new plant. Describing color is hard to do because we have so few words to describe the continuous visible spectrum. Often the very best words such as chartreuse, turquoise, or vermillion are not understood by everyone. Other borrowed words like cinnamon and egg-yolk are evocative but imprecise. And who knows what navy-blue, barn-red and sea-green really mean?

Each paint manufacturer uses its own set of color chips and proprietary mixing schemes, so attempts to piggy-back off their efforts are futile. Computers use a hexadecimal system to cause monitors to fire cathode-ray tubes with different mixtures of red, green and blue thus producing a discrete set of colors. Computer printers use a similar system to mix dyes on paper. These systems produce similar results but are unfortunately subject to manufacturing differences.

The Maerz and Paul "Dictionary of Color" published in 1957 used a color scheme composed of 84 color patches beginning with the yellows (1:cream, 2:mimosa, 3:canary, 4:buttercup yellow) and continuing through the greens (81: lettuce green, 82:moss green, 83:fern green, 84:olive green). These are fun names, but can you guess what they look like? In this scheme plants were identified by number with three modifiers: + to indicate a darker shade, - to indicate a lighter tint, and **x** to indicate a blend of two colors.

In 1976, the US National Bureau of Standards published a list containing 7,500 color names and their definitions. See `"Color: Universal Language and Dictionary of Names", U.S. Department of Commerce, National Bureau of Standards, NBS Special Publication 440, 1976`. This is weighty stuff; too cumbersome to be useful for plantsmen.

Overall, the best system for the description of plant colors is the one developed by The Royal Horticultural Society. In use since 1966 and updated most recently in 2001, this system is the standard among serious botanists. The RHS Colour Chart is composed of four fans. Each fan contains approximately one quarter of the 221 sheets. Each sheet contains four color patches labeled A, B, C, and D. The complete chart is composed of 884 colors.

To obtain the RHS Colour Chart write to:

RHS Garden
Wisley
Woking
Surrey, UK GU23 6QB

or send e-mail to mailorder@rhs.org.uk. The approximate cost is £117.50.

Soil types used in The Compleat Botanica

The twelve soil textures used in The Compleat Botanica are recognized descriptions which have measurable characteristics. These names are defined in the Bienz Soil Chart published by the United States Department of Agriculture and included in "Horticulture Gardener's Desk Reference", Anne Moyer Halpin, MacMillan, New York NY USA, 1966.

Many other soil descriptions are commonly used. Such terms as serpentine, humus-rich, well-drained, or rocky may be what you're more familiar with. These customizations can easily be added to the soil texture category.

The soil pH descriptions of strongly acidic, moderately acidic, slightly acidic, neutral, slightly alkaline, moderately alkaline, and strongly alkaline, are vernacular terms appearing frequently in horticulture and garden books.

Compleat Botanica - Climate zones used in The Compleat Botanica

Climate zones used in The Compleat Botanica

Climatology is the study of seasonal weather patterns occurring in a geographic region. The key factors influencing climate are altitude, latitude, and the proximity to large bodies of water. Several simple but useful schemes attempt to capture these factors into well-defined discrete categories. The most useful of these for the United States of America are:

The **USDA hardiness zones**, published by the United States Department of Agriculture.

The **AHS heat zones**, a complement to the USDA hardiness zones. There are 12 geographic zones based on the number of days which reach 86 degrees Fahrenheit. This is published by The American Horticultural Society, 7931 East Blvd. Dr., Alexandria VA, 22308 USA. See also `"Heat-Zone Gardening: How to choose plants that thrive in your region's warmest weather", Linda Bellamy & Henry Marc Cathey, Time Life, New York NY USA, 1998.`

The **Sunset climate zones**, published in the `"Sunset National Garden Book", The editors of Sunset Books and Sunset Magazine, Sunset Books Inc., Menlo Park CA USA, 1997.`

The first 24 of these zones were previously published in `"Sunset Western Garden Book", The editors of Sunset Books and Sunset Magazine, Sunset Books Inc., Menlo Park CA USA, 1988.`

The **Plant communities** are published in `"A California Flora and Supplement", Philip A. Munz & David D. Keck, University of California Press, 1959, 1968.`

The **Biotic communities** represent the hierarchical classification system published in `"A Classification of North American Biotic Communities", David E. Brown, Frank Reichenbacher and Susan E. Franson, University of Utah Press, 1998.` This system defines seven global "realms": Nearctic, Palearctic, Neotropical & Antarctian, Indomalayan, African, Australian, and Oceanic. Within each realm are defined four "hydrologic regimes": Natural upland vegetation, Natural wetland vegetation, Aquatic/submerged freshwater, and Marine environment. These hydrologic regimes are subdivided into six "formation-types": Tundra, Forest and Woodland, Scrubland-grassland, Desertland, and Non-vegetation. Further refinement of this hierarchical system extends to four "climactic zones", multiple "biotic communities", "series", "associations", and "strands".

Compleat Botanica - Checklist of botanical names used in The Compleat Botanica

Checklist of botanical names used in The Compleat Botanica

The rules for taxonomic nomenclature have been under refinement ever since Linneaus first developed the binomial naming system. The International Botanical Congress has been meeting every 10 years since 1850 to keep the rules acceptable and fair. The Sixteenth Congress adopted the [International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (Saint Louis Code)](#) in August of 1999. This is the authoritative reference on how names are formulated, how duplicates are resolved, and how exceptions to the rules are handled. It is published as "`International Code of Botanical Nomenclature (St Louis Code)`", W. Greuter Chairman, Regnum Vegetabile 131, Koeltz Scientific Books, Königstein: 2000.`

The **source** field of each name in the The Compleat Botanica Checklist gives an abbreviated reference to the publication from which the taxon, its author, and its original publication were obtained. The chart below lists the full citation for these abbreviated source fields.

Checklist "source" field	Taxa covered	Citation
Margulis	regnum and divisio (phylum)	"Five Kingdoms: An Illustrated Guide to the Phyla of Life on Earth", Lynn Margulis & Karlene V. Schwartz, W. H. Freeman and Company, New York NY USA, 1982.
UCMP	regnum, divisio, classis, ordo	UMP Taxon Lift, University of California Museum of Paleontology, Regents of the University of California, 1994-2001.
Reveal	classis, ordo, familia	Index Nominum Supragenericorum Plantarum Vascularium Project. Reveal, J.L., Index Nominum Supragenericorum Plantarum Vascularium Project, 1995-2001.
Turner	ordo, familia	"Botanica", pp. 959-962, R.G. Turner Jr. & Ernie Wasson, Editors, Random House Australia Pty Ltd.
Savela	classis, ordo, familia	Life forms list, Markku Savela, 2001.

Hole	classis, ordo, familia	A Checklist of the Vascular Plant Families, Robert B. Hole, Jr., BiologyBase, 1995-2001.
Jepson	families	"The Jepson Manual: Higher Plants of California", pp 1319-1321, James C. Hickman, editor, The Regents of the University of California: 1996
RBG	genus	Famfiles, Board of Trustees of the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, 2000.
NRCS	genus, species, variety	USDA, NRCS. 2001. The PLANTS Database, Version 3.1 The PLANTS Database. National Plant Data Center, Baton Rouge, LA 70874-4490 USA.

Alternative classifications of the families are available from:

Classification of Flowering Plants, Kåre Bremer, Mark W. Chase, and Peter F. Stevens, The Angiosperm Phylogeny Group 1998, Dept. of Systematic Botany, Uppsala University.

Compleat Botanica - Sample database citations

Sample database citations

The sample database contains partial entries from a variety of sources to demonstrate how the software can be used for different purposes. The **data source** field is an indication of where the source data for the entries was obtained. Please refer to the cited publications for more about each of the specimen in the sample database.

"source" field	Citation
Allergy	"Allergies A-Z", Myron A Lipkowitz and Tova Navarra, Facts on File, New York, 1994.
BotLatin	"Botanical Latin: History, Grammer, Syntax, Terminology and Vocabulary", William T. Stern, Hafner Publishing Company, New York, 1966.
BtrflyCa	"Common butterflies of California", Bob Stewart, West Coast Lady Press, Patagonia Arizona, 1998.
CaBskt	"Plants used in basketry by the California Indians", Ruth Earl Merrill, Acoma Books, Ramona CA, 1971 (originally published 1923 by University of California Publications in "American Archeology and Ethnology."
ColorNat	"Colors from nature : growing, collecting & using natural dyes", Bobbi A. McRae, Storey Communications Inc, Pownal Vermont, 1993.
DeerPrf	"Deer proofing your yard & garden", Rhona Massingham Hart, Storey Communications Inc, Pownal Vermont, 1997.
DyeFib	"Dyes & Fibers", Will Bearfoot, Oliver Press, Willits California, 1975.
DyePl	"Dye plants and dyeing -- a handbook", EthelJane McD. Schetky, editor, Brooklyn Botanic Garden, Brooklyn New York, 1964.
Frgnt	"The Fragrant Garden. A book about sweet scented flowers and leaves", Louise Beebe Wilder, Dover Publications, New York, 1974. Originally published as "The Fragrant Path", Louise Beebe Wilder, 1932, The Macmillan Company.
GrUnFr	"Growing Unusual Fruit", Alan E. Simmons, Walker and Company, New York, 1972.

HtZn	"Heat-zone Gardening: How to choose plants that thrive in your region's warmest weather", Dr. H. Marc Cathey with Linda Bellamy, American Horticultural Society, Time-Life Books, 1998.
HumGrdn	"Hummingbird Gardens: Turning your yard into hummingbird heaven", Stephen W. Kress, editor, Brooklyn Botanic Garden, Brooklyn New York, 2000.
MedPl	"The Encyclopedia of Medicinal Plants", Andrew Chevallier, DK Publishing, New York, 1996.
NWBskt	"Northwest Indian Basketry", Genevieve Baird, The Washington State American Revolution Bicentennial Commission, The Washington State Historical Society, 1976.
Poison	"A field guide to venomous animals and poisonous plants of North America north of Mexico", Peterson Field Guides, Steven Foster and Roger Caras, Houghton Mifflin Company, Boston, 1994.
PrvntDeer	"A gardener's guide to preventing deer damage", Bob Coey and Kenneth Mayer, California Department of Fish and Game, 1991.
UnFruit	"Uncommon Fruits Worthy of Attention: A Gardener's Guide", Lee Reich, Addison-Wesley Publishing, Reading, Massachusetts, 1991.
UnVeg	"Unusual Vegetables: Something New for This Year's Garden", Anne Moyer Halpin, editor, Organic Gardening and Farming, Rodale Press, Emmaus, Pennsylvania, 1978.
Xeri	"Xeriscape Gardening: Water Conservation for the American Landscape", Connie Lockhart Ellefson, Thomas L. Stephens, and Douglas Welsh, Macmillan Publishing Company, New York, 1992.

Fragrance classifications used in The Compleat Botanica

The eighteen different **fragrance** classifications provided as a starting point come from `"The Book of Perfumes", Eugene Rimmel, Chapman and Hall, London, 1865.`

An alternative classification scheme by William A. Poucher is his scale of 100 based on the evaporative rate of a plant's volatile aromatic compounds. Originally published in 1923, now in it's 10th edition 77 years later: `"Perfumes, Cosmetics and Soaps", 10th edition, William A. Poucher, Hilda Butler editor, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Norwell, MA 2000.`

For a good list of plants used in the perfume industry see `"The Perfume Handbook", Nigel Groom, Chapman & Hall, London, 1992.` This book includes descriptions of the essential oils provided by plants used in the perfumery world, both historic and contemporary.

An alternative list of fragrance classifications also comes from `"The Book of Perfumes":`

Classification
Almondy
Amber
Anise
Balsamic
Camphoraceous
Caryophyllaceous
Citrine
Fruity
Jasmine

Lavender

Minty

Musky

Orange flower

Rosaceous

Sandal

Spicy

Tuberose

Violet

Distribution classifications used in The Compleat Botanica

Wetlands are transitional regions which vary between fully terrestrial and fully aquatic areas. The water table in wetlands is usually at or near the surface. Land covered by shallow water is also included in the definition. In these regions the land periodically supports mostly hydrophytes, or the land is mostly saturated soil, or the land is non-soil and is saturated with water or covered by shallow water at some time during the growing season of each year.

The **wetland indicator** classification system represents the estimated probability of a species occurring in wetlands versus non-wetlands in a region of study. It is defined in the `"1996 National List of Vascular Plant Species That Occur in Wetlands", U.S. Fish & Wildlife Service, National Wetlands Inventory, Branch of Habitat Assessment.` [Branch of Habitat Assessment](#)

The hierarchical **wetland attribute classification** system is defined in `"Classification of wetlands and deepwater habitats of the United States", L.M. Cowardin, V. Carter, F. Golet, and E. LaRoe, U.S. Fish Wildlife Service, 1979.` Full descriptions of each code is available at [U.S. Fish Wildlife Service](#).

Threatened species are recognized as posing a potential loss to earth's biodiversity. `"The United States Federal Endangered Species Act of 1973", U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service` [Endangered Species Act](#) defines the terms "endangered", "threatened", and "rare". State management agencies variously use additional terms including "sensitive" and "special concern" to further classify potentially threatened species. This scheme is employed in the **FESA status** field.

UNEP World Conservation Monitoring Centre defines the classification system provided under the **IUCN Red List** field. See the `"The 1994 IUCN Red List Categories", UNEP World Conservation Monitoring Centre,` [IUCN Red List Categories](#).

The **noxious weed** rating system is based on various state management programs which rate plants based on their probability to be troublesome, aggressive, intrusive, detrimental, or destructive to agriculture, silviculture, or important native species, and difficult to control or eradicate. The California Department of Food and Agriculture lists one such system. For more details see [California Department of Food and Agriculture](#).

An alternative ranking system for invasive weed management based on an analytic/numeric approach is the

"Handbook for Ranking Exotic Plants for Management and Control", Ronald D. Hiebert and James Stubbendieck, U. S. Department of the Interior, National Park Service, Natural Resources Publication Office, 1993. [Handbook for Ranking Exotic Plants](#)

Compleat Botanica - Troubleshooting problems

Tech support
Index to general Tech Support
documents.

Requirements
Index to documents about hardware and software
requirements.

Installation and removal
Index to installation and removal documents.

   Installation overview
   Index to installation overview
   topics.

   Installing SQL Server Desktop Engine
   Index to topics concerning the installation of SQL Server Desktop
   Engine.

   Removing the software
   Index to documents about removing the Compleat
   Botanica.

Index to Technical Bulletins
Technical Bulletins are descriptions of well-known problems and how to deal with
them.

Frequently Asked Questions
Prospective users of the software, like yourself, have asked a variety of questions over time about the product
and its capabilities.

Compleat Botanica - Tech support

Technical Support Bulletins

Some of the well-known problems that affect certain editions of the software are documented in the Technical Bulletins.

Technical Support Help Desk

If you need assistance with installing the software, or if you encounter unexpected problems while using the software, please send an e-mail to TechSupport @ CrescentBloom.com.

Please supply the name of the operating system on your computer and the software edition of The Compleat Botanica. See the note Identifying the currently installed version and build numbers.

One bad apple doesn't spoil the whole bunch.

Compleat Botanica - Identifying the currently installed version and build numbers

When troubleshooting problems it's essential to known what version of the software you have. You can find this by going to the bottom of the Credits & citations window.
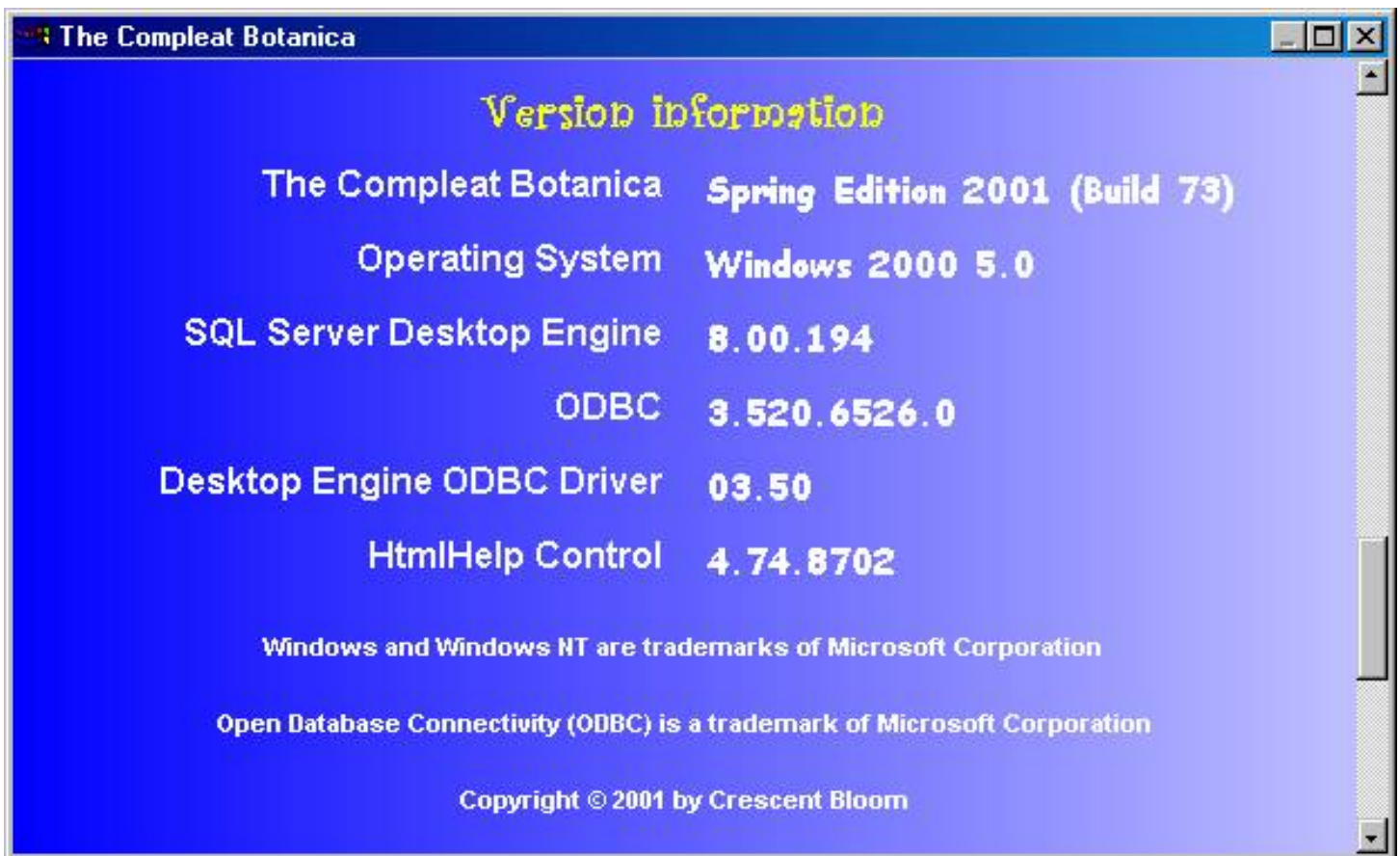
When corresponding with the technical support staff please make note of The Compleat Botanica build number. The other version numbers are only needed when troubleshooting specific problems with your computer's overall setup.

Compleat Botanica - Requirements

Index to requirements

ℹ Hardware and software prerequisites	The Compleat Botanica can be installed on Windows NT, Windows 2000 and Windows XP.
ℹ Disk space requirements for The Compleat Botanica	The Compleat Botanica software requires 250 Mb of disk space.
ℹ Microsoft Internet Explorer requirements	The Compleat Botanica uses Microsoft's HTML Help control to display documents in the Pathfinder View.
ℹ Additional software installed during setup of The Compleat Botanica	During setup of the software, additional components may be installed if they are not already on your computer.
ℹ Compatibility between build 85 and build 86	If you are upgrading your Compleat Botanica from build 85 to build 86 you should be aware of certain compatibilty issues with SQL Server Desktop Engine.
ℹ Screen resolution and minimum display size	The Compleat Botanica can be used on computers with a wide range of display capabilities.

Compleat Botanica - Hardware and software prerequisites

Hardware prerequisites for *The Compleat Botanica*

The Compleat Botanica requires a personal computer with 250 MB of disk space, 64 MB RAM, and a monitor with a display resolution of 800 x 600 pixels. Most of today's personal computers easily fulfill these requirements.

Software prerequisites for *The Compleat Botanica*

The Compleat Botanica can be installed on personal computers with any of the following operating systems:

* Windows 2003 Server

* Windows XP Home edition

* Windows XP Professional edition

* Window 2000

* Windows NT

The Compleat Botanica is not supported on Windows 95, Windows 98 or Windows Me.

See [FAQ 2: Supported versions of Microsoft Windows](#) for more about this.

Digitalis purpurea

Always a surprise when found in the wild

Classic late spring showcase. Drought tolerant yet responds well to water.

Compleat Botanica - Disk space requirements for The Compleat Botanica

The Compleat Botanica software requires 250 Mb of disk space. The software may be placed on any drive letter from C to Z which has adequate space.

The Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine software requires approximately 70 Mb of disk space, (about 5 Mb will be place on your operating system disk, the remainder will be placed together with The Compleat Botanica software.)

The amount of space required for each database that you create depends on three things:

1 The number of specimen records you have.

2 The number and size of word processing-like notes you have.

3 A fixed size (about 60Mb) for the Checklist and the botanical name spell-checker.

All together, a first-time installation of The Compleat Botanica will need approximately 250 Mb of disk space.

Setup messages regarding disk space

During the setup process you may encounter a message like this:
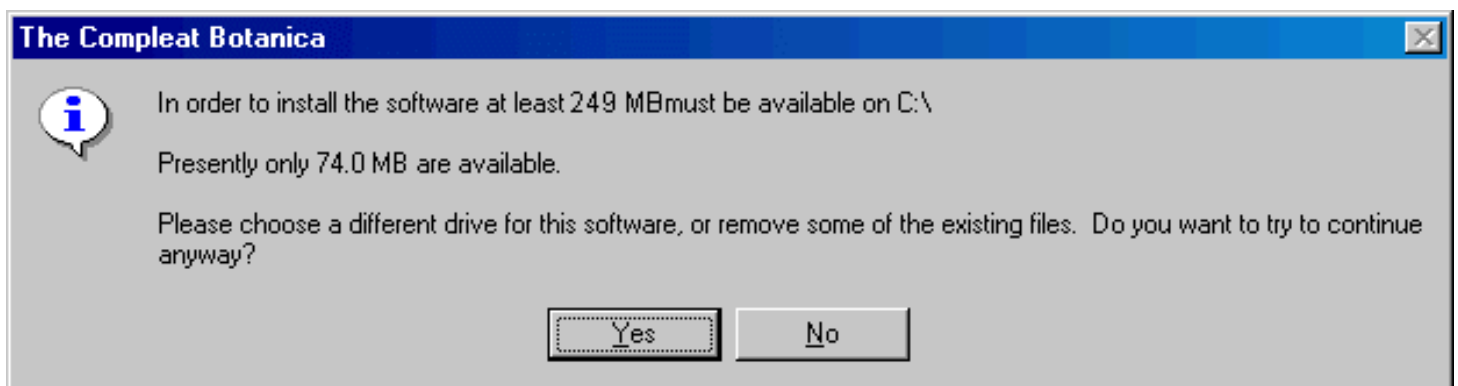
You should press "Yes" only if you are reinstalling the software and you know that the existing files will be replaced (thus accommodating the new installation).

Compleat Botanica **- Microsoft Internet Explorer requirements**

Microsoft Internet Explorer requirements

The Compleat Botanica uses Microsoft's HTML Help control to display documents in the Pathfinder View. This software is part of Microsoft's Internet Explorer version 5.0 and later. If your computer has Internet Explorer version 4.0 or earlier you should upgrade to version 5.0 prior to installing the SQL Server Desktop Engine or The Compleat Botanica software.

> **Your default Web browser is not affected by this requirement.**

Only Windows NT users need to check this. Windows 2000 and Windows XP are pre-configured with Internet Explorer.

You can obtain the latest version of Internet Explorer directly from Microsoft at **Internet Explorer**.

Compleat Botanica - Additional software installed during setup of The Compleat Botanica

During setup of the software, additional components may be installed if they are not already on your computer.

Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine

During installation of the software, Microsoft's SQL Server Desktop Engine version 8.0 will automatically be installed from The Compleat Botanica setup CD.

Microsoft Internet Explorer

For proper operation of the software, Microsoft Internet Explorer version 5.0 or greater must be installed on the computer (It does not need to be your default browser.)

Users of Windows 2000, and Windows XP can safely ignore this requirement because those operating systems are pre-configured with Internet Explorer. Only Windows NT version 3.51 users need to check this.

You can obtain the latest version of Internet Explorer directly from Microsoft at Internet Explorer. For those who do not already have this on their computer, version 5.5 of Internet Explorer is included on the distribution CD.

Upgrading from build 85 to build 86

If you are upgrading your Compleat Botanica from build 85 to build 86 you should be aware of certain compatibilty issues with SQL Server Desktop Engine. Versions of the Compleat Botanica labeled as Build 85 and earlier were distributed with the baseline version of Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine. Versions of the Compleat Botanica labeled as Build 86 and higher are being distributed with Service Pack 3a of the Desktop Engine.

The table below shows that you can safely use either version of the Desktop Engine with any version of the Compleat Botanica that is higher than (or equal to) build 86. If you need to continue using an older version of the Compeat Botanica (build 85 and earlier) you'll need to use the baseline version of the Desktop Engine that was distributed with the software.

This restriction therfore only applies to users that have upgraded to a new version of the software and for some reason need to uninstall the new version and reinstall the older version. Users in this situation must uninstall both the Compleat Botanica software and the new version of Desktop Engine before attempting to reinstall the older version of the Compleat Botanica.

The typical user wishing to run a new version of the Compleat Botanica may do so without bothering to upgrade their copy of the Desktop Engine.

Even though the Desktop Engine upgrade is optional, Crescent Bloom recommends that users take the time to install the new version so that they can be safegaurded against the Slammer virus and other potential security issues that have been resolved with the new version of Desktop Engine.

Compatibility between Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine versions

	SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine Baseline	SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine SP3a
Build 85	✓	not supported
Build 86	✓	✓

How to identify the Desktop Engine service pack installed

When you need to identify which service pack is installed, check the Compleat Botanica's "Citations and Credits" page to find the exact version number for the SQL Server Desktop Engine, then use this table to look up which service pack is installed.

Version	Service pack
8.00.194	baseline
8.00.384	SP1
8.00.534	SP2
8.00.760	SP3
8.00.761	SP3a

Compleat Botanica - Screen resolution and minimum display size

Supported resolutions and screen areas

The Compleat Botanica can be used on computers with a wide range of display capabilities. This chart indicates the resolutions that have been tested by Crescent Bloom. Most computers use a resolution of 96 DPI (dots per inch), so the vast majority of users can set their screen area to any value -- from 640 x 480 all the way up to 1600 x 1200. Users that have chosen to use "Large fonts" are using a screen resolution of 120 DPI; the minimum screen size for these computers is a setting of 800 x 600. The higher resolutions of 135, 144, 170 and 192 DPI are very rarely used except on the newest large screen monitors.

Resolution	Display font size	640 x 480	800 x 600	1024 x 768	1152 x 864	1280 x 1024	1600 x 1200	Minimum window size
96 dpi	100% (small fonts)	✔ *	✔	✔	✔	✔	✔	640 x 480
120 dpi	125% (large fonts)		✔ *	✔	✔	✔	✔	800 x 600
135 dpi	141%			✔	✔	✔	✔	900 x 675
144 dpi	150%			✔	✔	✔	✔	960 x 720
170 dpi	177%				✔ *	✔	✔	1133 x 850
192 dpi	200%					✔	✔	1280 x 960

* Screen resolutions for display areas marked with an asterisk must use the "Auto hide" option with the Taskbar because the minimum window size covers the entire screen.

The last column, labeled "Minimum windows size", represents the smallest window size (in pixels) that can accomodate the Compleat Botanica software. This minimum window size grows as you increase your screen resolution in order to accomodate the readability and layout of the windows within the software.

Index to installation/removal

✚	Installation overview	Index to installation overview topics.
✚	Installing SQL Server Desktop Engine	Index to topics concerning the installation of SQL Server Desktop Engine.
✚	Removing the software	Index to documents about removing the Compleat Botanica.

Compleat Botanica - Installation overview

Index to the installation topics

|		
ℹ️	**Overview of the two-step installation process**	The Compleat Botanica is installed using a two-step process: 1) SQL Server Desktop Engine, 2) The Compleat Botanica software.
ℹ️	**Installation of The Compleat Botanica software**	After completing step 1 of the installation process, you should restart your computer and re-run the setup program.
ℹ️	**Software contents and default installation directories**	When properly installed, The Compleat Botanica software will use files in several different directories. Here are the details of files and directories used by the software.

Compleat Botanica - Overview of the two-step installation process

The Compleat Botanica is installed using a two-step process:

Step 1) [Installation of the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine](#)

Step 2) [Installation of The Compleat Botanica software](#)

Between steps 1 and 2 you will need to restart your computer. Both steps are performed by running the `Setup.exe` program located in the `Setup/` directory of the CD.

> Note that the choice you make for the question "Where do you want to put the software?" applies to both steps.

Compleat Botanica - Installation of The Compleat Botanica software

After completing step 1 of the installation process, you should restart your computer and re-run the `CD:/Setup/Setup.exe` program. The window will look like the picture shown below. This indicates that step 1 was successful and that step 2 is ready to be started.
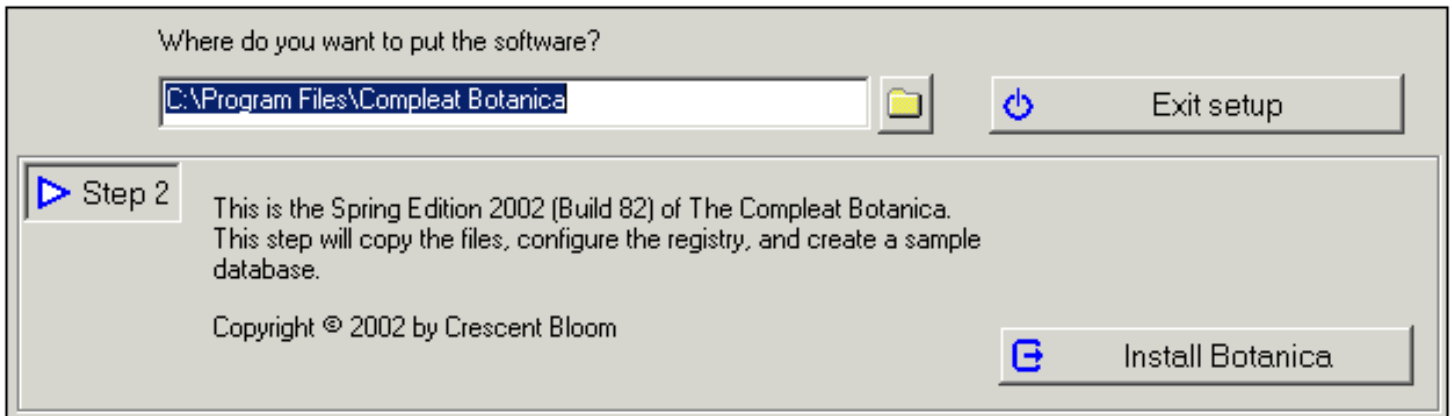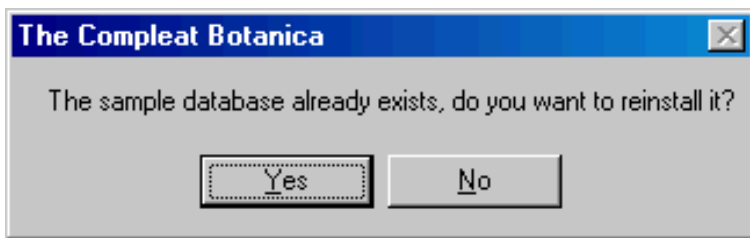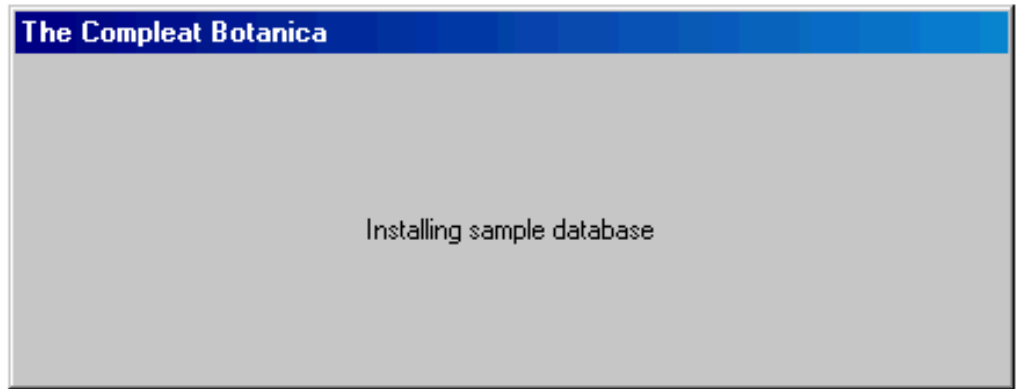

Proceed with step 2 by pressing the button
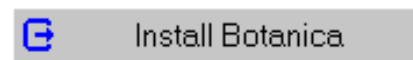
This step will take a minute or two to copy the files and configure the software. When the files are copied you will see a progress indicator that looks like this:
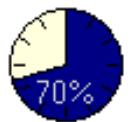
After the files are copied, a sample database is installed. Installing the sample database will take another minute or two during which time you will see this message:
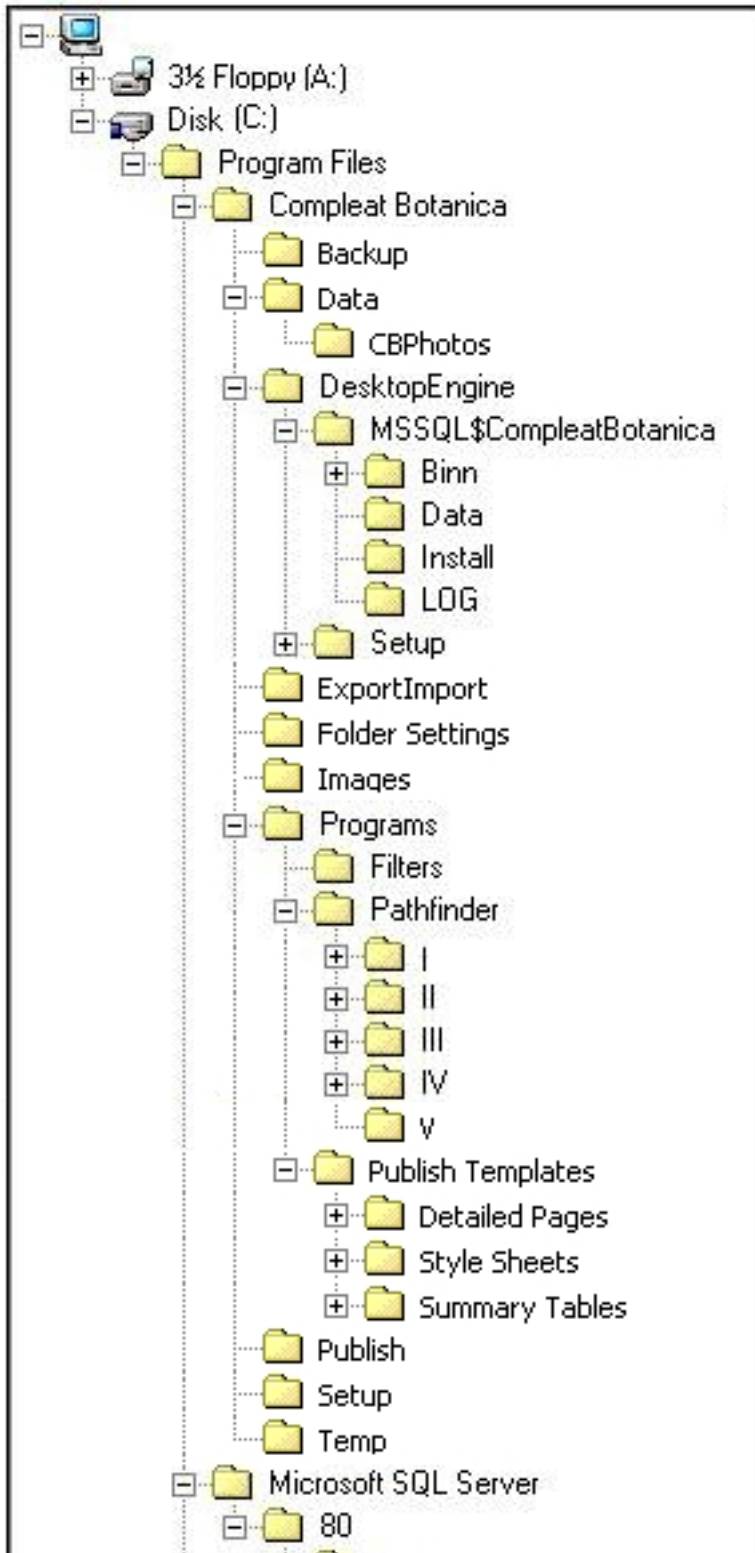
The Compleat Botanica

Installing sample database

The Compleat Botanica

The sample database already exists, do you want to reinstall it?

Yes   No

If you are re-installing the software you may see this message

When everything is finished, The Compleat Botanica software is started and the sample database is opened.

Compleat Botanica - Software contents and default installation directories

When properly installed, The Compleat Botanica software will use files in several different directories. Here are the details of files and directories used by the software. The snapshot of the directory structure below was taken after an installation to the default location "C:\Program Files\Compleat Botanica".
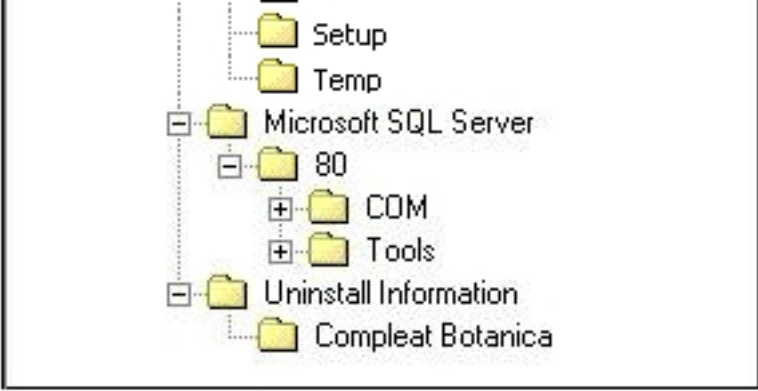
Directory	Contents	Files
Compleat Botanica	This directory contains files used by the Setup utility.	8 files, 4 Mb
Compleat Botanica\Backup	The suggested location for your database backups.	CBSample.bak, 56 Mb
Compleat Botanica\Data	The suggested location for your active databases.	CBSampleDatabaseLog.ldf CBSampleDatabaseData.mdf
Compleat Botanica\Data \CBPhotos	Photographs linked to the Sample database.	97 files, 15 Mb
Compleat Botanica \DesktopEngine	This directory and its sub-directories contain the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine files specific to The Compleat Botanica.	77 files, 65 Mb
Compleat Botanica \ExportImport	Default location for exported data files.	CompleatBotanicaSchema.xsd
Compleat Botanica\Folder Settings	HTML template to allow Windows Explorer to preview documents	8 files, 45 Kb
Compleat Botanica\Images	Logos used by HTML files located in the root directory	2 files, 9 Kb
Compleat Botanica\Programs	The program files, utilities, and DLL's for The Compleat Botanica	18 files, 8 Mb

Compleat Botanica\Program\Filters	Your customized filters, report styles, and specimen tag layout definitions.	66 files after default installation, more after you've made customizations.
Compleat Botanica\Program\Pathfinder	The HTML documents shown in the Pathfinder View.	approximately 350 documents (plus bitmap files), 13 Mb
Compleat Botanica\Program\Publish Templates	HTML templates used by the Publish process	
Compleat Botanica\Program\Publish Templates\Detailed Pages	HTML templates for publishing detailed pages	
Compleat Botanica\Program\Publish Templates\Style Sheets	HTML style sheets for font size, color and fonts faces.	
Compleat Botanica\Program\Publish Templates\Summary Tables	HTML templates for publishing summary pages	
Compleat Botanica\Publish	Default location for pages created by the Publish process	
Compleat Botanica\Setup	Setup program for the Compleat Botanica.	11 files, 2 Mb
Compleat Botanica\Temp	Default location for temporary files automatically created and deleted by the software.	
Microsoft SQL Server	Files and directories for the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine common to all installations (not specific to The Compleat Botanica).	71 files, 18 Mb

| Uninstall Information \Compleat Botanica | Utility to uninstall The Compleat Botanica | Remove.exe |

Index to the SQL Server installation topics

ℹ	**Installation of the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine**	The first step of setting up The Compleat Botanica is to install the SQL Server Desktop Engine.
ℹ	**More notes about the installation of SQL Server Desktop**	Snapshots of several additional messages you may or may not encounter while installing the SQL Server Desktop Engine.
ℹ	**Conflicts with existing SQL Server installations**	If your computer already has Microsoft SQL Server version 7.0 or earlier installed, you may encounter problems with the installation.

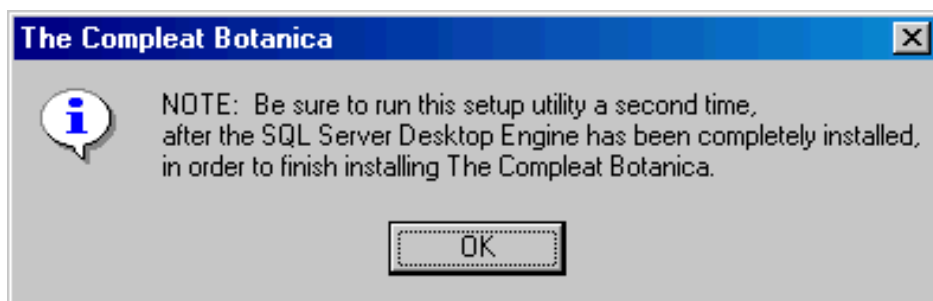## *Compleat Botanica* - Installation of the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine

The first step of setting up The Compleat Botanica is to install the SQL Server Desktop Engine. To do this, double-click on the `CD:/Setup/Setup.exe` program.

Where do you want to put the software?

`C:\Program Files\Compleat Botanica`   📁   ⏻ Exit setup

▷ Step 1   The Compleat Botanica uses Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine for storage of plant specimen.

Installing the Desktop Engine is a prerequisite to installing The Compleat Botanica.   ⤷ Install Desktop Engine
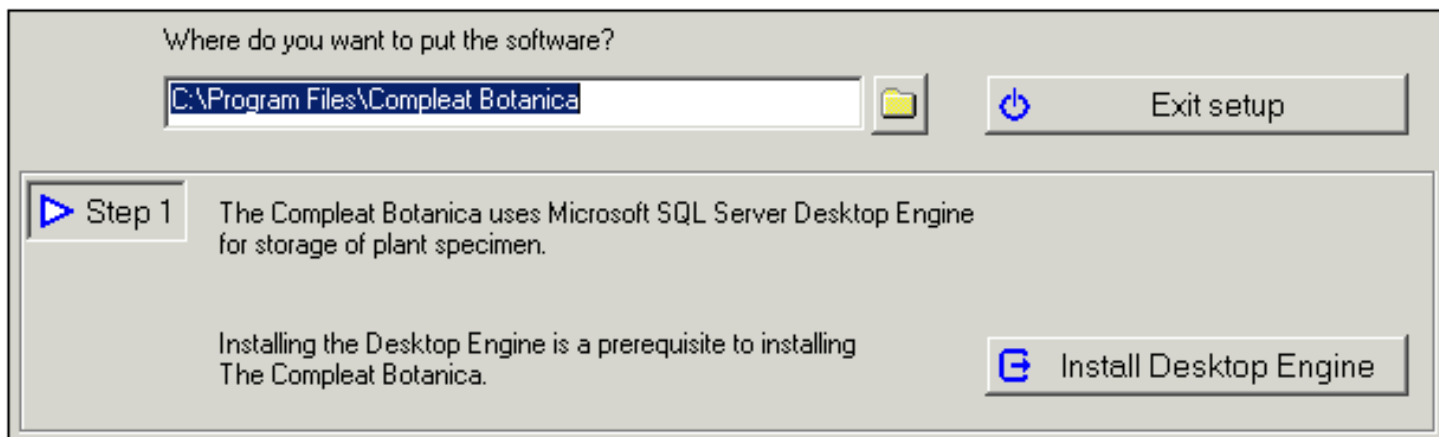
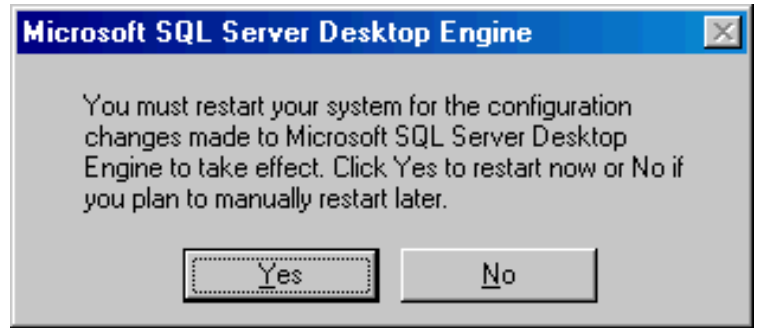⤷ Install Desktop Engine   To start the installation process, just press the button.

When this notice appears, acknowledge it by pressing OK.

The Compleat Botanica   ☒

ℹ NOTE: Be sure to run this setup utility a second time, after the SQL Server Desktop Engine has been completely installed, in order to finish installing The Compleat Botanica.

OK

The process of copying the files and configuring the software may take several minutes (faster computers will of course take less time.) Pay no attention to the "Time remaining" indicator as it usually guesses wrongly.

When the SQL Server Desktop Engine is completely installed you will be notified with this message, if applicable:

Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine

You must restart your system for the configuration changes made to Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine to take effect. Click Yes to restart now or No if you plan to manually restart later.

[Yes]   [No]

After restarting your computer, proceed to Installation of The Compleat Botanica software

Caution: Reinstalling the SQL Server Desktop Engine after you've already created databases will make the existing databases inaccessible. Be sure to make a backup of all your databases before attempting to reinstall SQL Server Desktop Engine.
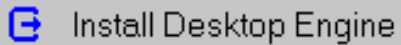
Note that the backup function in the Data Manager utility or in The Compleat Botanica Software is the only way to ensure that your existing database will be usable after the reinstallation. Copying the database files using Windows Explorer is inadequate.

For more details see the document More notes on the installation of SQL Server Desktop which describes the "Windows Installer" messages you may see during the installation of SQL Server Desktop Engine.

When the SQL Server Desktop Engine installation process is launched, the script may need to install a newer version of the "Windows Installer". Windows Installer is an operating system utility that many setup programs use. If your computer does not have version 1.2 of the "Windows Installer" the script will begin by installing or updating this utility.

See the snapshots below for samples of how this process will look.

Install Desktop Engine

Here is a snapshot of the first screen you will see during the installation of SQL Server Desktop Engine.

Windows Installer

Preparing to install...

Cancel

Windows Installer

Another version of this product is already installed. Installation of this version cannot continue. To configure or remove the existing version of this product, use Add/Remove Programs on the Control Panel.
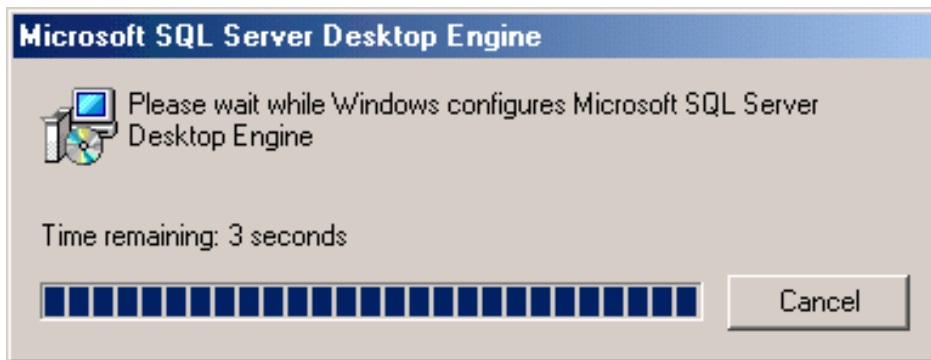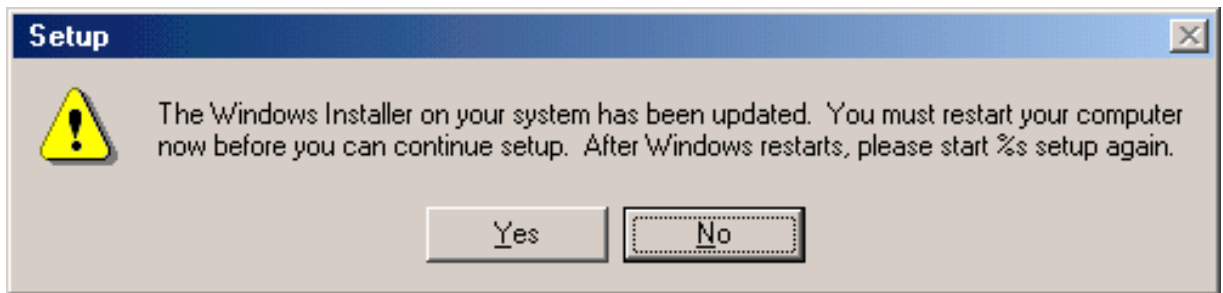
OK
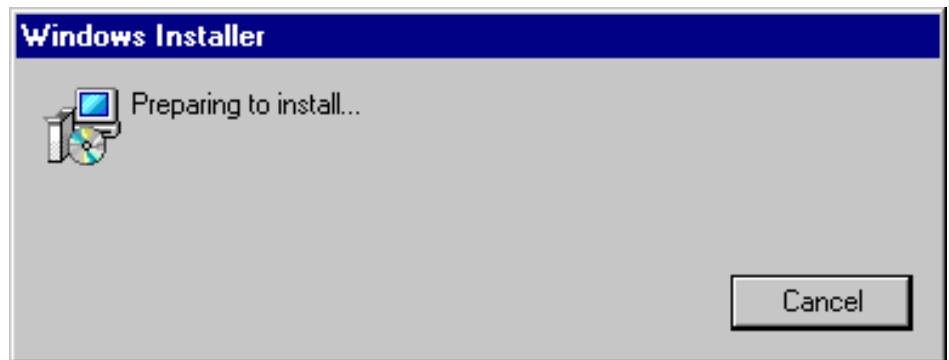
If you see this screen right after uninstalling a previous copy of the Compleat Botanica, it's really an indicator that you need to restart your computer.

Here is a snapshot of the message you will see if the "Windows Installer" is being installed or updated.

Setup

Please wait while setup updates the Windows installer on your system...
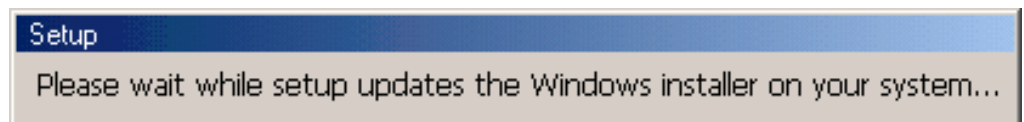
When the Windows Installer has finished updating itself, you'll need to restart your computer and begin the installation of SQL Server Desktop Engine again.

Setup

⚠ The Windows Installer on your system has been updated. You must restart your computer now before you can continue setup. After Windows restarts, please start %s setup again.

[Yes]   [No]

Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine

🖥 Please wait while Windows configures Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine

Time remaining: 3 seconds

▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮▮   [Cancel]

NOTE: The "Time remaining" indicator will change up and down during the installation of Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine. It is quite common for this indicator to guess wrongly about the estimated time remaining.

Compleat Botanica - Conflicts with existing SQL Server installations

The Compleat Botanica uses Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine version 8.0 installed under the instance name of "CompleatBotanica". If your computer already uses Microsoft SQL Server version 8.0 for some other application installed on your computer the previous instance should coexist with the Compleat Botanica instance without any problems.

If your computer already has Microsoft SQL Server version 7.0 or earlier installed, you may encounter problems with the installation. This error message indicates that the previous version should be removed or upgraded before installing The Compleat Botanica.
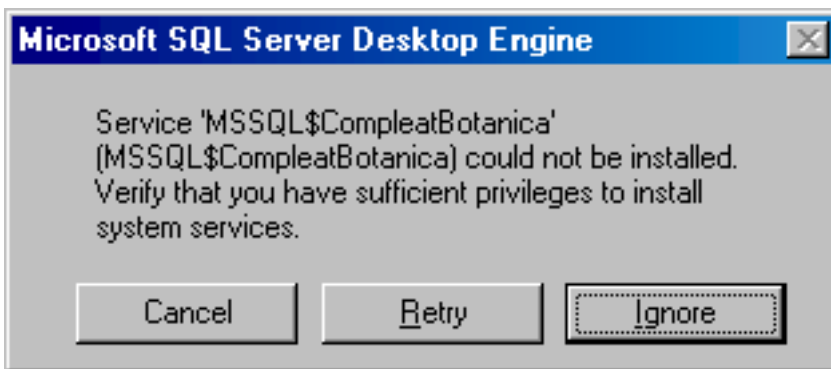
Compleat Botanica - Removing the software

Index to the removal topics

Removing the software from your computer

The Compleat Botanica software can be removed completely from your computer if you no longer need it. Simply run the Remove utility.

Compleat Botanica - Removing the software from your computer

The Compleat Botanica software can be removed completely from your computer if you no longer need it. Simply run the Remove utility.
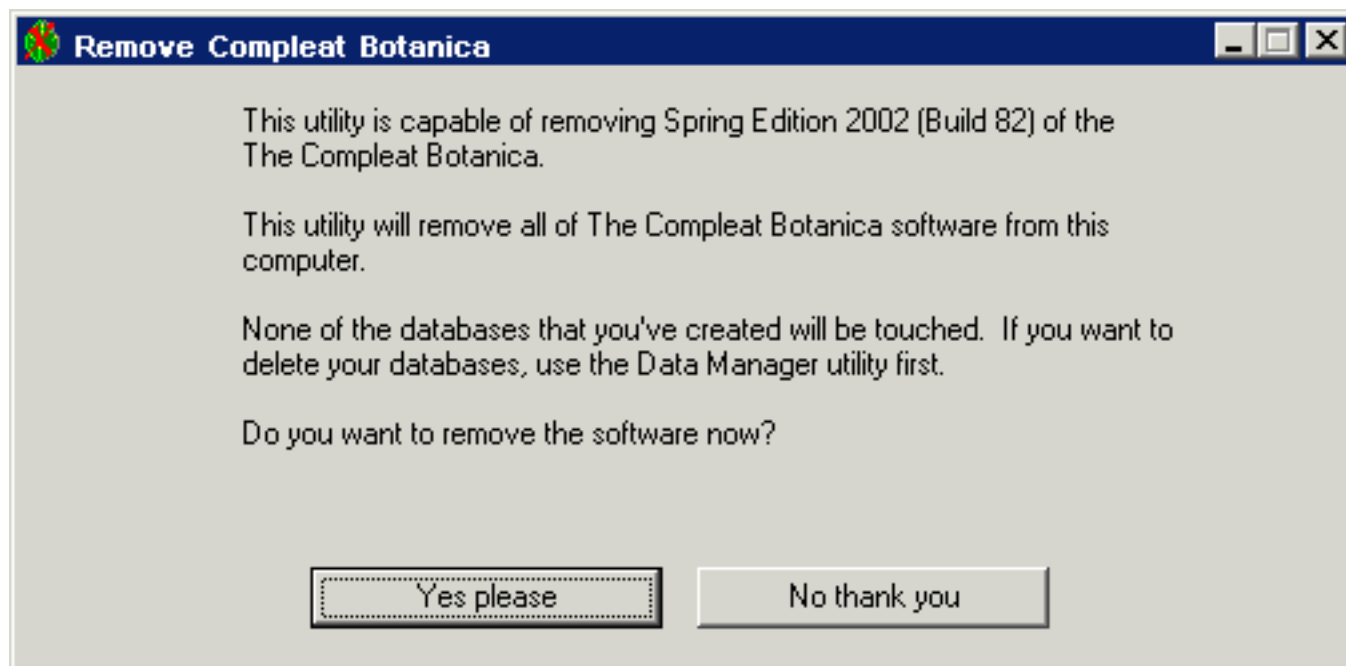
> **After un-installing an older version of the software and before re-installing a newer version of the software be sure to reboot your computer.**

If you later re-install the software you will not be able to use your original databases unless you first performed a backup. Attempting to re-use any previous database files will not work – you must use the backup and restore functions.

Note that the ODBC entries are not removed from your computer by this utility. If you re-install the software after removing it, any ODBC entries left over from the first installation will still be in the list, but they will not be pointing to valid databases. To delete these entries use the ODBC Manager utility.

Compleat Botanica - Index to Technical Bulletins

Index to Technical Bulletins

ℹ️ Bulletin 1	MSVCIRT.DLL file is linked to missing export MSVCRT. DLL : ?? _u@yapaxi@z.	1
ℹ️ Bulletin 2	Unable to install or upgrade Windows Installer service.	2
ℹ️ Bulletin 3	Missing required files ODBC32.DLL or ODBCCP32.DLL.	3
ℹ️ Bulletin 4	Internet Explorer 5.0 or later needs to be installed on this computer for The Compleat Botanica to work properly.	4
ℹ️ Bulletin 5	Cannot find WIN.COM, unable to continue loading Windows.	5
ℹ️ Bulletin 6	Installation of SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine hangs-up when half way through.	6
ℹ️ Bulletin 7	The software stops working after upgrading Windows with the dual-boot option.	7
ℹ️ Bulletin 8	After removing an older version of the software, a newer version can't be installed.	8

ℹ️ Bulletin 9	Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Edition is vulnerable to the Slammer virus.	9
ℹ️ Bulletin 10	The Compleat Botanica's taxonomic hierarchy is invalid.	10
ℹ️ Bulletin 11	Cannot install Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Edition if Server Service is not running.	11
ℹ️ Bulletin 12	Installation of Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Edition fails when a more recent instance is already installed.	12
ℹ️ Bulletin 13	Multiple-resolution printers don't work.	13
ℹ️ Bulletin 14	Printers with long names don't work.	14
ℹ️ Bulletin 15	Specimen reports don't print.	15

Compleat Botanica - Bulletin 1

Technical Bulletins # 1 [**Next**]

MSVCIRT.DLL file is linked to missing export MSVCRT. DLL : ?? _u@yapaxi@z

Symptoms	When attempting to start The Compleat Botanica or any of its utilities after a successful installation, you may encounter the message: MSVCIRT.DLL file is linked to missing export MSVCRT.DLL : ?? _u@yapaxi@z
Resolution	If one of your existing applications has incorrectly installed these two files, the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine will report this message and will not be able to start. To fix this problem, restore the original files from your operating system CD. You may use the `Restore` batch file located on the Compleat Botanica CD in D:\Troubleshooting\MSVCRT\Win98 or D:\Troubleshooting\MSVCRT\WinMe. The affected DLL's are system protected files and can only be restored in MS-DOS mode on Windows Millennium Minimal Boot (Windows Me). See Microsoft's report on problem Q296551 for more about this problem.

Versions affected	Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
	Windows Me (no longer supported)	Build 78	Build 85
	Windows NT	NA	NA
	Windows 2000	NA	NA
	Windows XP	NA	NA

Compleat Botanica - Bulletin 2

Unable to Install or Upgrade Windows Installer Service

Symptoms	When attempting to setup Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine using Step 1 of The Compleat Botanica Setup utility, you may encounter the message: The Windows Installer service failed to start. Contact your support personnel
Resolution	Install version 1.2 of the Windows Installer utility using INSTMSI.EXE file located on the Compleat Botanica CD in D:\Troubleshooting\WindowsInstaller\Version 1.2 for NT or D:\Troubleshooting\WindowsInstaller\Version 1.2 for 95, 98, Me. After installing version 1.2 of Windows Installer, begin the Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine setup process again. See Microsoft's report on problem Q264652 and Q260404 and Q251274 for more about this problem.

	Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
Versions affected	Windows Me (no longer supported)	Build 78	Build 85
	Windows NT	NA	NA
	Windows 2000	NA	NA
	Windows XP	NA	NA

Compleat Botanica - Bulletin 3

Missing required files ODBC32.DLL or ODBCCP32.DLL

Symptoms	When attempting to run Step 2 of The Compleat Botanica Setup utility, you may encounter the message: Missing required files ODBC32.DLL or ODBCCP32.DLL
Resolution	Both of these files are installed by Step 1 of the Compleat Botanica Setup utility. If for some reason Step 1 was successful and you still get this message or a similar message, you should install Microsoft Data Access Components version 2.6. This can be done using the MDAC_TYP.EXE utility located on the Compleat Botanica CD in D:\Troubleshooting \MDAC2.6. After installing version 2.6 of Microsoft Data Access Components, continue with Step 2 of the Setup process.

Versions affected	Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
	Windows 98 (no longer supported)	Build 81	Build 82
	Windows Me (no longer supported)	NA	NA
	Windows NT	NA	NA
	Windows 2000	NA	NA
	Windows XP	NA	NA

Troubleshooting   Bulletins

Internet Explorer 5.0 or later needs to be installed on this computer for The Compleat Botanica to work properly

Symptoms	When attempting to run Step 2 of The Compleat Botanica Setup utility, you may encounter the message: Internet Explorer 5.0 or later needs to be installed on this computer for The Compleat Botanica to work properly
Resolution	You will see this message if Internet Explorer is not installed on your computer or if the file HHCTRL.OCX is not in the Windows system directory. You should install Microsoft Internet Explorer version 5.0 or later. This can be done using the IE5SETUP.EXE utility located on the Compleat Botanica CD in D:\Troubleshooting\IE6. The latest version of Internet Explorer can be obtained from Microsoft at Internet Explorer. After installing Microsoft Internet Explorer, continue with Step 2 of the Setup process.

Versions affected	Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
	Windows 98 (no longer supported)	Build 78	NA
	Windows Me (no longer supported)	NA	NA
	Windows NT	NA	NA
	Windows 2000	NA	NA
	Windows XP	NA	NA

Technical Bulletins # 5 [Back] [Next]

Cannot find WIN.COM, unable to continue loading Windows

Symptoms

When you restart Microsoft Windows Me after you have installed Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine using Step 1, you see the Windows splash screen, and then you are returned to an MS-DOS prompt with the following error:

Cannot find WIN.COM, unable to continue loading Windows

Resolution

Software that relies on the PATH statement in the computer's autoexec.bat file may have trouble loading due to a modification made by SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine:

```
SET PATH="C:\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\80
\Tools\Binn\"
```

Just prior to starting Step 1 of the installation process, your computer's `autoexec.bat` file is automatically copied to the file `autoexec.sql`. After a successful installation of SQL Server Desktop Engine, you should shutdown and restart your computer to finalize the setup process. Just prior to shutting your computer down the `OnShutdown` program will automatically replace your `autoexec.bat` file with the previously saved `autoexec.sql` file.

If you turn off your computer without shutting it down using the normal shutdown process, or if the above procedure did not finish successfully, you may need to restore your original `autoexec.bat` file manually. To do this type this command at an MS-DOS prompt:

```
C:\> copy c:\autoexec.sql c:\autoexec.bat
```

Versions affected	Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
	Windows Me (no longer supported)	Build 81	Build 82
	Windows NT	NA	NA
	Windows 2000	NA	NA
	Windows XP	NA	NA

Troubleshooting   Bulletins

Installation of SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine hangs-up when half way through

Symptoms

Installation of Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Engine begins as usual with the progress bar periodically showing changes. About half way through the process, the progress bar stops changing and the disk drive becomes silent. The dialog box remains stuck with the message:

Please wait while Windows configures Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine. Time remaining: 59 seconds.

(The time remaining varies from computer to computer.)

Resolution

The installation process cannot upgrade the Microsoft Distributed Access Components (MDAC) when any of the files are in use. This includes the ODBC components and the OLE DB components. Be sure that no background processes are using these files.

Usually, restarting your computer just prior to installation is an effective way to stop any background processes from using any of these components. Additional diagnostic information is available from the log file located at:

```
C:\Program Files\Compleat Botanica\DesktopEngine
\Setup\CBDesktopEngine.log
```

	Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
Versions affected	Windows Me (no longer supported)	Build 81	NA
	Windows NT	Build 81	NA
	Windows 2000	Build 81	NA
	Windows XP	Build 81	NA

Technical Bulletins # 7 [**Back**] [**Next**]

The software stops working after upgrading Windows with the dual-boot option

Symptoms	If a computer is upgraded from Windows 2000 to Windows XP with the dual-boot option and the SQL Server Desktop Engine is installed on both OS's, the software doesn't work properly. Under these conditions the software typically hangs up with the message "Starting SQL Server Desktop Engine".
Resolution	When a computer is upgraded from Windows 2000 to Windows XP and the dual-boot option is chosen, the computer has two separate directories for the Windows operating system files and two separate directories for the software applications. To use The Compleat Botanica under the new operating system, a second copy of the SQL Server Desktop Engine must be installed to the new `Program Files` area, and a second copy of The Compleat Botanica software must be installed as well. Be careful not to intermix the old `Program Files` and the new `Program Files`. Use of the software in this way is not supported by Crescent Bloom. We recommend that you use the software under one OS or the other, but not both.

	Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
Versions affected	Windows NT	Build 85	NA
	Windows 2000	Build 85	NA
	Windows XP	Build 85	NA

Compleat Botanica **- Bulletin 8**

After removing an older version of the software, a newer version can't be installed

Symptoms	The Remove utility is used to completely uninstall an existing copy of the software. When it is finished, a newer version of the software is installed. During Step 1 (installation of The SQL Server Desktop Engine) the installation hangs up.
Resolution	After uninstalling SQL Server Desktop Engine, the computer must be restarted to finalize the un-installation. Before attempting to reinstall the software, be sure to reboot your computer.

Versions affected

Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
Windows NT	Build 85	NA
Windows 2000	Build 85	NA
Windows XP	Build 85	NA

Troubleshooting   Bulletins

Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Edition is vulnerable to the Slammer virus.

Symptoms	Microsoft has identified the potential for malicious code to attack computers running the version of Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Edition used with The Compleat Botanica. W32.Slammer is a memory resident worm that propagates via UDP Port 1434 and exploits a vulnerability in systems with MSDE 2000 that have not applied the patch released by Microsoft Security Bulletin MS02-061. The principal effect of this worm is to cause your network to slow down as it attempts to contact other sites in an effort to propagate itself. It does not appear to contain any additional payload. Please contact your antivirus vendor for additional details on this worm.
Resolution	Instructions for protecting your computer from the Slammer Virus can be found at: Microsoft Virus Alerts - Slammer

Versions affected

Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
Windows NT	Build 85	Build 86
Windows 2000	Build 85	Build 86
Windows XP	Build 85	Build 86

Compleat Botanica - Bulletin 10

The Compleat Botanica's taxonomic hierarchy is invalid.

Symptoms

The ordering of the checklist entries within the taxonomic hierarchy of the software is incorrect. Most notable are those entries which are placed under family names which are synonyms of the accepted family name. Although these synonyms are validly published names, they should not be used in favor of their accepted names as described by the authors of the classification system.

This problem affects entries at the ranks of division, class, order, and family as well as the sub-ranks within these.

Corrections to existing databases can be applied using the *Update Checklist Utility* which can be obtained here. The *Update Checklist Utility* can be used to apply the corrections contained in any of the XML files listed below:

The file `CorrectedFamilyAssignments.xml` contains 88 updates for genera that were incorrectly placed in invalid families according to a misreading of data obtained from the Royal Botanical Garden at Kew. See the note Corrected family assignments for a list of these corrections. Applying this update is not necessary if you will be applying the recommended update below. (This file can be obtained by requesting it from our Technical Support staff.)

The file `CorrectedFamilySynonyms.xml` contains updates to the synonym field of 9817 family records which were left blank. Applying this update is not necessary if you will be applying the recommended update below. (This file can be obtained by requesting it from our Technical Support staff.)

The file `RevealSystemOfClassification.xml` contains 14,325 updates which reorganize the existing database entries to conform with James L. Reveal's system of Vascular Plant Nomenclature. Applying this update is recommended. It also contains updates for the 88 genera and 9817 families listed above.

NOTE: Because this utility will change entries in your database, you are advised to make a backup copy of your data prior to applying these updates.

To use this utility, download the self-extracting executable below. Unzip the files to the folder on your computer that contains the `CompleatBotanica.exe` file. This is typically located in the folder `C:/Program Files/ Compleat Botanica/Programs/`. *Because this utility relies on other portions of the Compleat Botanica software, it will only work if it is copied to this folder.*

Download the Update Checklist Utility here --> [Checklist Utility (868 Kb)](#)
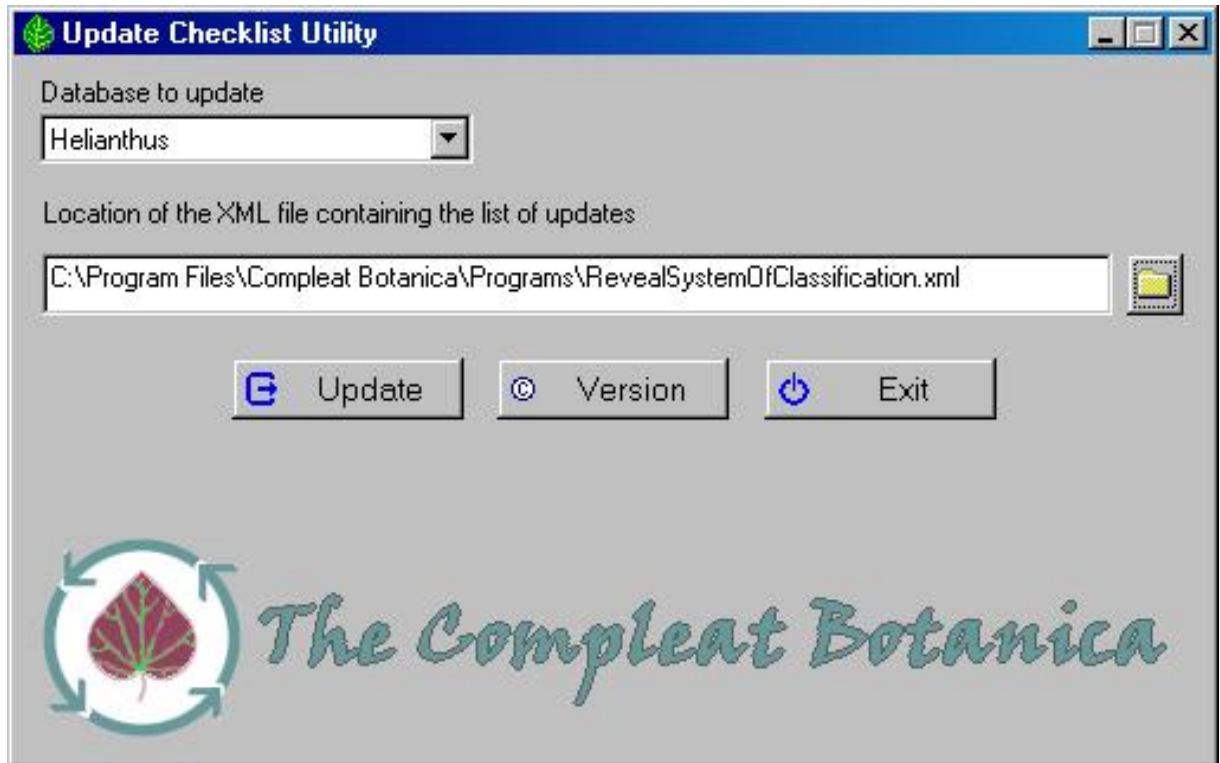
Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
Windows NT	Build 85	Build 86
Windows 2000	Build 85	Build 86
Windows XP	Build 85	Build 86

Compleat Botanica **- Bulletin 11**

Cannot install Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Edition if Server Service is not running.

Symptoms

Attempts to install Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Edition fail. An inspection of the installation log file reveals that the point of failure is during the attempt to start **InstallSQLAgentSecurity**.

During the installation a log file is written to **"C:\Program Files\Compleat Botanica\DesktopEngine\Setup\CBDestopEngine.log"**.

An inspection of the log reveals lines similar to this:
```
Loading extended custom action library sqlcax.dll
Starting custom action InstallSQLAgentSecurity
InstallSQLAgentSecurity failed (YourComputerName,LocalSystem,87).
Action ended 22:41:16: InstallFinalize. Return value 3.
```

Details of this problem are available from Microsoft at: Microsoft Knowledge Base Article - 829386 "You Cannot Install MSDE 2000 if the Server Service Is Not Running".

Resolution

You can solve this problem by installing File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks and starting the Server Service.

Step-by-step instructions for starting the Server Service are provided below. If you can't find the Server Service in Step 4 (below), you'll need to install File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks using the step-by-step procedures at the end of this document.

After finishing this, restart the installation of the Compleat Botanica beginning with STEP1 of the CD's Setup program.
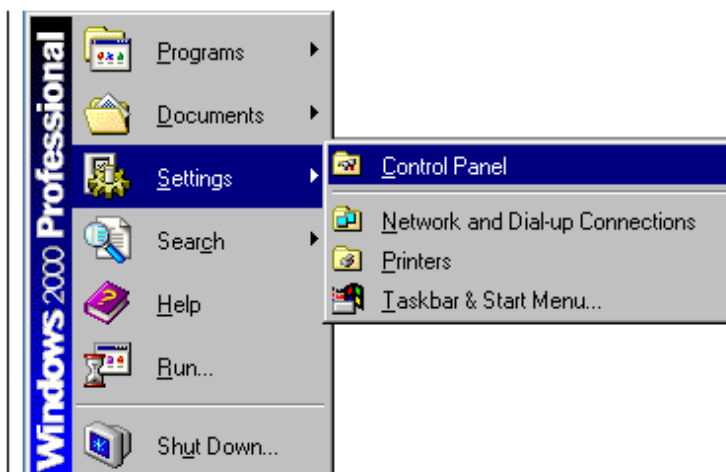
Versions affected

Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
Windows NT	NA	NA
Windows 2000	Build 85	NA
Windows XP	Build 86	NA

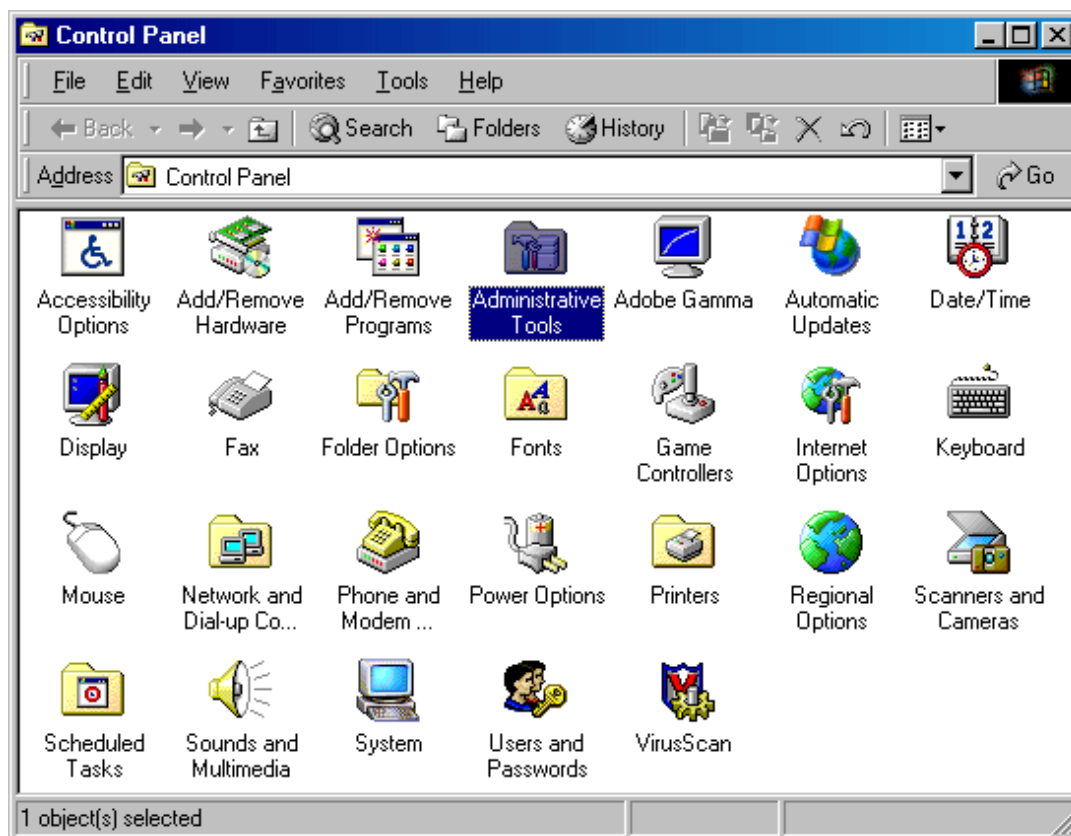## Instructions for Starting the Server Service

If the Server Service is installed but not running, follow these instructions for starting it.

1 From the Start menu select **Settings** > **Control Panel**.

2

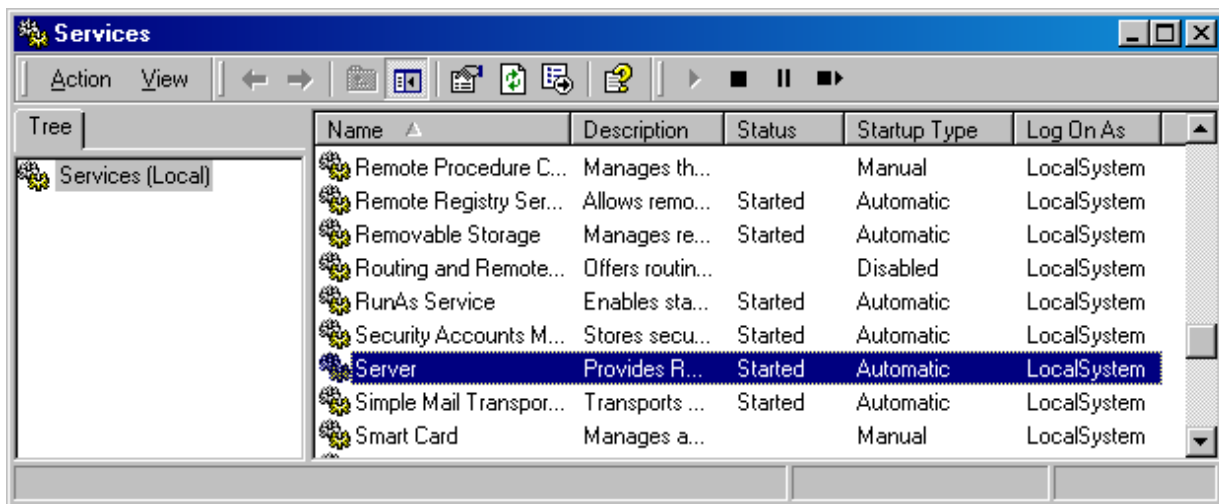From the Control Panel double-click the **Administrative Tools** icon.

3

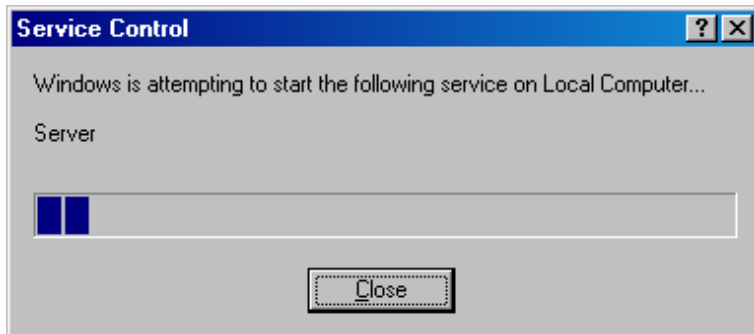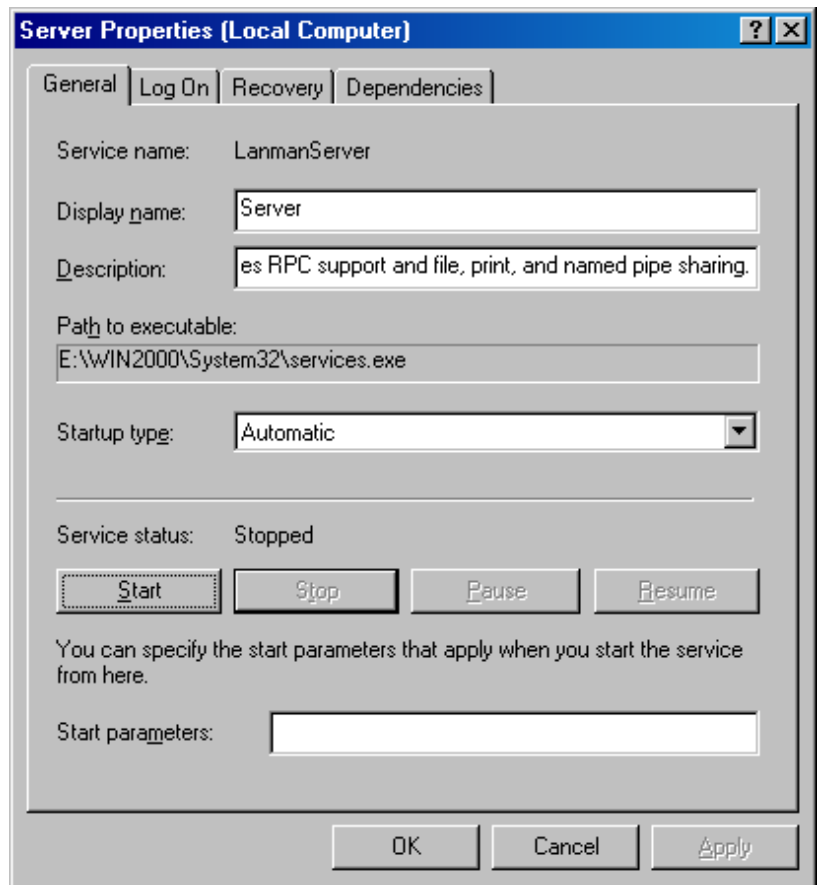From the Administrative Tools folder double-click the **Services** icon.

4

Scroll down the alphabetical list of services and double-click the **Server** item.

5

From the Server Properties window click the **Start** button.

6

After the server service has started you can proceed with installing Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Engine.

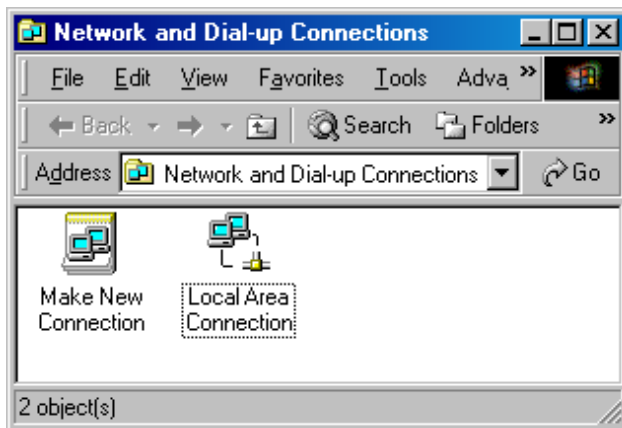## Instructions for Installing File and Printer Sharing

If the Server Service is not in the list of services (see Step 4 above), you'll need to install it by installing File and Printer Sharing. Follow these instructions for installation.

1 From the Start menu select **Settings** > **Network and Dialup connections**.
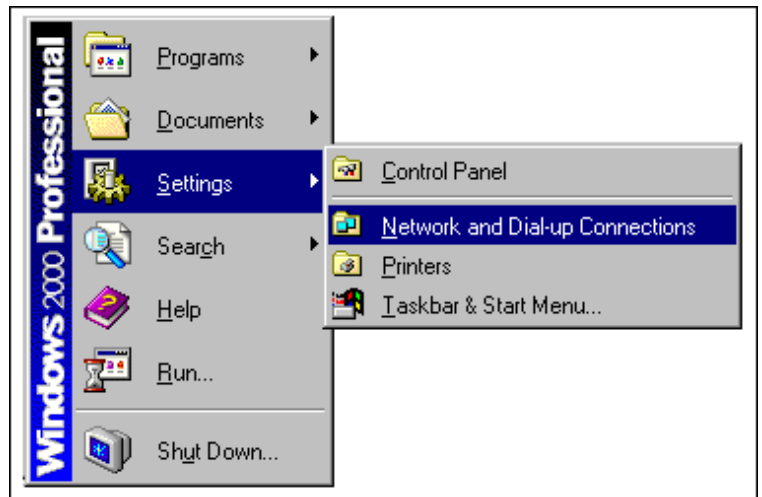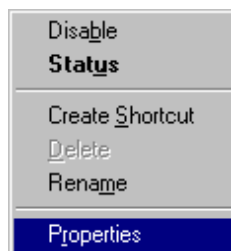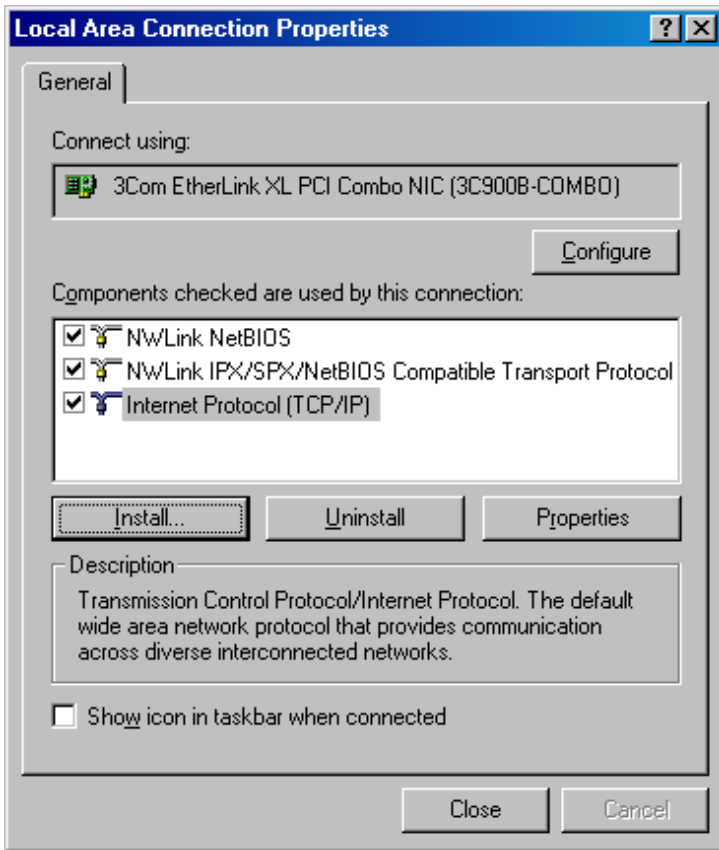

2 From the Network and Dialup Connections folder right click on "Local Area Connection".

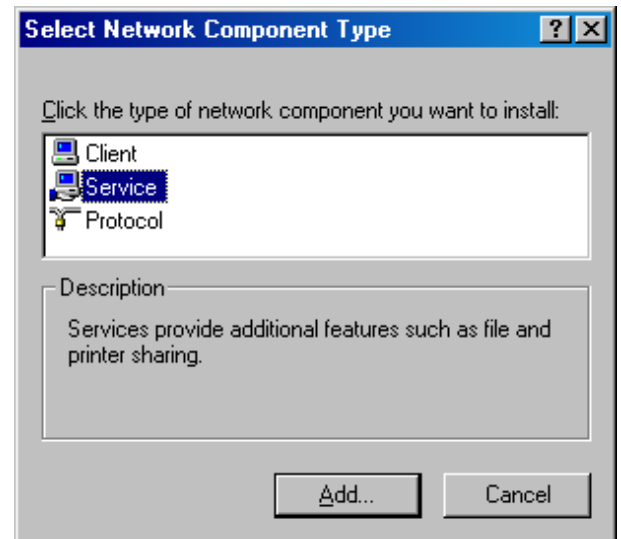**3** From the popup menu select the "Properties" item.
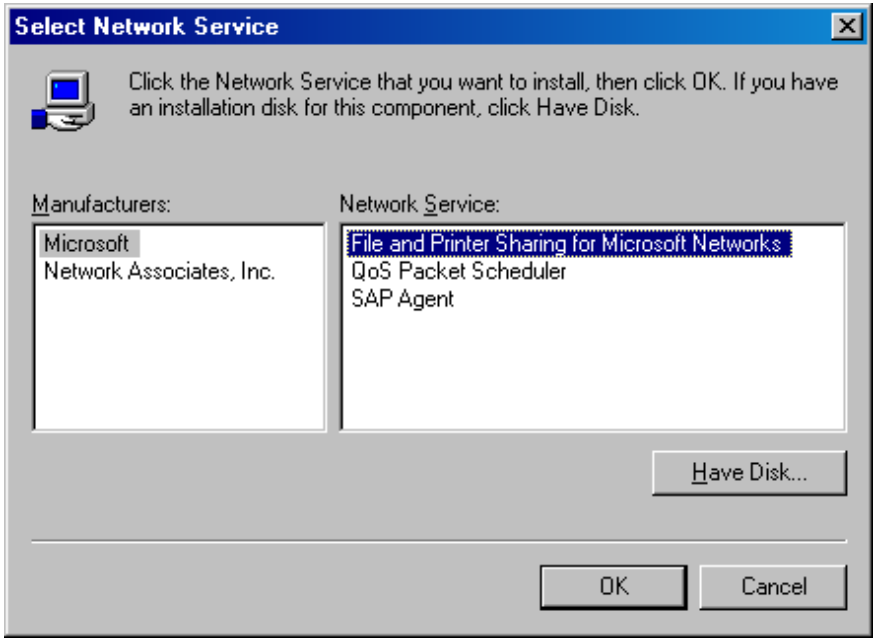

4

From the Local Area Connection Properties dialog box click the **Install** button.

5 From the Select Network Component Type dialog box choose the "Service" item in the listbox and click the **Add** button.
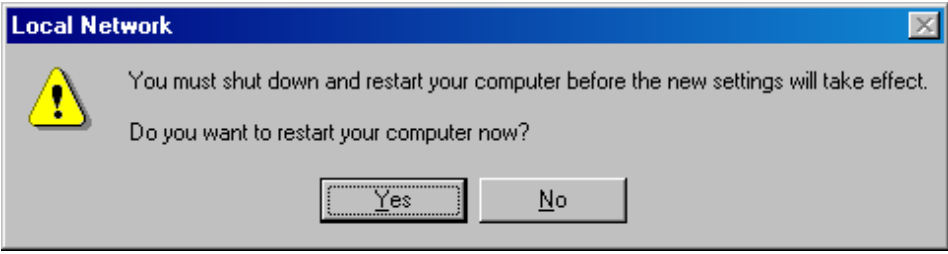

6

From the Select Network Service dialog box select the "File and Printer Sharing for Microsoft Networks" item in the listbox and click the **OK** button.

7 Restart your computer.

Compleat Botanica - Bulletin 12

Installation of Microsoft SQL Server Desktop Edition fails when a more recent instance is already installed.

Symptoms

Attempts to install Microsoft SQL Server 2000 Desktop Edition fail on a computer that is already running another more recent instance of SQL Server Desktop. The installation progress indicator moves forward to the point of failure, then begins to move backward as the installation is rolled back. An inspection of the installation log file reveals that setup is failing during the attempt to load the library **SEMNT.DLL**.

During the installation a log file is written to `"C:\Program Files\Compleat Botanica\DesktopEngine\Setup\CBDestopEngine.log"`.

An inspection of the log reveals lines similar to this:

```
Starting custom action InstallSQLAgentSecurity
LoadLibrary failed for C:\Program Files\Compleat Botanica\DesktopEngine\
    MSSQL$CompleatBotanica\Binn\SEMNT.DLL.
    GetLastError() returned: 126
Action ended 19:11:30: InstallFinalize. Return value 3.
Action 19:11:30: Rollback. Rolling back action:
```

Details of this problem are available from Microsoft at: Microsoft Knowledge Base Article - 299351 "BUG: MSDE Installation Fails on Systems That Have SQL Server 2000 Service Pack 1 or 2 Installed".

This problem occurs on systems which already have one or more instances of SQL Server Desktop Engine installed and those instances have been patched with more recent service packs.

Here are the service pack identifiers and version numbers of SQL Server Desktop Edition

Service Pack	Version number
Baseline	8.00.194

SP1	8.00.384
SP2	8.00.534
SP3	8.00.760
SP3a	8.00.761

Resolution

You can solve this problem by disabling the existing installations of SQL Server Desktop Engine before attempting to run STEP 1 of the Compleat Botanica setup.

You can also solve this problem by temporarily renaming the newer versions of five files then installing the Compleat Botanica. After successfully installing the Compleat Botanica delete the five files that were just installed (the older versions) and rename the temporary copies (the newer versions) back to their original names. The five files are:

- `\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\80\Tools\Binn\Resources\1033\Semnt.rll`
- `\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\80\Tools\Binn\Resources\1033\Sqlsvc.rll`
- `\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\80\Tools\Binn\Semnt.dll`
- `\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\80\Tools\Binn\Sqlsvc.dll`
- `\Program Files\Microsoft SQL Server\80\Tools\Binn\Sqlresld.dll`

Versions affected

Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
Windows NT	NA	NA
Windows 2000	NA	NA
Windows XP	Build 85	Build 86

Compleat Botanica - Bulletin 13

Multiple-resolution printers don't work.

Symptoms

Printers that support multiple resolutions do not work.

The software abruptly stops with the following message:

```
Assertion failed
Programmer's clues: deviceHeight>=0
File V:\ActiveProjects\CrescentBloom\Apps\Catalog\RenderAlternating.cpp
Line: 99
Do you want to continue anyway?    yes\no
```

Pressing either "yes" or "no" returns the message:

```
Crescent Bloom Compleat Botanica
Error signature_____
AppName: compleatbotanica.exe              AppVer: 1.0.0.64
ModName: completebotanica.exe
ModVer: 1.0.0.64                              Offset: 000e41b3
```

This has been documented to occur with the **Canon i560** and **HP 2410 All-on-one printers**.

Resolution

This problem was fixed with Build 87

Versions affected	Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
	Windows NT	NA	NA
	Windows 2000	Build 86	Build 87
	Windows XP	Build 86	Build 87

Compleat Botanica - Bulletin 14

Printers with long names don't work.

Symptoms	Printers with long names are not recognized properly and will cause the following message to appear: **"Unable to print, no valid printer selected. Is the selected printer installed properly?"**. This affects printers with names that are longer than 30 characters, for example, "Lexmark Z22-Z32 Color Jetprinter".
Resolution	You can solve this problem by changing the name of the printer to a name that is shorter than 30 characters.

Versions affected

Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
Windows NT	NA	NA
Windows 2000	Build 87	Build 88
Windows XP	Build 87	Build 88

Compleat Botanica - Bulletin 15

Technical Bulletins # 15 [Back]

Specimen reports don't print.

Symptoms

Specimen reports can be designed and previewed in the WYSIWYG report generator, but pressing the "Print" button doesn't send the report to the printer.

Resolution

This problem affects Build 87 only. You can obtain a patch to the software here, that will correct this problem.

To use this utility, download the self-extracting executable below. Unzip the files to the folder on your computer that contains the `CompleatBotanica.exe` file. This is typically located in the folder `C:/Program Files/Compleat Botanica/Programs/`. *Because this utility relies on other portions of the Compleat Botanica software, it will only work if it is copied to this folder.*

Download Build 88 Patch here --> Build 88 Patch (4.18 Mb)

Versions affected	Operating system	Problem first identified	Problem fixed
	Windows NT	Build 87	Build 88
	Windows 2000	Build 87	Build 88
	Windows XP	Build 87	Build 88